

---

OF AMERICA

---

# HISPANIC

## NOTES AND MONOGRAPHS

ESSAYS, STUDIES, AND BRIEF  
BIOGRAPHIES ISSUED BY THE  
HISPANIC SOCIETY OF AMERICA



COPYRIGHT, 1928, BY  
THE HISPANIC SOCIETY OF AMERICA

TO  
HENRY ROSEMAN LANG, PH.D.  
IN GRATEFUL ACKNOWLEDGMENT  
OF HIS  
ENCOURAGEMENT AND ASSISTANCE

*“Floreça, fale, cante, ouça-se e viva  
A Portuguesa lingua; e já onde fôr,  
Senhora vá de si, soberba e altiva.”*

António Ferreira, *Carta I.*

## PREFACE

THE purpose of this book is to provide a rather complete descriptive grammar for such as may desire an intelligent acquaintance with the Portuguese language. It contains all the grammar needed by the ordinary student of modern Portuguese and, in addition, enough of the obsolete forms to enable him to read the poets of the classic period. The standard speech of Portugal has been taken as the norm, but Brazilian, dialectic, and colloquial usages have been noted whenever necessary.

It is hoped that the book will be found useful by two different classes of learners. The grammar absolutely necessary for those interested in the practical use of the language only, or which may be taken on a first perusal, is printed in a larger type, while the matter in smaller type may be left for subsequent study and will interest more serious and advanced students.

I have endeavored to make the book useful as a work of reference, by arranging the material in the order of a systematic grammar and by means of a detailed index. The illustrative sentences, for the most part, have been taken directly from the best texts and the best critical authorities of the language. In some

cases, however, standard grammars and lexical sources have been drawn on for examples.

The pronunciation of Portuguese, "sans doute la plus délicate et la plus compliquée de n'importe quelle langue romane" (Viana), can, of course, be learnt only from the lips of the teacher, but it is hoped that the detailed table of vowel and consonant sounds, the marking throughout of the quality of accented *a*, *e*, and *o*, and the pages in phonetic spelling will be of considerable assistance. In order to retain the characters of the ordinary alphabet as far as possible for phonetic purposes, the system of transliteration which I have employed departs slightly from that recognized by the International Phonetic Association. The spelling is in absolute conformity with the orthography recommended by the Commission appointed in 1911 by the Portuguese Government to fix the bases of the official orthography, conformed to by Aniceto dos Reis Gonçalves Viana, in his *Vocabulário ortográfico e remissivo da Língua Portuguesa*, 4<sup>a</sup> edição, Lisboa, 1920, including the modifications introduced by the Commission in 1927.

I have consulted practically all the numerous Portuguese grammars and all the studies on the Portuguese language that have appeared in modern times and have not hesitated to avail myself of their best features. I desire to acknowledge in the most cordial terms my indebtedness to my colleagues, Dr. Manoel Oliveira Lima and Dr. J. de Siqueira Coutinho, Professors in the Catholic University of America, to Dr. José Joaquim Nunes, Professor in the University of Lisbon, and

to Drs. Ferrand d'Almeida and Oliveira Guimarães, Professors in the University of Coimbra. My special thanks are due to Dr. Henry R. Lang, Emeritus Professor in Yale University, to whom this book is dedicated, for the admirable and generous help which his coöperation has given me. For the errors, however, which the book contains, the author is alone to be held responsible.

JOSEPH DUNN.



## CONTENTS

	Page
I. The Alphabet.....	1
II. Phonetic Introduction.....	3
III. Accent.....	57
IV. Division of Syllables.....	64
V. Orthography.....	66
VI. Capitalization and Punctuation.....	69
VII. Points of Interrogation and Exclamation	71
VIII. Accent Marks.....	72
IX. Homonymous Words.....	78
X. History and Dialects of Portuguese....	81
XI. Exercise in Pronunciation.....	92
XII. The Article.....	101
XIII. The Noun.....	131
XIV. The Adjective.....	186
XV. The Numeral.....	217
XVI. The Pronoun.....	241
XVII. The Verb.....	332
XVIII. The Adverb.....	539
XIX. The Preposition.....	570
XX. The Conjunction.....	603
XXI. The Interjection.....	612
XXII. Order of Words.....	614
XXIII. Portuguese Proverbs.....	620
XXIV. Portuguese Abbreviations.....	631
Index.....	636
Map of Portugal.....	80





## I. THE ALPHABET

1. (a) The Portuguese alphabet consists of twenty-six letters, including *k*, *w*, and *y*, which do not properly belong to it.

(b) *K* is used chiefly in derivatives of foreign proper names, as *kantiano*, *kantismo*, *kantista*, *kepleriano*, *kneipista*, and may also be used in foreign words which have not yet been naturalized, as *kaiser*, *kermesse*, *kirie(s)*, *ukase*, as well as in the word *kilo* (abbreviated *K.*) which has an international value. Otherwise *c* is written before *a*, *o*, *u*, or a consonant, and *qu* before *e* and *i*: *alcali*, *niquel*, *quedive*, *quimono*, *quiosque*.

(c) *W* and *y* are used in a few foreign, chiefly English, words and proper names: *Byron*, *byroniano*, *byronismo*, *poney*, *York*. *W* is sometimes substituted by *u* or *v*, according to the pronunciation: *vagom* (also written *vagão* and, less correctly, *vagon*), *whig*, *whist*, *Darwin*, *darwinismo*, *sandwich* (also written *sanduiche*), *trâm-way* (or *tramuei*), *Venceslau*.

2. LETTERS	PORTUGUESE NAMES	PRONUNCIATION
a	<i>á</i>	<i>ah</i> , (a)
b	<i>bê</i>	<i>bay</i> ,* (bɐ)
c	<i>cê</i>	<i>say</i> ,* (sɐ)
d	<i>dê</i>	<i>day</i> ,* (dɐ)
e	<i>é</i>	<i>ay</i> ,* (ɐ)
f	<i>éfe</i>	<i>effe</i> , (ɛf)
g	<i>gê</i>	Fr.j'ai, (ʒɐ)
h	<i>agá</i>	<i>agah</i> , (vɐgɐ)
i	<i>i</i>	<i>ee</i> , (i)
j	<i>jota</i>	<i>jota</i> , (ʒɔta)
k	<i>ká</i>	<i>kah</i> , (kɐ)
l	<i>éle</i>	<i>elle</i> , (ɛl)
m	<i>éme</i>	<i>emme</i> , (ɛm)
n	<i>éne</i>	<i>enne</i> , (ɛn)
o	<i>ó</i>	<i>o</i> , (ɔ)
p	<i>pê</i>	<i>pay</i> ,* (pɐ)
q	<i>quê</i>	<i>kay</i> ,* (kɐ)
r	<i>érre</i>	<i>erre</i> , (ɛr)
s	<i>ésse</i>	<i>esse</i> , (ɛs)
t	<i>tê</i>	<i>tay</i> ,* (tɐ)
u	<i>u</i>	<i>oo</i> , (u)
v	<i>vê</i>	<i>vay</i> ,* (vɐ)
w	<i>vê dobrqdo</i>	<i>vay</i> * <i>dobrɐdo</i>
x	<i>xis</i>	<i>sheesh</i> , (ʃiʃ)
y	<i>í grego or ípsilon</i>	<i>ípsilon</i>
z	<i>zê</i>	<i>zay</i> ,* (zɐ)

---

\*Without the audible off-glide, which, it is important to observe, does not exist in Portuguese.

## II. PHONETIC INTRODUCTION

3. The pronunciation of Portuguese differs very much from that of Spanish, in having fewer gutturals and a distinctive and strongly marked nasalization of vowels and diphthongs, in the breaking of vowels, and in the weakening and elimination of medial and final consonants. The normal national pronunciation adopted as a standard in this grammar is commonly heard in educated circles not only in Lisbon and Coimbra but throughout Portugal. But even in the Capital and in the ancient university city certain phonetic peculiarities and localisms are met with, the most conspicuous of which will be pointed out later (47 ff.).

### LIST OF SYMBOLS

4. In the standard orthography (36 ff.) the only graphic signs employed are the acute (to denote an open vowel), the circumflex (to denote a close vowel), the grave (to denote an unaccented open vowel), and the *til* (to denote nasality). These are placed over vowels and indicate the quality of the vowel. The acute and circumflex also mark at the same time the accented syllable.

Wherever necessary throughout this book, the following additional symbols will be used:

A dot under a stressed *a*, *e*, or *o* signifies that the vowel is 'close.' A hook to the right signifies that the vowel is 'open.'

In the body of the book the quality of unstressed (or reduced) vowels is left unmarked; likewise of diph-

thongs and nasal vowels and diphthongs, unless they already bear a graphic accent.

Except in the case of *a*, *ã*, *g*, *ç*, *ê*, *é*, *o*, *ô*, *î*, *u*, *û*, *ü*, *lh*, and *nh*, the symbols employed are those of the International Phonetic Association.

The English values cited in the following lists as containing equivalents of Portuguese sounds are only approximate, for few people pronounce all these English words exactly in the same way. Additional Portuguese illustrations will be found under the respective letters and symbols in the detailed treatment of the pronunciation.

The tendency of foreigners, especially English and American, is to pronounce too open and too distinct the vowel of an initial unaccented syllable: *Portugal*. But, generally speaking, the mouth is more open and the action of the tongue more vigorous in Portuguese than in English.

## 5. PHONETIC SYMBOLS OF TYPICAL VOWEL SOUNDS

- v* as in 'above,' 'attend,' 'mother,' much more open than Fr. *le*, *me*, *te*; sometimes a mere whisper; usually in atonic position: *porta* 'door.'
- a* identical with *v*, but stronger, as in 'path,' in tonic position: *cama* 'bed.'
- q* as in 'pot,' 'what,' between Fr. *pâte* and *patte*; slightly more open than Span. *q*: *casa* 'house.'
- g* almost the same as *â* in Fr. *pâte*, but slightly gutturalized. It occurs only before *l* and *û*: *mal* 'badly,' *mau* 'bad.'
- ã* *lã* 'wool,' *ânsia* [*ãsiã*] 'anxiety.'
- ç* as in 'fate,' 'bake,' 'gate,' without the brief off-glide; Fr. *été*, *attaché*, Germ. *See*: *sêde* 'thirst.'

- e more open than in 'pet,' 'bet,' 'yet;' more open than Fr. *dette* and less so than Eng. 'bad' or Ital. *bello*: *pēdra* 'stone.'
- ə an obscure vowel, as in *villa*; not so open as *v*: *morte* 'death.'
- ʔ a whispered ə, in connection with voiceless consonants: *tapelar* [təpəʔlɐ] 'to carpet.'
- ē *crença* [kɐɐ̃sɐ] 'belief.'
- i close, as in 'bee': *vi* 'I have seen.'
- î open, as in 'fit,' 'sit,' Germ. *Schiff*; chiefly before *l* and *ũ*: *mil* 'thousand.'
- ĩ a palatal semi-vowel, as in 'yet,' 'young,' but a trifle less consonantal: *pai* [pɐĩ] 'father.'
- ɨ a reduced i, as in 'it was,' 'react,' between *v* and *i*: *tejplo* 'brick.'
- ʒ a whispered ʒ, in connection with voiceless prepalatals: *fechar* [fɛʃqɐ] 'to close.'
- ĩ *sim* [sĩ] 'yes.'
- o as in 'pole,' Germ. *so*; a little less open than Fr. *beau*: *bôca* 'mouth.'
- o as in 'faugh,' 'tall,' 'walk,' Germ. *Sonne*; more open than Fr. *robe*: *bôla* 'ball.'
- õ *bom* [bõ] 'good.'
- ũ as in 'rule,' 'pool,' Fr. *ou*, Ital. *u*: *cru* 'raw.'
- ũ a labial semi-vowel, as in 'we,' 'wet,' but less consonantal; Ital. *uomo*: *água* 'water.'
- ũ a short whispered u after a voiceless consonant; always atonic: *circo* [sɪ̥kũ] 'circus.'
- u identical with *ũ* but very short: *cavalo* [kəvɐlu] 'horse.'
- ũ *um* [ũ] 'one.'

The so-called long vowels *a* and *o* of English 'hay' and 'foe' are in reality diphthongs. The marked tendency in English to follow these vowels by an *i*- or *u*-sound, due to a slight raising of the tongue accom-

panied by some measure of narrowing of the opening between the lips, must be checked in pronouncing Portuguese.

#### PHONETIC SYMBOLS OF TYPICAL CONSONANTAL SOUNDS

6. The pronunciation of *b*, *c* (= *k*), *d*, *f*, *g* (as in 'go'), *l*, *m*, *n*, *p*, and *t* corresponds only roughly to the pronunciation of these consonants in English. The principal differences are that in Portuguese the linguadentals *d*, *l*, *n*, and *t* are pronounced much nearer the upper teeth, and that *c* (= *k*), *p*, and *t*, unless before a whispered vowel, are not accompanied by the slight aspiration which generally follows these English sounds, as in 'brick-house,' 'chop-house,' 'rat-hole.' The Portuguese 'dentals' are true dentals, whereas all English so-called dentals, with the exception of the voiceless and voiced spirants, as in 'think' and 'though,' for example, are alveolars.

- b*            a fricative *b*, resembling Eng. *w*, like Spanish spirant *b*, *Cuba*: *lábio* 'lip.'
- ç*            note that *c* before *e* and *i*; *ç* before *a*, *o*, and *u*; initial *s*, and intervocalic *ss* represent the same sound.
- d*            a fricative *d*, like Spanish spirant *d*, but more distinctly pronounced: *lado* 'side.'
- g*            a softened, slightly fricative *g*: *logo* 'directly.'
- ʒ*            a voiced palatal sibilant, as in 'vision,' 'azure,' Fr. *journal*: *gente* 'people.'
- l*            as in 'myu~~l~~k' (for milk), a gutturalized *l*; while the tip of the tongue rests against the upper gums, its back is raised towards the soft palate: *sol* 'sun.'
- lh* (= *ç*)   not *ll*, as in 'William,' 'million,' (a common mistake of foreigners), but like the *l*

- mouillée* as still heard in the South of France and in Switzerland, or like the digraph *gl* in Ital. *figlia*, serraglio: *filho* 'son.'
- ɱ* a voiceless *m* before voiceless consonants: *campo* 'field.'
- ŋ* a velar sound, as in 'sing,' 'song,' 'strength,' 'think,' 'singing': *cinco* 'five.'
- ɲ* a voiceless *n* before voiceless consonants: *santo* 'saint.'
- nh* (= *ɲ*) a palatal *n*, not as in 'canyon,' 'mania,' or 'onion,' but like Span. *ñ* or Fr. and Ital. *gn*, in Fr. *campagne*, Ital. *campagna*, *signore*. The tip of the tongue must be kept well down behind the lower front teeth, and the middle of the tongue should touch the hard palate in about the same position as *ʒ*, but pressed so closely as to produce complete obstruction: *ninho* 'nest.'
- ɻ* a lingual *r*, very weak and momentary and resembling *d*, the tip of the tongue striking lightly against the upper gums. Though not at all like Eng. *r*, it is pronounced somewhat as that letter is in 'red,' 'her father,' 'far away': *caro* 'dear.'
- ʀ* voiceless *r*: *arte* 'art.'
- ʁ* trilled with the point of the tongue, as in 'run,' 'terrier.' The so-called 'uvular' or velar pronunciation of initial *r* is spreading, especially in the cities, but is not recommended: *rosa* 'rose.'
- s* as in 'so,' 'see,' but less sharp: *só* 'alone.'
- ʃ* a voiceless palatal sibilant, as in 'shall,' but without rounding of the lips: *isto* 'that.'
- z* a voiced sibilant, as in 'zeal,' 'rose,' 'fizz': *rosa* 'rose.'



## 7. VOWELS

Portuguese		Pronunciation
a	Tonic	<p>In the great majority of cases tonic <i>ā</i> is open: <i>cabo</i> 'end,' <i>caso</i> 'case,' <i>parte</i> 'part.'</p> <p>Before <i>ũ</i>, final <i>l</i>, or <i>l</i> plus a consonant (but not before <i>lh</i>): <i>alto</i> 'high,' <i>mal</i> 'evil,' <i>mau</i> 'bad,' <i>falta</i> 'want,' <i>caldo</i> 'hot,' <i>causa</i> 'reason.'</p> <p>If the <i>l</i> or <i>u</i> is not in the same syllable, this labialization does not take place: <i>ma-la</i> 'coffer.'</p> <p>Before intervocalic <i>m</i>, <i>n</i>, or <i>nh</i>: <i>amo</i> 'I love,' <i>banana</i>, <i>cama</i> 'bed,' <i>chamo</i> 'I call,' <i>vamos</i> 'we go,' <i>qinho</i> 'lamb.' But <i>ganhar</i> 'to gain' has <i>q</i> throughout (402. b).</p> <p>Before a nasal in the same syllable: <i>campo</i> 'field,' <i>manso</i> [<i>māsu</i>] 'weak,' <i>branco</i> 'white.'</p>
		<i>q</i>
		<i>u</i>
	Atonic	<p>Atonic <i>a</i> is usually close, except before <i>u</i> and before <i>l</i> plus a consonant.</p> <p>In the pretonic syllable, <i>a</i> is open</p> <p>(1) when it is the result of a contraction: <i>caveira</i> 'skull' (= <i>caaveira</i> &lt; <i>calaveira</i>, Span. <i>calavera</i>); <i>padeiro</i> 'baker'</p>
		<i>q</i>
		<i>ā</i>
		<i>q</i>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p>= <i>paadeiro</i> &lt; <i>panadeiro</i>, (Span. <i>panadero</i>);</p> <p>(2) before the following groups of consonants, whether the first of the group is pronounced or not:</p> <p><i>cs</i>: <i>acção</i> 'action.'</p> <p><i>ct</i>: <i>activo</i> 'active,' <i>actor</i> 'actor.'</p> <p><i>ps</i>, <i>pc</i>: <i>capcioso</i> 'crafty.'</p> <p><i>pt</i>: <i>aptidão</i> 'aptitude,' <i>baptismo</i> 'baptism.'</p> <p>(3) before <i>ũ</i> and before <i>l</i> plus a consonant (but not before <i>lh</i>) it is still more open:</p> <p><i>alferes</i> 'ensign,' <i>alguém</i> 'somebody,' <i>autor</i> 'author,' <i>faltar</i> 'to be lacking,' <i>palmeira</i> 'palm-tree.'</p> <p>In the feminine article <i>a</i> (<i>da</i>, <i>na</i>), the preposition <i>a</i>, and the conjunction <i>mas</i> 'but,' the <i>a</i> is close but weakly pronounced.</p> <p><i>Para</i> 'for,' like other prepositions, is, strictly speaking, atonic and, theoretically, is accented on the first syllable, but ordinarily on the second, in which case the first <i>a</i> practically disappears: <i>p'ra</i>. Cf. <i>Pará</i> 'Para' (the city) and <i>pára</i> 'stops' (15. e).</p>	

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p>Post-tonic <i>a</i> is open in a final syllable ending in <i>r</i>: <i>açúcar</i> 'sugar,' <i>aljófar</i> 'seed-pearl,' <i>nácar</i> 'mother-of-pearl,' and close in a final syllable ending in <i>n</i>: <i>iman</i> 'magnet.'</p> <p>Before a nasal in the same syllable: <i>cantar</i> 'to sing.'</p>	
<i>ã</i>	<p><i>rã</i> 'frog,' <i>irmã(s)</i> 'sister(s),' <i>lã</i> 'wool.'</p>	<i>ã</i>
<i>â</i>	<p>Tonic <i>cândido</i> 'white,' <i>lâmpada</i> 'lamp,' <i>sândalo</i> 'sandal.'</p>	<i>q</i>
<i>e</i>	<p>Tonic In general when it represents Lat. <i>ĕ</i> or <i>ae</i>: <i>aberto</i> 'open,' <i>meiro</i> 'blackbird,' <i>mel</i> 'honey,' <i>demo</i> 'devil.'</p>	<i>ɛ</i>
	<p>In general when it represents Lat. <i>ē</i> or <i>ī</i>: <i>pêna</i> 'punishment,' <i>remo</i> 'oar,' <i>negro</i> 'black.'</p>	<i>ɛ̃</i>
	<p>As a rule, tonic <i>e</i> is close before intervocalic <i>m</i>, <i>n</i>, <i>nh</i>, <i>j</i>, <i>ch</i>, and <i>lh</i>: <i>scena</i> 'scene' (404. b. c).</p>	
	<p>In some parts of Portugal in modern times, and especially in and around Lisbon, tonic <i>e</i> before the palatalized sounds written <i>ch</i>, <i>lh</i>, <i>nh</i>, <i>j</i>, and <i>x</i>, and in the stem-accented forms of <i>chegar</i> 'to arrive,' is pronounced <i>q</i> or a diphthong <i>qĩ</i>; the national pro-</p>	<p><i>q</i> (ĩ) <i>ɛ</i> (ĩ)</p>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p>nunciation, however, is <i>ɛ(ĩ)</i>; <i>abe-lha</i> 'bee,' <i>cereja</i> 'cherry,' <i>coelho</i> 'rabbit,' <i>desejo</i> 'wish,' <i>espelho</i> 'mirror,' <i>fecho</i> 'I close,' <i>fedelho</i> 'child,' <i>igreja</i> 'church,' <i>joelho</i> 'knee,' <i>orelha</i> 'ear,' <i>ovelha</i> 'sheep,' <i>telha</i> 'tile,' <i>tenho</i> 'I have,' <i>texto</i> 'text,' <i>vejo</i> 'I see.'</p> <p>The masculine demonstratives: <i>este</i> 'this,' <i>esse</i> and <i>aquêle</i> 'that.'</p> <p>The corresponding feminines: <i>esta</i>, <i>essa</i> and <i>aquêla</i>.</p> <p>In the suffix <i>-ela</i>: <i>cidade-la</i> 'fortress,' <i>janela</i> 'window.'</p> <p>In the terminations <i>-ês</i>, <i>-ez</i>, <i>-esa</i>, <i>-eza</i>: <i>certeza</i> 'certainty,' <i>cortês</i> 'courteous,' <i>natureza</i> 'nature,' <i>princesa</i> 'princess,' <i>sordidez</i> 'sordidness;' and frequently in the terminations <i>-esso</i>, <i>-essa</i>: <i>abadessa</i> 'abbess,' <i>arremesso</i> 'a throw,' but <i>arremesso</i> 'I throw,' <i>processo</i> 'process,' <i>remessa</i> 'remittance.'</p> <p>Masculine nouns and adjectives: <i>começo</i> 'beginning,' <i>seco</i> 'dry.'</p> <p>In the corresponding verbs of the first conjugation, in the present indicative, the imperative, and the present subjunc-</p>	<p><i>ɛ</i></p> <p><i>ɛ</i></p> <p><i>ɛ</i></p> <p><i>ɛ</i></p> <p><i>ɛ</i></p>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
Atonic	<p>tive, before a consonant except <i>m, n, nh, ch, lh, j</i> (404. c): <i>começo, comesças, começa, comesces</i> 'I begin,' etc., <i>seca</i> 'dries.'</p>	
	<p>In verbs in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i>, when the last syllable contains <i>e</i> (411, 418): <i>deve</i> 'owes,' <i>devem</i> 'they owe,' <i>fêrem</i> 'they strike.'</p>	ê
	<p>In the same, when the last syllable contains <i>a</i> or <i>o</i> (ibid.): <i>devo</i> 'I owe,' <i>devam</i> 'they may owe.'</p>	ê
	<p>Before <i>l</i> in the same syllable, whether final or followed by a different consonant: <i>anêl</i> 'ring,' <i>batêl</i> 'little boat,' <i>cruêl</i> 'cruel,' <i>novêl</i> 'new,' <i>relva</i> 'turf.'</p>	ê
	<p>Before a nasal in the same syllable: <i>gente</i> 'people,' <i>lenço</i> 'handkerchief,' <i>penso</i> [pêsu] 'I think,' <i>sempre</i> 'always,' <i>tempo</i> 'time,' <i>em</i> (ẽ) 'in' is frequently pronounced ẽ (17. e).</p>	ẽ
	<p>Initial and not followed by a palatal consonant: <i>e</i> 'and,' (cf. <i>é</i> 'is'), <i>edificar</i> 'to build,' <i>editor</i>, <i>educação</i> 'education,' <i>elegante</i> 'elegant,' <i>elemento</i> 'element,' <i>elevador</i> 'elevator,' <i>elogio</i> 'praise,' <i>errar</i> 'to err.'</p>	<p><i>i</i> (but less distinct than when tonic)</p>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p>The conjunction <i>que</i> 'that' is pronounced <i>kə</i>. The relative and interrogative <i>que</i> 'who' 'what' is commonly pronounced <i>kĩ</i> (a palatal semi-vowel) before an initial vowel, but <i>kɛ</i> before initial <i>e</i>, when standing alone and emphatic: <i>quê?</i> 'what?' <i>que é isso?</i> [<i>kĩ ɛ isu</i>] 'what is that?' <i>o quê?</i> 'what?'</p> <p>Pretonic <i>e</i> before or after <i>r</i> or <i>s</i> (<i>ç</i>) in the body of a word or between two voiceless consonants is very obscure (<i>ə</i>) and sometimes absolutely silent: <i>certeza</i> 'certainty,' <i>feroz</i> 'fierce,' <i>inferior</i>, <i>merecer</i> 'to deserve,' <i>oferecer</i> 'to offer,' <i>parecer</i> 'to appear,' <i>perigo</i> 'danger,' <i>pessoa</i> 'person,' <i>querer</i> 'to wish,' <i>repetir</i> 'to repeat,' <i>superior</i>, <i>verão</i> 'summer,' except in the future and conditional of verbs: <i>teria</i> 'he would have.' <i>verão</i> 'they will see.' The prefixes <i>per-</i> and <i>pre-</i> are confused: <i>perdição</i> 'perdition' and <i>predição</i> 'prediction' are pronounced alike.</p> <p>Before a palatal, <i>ch</i>, <i>x</i>, <i>s</i> followed by a consonant or final, <i>g</i> followed by <i>e</i> or <i>i</i>, <i>j</i>, <i>lh</i>, and <i>nh</i>:</p>	<p>?</p>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p><i>escuro</i> 'dark,' <i>espanhol</i>, 'Spanish,' <i>espôso</i> 'husband,' <i>estar</i> 'to be,' <i>fechar</i> 'to close,' <i>gessoso</i> 'abounding in plaster,' <i>melhor</i> 'better,' <i>mexer</i> 'to move,' <i>restaurante</i> 'restaurant,' <i>senhor</i> 'sir,' <i>teijolo</i> 'brick,' <i>vegetal</i> 'plant.'</p> <p>Before <i>çs</i>, <i>ct</i>, <i>gn</i>, <i>ps</i>, <i>pt</i>, <i>x</i> (= <i>ks</i>), and <i>l</i> final or plus a consonant: <i>beldade</i> 'beauty,' <i>excepção</i> 'exception,' <i>exceptuar</i> 'to except,' <i>afecção</i> 'affection,' <i>amável</i> 'lovable,' <i>defectivo</i> 'defective,' <i>flexão</i> 'flexion,' <i>impregnar</i> 'to fecundate.' For initial <i>ex-</i>, see p. 52.</p> <p>In some learned words pretonic <i>e</i> is pronounced open: <i>pletora</i> 'plethora,' <i>retórica</i> 'rhetoric.'</p> <p>Final <i>e</i>, especially after a voiceless consonant, is pronounced <i>ə</i> or is almost, if not entirely, silent: <i>leite</i> 'milk,' <i>sete</i> 'seven,' <i>pode dizer-se</i> 'it may be said.'</p> <p>If the following word begins with an accented vowel, final <i>e</i> ordinarily becomes <i>ɨ</i>: <i>nove horas</i> (pron. <i>noɨɐras</i>, not <i>noɐɐras</i>) 'nine hours,' <i>porque ele</i> (not <i>porqu' ele</i>) 'because he—,' <i>porque eu</i> (not <i>porqu' eu</i>) 'because I—,'</p>	<p></p> <p>ɛ</p> <p>ə</p> <p>ɨ</p>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p><i>diz que há</i> (not <i>diz qu' há</i>) 'he says there is,' <i>é porque êste homem é bom</i> 'it is because this man is good.'</p> <p>Before an unaccented vowel, final <i>e</i> is generally elided, but not when it would lead to confusion, e.g., <i>treze irmãos</i> 'thirteen brothers,' but <i>três irmãos</i> 'three brothers,' <i>onde está?</i> 'where is it?' <i>ferve a água</i> 'the water boils,' <i>entre a gente</i> 'among the people,' <i>abre a porta</i> 'he opens the door,' <i>noite e dia</i> 'night and day,' <i>grande amigo</i> 'a great friend,' <i>êste inverno</i> 'this winter.' <i>Vinte-e-um</i> 'twenty-one' and <i> vinte-e-dois</i> 'twenty-two' are pronounced <i>vĩntĩũ</i> and <i>vĩntĩdoĩs</i> respectively.</p> <p>In the learned pronunciation the first vowel of the combinations of the preposition <i>por</i> and the definite article, viz., <i>pelo</i>, <i>pela</i>, <i>pelos</i>, <i>pelas</i>, is <i>ɛ</i>, but in ordinary conversation it is <i>ə</i> or completely silent: <i>pelo</i> 'by the' is pronounced <i>pəlu</i> or <i>plu</i>; cf. <i>pélo</i> 'I peel' and <i>pêlo</i> 'hair;' <i>pela</i> (= <i>por la</i>), cf. <i>pêla</i> 'ball;' <i>polo</i></p>	



Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p>(archaic and dialectic for <i>por lo</i>), cf. <i>pólo</i> 'pole.'</p> <p>Generally the final <i>e</i> of the atonic pronouns <i>me</i>, <i>te</i>, <i>se</i>, <i>lhe</i>, and the conjunctions <i>que</i> and <i>se</i> is completely silent before a vowel (cf. 231): <i>se isto fosse verdade</i> 'if that were true.'</p> <p>The preposition <i>de</i> 'of' is combined with the articles, the demonstratives <i>este</i>, <i>esse</i>, <i>aquêle</i>, etc., the personal pronouns <i>êle</i>, <i>êla</i>, and the adverbs <i>onde</i> 'where,' <i>aqui</i> 'here,' <i>aí</i> and <i>ali</i> 'there,' <i>dêle</i>, <i>dêste</i>, <i>daí</i>, etc. (38. c).</p> <p>Before an accented initial vowel, the <i>e</i> of <i>de</i> may or may not be elided but it usually is, in place names: <i>a cidade de Évora</i> 'the city of Evora,' <i>a praça de Elvas</i> 'the square of Elvas,' <i>de água</i> 'of water,' <i>de ouro</i> 'of gold.'</p> <p>Before an unaccented vowel, the <i>e</i> of <i>de</i> becomes <i>z</i> or is silent: <i>faça favor de entrar</i> 'please enter,' <i>sala de espera</i> 'waiting-room,' <i>de outro</i> 'of another,' <i>de um</i> (which is correct) or (more commonly) <i>dum</i> 'of one,' <i>dàquém</i> (= <i>de àquém</i>) 'on this side,' <i>dêlém</i> (= <i>de</i></p>	

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p><i>alêm</i>) 'on that side.' For the pronunciation of <i>-em</i>, see 17, d. e.</p> <p>When <i>de</i> is combined with the article in the feminine singular, there is a contraction of final <i>v</i> + initial <i>v</i> of the following word to <i>q</i>: <i>da avenida</i> [<i>davniðv</i>] 'of the avenue,' <i>da associação</i> 'of the association' (38. c).</p> <p>The vowel of <i>de</i> is not elided if the word depending on it is the subject of an infinitive phrase (230. b): <i>a casa deles</i> 'their house,' but <i>no caso de eles não irem</i> 'in case they should not go,' <i>o motivo de os</i> (not <i>dos</i>) <i>amigos o abandonarem</i> 'the reason why his friends abandoned him.'</p> <p>Initial <i>e</i> before a nasal (<i>em</i>, <i>en</i>) is pronounced <i>ẽ</i> or <i>ĩ</i>: <i>ensinar</i> 'to teach,' <i>entrei</i> 'I entered.'</p> <p>Final <i>-em</i>, <i>-ens</i>: <i>viagem</i> 'travel,' pl. <i>viagens</i>, <i>ontem</i> 'yesterday.'</p> <p>Between voiceless consonants: <i>pequeno</i> 'little,' <i>atapetar</i> 'to carpet.'</p>	
é	Tonic	<p><i>auréola</i> 'aureole,' <i>café</i> 'coffee,' <i>débil</i> 'weak,' <i>ébrio</i> 'intoxicated,' <i>pé</i> 'foot,' <i>médico</i> 'physician,' <i>é</i> 'is.'</p>



Portuguese		Pronun- ciation
		consonant, only the last <i>i</i> , tonic or atonic, is pronounced as such; the others are reduced to ə: <i>civil</i> , <i>dividir</i> 'to divide,' <i>Filipe</i> 'Philip,' <i>limite</i> 'boundary,' <i>militar</i> 'military,' <i>ministro</i> 'minister,' <i>visita</i> 'visit,' <i>vizinho</i> 'neighbor.' But if one of these atonic <i>i</i> 's comes from an original tonic <i>i</i> , the tendency is to preserve it: <i>difícilimo</i> ( <i>difícil</i> ) 'most difficult,' <i>peritíssimo</i> ( <i>perito</i> ) 'most skillful.'
<i>i</i>	Tonic	Before a consonant, other than a nasal, in the same syllable: <i>líquido</i> 'liquid,' <i>difícil</i> , 'difficult.'
		Before a nasal in the same syllable: <i>ímprobo</i> 'wicked,' <i>íntimo</i> 'intimate.'
<i>ĩ</i>	Atonic	Not forming a diphthong with a preceding vowel: <i>paísagem</i> 'landscape (picture)' <i>saímento</i> 'sally' 'sortie.'
<i>o</i>	Tonic	Usually open, especially if the final vowel is not <i>o</i> ; for example, in the feminine singular and plural, both genders, of the adjectival suffix <i>-oso</i> : <i>formoso</i> 'beautiful,' fem. sing. <i>formosa</i> , pl. masc. <i>formosos</i> , fem. <i>formosas</i> ; also in the plural of many nouns



Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p>tions ending in <i>-o</i>, <i>-a</i>, <i>-am</i> (412. a): <i>como</i> 'I eat.'</p> <p>But open, when ending in <i>-e</i> or <i>-em</i>: <i>foge</i> 'flees,' <i>correm</i> 'they run.'</p> <p>Generally before final <i>l</i> or a consonant (but not before <i>lh</i>): <i>anzol</i> 'fish-hook,' <i>farol</i> 'lantern,' <i>lençol</i> 'sheet,' <i>sol</i> 'sun,' <i>solta</i> 'unties,' <i>solto</i> 'I loosen;' but <i>solto</i>, <i>solta</i> 'free' (adj.).</p> <p>In the ending <i>-oa</i>: <i>Lisboa</i> 'Lisbon,' <i>loa</i> 'laudatory song,' <i>boa</i> 'good' (popularly in Lisbon and anciently <i>bõa</i>).</p> <p>Before a nasal in the same syllable: <i>ponte</i> 'bridge,' <i>bom</i> 'good,' <i>ontem</i> 'yesterday,' <i>monte</i> 'mountain,' <i>fonte</i> 'fountain.'</p>	<p>ø</p> <p>ø</p> <p>ø</p>
Atonic	<p>Initial <i>o</i> is close or pronounced <i>u</i> in <i>ocupar</i> 'to occupy,' but open in literary words like <i>oração</i> 'speech,' <i>oráculo</i> 'oracle,' <i>orador</i> 'orator,' <i>hospedar</i> 'to entertain as a guest.'</p> <p>In initial <i>ob-</i> followed by a consonant it is close: <i>objectar</i> 'to object,' <i>objecto</i> 'object,' <i>obliquo</i> 'oblique,' <i>oblongo</i> 'oblong,' <i>obrar</i> 'to work,' <i>obsceno</i> 'obscene,' <i>obsequio</i> 'compliance,' <i>obstáculo</i> 'ob-</p>	<p>ø</p>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p>stacle,' <i>obstruir</i> 'to obstruct,' <i>obter</i> 'to obtain.'</p> <p>Post-tonic <i>o</i> in a final syllable ending in <i>l</i> or <i>r</i> is open: <i>álcool</i> (110. a) 'alcohol,' <i>júnior</i>, <i>sénior</i>, <i>sóror</i> (ordinarily <i>spror</i> or <i>spr</i>) 'sister.'</p> <p>Final <i>o</i> is pronounced as an indistinct <i>u</i>, and, when preceded by a voiceless consonant, is almost silent: <i>copo</i> 'cup,' <i>pato</i> 'duck,' <i>romano</i> 'Roman.'</p> <p>In <i>franco-prussiano</i>, <i>anglo-saxão</i>, etc., the final <i>o</i> of the first word of the compound is open.</p> <p>In enclitic and proclitic words and before a consonant, except <i>l</i> or a nasal in the same syllable: <i>o</i> 'the,' <i>do</i>, <i>no</i>, <i>nos</i>, <i>vos</i>, <i>to</i>, <i>lho</i>, etc., <i>formoso</i> 'beautiful,' <i>portão</i> 'gate,' <i>árvore</i> 'tree,' <i>português</i> 'Portuguese,' <i>portanto</i> 'therefore,' <i>porquê?</i> 'why?' <i>corrina</i> 'curtain,' <i>droguista</i> 'druggist,' <i>loção</i> 'lotion,' <i>coleção</i> 'collection,' <i>limonada</i> 'lemonade,' <i>chocolate</i> 'chocolate,' <i>fonógrafo</i> 'phonograph,' <i>romã</i> 'pomegranate,' <i>coroa</i> (<i>crôa</i>) 'crown,' <i>copinho</i> 'little glass,'</p>	<p><i>ø</i></p> <p><i>u</i></p> <p><i>ø</i></p> <p><i>u</i></p>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
ó	Tonic	<i>informar</i> 'to inform,' <i>posar</i> 'to place.'
		Before <i>l</i> in the same syllable: <i>voltar</i> 'to turn.'
		Before a nasal in the same syllable: <i>mondar</i> 'to clean,' <i>romper</i> 'to break.'
	Tonic	In Brazil every unaccented <i>o</i> is popularly pronounced <i>ø</i> .
		Before a consonant other than a nasal in the same syllable: <i>móveis</i> 'furniture' <i>só</i> (< <i>soo</i> < <i>solu</i> ) 'alone.'
	Atonic	<i>côr</i> 'color' (cf. <i>cqr</i> 'heart'), <i>fôrma</i> 'mould' (cf. <i>fqrma</i> 'shape'), <i>pôr</i> 'to put.'
ø		Before a nasal in the same syllable: <i>vergôntea</i> 'branch' 'young shoot.'
u	Tonic	<i>dôninha</i> 'weasel;' cf. <i>doninha</i> (diminutive of <i>dona</i> 'lady').
u	Tonic	<i>chuva</i> 'rain,' <i>lua</i> 'moon,' <i>rua</i> 'street.'
		Before a nasal in the same syllable: <i>um</i> 'one,' pl. <i>uns</i> , <i>mundo</i> 'world,' <i>nunca</i> 'never,' <i>atum</i> 'tunny.'
u	Atonic	In the combinations - <i>gue</i> , - <i>gui</i> , - <i>que</i> , - <i>qui</i> , the <i>u</i> is silent in most words: <i>aqui</i> 'here,' <i>guerra</i> 'war.'



Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p>As the unaccented element of a diphthong: <i>água</i> 'water,' <i>quatro</i> 'four,' <i>mútuo</i> 'mutual,' <i>língua</i> 'tongue' 'language.'</p> <p>There is a popular tendency to suppress the semi-vowel <i>ũ</i> in <i>qua-</i> and <i>quo-</i> (15. m). <i>Quota</i> and <i>cota</i> 'share' are used side by side both in spelling and pronunciation. <i>Quôciente</i> (<i>côciente</i>) 'quotient' and <i>quotidiano</i> (<i>colidiano</i>) 'daily' are popularly pronounced <i>co-</i>; and <i>quaderno</i> 'copy-book' and <i>quatorze</i> 'fourteen' are now spelled and pronounced <i>caderno</i> and <i>catorze</i>.</p>	<i>ũ</i>
ú	Tonic <i>cúmulo</i> 'heap,' <i>fúnebre</i> 'funereal,' <i>único</i> 'only.'	<i>ũ</i>
ü	<p>Atonic If unaccented <i>u</i> is to be pronounced in the groups <i>gu-</i>, <i>qu-</i>, before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i>, it bears the diæresis (43. 2): <i>conseqüente</i> 'consequent,' <i>eqüestre</i> 'equestrian,' <i>eqüidade</i> 'justice,' <i>frequente</i> 'frequent.'</p> <p>Hints on the pronunciation of <i>u</i>:</p> <p>(1) When <i>u</i> appears in the derivative of a word without <i>u</i>, it is not pronounced: <i>vaca</i> 'cow,'</p>	<i>ü</i>

Portuguese		Pronunciation
	<p><i>vaqueiro</i> 'herdsman,' <i>pagar</i> 'to pay,' <i>pague</i> 'let him pay.'</p> <p>(2) If the word is a learned one and not yet popularized, <i>u</i> is pronounced: <i>aquoso</i> 'watery,' <i>delinqüente</i> 'delinquent,' <i>eloqüência</i> 'eloquence,' <i>iníquo</i> 'wicked,' <i>oblíquo</i> 'oblique,' <i>propínquo</i> 'near,' <i>sanguinoso</i> 'bloody;' if popular, the tendency is not to pronounce it: <i>distinguir</i> 'to distinguish,' <i>extinguir</i> 'to extinguish,' <i>quente</i> 'hot,' <i>sangue</i> 'blood.'</p> <p>Generally speaking, between <i>g</i> and <i>a</i> or <i>o</i>, <i>u</i> is pronounced: <i>ambíguo</i> 'ambiguous,' <i>contíguo</i> 'contiguous,' <i>exíguo</i> 'small,' <i>guarda</i> 'guard;' but not between <i>g</i> and <i>e</i> or <i>i</i>: <i>guerra</i> 'war,' <i>guisa</i> 'manner.'</p> <p>Between <i>q</i> and <i>a</i>, <i>u</i> is almost always pronounced: <i>quadro</i> 'picture,' <i>qual</i> 'which;' but not between <i>q</i> and <i>e</i> or <i>i</i>: <i>queda</i> 'slope,' <i>aqui</i> 'here,' <i>fique</i> 'remain,' <i>questão</i> 'question,' except in learned words like <i>qüercina</i> 'quercitine' and <i>qüinqüefólio</i>.</p>	

## ORAL DIPHTHONGS

8. A diphthong is a combination of two adjacent vowels which are pronounced in a single syllable and one of which has the value of a semi-vowel.

9. A. Diphthongs with atonic *i* as the second element:

(a) *ai* (formerly *ae*) is pronounced *qĩ* when tonic and *qĩ* when atonic: *pai* 'father.' The adverb *mais* 'more' is correctly pronounced *mqĩs*; *cai* 'falls,' *vai* 'goes,' *traição* 'treason.'

(b) *éi* is pronounced *ẽĩ* in the plural of nouns and adjectives in *-el*: *anéis* 'rings,' *batéis* 'little boats,' *fiéis* 'faithful,' *lauréis* 'laurels,' *papéis* 'papers.'

*ei* is pronounced *ẽĩ*: *lei* 'law,' *rei* 'king,' *quereis* 'you wish,' *seis* 'six.'

Note: In the centre of Portugal (between Lisbon and Coimbra) *ei* is pronounced *qĩ*: *beijo* 'kiss,' *feito* 'done,' *leilão* 'auction,' *leite* 'milk,' *peito* 'breast,' *queixa* 'complaint,' and the terminations *-eiro* and *-eira*: *caveira* 'skull,' *padeiro* 'baker,' but such is not the case with the plurals of words in *-el*: *papel*, pl. *papéis*, 'papers,' *fiel* pl. *fiéis* 'faithful.'

(c). *ói* (formerly *oe*) is pronounced *qĩ*: *herói* 'hero,' *dezoito* 'eighteen,' *jóia* 'jewel.'

*oi* is pronounced *qĩ*: *boi* 'ox,' *noite* 'night,' *oiro* 'gold,' *toiro* 'bull.'

As a rule *oi* has close *o*. See *ou*, *oi*, (10. e).

(d) *ui* is pronounced *uĩ*: *fluido* 'fluid,' *fortuito* 'fortuitous.'

10. B. Diphthongs with atonic *u* as the second element:

(a) *au* (formerly *ao*) is pronounced *qũ*: *causa* 'cause,'

*mau* 'bad,' *fraude* 'fraud,' *pau* 'wood,' *Paulo* 'Paul,' *pausa* 'pause.'

For *ao(s)* 'to the,' see 15. d.

(b) *éu* (formerly *eo*) is pronounced *ẽũ*: *chapéu* 'hat,' *céu* 'sky.'

*eu* is pronounced *ẽũ*: *eu* 'I,' *liceu* 'lyceum,' *meu* 'my.'

*Deus* 'God' is pronounced *dẽũs*; *dê-os* 'let him give them' is pronounced *dẽ-ũs* or *dẽ-ũf*, and *deu-os* 'he gave them,' *dẽũ-ũf*.

(c) *iu* is pronounced *ĩũ*: *fugiu* 'he fled,' *mentiu* 'he lied,' *partiu* 'he divided.'

In ordinary speech no difference is made between *viu* 'he saw' and *viu-o* 'he saw him (it)'; both are pronounced *vĩu*, properly *vĩũu*.

(d) In Lisbon *io* is pronounced *iũ*: *fio* 'thread,' *frio* 'cold,' *rio* 'river,' *tio* 'uncle.' Elsewhere *io* is pronounced *iũu*.

(e) *ou* is pronounced *õũ* (with a faint *ũ*) in parts of the North of Portugal, but generally *o* prevails, for example, in Lisbon: *sou* 'I am,' *tirou* 'he drew.'

In many words, especially before *r* and *s*, it is indifferent whether we write *ou* or *oi* and pronounce *o(ũ)* or *õĩ*; both spellings and pronunciations are correct: *couro*, *coiro* 'hide,' *cousa*, *coisa* 'thing,' *louro*, *loiro* 'fair' 'blond,' *mouro*, *moiro* 'Moorish,' *noute*, *noite* 'night,' *ouro*, *oiro* 'gold,' *tesouro*, *tesoiro* 'treasure,' *touro*, *toiro* 'bull.'

In these words *ou* is the more literary form, *oi* the more national and the one commonly used in familiar speech.

Generally speaking, in the North of Portugal (province of Minho) the pronunciation is rather *õũ*; in the other provinces, especially Beira and including Lisbon, it is *õĩ*, and in Southern Portugal and Brazil, *o*. *Noite* is now commoner than *noute*. *Louco* 'mad,' *louvqr* 'to praise,' *mouco* 'deaf,' *ouiro* 'other,' *ouvir* 'to hear,' *ourives* 'goldsmith,' *ou* 'or,' *pouco* 'little,' *roubo* 'theft,' and the third person singular



12. D. Diphthongs with atonic *o* or *u* as the first element:

- (a) *ua, oa* is pronounced { *ũq*, when tonic: *povoqr* 'to people,' *voqr* 'to fly.'
- (b) *ue, oe* is pronounced { *ũq*, when atonic: *quarenta* 'forty.'
- (c) *ui, oi* is pronounced { *ũe*, *ũe*, when tonic: *sueſto* 'rest,' *moeda* 'coin' 'money,' *lingüeta* 'bolt,' *piruêta* 'pirouette,' *poema* 'poem.'
- (d) *ui, oi* is pronounced { *ũi*, when atonic: *duelista* 'duelist,' *poemeto* 'poem.'
- (e) *ui, oi* is pronounced { *ũi*: *moinho* 'mill,' *ruído* 'noise.'

13. E. The following combinations, in which the second element is the accented one, do not form diphthongs:

- cair* 'to fall,' *caí* 'he fell,' *país* 'country.'
- alaúde* 'lute,' *ataúde* 'coffin,' *paúl* 'swamp,' *saúde* 'health.'
- deísta* 'deist.'
- druidico* 'druidic.'
- heroína* 'heroine,' *doído* (past participle of *doer* 'to ache').
- argüir* 'to accuse' 'argue.'
- ciúme* 'jealousy.'

#### TRIPHTHONGS

14. A triphthong is a group of three vowels of which the middle vowel is usually tonic.

- iai* is pronounced *yai*: *leais* (pl. of *leal*) 'true,' *saiais*, 2nd pers. pl. pres. subj. of *sair* 'to go out.'

*iéi* is pronounced *ɨɛ̃*: *fiéis* (pl. of *fiel*) 'faithful.'

*iei* is pronounced *ɨɛ̃*, *ɨɛ̃i* (9. b. Note): *fiéis*, from *fiar* 'to trust.'

*iau* is pronounced *ɨũ*: *miau*, the crying of cats.

*oei* is pronounced *ũɛ̃*, *ũɛ̃i* (9. b. Note): *poeira* 'dust.'

*uai* is pronounced *ũɔ̃*: *iguais* (pl. of *igual* 'equal'), *Paraguai*.

In the following the first vowel has the stress:

*aia* is pronounced *ɔ̃iɐ*: *saias*, 2nd pers. sing. pres. subj. of *sair* 'to go out.'

*eia* is pronounced *ɛ̃ɐ*: *ceia* 'supper.'

*eio* is pronounced *ɛ̃ũ*, *ɔ̃ũ* (9. b. Note): *passeio* 'promenade.'

## 15. NOTES ON THE ORAL VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS

(a) The open vowels are more open than the corresponding vowels in French.

(b) There is no sharp distinction between long and short vowels in Portuguese. The vowels are rather of medium length and vary slightly according to their position in the word. Though vowels are somewhat longer when accented than when atonic, there are no really long vowels, except when two or more identical vowels, final and initial (especially if the latter is atonic), come together; the resulting vowel is usually open. Many, however, pronounce *o+o* with *ɔ* instead and in Coimbra with *u*:

*tôdo o dia* (pron. *tɔd ɔ dia* or *tod u dia*) 'all the day,'  
*tôdo o tempo* (pron. *tɔd ɔ tempo* or *tod u tempo*) 'all the time,'  
*faca aguda* 'a sharp knife,' *minha alma* 'my soul,'  
*a aluna* 'the pupil,' *porta aberta* 'an open door,' *semente escolhida* 'selected seed,' *minha avó* 'my grandmother,'  
*a avó* (or, more commonly in colloquial speech, *qvó*) 'the grandmother,' *falta água* [*faltɐ ɔgũɐ*] 'water fails,' but with

lengthened *a* in *falta a água* [falta qgũa] 'the water fails,' *deixa-a a ela* [dɛʃɨfɐ ə ɛlɐ] 'leave it to her,' *como o orvalho* 'like the dew' (21).

(c) The preposition *a* 'to,' when combined with the feminine definite article *a(s)*, is written *à(s)* (some write *á(s)*) and pronounced *q(s)*; combined with the demonstrative pronoun *aquêle* it becomes *àquêle*: *vai à missa* 'he goes to Mass,' *à filha* 'to the girl,' *dirigiu-se às irmãs* 'he applied to the sisters.' If the vowels are dissimilar there may be hiatus: *há uma carta* 'there is a letter,' *fica o homem* [fika qmɛ] 'the man remains' (f. *infra*).

(d) Combined with the preposition *a* 'to,' the masculine definite article becomes *ao(s)*, which is pronounced *qũ(s)* or *q(s)* in ordinary cultured conversation: *fui ao Porto* 'I went to Oporto,' *ir ao campo* 'to go to the country,' *contrário aos vícios* 'contrary to the vices.'

(e) In conversation *para* 'for' 'to' (p. 9) is ordinarily contracted with the masculine article to *prq*, and with the feminine article to *prq*: *para o jardim* 'to the garden,' *para o diabo* 'to the devil,' *para o homem* 'for the man,' *para o sul* 'to the south,' *para a cama* 'to the bed,' *para a Índia* 'to India.' For the pronunciation of *pelo*, etc., see p. 15.

(f) In the North of Portugal, as also in the *Gallego*, but not in the literary language, hiatus between oral vowels is avoided by the insertion in the pronunciation (but not in the writing) of the semi-vowel *ĩ*: *a (ĩ) água* 'the water,' *a (ĩ) alma* 'the soul,' *há (ĩ) anos* 'it is some years' 'some years ago,' *é (ĩ) um* 'it is one,' *é (ĩ) ela* 'it is she,' *é (ĩ) o mesmo* 'it is the same,' *vai a (ĩ) aula* 'he is going to class,' *minha (ĩ) alma* 'my soul.'



The popular pronunciation of *tio* 'uncle' and *tia* 'aunt' is *ti* when proclitic; *ti* *Zé* 'Uncle Joe,' *ti* *Maria* 'Aunt Mary.' Complete disappearance of final *o* occurs only in a few combinations in which the second element begins with a vowel: *Portalegre*, *Sant'Amaro*, *Santiago*. In familiar speech *e* is frequently not pronounced in a plural ending after *r*: *flôres* 'flowers.'

(g) Many contractions common in the classic authors are still in use, especially in verse: *estoutro* (for *êste outro*), *essoutro* (for *êsse outro*), *aqueloutro* (for *aquele outro*), *atêgora* (for *até agora*).

(h) Every oral vowel followed in the same syllable by *l* or *ñ* becomes gutturalized: *mal* 'evil,' *mêl* 'honey,' *mil* 'thousand,' *spl* 'sun.'

(i) As a rule, final *r* opens the vowel of a final unaccented syllable: *cadáver*, *carácter*, *sénior*.

(j) As a rule, accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, before *m* or *n*, is close, including the terminations *-ama*, *-ema*, *-oma*, *-ana*, *-ena*, *-ona*, *-ano*, *-eno*, *-ono*: *cama* 'bed,' *dama*, *dama* 'lady,' *fêmea* 'female,' *Roma* 'Rome,' *vamos* 'we go,' *ano* 'year,' *gana* 'appetite,' *pena* 'punishment,' *mono* 'monkey,' *cândido* 'white,' *dono* 'master,' *outono* 'autumn,' *scena* 'scene,' *Helena* 'Helen,' *pequeno* 'little.' There are a few exceptions: *crônica* 'chronicle,' *homem* 'man,' *fome* 'hunger,' *tom* 'I take,' etc.

(k) Pretonic *a*, *e*, and *o*, followed by *b*, *c*, or *p* and a consonant, are open (36.a):

*acção* 'action,' *actpr*, *baptizar* 'to baptize,' *facção* 'faction,' *lactífero* 'lactiferous,' *percepção* 'perception,' *redacção* 'editorship,' *secção* 'section,' *tracção* 'drawing.' A pretonic vowel before *cr*, however, is obscure: *acreditar* 'to believe,' *decretar* 'to decree,' *procriar* 'to procreate.' Likewise pretonic *e* and *o* resulting from the contraction of two

vowels are open: *corqdo* (from *colorado*) 'colored,' *esqueçer* (from Vulg. Lat. *\*ex-cadescere*) 'to forget' (519.a).

With these few exceptions, only a tonic vowel can be open.

(l) A final sonant consonant in an accented syllable in pausa may be followed by *ə*, a survival of a post-tonic vowel in the popular pronunciation of Latin (and, by analogy, of non-Latin) words: *Jə*, *Jəb(ə)* 'Job,' *lə(ə)* 'to read,' *mə(ə)* 'bad,' *salvadə(ə)* 'Saviour,' *sabə(ə)* 'to know,' *sə(ə)* 'to be.'

(m) In the popular language, especially in southern Portugal, the tendency is to reduce internal diphthongs (47. b): *còrtəl*, for *quartəl* 'barracks,' *lète*, for *leite* 'milk,' *mancheia* (or *machea*), for *mãocheia* 'handful,' *Lipoldo*, for *Leopoldo*. Cf. *məno* and *məna*, affectionate forms of *irmão* 'brother' and *irmã* 'sister.'

#### NASAL SOUNDS

16. (a) The *til*, originally standing for *n* and still used as a sign of abbreviation (44), expresses nasality and is used only in the final syllable over the nasal vowel *a* and over the vowels *a* and *o* when they form part of the nasal diphthongs *āe*, *āo*, *ōe*. At the same time, unless some other syllable bears a mark of tonic accent, the *til* indicates an accented syllable: *irmão* 'brother,' *irmã* 'sister.'

It is employed by some writers over *u* only in *muito* 'much' 'very' but is not obligatory.

(b) The sound *ā* is written *ā* when final, *am* before *b* and *p*, and *an* in all other cases: *lā* 'wool,' *irmã* 'sister,' *manhā* 'morning,' *campo* 'field,' *cansqr* [*kāsqa*] 'to tire,' *canto* 'song.' This *ā* is prolonged if initial, accented, and preceded by a final *a*: *a ānsia* (pronounced *ə āsĩa*) 'the anguish,' *via-a*

*andqr* (pronounced *vi(i) q ādqr*) 'I saw her going.' *A* is the only vowel whose nasality is shown by the *tīl*.

(c) The sound *ē* is written *em* before *b* and *p*, and *en* in all other cases: *tempo* 'time,' *crença* [*kɹēŋsɐ*] 'opinion,' *vence* [*vēsɐ*] 'conquers,' *entro* 'I enter.'

(d) The sound *ī* (which does not exist in French, for example) is written *im* when final and before *b* and *p*, and *in* in all other cases: *império* 'empire,' *limpar* 'to clean,' *tinta* 'ink.'

Every final *m* making nasality becomes *n* before plural *s*: *fim* 'end,' pl. *fins* [*fɨs*], *homem* 'man,' pl. *homens* [*hõmẽs*]. Atonic *en* and *em* at the beginning of a word also have the sound *ī* or *ē*: *entrar* 'to enter.' Final *im* is pronounced *ī*: *fim* 'end.'

(e) The sound *ō* is written *om* when final and before *b* and *p*, and *on* in all other cases: *tromba* 'trumpet,' *sons*, pl. of *som*. Final *-om* is pronounced *ō*: *bom* (dialectically *bõũ*) 'good,' *som* 'sound.'

(f) The sound *ũ* (which also does not exist in French) is written *um* when final and before *b* and *p*, and *un* in all other cases: *um* 'one,' pl. *uns*, *mundo* 'world,' *umbroso* 'shady.' Final *um* is pronounced *ũ*: *algum* 'some,' *atum* 'tunny.'

(g) In Lisbon, southern Portugal and Brazil, *ā*, *ē*, and *ō* (whether as single vowels or as part of a diphthong) are generally close. In northern Portugal they are often open. *A* which arises from the combination of the feminine singular of the article followed by an initial atonic *a* is open (15, b): *a ansiedade* 'the anxiety.'

#### NASAL DIPHTHONGS AND TRIPHTHONGS

17. (a) *āo* and *am* are both pronounced *ãũ*, with close, dialectically with open, *ā*: *pão* 'bread,' *mão* 'hand,' *irmão* 'brother,' *tão* (*tam*) 'so,' *qamam* 'they love.' *Não* 'not,' when not emphatic, is pronounced *nã* in Lisbon and *nũ* in

the north of Portugal, but this pronunciation is not to be imitated.

(b) The writing *am* is now used instead of *ão* in the final unaccented syllables of verbs: *tirarão* 'they will draw,' but *tiraram* 'they had (or 'have') drawn;' *ão*, however, in the final unaccented syllable of other words: *Cristóvão* 'Christopher,' *Estêvão* 'Stephen,' *órfão(s)* 'orphan(s),' *órgão(s)* 'organ(s),' *sótão(s)* 'cellar(s).' Some writers, however, still prefer the older spelling *am* for the unaccented syllable in all cases: *Estêvam*, *órfam*, *órgam*, etc. (380).

(c) *ão* is written only at the end of a word, except in *mãozinha* 'little hand,' *cãozinho* 'little dog,' and similar diminutives.

(d) *Tão bem* means 'as well:' *a Maria escreve tão bem como o João* 'Mary writes as well as John.' When combined as one word, *também* [tãmbẽĩ], it means 'likewise.'

(e) *ãe*, final *em*, and *en* before final *s* are generally pronounced *ẽĩ* in Portugal, but *ẽĩ* dialectically and in Brazil (52. d): *mãe* (18. c) 'mother,' *bem* 'well,' *sem* 'without,' *bens* 'goods,' *também* 'likewise,' *quem* 'who,' *homem* 'man,' *ontem* 'yesterday,' *bēbem* 'they drink,' *nem* 'neither:' except Lat. *ibidem*, *item*, and *idem*, where *em* is pronounced *ẽũ*.

In southern Portugal the third person plural *te(e)m* (*tēm*) 'they have' and *ve(e)m* (*vēm*) 'they come' are pronounced *tẽĩĩĩ* and *vẽĩĩĩ*, but in ordinary conversation they are everywhere pronounced identically with the singular *tẽĩ* and *vẽĩ*.

The preposition *em* 'in' is almost invariably pronounced *ĩ* in everyday speech (p. 12).

The prefix *em* is so spelled before all consonants, where it has preserved its prepositive character: *emfim* 'at last,' *emquanto* 'while,' *emtanto* 'meanwhile.' *Bem* [bẽĩ] 'well'

and *sem* [sɐ̃] 'without,' in composition, also preserve the spelling with *m*: *bemdizer* 'to bless,' *bemfalante* 'well-spoken,' *bemfeitor* 'benefactor,' *semsabor* 'insipid.'

(f) *õe* is pronounced ɔ̃: *lições* 'readings,' *limões* 'lemons,' *põe* 'puts,' *sermões* 'sermons.' In *põem* 'they put,' both vowels are nasal [pɔ̃ĩɔ̃].

(g) *ũi* is pronounced ũĩ and is found only in *multo* (pronounced *mũĩnto*, vulgarly *munto*, sometimes but unnecessarily written *mũito*) 'very.' Even up to the time of Camões, as still in a few places, it had not the nasal sound. Its reduced and unemphatic form is *mui* [mũĩ] (18. c, 654. j).

(h) *ẽão* and *ião* are pronounced ɨãũ: *leão* 'lion,' *reunião* 'reunion.'

(i) *eões* is pronounced ɨɔ̃: *leões* 'lions.'

#### NOTES ON THE NASAL VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS

18. (a) Nasality is weaker in Portuguese than in French and is more pronounced in the north than in the south of the country. Unlike French, nasality in Portuguese is not accompanied by gutturalization: the timbre of the nasalized vowel remains unchanged and, furthermore, whether within a word or in liaison, the *m* or *n* not only nasalizes a preceding vowel but remains slightly audible when it is not in pausa and is followed by *p* or *b*, or *t*, *d*, *c*, or *g*, respectively, as in the pronunciation of the word *Angora*:

*campo* 'field,' *canta* 'sings,' *lindo* 'beautiful,' *lã[n]* *tinta* 'dyed wool,' *lã[m]* *branca* 'white wool,' *mãe bõa* (popularly *mãĩ[m]* *bõa*) 'good mother,' *bem preparado* 'well prepared,' *bem-criado* 'well-bred.'

Before other consonants *m* and *n* lose their consonantal force: *honra* (ɔ̃ɐv) 'honor,' *tenso* [tẽsu] 'tense' 'tight.'

In the nasal diphthongs (17) the nasalization embraces both elements, the tonic element of course predominating.

(b) If the following word begins with a vowel, there is hiatus between it and a preceding final nasal vowel or diphthong: *bem-escrito* 'well written.'

(c) The nasality in *mãe* 'mother,' *muito* 'very' and *mim* (personal pronoun) is due to the influence of the initial *m*.

(d) Besides the nasal timbre which all vowels have when they stand before *m* or *n* in the same syllable, when tonic and intervocalic they generally receive some slight nasal resonance from *m* or *n* of the following syllable: *ga-mo* 'fallow deer,' *ge-mo* 'I groan;' except *a* in the first person plural preterite of the first conjugation: *amámos* 'we loved,' *amamos* 'we love.'

## 19. CONSONANTS

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
<i>b</i>	Initial and medial after consonants, except <i>s</i> : <i>boca</i> 'mouth,' <i>ambos</i> 'both.' For dialectic <i>b</i> and <i>v</i> , see 47. d. Between vowels, before <i>r</i> or <i>l</i> , and after <i>s</i> : <i>abrir</i> 'to open,' <i>beber</i> 'to drink,' <i>abrunho</i> 'plum,' <i>esbelto</i> 'slender,' <i>Lisboa</i> 'Lisbon,' <i>pobre</i> 'poor,' <i>ribeiro</i> 'brook,' <i>sublime</i> 'sublime.'	<i>ɔ</i>  <i>ʃ</i>
	Also under the same conditions in liaison: <i>a bacia</i> 'the basin,' <i>o brinco</i> 'the toy,' <i>o banho baptismal</i> 'the baptismal bath.'	

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>In formal speech, but not in rapid natural reading and conversation, after the prefix <i>sub</i> before a consonant, and in general whenever two consonants, one a surd and the other a sonant, come together, the sound <i>ə</i> is inserted, and the <i>b</i>, which then becomes intervocalic, is pronounced <i>ɸ</i>: <i>ob(ə)servar</i> 'to observe,' <i>ob(ə)jecto</i> 'object,' <i>ob(ə)ter</i> 'to obtain,' <i>sub(ə)-cutâneo</i> 'subcutaneous,' <i>sub(ə)stância</i> 'substance,' <i>súb(ə)dito</i> 'subjected,' <i>sub(ə)scriver</i> 'to subscribe,' <i>sub(ə)-terrâneo</i> 'subterranean.' But the people do not pronounce the <i>b</i> in such cases: <i>su(b)til</i> (archaic <i>solil</i>) 'subtile.'</p> <p><i>c</i> Before <i>a</i>, <i>o</i>, <i>u</i>, or a consonant: <i>cqr</i> 'heart,' <i>claro</i> 'clear,' <i>casa</i> 'house,' <i>acúleo</i> 'thorn,' <i>cravo</i> 'pink.'</p> <p>Before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i>: <i>céu</i> 'heaven,' <i>fácil</i> 'easy.'</p> <p>Before <i>ç</i> or <i>t</i>, <i>c</i> is generally silent and is often omitted in spelling.</p> <p>It is silent in <i>acção</i> 'action,' <i>acto</i> 'act,' <i>actor</i>, <i>anecdota</i> 'anecdote,' <i>carácter</i> 'character,' <i>condutor</i>, <i>direcção</i> 'direction,' <i>directo</i> 'direct,' <i>eléctrico</i> 'electric,' <i>teto</i> 'roof,' <i>tracção</i> 'traction,' etc. This <i>c</i>, when silent before <i>t</i>, makes a preceding <i>a</i>, <i>e</i>, or <i>o</i> open.</p>	<p><i>ɸ</i></p> <p><i>k</i></p> <p><i>s</i></p>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>But it is pronounced in <i>característico</i> 'characteristic,' <i>caracterizar</i> 'to characterize,' <i>convicção</i> 'conviction,' <i>conspêcto</i> 'presence,' <i>contacto</i> 'contact,' <i>convicto</i> 'convicted,' <i>derelicto</i> 'abandoned,' <i>evicção</i> 'eviction,' <i>estupefacto</i> 'stupified,' <i>facto</i> 'fact,' <i>fricção</i> 'friction,' <i>impacto</i> 'impacted,' <i>infecto</i> 'infected,' <i>intelecção</i> 'understanding,' <i>intelecto</i> 'intellect,' <i>octogésimo</i> 'eightieth,' <i>pacto</i> 'contract,' <i>secção</i> 'section,' etc.</p>	k
ç	<p>Only before <i>a</i>, <i>o</i>, and <i>u</i>: <i>maça</i> 'club,' <i>faço</i> 'I do,' <i>açúcar</i> 'sugar.'</p>	s
ch	<p>Before <i>a</i>, <i>o</i>, and <i>u</i>: <i>chave</i> 'key,' <i>chá</i> 'tea,' <i>chove</i> 'it rains,' <i>chuva</i> 'rain,' <i>cacho</i> 'cluster.'</p> <p>Before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> it is pronounced much more to the front of the mouth, the blade of the tongue approaching the teeth-rim: <i>chita</i> 'calico,' <i>chinela</i> 'slipper,' <i>feche</i> 'let him close.'</p>	ʃ
	<p>In the north of Portugal <i>ʃ</i> is pronounced with a slight introductory <i>t</i>, almost as in English 'church,' but this peculiarity is not to be imitated.</p> <p>In words of Greek origin it is now written <i>c</i> before <i>a</i>, <i>o</i>, and <i>u</i>, and <i>qu</i> before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i>; <i>arquipélago</i> 'archipelago,' <i>arquitecto</i> 'architect,' <i>C(h)risto</i></p>	k



Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
<p><i>d</i></p>	<p>'Christ,' <i>monarc(h)a</i> 'monarch,' <i>monarquia</i> 'monarchy,' <i>química</i> (<i>chímica</i>) 'chemistry,' <i>esquema</i> (<i>schema</i>) 'scheme,' <i>paróquia</i> 'parish.'</p> <p>Initial and medial after <i>l</i>, <i>n</i>, or <i>r</i>: <i>Deus</i> 'God,' <i>grande</i> 'great,' <i>bondade</i> 'goodness,' <i>farda</i> 'uniform.'</p> <p>In the group <i>dv</i>, an <i>ə</i> is inserted between the two consonants, but not in rapid natural reading or conversation: <i>advento</i> 'advent,' <i>advérbio</i> 'adverb,' <i>adverso</i> 'adverse.'</p>	<p><i>d</i></p>
<p><i>f</i></p>	<p>Between vowels, before most consonants, and in the groups <i>dr</i> and <i>sd</i> between vowels: <i>admirar</i> 'to admire,' <i>amado</i> 'loved,' <i>desde</i> 'since,' <i>nada</i> 'nothing,' <i>pedra</i> 'stone.' Similarly in liaison: <i>a dança</i> 'the dance,' <i>o drama</i> 'the drama,' <i>o dia</i> 'the day.'</p>	<p><i>d</i></p>
<p><i>f</i></p>	<p><i>Fome</i> 'hunger,' <i>frio</i> 'cold,' <i>filho</i> 'son.'</p>	<p><i>f</i></p>
<p><i>g</i></p>	<p>Initial before <i>a</i>, <i>o</i>, <i>u</i>, or a consonant, and medially after <i>l</i>, <i>n</i>, or <i>r</i>: <i>gado</i> 'cattle,' <i>gordo</i> 'fat,' <i>gula</i> 'throat,' <i>grande</i> 'great,' <i>belga</i> 'Belgian,' <i>carga</i> 'load,' <i>longo</i> 'long.'</p>	<p><i>g</i></p>
<p><i>g</i></p>	<p>Before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i>: <i>eleger</i> 'to elect,' <i>gente</i> 'people,' <i>giro</i> 'rotation.'</p>	<p><i>ʒ</i></p>
<p><i>g</i></p>	<p>Between a preceding vowel or <i>s</i> and a following <i>a</i>, <i>o</i>, <i>u</i>, <i>l</i>, or <i>r</i>, <i>g</i> is articu-</p>	<p><i>g</i></p>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>lated less strongly and is pronounced <i>g</i>: <i>manteiga</i> 'butter,' <i>psga</i> 'lizard' 'gecko,' <i>rogqr</i> 'to ask,' <i>lago</i> 'lake,' <i>seguir</i> 'to follow.'</p> <p>Also under the same conditions when in liaison: <i>a gravata</i> 'the neck-tie.'</p> <p>Now omitted in writing as well as in pronunciation before a consonant (chiefly <i>n</i>): <i>assi(g)nqr</i> 'to subscribe,' <i>assi(g)natura</i> 'signature,' <i>au(g)mentqr</i> 'to increase,' <i>I(g)nqs</i> 'Agnes,' <i>I(g)nácio</i> 'Ignatius,' <i>Ma(g)dalena</i> 'Magdalene,' <i>si(g)nql</i> 'signal,' etc.</p> <p>But it is pronounced in <i>benigno</i> 'kind,' <i>digno</i> 'worthy,' <i>dogma</i>, <i>enigma</i>, <i>ignóbil</i>, <i>ignorqr</i> 'to be ignorant,' <i>indigno</i> 'unworthy,' <i>magnánimo</i> 'magnanimous,' <i>maligno</i> 'malignant,' <i>magnífico</i> 'magnificent,' <i>segmento</i> 'segment,' <i>significqr</i> 'to signify,' <i>signo</i> 'sign,' etc.</p> <p>Before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i>: <i>guerra</i> 'war,' <i>guia</i> 'guide,' <i>águia</i> 'eagle,' <i>sangue</i> 'blood' (p. 25).</p> <p>Before <i>a</i>: <i>água</i> 'water,' <i>guardqr</i> 'to guard.'</p> <p>Only initial and always silent: <i>hábito</i> 'dress,' <i>haver</i> 'to have,' <i>homem</i> 'man,' and, according to the official orthography (36.d), never used in the interior</p>	<p><i>g</i></p> <p><i>gũ</i></p>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
<i>j</i>	<p>of a word, (<i>humano</i> 'human,' <i>inumano</i> 'inhuman'), except in the combinations <i>ch</i>, <i>lh</i>, <i>nh</i>, q.v., in which <i>h</i> is merely a sign of palatalization.</p> <p>Before <i>a</i>, <i>o</i>, <i>u</i>: <i>já</i> 'now' 'already,' <i>jóia</i> 'jewel,' <i>jurar</i> 'to swear.' Before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i>, it is still more palatal: <i>laranjeira</i> 'orange-tree,' <i>hoje</i> 'to-day,' <i>jejum</i> 'fast' 'abstinence.'</p>	ʒ
<i>l</i>	<p>Initial, intervocalic, and after a consonant: <i>lá</i> 'there,' <i>falar</i> 'to speak,' <i>claro</i> 'clear,' <i>lua</i> 'moon.'</p> <p>Final, and medial before a consonant, <i>l</i> is dark or heavy, tends to become vocalized and at the same time gutturalizes the preceding vowel: <i>falso</i> 'false,' <i>bolsa</i> 'purse,' <i>faltar</i> 'to be wanting,' <i>caldo</i> 'hot,' <i>sol</i> 'sun,' <i>azul</i> 'blue,' <i>ideal</i> 'ideal,' <i>sál</i> 'salt,' <i>sólto</i> 'free.' Consequently <i>alto</i> 'high' and <i>auto</i> 'act,' <i>mal</i> 'ill' and <i>mau</i> 'bad,' are pronounced almost alike.</p>	l
	<p>Before an initial vowel, final <i>l</i> has the value of two <i>l</i>'s, the first being guttural, the second, dental: <i>sal amargo</i> (pronounced <i>sál lamargo</i>) 'bitter salt.' In such cases, however, some persons pronounce only the second <i>l</i>: [<i>sá lamargo</i>].</p> <p>In pausa, <i>ə</i> is often clearly added to</p>	l

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>final <i>-l</i> in an accented syllable: <i>fatal</i>(ə) 'fatal,' <i>papel</i>(ə) 'paper,' <i>sol</i>(ə) 'sun,' <i>vil</i>(ə) 'vile.'</p>	
<i>lh</i>	<i>Folha</i> 'leaf,' <i>palha</i> 'straw,' <i>filho</i> 'son.'	<i>lh</i>
<i>m</i>	<p>Initial or between vowels: <i>maçã</i> 'apple,' <i>cama</i> 'bed,' <i>mel</i> 'honey,' <i>mesmo</i> 'same.' Elsewhere it nasalizes a preceding vowel (18 a).</p> <p>In the colloquial language and in verse, <i>com</i> 'with' sometimes loses its nasal, when alone, in the forms <i>co-migo</i>, <i>co(m) êle</i>, <i>co(m) ela</i>, etc., and when followed by the definite article: <i>co(m) os filhos</i> 'with the sons.' <i>Comigo</i> is pronounced <i>cumigo</i> in Lisbon. The <i>m</i> of <i>com</i> is also often suppressed in verse before the articles: <i>co'o</i>, <i>co'a</i>, <i>c'um</i>, <i>c'uma</i>.</p> <p>When final or when medial and followed by a consonant, <i>m</i> nasalizes the vowel immediately before it: <i>emmagrecer</i> 'to emaciate,' and at the same time retains its consonantal force before an explosive: <i>campo</i> 'field' (18 a); when final before initial <i>d</i> or <i>t</i>, it is pronounced <i>n</i>: <i>Dom Duarte</i>.</p>	<i>m</i>
<i>mn</i>	<p>Now pronounced and written simply <i>n</i>: <i>alu(m)no</i> 'pupil,' <i>calú(m)nia</i> 'calumny,' <i>sole(m)ne</i> 'solemn,' <i>so(m)-</i></p>	<i>n</i>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
<i>n</i>	<p><i>no</i> 'sleep,' <i>dq(m)no</i> 'damage,' <i>colu(m)na</i> 'column,' <i>conde(m)nqr</i> 'to condemn.'</p> <p>The <i>m</i> is normally pronounced in <i>amnésia</i>, <i>amnistia</i> 'amnesty,' <i>indēme</i> 'indemnified,' <i>indemnizqr</i> 'to indemnify,' <i>omnipotente</i> 'omnipotent,' but only occasionally in <i>gimnásio</i> 'gymnasium' and <i>gimnástica</i> 'gymnastics.'</p> <p>Initial or between vowels: <i>qno</i> 'year,' <i>nqu</i> 'ship,' <i>pēna</i> 'punishment,' and in the final unaccented syllable of a few learned words: <i>abdómen</i>, <i>Éden</i>.</p> <p>When followed by a consonant, it nasalizes the vowel immediately before it: <i>ennegrecer</i> 'to blacken,' and at the same time retains its own consonantal force before an explosive: <i>canto</i> 'corner' (18 a).</p>	<i>n</i>
<i>nh</i>	<p>Before <i>c</i>, <i>g</i>, or <i>qu</i> it is pronounced <i>ŋ</i>: <i>branco</i> 'white,' <i>frango</i> 'chicken.'</p> <p>Found only when medial: <i>banhqr</i> 'to bathe,' <i>senhqr</i> 'sir,' <i>ninho</i> 'nest,' <i>vinho</i> 'wine,' <i>unha</i> 'nail,' <i>sonho</i> 'dream.'</p> <p>In the popular speech <i>nh</i> is commonly but incorrectly pronounced <i>n</i> by assimilation to a preceding <i>n</i>: <i>da-ninho</i> 'hurtful.'</p>	<i>ŋ</i>  <i>nh</i>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
<p><i>p</i></p>	<p>In some words beginning with <i>h</i>, with the prefix <i>an-</i> or <i>in-</i>, the compounds are now written without <i>h</i>: <i>an(h)idro</i> 'anhydrous,' <i>in(h)óspito</i> 'inhospitable,' <i>in(h)umano</i> 'inhuman,' <i>an(h)elo</i> 'breath,' <i>in(h)erente</i> 'inherent' (36.d).</p> <p><i>Pá</i> 'shovel,' <i>pé</i> 'foot.'</p> <p>Before <i>t</i>, <i>ç</i>, and <i>s</i>, <i>p</i> is generally silent and is frequently not written. When <i>p</i>, though silent, is written in such position, it indicates that a preceding unaccented <i>a</i> or <i>o</i> is open.</p> <p><i>P</i> is not pronounced in <i>acepção</i> 'signification,' <i>adopção</i> 'adoption,' <i>adop- tar</i> 'to adopt,' <i>assunção</i> (<i>assumpção</i>) 'assumption,' <i>ba(p)tizar</i> 'to baptize,' <i>ca(p)tivo</i> 'captive,' <i>concepção</i> 'concep- tion,' <i>conscri(p)ção</i> 'conscription,' <i>consumpção</i> (<i>consunção</i>) 'consump- tion,' <i>consumptivo</i> (<i>consuntivo</i>) 'con- sumptive,' <i>corru(p)ção</i> 'corruption,' <i>corru(p)to</i> 'corrupt,' <i>decepção</i> 'decep- tion,' <i>descri(p)ção</i> 'description,' <i>ex- cepção</i> 'exception,' <i>escri(p)to</i> 'written,' <i>excer(p)to</i> 'excerpt,' <i>incorru(p)to</i> 'in- corrupt,' <i>inscri(p)ção</i> 'inscription,' <i>interceptar</i> 'to intercept,' <i>óptica</i> 'op- tics,' <i>ó(p)timo</i> 'best,' <i>percepção</i> 'per- ception,' <i>prescri(p)ção</i> 'prescription,'</p>	<p><i>p</i></p>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p><i>presunção</i> (<i>presumpção</i>) 'presumption,' <i>prompto</i> (now written <i>pronto</i>) 'prompt,' (<i>p</i>)<i>salmo</i> 'psalm,' <i>redenção</i> (<i>redempção</i>) 'redemption,' <i>subscri(p)-ção</i> 'subscription,' <i>transcri(p)ção</i> 'transcription,' etc.</p> <p>But <i>p</i> is pronounced in <i>adaptação</i> 'adaptation,' <i>apto</i> 'apt,' <i>autopsia</i> (<i>autópsia</i>) 'autopsy,' <i>captar</i> 'to captivate,' <i>eclipse</i>, <i>epilepsia</i> 'epilepsy,' <i>núpcias</i> 'nuptials,' <i>opção</i> 'option,' <i>optar</i> 'to choose,' <i>raptar</i> 'to ravish,' <i>réptil</i> 'reptile,' <i>repto</i> 'challenge.' It is also pronounced in Brazil in several words in which it is silent in Portugal, such as <i>optimismo</i> 'optimism,' <i>optimista</i> 'optimist,' <i>perceptível</i> 'perceptible,' <i>recepção</i> 'reception,' <i>scepticismo</i> 'scepticism,' <i>scéptico</i> 'sceptic,' <i>susceptível</i> 'susceptible.' It is pronounced in <i>pneumático</i> 'pneumatic,' <i>psicologia</i> 'psychology,' <i>pseudônimo</i> 'pseudonym,' and in other words of which the first element is <i>pneu-</i>, <i>psico-</i>, or <i>pseudo-</i>.</p>	
<i>ph</i>	<p>Now written <i>f</i>: <i>philosophia</i> (<i>filosofia</i>) 'philosophy,' <i>sophista</i> (<i>sofista</i>) 'sophist.'</p>	<i>f</i>
<i>qu</i>	See under <i>u</i> , p. 25.	
<i>r</i>	Between vowels, final, after a con-	<i>r</i>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>sonant (except <i>l</i>, <i>n</i>, or <i>s</i>), and before a consonant (except <i>l</i> or <i>n</i>): <i>cqr</i> 'heart,' <i>cqra</i> 'face,' <i>pqdra</i> 'stone,' <i>Herculqno</i>, <i>para</i> 'to,' <i>lqrgo</i> 'large,' <i>abrir</i> 'to open,' <i>prqdo</i> 'field.'</p> <p>Final <i>-r</i> (like <i>-l</i>) in pausa may have <i>ə</i> after it in a final accented syllable: <i>flqr(ə)</i> 'flower,' <i>mqr(ə)</i> 'sea,' <i>comqr(ə)</i> 'to eat,' <i>beber(ə)</i> 'to drink,' <i>guqr dizer(ə)</i> 'it means.'</p> <p>Before an initial voiceless consonant final <i>r</i> may fall: <i>trabalhq r tqdo o dia</i> 'to work all the day.'</p> <p>Before a voiceless consonant in the same word it may become unvoiced: <i>qrte</i> 'art,' <i>qrco</i> 'bow,' <i>cqrpo</i> 'body.' It is dropped in the rapid pronunciation of the expression <i>Vpsseme(r)cê</i> (pron. <i>vpsəmæŋ</i>) 'you.'</p> <p>Initial: <i>rqto</i> 'rat,' <i>rei</i> 'king.'</p> <p>Before or after <i>l</i> or <i>n</i>, <i>r</i> is stronger than <i>ɹ</i> and weaker than <i>r</i>: <i>Cqrlos</i> 'Charles,' <i>cqrne</i> 'flesh,' <i>mqlro</i> 'black-bird,' <i>Israqł</i>, <i>honra</i> 'honor.'</p>	
<i>rr</i>	Only intervocalic: <i>cqrro</i> 'cart,' <i>ferro</i> 'iron,' <i>łqrre</i> 'tower,' <i>qrerra</i> 'land.'	<i>r</i>
<i>s</i>	Initial, or medial after a consonant: <i>sqł</i> 'salt,' <i>fqlso</i> 'false,' <i>cansqdo</i> 'tired,' <i>persistqncia</i> 'persistence,' <i>subsıdıo</i>	<i>s</i>



Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>'subsidy,' <i>subsistência</i> 'subsistence,' <i>subsistir</i> 'to subsist.'</p> <p>Except <i>obsequente</i> 'obedient,' <i>obsequiador</i> 'obliging,' <i>obsequiar</i> 'to oblige,' <i>obsequio</i> 'favor,' <i>obsequioso</i> 'obliging,' in which <i>s</i> is preceded by unwritten <i>o</i> and pronounced <i>z</i>: <i>ob(ə)-zəkju</i> (p. 38).</p> <p>Initial <i>sc</i> before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> is pronounced <i>s</i>: <i>scena</i> 'stage,' <i>scéptico</i> 'sceptic,' <i>sciática</i>, <i>scintilar</i> 'to scintillate,' <i>scelerado</i> 'wicked,' <i>sciência</i> 'science,' <i>scetro</i> 'scepter;' and likewise in the interior of a word, in the ordinary pronunciation of <i>crescer</i> 'to increase,' <i>descer</i> 'to descend,' <i>disciplina</i> 'discipline,' <i>florescer</i> 'to flourish,' <i>nascer</i> 'to be born,' <i>nascido</i> 'born,' etc. The so-called palatal pronunciation of <i>s</i> (<i>sc</i>=<i>fs</i>) in these words, is not uncommon.</p> <p>In the prefix <i>des-</i>, <i>s</i> is pronounced <i>f</i>, even though the main word begins with <i>s</i>: <i>desserviço</i> 'disservice.'</p> <p>Between vowels: <i>casa</i> 'house,' <i>rosa</i> 'rose,' <i>os avós</i> 'the ancestors.'</p> <p>In the prefix <i>trans-</i>, <i>s</i> is pronounced <i>z</i> before a vowel: <i>trânsito</i> 'transit,' <i>transacção</i> 'transaction,' <i>transitar</i> 'to pass through;' <i>f</i> before voiceless consonants: <i>transferir</i> 'to transfer;' and <i>z</i></p>	<p><i>z</i></p> <p><i>s</i></p> <p><i>f</i></p> <p><i>z</i></p>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>before voiced consonants: <i>transbordar</i> 'to overflow.'</p> <p>Before a voiceless consonant in a word or in liaison, and when final before a pause: <i>lascas</i> 'fragment' 'splinter,' <i>bastar</i> 'to suffice,' <i>costa</i> 'side,' <i>os pais</i> 'the fathers,' <i>bom tarde</i> 'good evening.'</p> <p>It is still more palatal after <i>e</i> or <i>i</i>: <i>isto</i> 'this,' <i>está</i> 'is.'</p> <p>Before a voiced consonant in a word or in liaison: <i>esbelto</i> 'slender,' <i>os bois</i> 'the oxen,' <i>os membros</i> 'the members,' <i>os velhos</i> 'the old folks.' It is still more palatal after <i>e</i> or <i>i</i>: <i>Lisboa</i> 'Lisbon,' <i>desde</i> 'since,' <i>esmola</i> 'alms,' <i>mesmo</i> 'same.'</p> <p>Among the uneducated, <i>s</i> is frequently silent in the word <i>mesmo</i>: <i>a mesma coisa</i> 'the same thing.'</p> <p>Final <i>s</i> (e.g. in the plural of nouns and adjectives) is pronounced <i>f</i> before a pause and when the following word begins with a voiceless consonant; it is pronounced <i>ʒ</i> when the following word begins with a voiced consonant, and <i>z</i> when it begins with a vowel, thereby forming the initial of a syllable with the vowel of the</p>	<p><i>f</i></p> <p><i>ʒ</i></p>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>following word: <i>as almas</i> 'the souls,' <i>as armas</i> 'the arms.'</p> <p>In colloquial speech, final <i>s</i> of the plural article <i>os</i>, <i>as</i>, is not palatal, but is assimilated to the following initial <i>s</i>, or <i>c</i> before <i>e</i> or <i>i</i>: <i>os sacos</i> 'the bags,' <i>os Celtas</i> 'the Celts,' <i>os senhores</i> 'the gentlemen.' Many, however, pronounce <i>us sacos</i>, <i>us senhores</i>, etc.</p> <p>This <i>s</i> is likewise absorbed in a following initial <i>ch</i>, <i>j</i>, <i>x</i>, and especially <i>r</i>: <i>as chaves</i> [əʃavəs] 'the keys,' <i>os judeus</i> [ũ zuðeuʃ] 'the Jews,' <i>os rapazes</i> 'the boys,' <i>duzentas rosas</i> 'two hundred roses,' <i>os reis</i> 'the kings.' In verbal forms, final <i>s</i> is assimilated to the following consonant of an unaccented object pronoun beginning with <i>l</i>, <i>n</i>, or <i>v</i> (386): <i>compramo-lo</i>, for <i>compramos-lo</i> 'we buy it.'</p>	
ss	<p>Only between vowels: <i>disse</i> 'he said,' <i>missa</i> 'Mass,' <i>osso</i> 'bone,' <i>pressentir</i> 'to anticipate,' <i>ressalva</i> 'declaration' 'exemption,' <i>ressaibo</i> 'bad taste,' <i>ressentir</i> 'to resent,' <i>ressoar</i> 'to resound,' <i>ressurgir</i> 'to arise again,' <i>ressuscitar</i> 'to resuscitate,' <i>ressurreiçāo</i> 'resurrection.'</p>	s
t	<p><i>Tigre</i> 'tiger,' <i>rato</i> 'rat,' <i>visto</i> 'seen.'</p> <p>Before final <i>e</i> and <i>io</i>, it is slightly</p>	t

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	aspirated: <i>bate</i> 'strikes,' <i>pátio</i> 'court.' <i>T</i> is pronounced in <i>ritmo</i> 'rhythm' and <i>logaritmo</i> 'logarithm.'	
	The first <i>t</i> of <i>aritmética</i> 'arithmetic' is still pronounced by many persons, especially in the schools, but the ordinary pronunciation is <i>arimética</i> .	
<i>th</i>	Now written and pronounced <i>t</i> : <i>t(h)eoría</i> 'theory,' <i>simpat(h)ia</i> 'sym- pathy.'	<i>t</i>
<i>v</i>	<i>Vivo</i> 'alive,' <i>vinho</i> 'wine,' <i>chave</i> 'key,' <i>palavra</i> 'word.' For the inter- change of <i>v</i> and <i>b</i> , see 47. d.	<i>v</i>
<i>x</i>	Initial, final, and before or after a consonant: <i>xarope</i> 'syrup,' <i>xelim</i> 'shilling,' <i>fénix</i> 'phoenix,' <i>enxada</i> 'mattock,' <i>enxame</i> 'swarm,' <i>enxuto</i> 'dried,' <i>expresso</i> 'express' 'clear,' <i>mixto</i> 'mixed.'	<i>f</i>
	Intervocalic <i>x</i> is generally pro- nounced <i>f</i> : <i>coxa</i> 'thigh,' <i>faixa</i> 'head- band,' <i>luxo</i> 'luxury,' <i>roxo</i> 'red,' <i>vêxqr</i> 'to vex.' Accompanied by <i>e</i> or <i>i</i> , it is more palatal: <i>caixa</i> 'box,' <i>deixqr</i> 'to leave,' <i>téxtil</i> [ <i>tɛjstɪl</i> , <i>tɛjstɪl</i> ] 'textile.'	<i>f</i>
	In learned words, however, inter- vocalic <i>x</i> is pronounced <i>ks</i> : <i>afixqr</i> 'to fix,' <i>afixo</i> 'affix,' <i>amplexo</i> 'embrace,' <i>anexo</i> 'annex,' <i>conexo</i> 'joined,' <i>con-  vexo</i> 'convex,' <i>crucifixo</i> 'crucifix,' <i>fixo</i>	<i>ks</i>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>'fixed,' <i>fixar</i> 'to fix,' <i>flexão</i> 'flexion,' <i>flexível</i> 'flexible,' <i>fluxo</i> 'flux,' <i>maxila</i> 'jaw,' <i>obnóxico</i> 'obnoxious,' <i>paradoxo</i> 'paradox,' <i>prolixo</i> 'prolix,' <i>sexo</i> 'sex.'</p> <p>When such words become popular, <i>x</i> is pronounced <i>s</i>: <i>apoplexia</i> 'apoplexy,' <i>aproximar</i> 'to approach,' <i>auxílio</i> 'aid,' <i>máximo</i> 'very great,' <i>próximo</i> 'near,' and parts of <i>trazer</i> 'to bring': <i>trouxe</i>, <i>trouxera</i>, <i>trouxesse</i>.</p> <p>In ordinary conversation initial pretonic <i>ex-</i> is pronounced <i>iz-</i> before vowels, and <i>if-</i> before voiceless consonants, but <i>qiz-</i> (or <i>qiz-</i>) and <i>qif-</i> (or <i>qif-</i>) respectively may still be heard in more formal speech and in reading: <i>exatamente</i> 'exactly,' <i>exame</i> 'examination,' <i>examinar</i> 'to examine,' <i>exausto</i> 'exhausted,' <i>exemplar</i> 'exemplar,' <i>exemplo</i> 'example,' <i>exército</i> 'army,' <i>existir</i> 'to exist,' <i>exceto</i> 'except,' <i>excursão</i> 'excursion,' <i>expor</i> 'to expose,' <i>exceder</i> 'to exceed,' <i>excitar</i> 'to excite,' <i>expedir</i> 'to dispatch,' <i>expelir</i> 'to expel,' <i>experiência</i> 'experience,' <i>experimentar</i> 'to experiment,' <i>exclamar</i> 'to exclaim,' <i>explicar</i> 'to explain.'</p>	<p><i>s</i></p>
<p><i>z</i></p>	<p>Initial and between vowels in a word or in liaison: <i>zêlo</i> 'zeal,' <i>fazer</i> 'to do,' <i>doze</i> 'twelve,' <i>a luz é clara</i></p>	<p><i>z</i></p>

Portu- guese		Pronun- ciation
	<p>'the light is bright,' <i>vɔz aguda</i> 'a sharp voice.'</p> <p>Final, when in pausa or before a voiceless consonant: <i>luz</i> 'light,' <i>cabqz</i> 'basket,' <i>feliz</i> 'happy,' <i>vɛz</i> 'time,' <i>a luz tremula</i> 'the light quivers,' <i>luz forte</i> 'strong light.'</p> <p>In liaison before a voiced consonant: <i>nɔz mosqda</i> 'nutmeg,' <i>luz rara</i> 'rare light.' In a few expressions, final <i>z</i> is assimilated to a following initial <i>r</i>: <i>dɛz réis</i> 'ten réis.'</p> <p>Dialectically, both in Portugal and in Brazil, <i>z</i> preserves its old value of <i>ç</i>.</p>	<p><i>f</i></p> <p><i>ʒ</i></p>

## NOTES ON THE CONSONANTS

20. (a) In Portuguese no vernacular words begin with *sh* and none end in *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, p, q, t, or v*. Consequently the English loan-words 'club' and 'beef,' e.g., are ordinarily written *clube* and *bife*.

The final consonant is pronounced in *Garrett, Madrid, Isa(a)c* or *Isa(a)que, Judit(e)* or *Judith*, and a few more proper names, but not ordinarily in *Jacqb* (usually *Jacó*), *Jqb* (usually *Jó*), or *David*. Final *n* is rare: *gérmen* or *germe* 'germ,' *âmen* or *âmém* 'amen.'

(b) In the reformed orthography the only double consonants permitted are *mm, nn, rr*, and *ss*; *mm* and *nn* are used only when the first *m* or *n* belongs to a prefix: *emmelqr* 'to sweeten with honey,' *ennegrecer*

'to blacken,' *innato* 'innate' (cf. *inato* 'unborn'), *ruimmente* 'badly,' *rr* denotes a well-rolled *r* between vowels: *carro* 'cart,' and *ss* denotes *s* between vowels: *missa* 'Mass.'

(c) In ordinary conversation a final consonant is made the initial consonant of a following word beginning with a vowel, and the consonant, if voiceless, becomes voiced; *as altas águas* 'the high waters' is pronounced *v azalto azagũs*.

(d) The only double consonants as sounds occur when, chiefly due to the fall in pronunciation of final *a*, the preceding consonant of a word becomes final and stands before the same consonant of the following word: *bate-te* (pronounced *bati-ta*) 'strike thyself,' *a casa de Deus* (pronounced *v kazu ddeũs*) 'the house of God,' *tome-me um lugar* 'take a place for me,' is pronounced with double *m*, while *tome um lugar* 'take a place,' is pronounced with single *m*; *veste* 'garment,' *veste-te* 'dress yourself,' *fique* 'remain,' *fique cá* 'remain here,' *toque comigo* 'play (e.g. the piano) with me,' *fale logo* 'speak later on,' *dou-te tudo* 'I give thee all,' *disse-se* 'it was said.' Ordinarily *dois tostões* 'two tostões' (a coin) and *três tostões* 'three tostões' are pronounced *dof-i-foif* and *taef-i-foif* respectively.

#### LIAISON

21. In Portuguese, as in every other language (English, for example, *jubilee* for 'do you believe?' *tortishel* for 'tortoise-shell,' *the smorning* for 'this morning,' *watch a name?* for 'what is your name?'), and much more regularly in ordinary than in formal speech, closely related words forming a syntactical unit are not separated but run smoothly into each other, with the result that final and initial sounds are treated as if they were

medial. Liaison is an important and difficult feature of Portuguese pronunciation. Some instances of its working have already been illustrated. The most important cases may be summarized as follows:

(a) A final consonant followed by an initial vowel, e.g. the treatment of final *s* and *z* (pp. 49, 52).

(b) A final consonant followed by an initial consonant.

1. A final consonant becomes the initial of a following word beginning with a vowel (20. c).
2. The treatment of final *s* and *z* (pp. 49, 53).
3. A consonant may become final by the suppression of a following vowel and stand before a similar consonant of the following word (20. d).
4. *L* loses its guttural character before an initial vowel (p. 42).

(c) A final vowel followed by an initial vowel (15. b).

No pause is made between these contiguous vowels: they are fused usually in the second vowel, the result being that they are more or less obscure.

Liaison takes place when either or both of the vowels are tonic, but usually between unaccented vowels:

(1) Both vowels are tonic: *será alto* 'it will be high' ( $q + p = p$ ).

(2) The final vowel is tonic: *dá-a* 'he gives it [fem.]' ( $q + v = q$ ), *dá-o* 'he gives it' [masc.] ( $q + u = q\ddot{u}$ ), *está aqui* 'it is here' ( $q + v = q$ ), *vá à cidade* 'go to the city' ( $q + q = q$ ).

(3) The initial vowel is tonic. When the final vowel is the definite article *o* or *a*, the fusion is less complete:



*a arte* 'the art' ( $v+q=q$ ), *a qma* 'the governess,' ( $v+q=q$ ),  
*a alma* 'the soul' ( $v+a=a$ ), *trinta qnos* 'thirty years'  
 ( $v+q=q$ ), *tôda este gente* 'all these people' ( $v+e=ve$  or  $e$ ),  
*essa hora* 'that hour' ( $v+o=o$ ), *àquela outra parte* 'that  
 other part' ( $v+o=o$ ); final unaccented *i* and *o* before an  
 accented vowel become semi-vowels: *o homen* 'the man'  
 ( $u+o=ũ$ ), *aquele e este* 'that and this' ( $i+e=ie$ ).

(4) Both vowels are atonic: *à antiga* 'in the ancient  
 manner' ( $q+\tilde{a}=\tilde{q}$ ), *a altura* 'the height' ( $v+a=a$ ), *tôda a  
 armada* 'all the fleet' ( $v+q=q$ ), *chega a noite* 'night comes  
 on' ( $v+v=q$ ), *hora e meia* 'an hour and a half' ( $v+i=vi$ ),  
*passa o tempo* 'the time goes' ( $v+u=vu$  or  $o$ ), *o corpo  
 humano* 'the human body' ( $u+u=ũ$ ).

### III. ACCENT

22. Portuguese is spoken with little expiration. The simplest inflection in an ordinary declarative sentence begins in a low voice, rises in the middle, and falls at the end. The most emphatic word in the sentence gets the highest tone. In interrogative and exclamatory sentences, there is more variety.

The difference between stressed and unstressed syllables is not so marked in Portuguese as in English, but more so than in French, Italian, or Spanish. The accented syllable of a word is usually enunciated with a somewhat higher pitch of voice as well as with more energy of expression than the others which, especially after the accent, are reduced. Frequently the pitch varies with the feeling to be conveyed and the highest pitch is often on the first syllable, though unstressed, and gradually falls away to the end: *coração* 'heart.'

23. The tonic accent may fall either on the last syllable, and such a word is called *agudo* or *oxítono*: *amará* 'he will love;' on the last syllable but one, called *grave* or *paroxítono*: *amava* (imperfect) 'he loved;' on the last syllable but two, called *esdrúxulo*: *amávamos* (imperfect) 'we loved.' Words belonging to this last class always bear a graphic accent: *cândido* 'candid,' *fotógrafo* 'photographer.'

24. Since, as a rule, most Portuguese words are derived from the Latin, they are accented on the same syllable as in their Latin originals, with nearly the same

exceptions as in the other Romance languages. Those accented on the penult are most numerous.

25. Words ending in *-a*, *-e*, or *-o*, followed or not by *s*, are normally accented on the penult and require no graphic accent: *Alberico*, *casa(s)* 'house(s),' *gemido* 'groan,' *ibero* 'Iberian,' *Teodorico*.

Except: *antílope* 'antelope,' *crástin* 'of to-morrow,' *fábrica* 'factory,' *gramática* 'grammar,' *música* 'music,' *pórtico*, *prístino* 'pristine,' *retrógrado* 'retrograde,' *sacrílego* 'sacrilegious.'

Biblical names, whatever their ending, are as a rule accented on the last syllable: *Anás*, *Caim*, *Estér*, *Levi*, *Josué*, *Judá*, *Moisés*, *Noé*, *Saúl*.

Superlatives in *-imo* are accented on the antepenult: *brevíssimo* 'shortest,' *celebérrimo* 'most celebrated,' *facílmo* 'easiest,' *máximo* 'greatest,' *ó(p)timo* 'best.'

For further exceptions, see 28, 29.

26. Words ending in *-i* or *-u*, followed or not by a consonant, are ordinarily accented on the last syllable and require no graphic accent: *algum* 'some,' *ali* 'there,' *aqui* 'here,' *bambu* 'bamboo,' *Belzebu*, *comum* 'common,' *fugi* (imperat. 2nd pl.) 'flee,' *javali* 'wild boar,' *jejum* 'fasting,' *nenhum* 'none,' *Paris* (the city).

Except: *álcali* (better *alcali*), *cúlis*, *júri*, *oásis*, *Páris* (the Trojan hero), *quási*, *tríbu* 'tribe,' *vírus*, *Vénus*.

27. Words ending in a nasal vowel or diphthong, followed or not by *s*, are ordinarily accented on the last syllable: *aldeão(s)* 'peasant(s),' *coração* 'heart,' *irmã(s)* 'sister(s).'

If accented on some other syllable, they bear a special

mark of stress: *bênção* 'blessing,' *órfão* 'orphan,' *órgão* 'organ.'

28. (a) Words ending in *-ia*. Here the practice is often at variance with what is found in Spanish and Italian, and in some cases two pronunciations are heard.

(b) *ia* is unaccented in words taken over directly from the Latin, such as *abundância*, *eficácia*, *família*, *história*, *ignorância*, *luxúria*, *malícia*, *memória*, *modéstia*, *penitenciária*, *pertinácia*, *Albânia*, *Alemania*, *Arcádia*, *Arménia*, *Áustria*, *Bulgária*, *Hispânia*, *Itália*, *Lusitânia*, *Macedónia*, *România*.

(c) *ia* has the accent on the *i* (in other words, is paroxytonic) in words derived from Latin and other sources, but formed in the Romance period, such as *artilheria*, *cavalaria*, *cobardia*, *infanteria*, *vilania*, *Hungria*, *Lombardia*, *Pavia*, *Picardia*, *Turquia*.

(d) *ia* is unaccented in many words derived from the Greek which, having passed through the Latin, or owing to later analogical influences, conformed to the Latin accentuation, such as *camélia*, *comédia*, *estratégia*, *farmácia*, *paródia*, *polícia*, *prosódia*, *rap-sódia*, *tragédia*.

(e) *ia* has the accent on the *i* in words having come from the Greek directly through learned channels, such as *abadia*, *academia*, *Alexandria*, *anemia*, *anestesia*, *apoplexia*, *aristocracia*, *atrofia*, *autocracia*, *bigamia*, *democracia*, *difteria*, *disenteria*, *dispepsia*, *epidemia*, *epilepsia*, *filologia*, *filosofia*, *geodesia*, *geografia*, *geologia*, *geometria*, *hidrofobia*, *melodia*, *neurologia*, *necromancia*, *orgia*, *ortopedia*, *poligamia*, *salmódia*, *telegrafia*, *teoria*, *tiranía*, *utopia*.

(f) A few words show double forms, such as *afasia* (and *afásia*), *amnesia* (and *amnésia*), *enciclopédia* (and *enciclopedia*), *extasia* (and *êxtase*), *hidroterapia* (and *hidroterápia*), *Normândia* (and *Normandia*), *Oceania* (and *Oceânia*), *paresia* (and *párese*).

(g) Many words (chiefly nouns and adjectives) ending in *-ia*, *-ie*, *-io*, *-ua*, *-ue*, or *-uo*, require a graphic accent in order to distinguish them from related words (chiefly verbs) accented on the penult (40. h).

29. (a) Masculine nouns from the Greek are usually accented on the antepenult: *antídoto*, *astrónomo*, *cosmógrafo*, *estenógrafo*, *filósofo*, *fotógrafo*, *geólogo*, *horóscopo* (also *horoscópio*), *protótipo*, *telégrafo*.

*Crisântemo*, *hipódromo*, and *velódromo* are often incorrectly accented on the penult.

(b) Words ending in *-ata* are accented on the antepenult: *autócrata*. In the current speech, *acróbata*, *aristócrata* and *demócrata* are accented on the penult.

(c) *Barómetro*, *centígrado*, *decâmetro*, *decímetro*, *kilómetro*, *taxímetro*. Generally *decagrama*, *decalitro*, and *hectolitro* are accented on the penult.

30. As a general rule, words ending in a consonant are accented on the last syllable. For *-i(m)* and *-u(m)*, see 26.

(a) Words ending in *-am*, *-em* (including verb-forms), and *-ens* are ordinarily accented on the penult: *homem* 'man,' *nuvem* 'cloud,' *ordem* 'order,' *viagem* (pl. *viagens*) 'voyage,' *virgem* 'virgin.'

Except: *além*, *àquém*, *armazém*, *Belém*, *contém*, *ninguém*, *parabens*, *também*, *vintém* and some more.

(b) Words ending in *-l*, especially adjectives having *i* in their Latin originals, like *gentil* 'graceful,' *hostil*

'hostile,' *subtil* 'subtle,' are generally accented on the last syllable: *abril* 'April,' *anímql*, *anzql* 'fish-hook,' *azul* 'blue,' *caracql* 'snail,' *fiql* 'faithful,' *funil* 'funnel,' *iguql* 'equal,' *reptil* 'reptile.'

Except: *ágil*, *álcool* (110. a) 'alcohol,' *amável* 'lovely,' *Aníbal*, *cônsul*, *fácil* 'easy,' *flébil* 'lamentable,' *fóssil*, *frágil*, *fútil*, *grácil* 'slender,' *hábil* 'able,' *inútil* 'useless,' *móvel* 'movable,' *provável* 'probable,' *Setúbal*, *terrível* 'terrible,' *útil* 'useful.'

*Projétil* and *têxtil* are sometimes incorrectly accented on the last syllable (110. b).

(c) Words ending in *-n* are accented on the penult: *abdómen*, *alúmen*, *ámen* (but generally *àmêm*), *cânon* (pl. *cânones*), *cólon*, (*e*)*spécime(n)* 'specimen,' *glúten*, *hífen*, *líquen* 'lichen,' *pólen* 'pollen,' *regime* (or *regimen*).

(d) Words ending in *-r* as a rule are accented on the last syllable: *alcânfor* (also *alcânfor*) 'camphor,' *amqr* 'love,' *andqr* 'floor' 'story,' *Artur*, *Gibraltqr*, *luqr* 'moonlight,' *Madagascqr* (also *Madagáscar*), *pavqr* 'dread,' *senhqr* 'sir,' *Trafalgqr*.

Except: *âmbar* 'amber,' *açúcar* 'sugar,' *Amílcar*, *aljôfar* 'seed-pearl,' *éter* 'ether,' *fémur* 'thigh-bone,' *nenúfar* 'water-lily,' *revólver*, *repórter*, *alcáçar* 'fortress,' *cadáver* 'corpse,' *câncer*, *sóror* 'sister' (the learned pronunciation; the popular pronunciation is *spror* or *spr*).

*Cará(c)ter* (pl. *caracteres*) 'character' is the only Portuguese word in which the accent is transposed in the plural to agree with the accent in Latin.

(e) The first person plural of the imperfect, conditional, and pluperfect is accented on the antepenult: *dávamos* 'we gave,' *dariamos* 'we should give,' *dêramos* 'we had given.'

Frequently, by analogy with the singular, *digamos*, *façamos*, *hajamos*, *ponhamos*, *sejamos*, *tenhamos* (first pers. pl. of the pres. subj. of *dizer* 'to say,' *fazer* 'to do,' *haver* 'to have,' *pôr* 'to place,' *ser* 'to be,' and *ter* 'to have,' respectively) are incorrectly accented on the antepenult by uneducated people.

(f) Words ending in *-z* are accented on the last syllable: *arroz* 'rice,' *juiz* 'judge,' *nariz* 'nose,' *rapaz* 'boy.'

31. Words accented farther back than the third syllable are found only in combinations of the verb and the atonic personal or reflexive pronouns, and even then the accent never falls before the third last syllable of the verb: *afigura-se-me* 'I fancy,' *louvávamo-vo-lo* 'we were praising you for it,' *lembrávamo-nos* 'we were calling to mind,' *dávamo-vo-lo* 'we were giving it to you.' Such combinations are never used by the people and are rare even in the literary language.

32. (a) In words of three or more syllables, besides the principal accent, there is frequently a secondary accent which is more or less pronounced according to occasion. This secondary accent always precedes the principal accent and is usually on the root syllable or on a syllable whose vowel is the result of the contraction of two vowels: *misericordiosíssimo* [*mizɐˈɪkuˌɫiuˈziˌsimu*] 'most merciful,' *circumstanciadamente* 'minutely.'

(b) Adverbs in *-mente* have the chief stress on the suffix, though the graphic accent of the simplex (or an alteration thereof) is retained: *cortêsmemente* (*cortês*) 'courteously,' *fácilmente* (*fácil*) 'easily,' *rápidamente* (*rápido*) 'rapidly.'

(c) Augmentatives and diminutives with infixed *z* (147. d, 148. d) also have a secondary accent on the root of the word: *homemzarrão* 'a large man' (augmentative of *homem* 'man'), *mulherzinha* 'a small woman' (diminutive of *mulher* 'woman'), *rosazinha* 'a little rose' (diminutive of *rosa* 'rose').

33. The following words are almost universally accented on the penult, though the antepenultimate accentuation is still admitted by some orthoepists: *amido* (*âmido*) 'starch,' *arnica* (*árnica*), *cabala* (*cábala*) 'cabal,' *erisipela* (*erisípela*, popularly *erzipela*) 'erysipelas,' *oásis* (*óasis*), *oceano* (*océano*) 'ocean,' *telefone* (*teléfono*) 'telephone,' *tulipa* (*túlipa*) 'tulip.'

34. The following are most often accented on the antepenult: *amalgama* 'amalgam,' *análise* 'analysis,' *anémona* 'anemone,' *antropófago* 'cannibal,' *átomo* 'atonic,' *barítono* 'baritone,' *diácono* 'deacon,' *ecónomo* 'steward,' *enálage* 'enallage,' *ídolo* 'idol,' *ímprobo* 'wicked,' *míope* 'near-sighted,' *pároco* 'pastor,' *paróquia* 'parish,' *prática* 'practice,' *rócio* (less often *rocio*) 'dew;' cf. *rossio* 'public square' 'common.'



#### IV. DIVISION. OF SYLLABLES

35. (a) A single consonant belongs to the following syllable: *e-nu-me-rar* 'to enumerate.' Likewise the inseparable combinations *ch*, *lh*, *nh*, *ps*, *sc*, and *sp*: *fi-lho* 'son,' *mi-nha* 'my.'

(b) Two consonants between vowels are divided: *ap-to* 'fit,' *as-sistir* 'to assist,' *guer-ra* 'war,' *cor-rer* 'to run,' *es-tu-do* 'study,' *es-pa-da* 'sword,' *for-ma* 'form.'

(c) In nasal syllables, *m* and *n* naturally belong to the preceding vowel: *bem-di-to* 'blessed,' *par-la-men-to* 'parliament.'

(d) *L* and *r* are not separated from a preceding *b*, *c*, *d*, *f*, *g*, *p*, *t*, or *v*.

(e) In combinations of three or more consonants, the practice, though not uniform, is to separate the first two from the last: *ins-pi-rar* 'to inspire.'

(f) The prefixes *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *retro-*, *sub-*, and *super-* were formerly separable from the rest of the word, but are now divided according to the rules stated above: *cir-cuns-tân-cia* 'circumstance,' *cons-ti-tui-ção* 'constitution,' *i-nú-til* 'useless,' *res-ti-tu-ir* 'to restore,' *per-cor-rer* 'to traverse,' *subs-cre-ver* 'to subscribe,' *subs-tân-cia* 'substance.' The *s* of *des-* and *dis-* is separated from a following consonant, but joined to a following vowel: *de-ses-pe-rar* 'to despair,' *des-fi-gu-rar* 'to disfigure,' *dis-pen-sar* 'to dispense,' *dis-tri-buir* 'to distribute.'

The prefix *ex-* remains intact: *ex-ce-dër* 'to exceed,' *ex-pli-ci-to* 'explicit.'

(g) Two consecutive vowels, even though they do not form a diphthong, are inseparable: *cqu-sa* 'cause,' *cêu* 'sky,' *Deus* 'God,' *famî-lia* 'family,' *fêr-ias* 'vacation,' *mais* 'more,' *moi-nho* 'mill,' *poei-ra* 'dust,' *pou-co* 'small,' *rai-nha* 'queen,' *rio* 'river,' *voqr* 'to fly.'

(h) *U*, whether silent or pronounced after *g* or *q*, is not separated from it: *ar-güir* 'to accuse,' *lin-guq-gem* 'language,' *i-nî-quo* 'wicked.'

## V. ORTHOGRAPHY

36. The spelling adopted as a standard in the present grammar is the "new orthography," formulated by a Commission for the reform of the orthography, appointed in 1911 by the Portuguese Government. The reformed spelling was adopted in 1916, amended in 1927, and is now used in official publications, in the schools, and by many writers and periodicals, but not universally nor has it as yet been officially accepted in Brazil. It is far from being phonetic, however, as may be illustrated by the fact that, e.g., the letter *g* has three different values in *página* 'page,' *pagar* 'to pay,' and *garfo* 'fork,' and that the same sound, *k*, is expressed in three different ways, in *com* 'with,' *que* 'who,' and *kilo*. The principal features of the reformed spelling are:

(a) The suppression of all superfluous letters: *escrito* 'written,' for *escripto*, *pronto* 'prompt,' for *prompto*, *fruto* 'fruit,' for *fructo*, *salmo* 'psalm,' for *psalmo*.

Except where *c* or *p*, though not pronounced, stands after an open vowel (15. *k*): *acção* 'action,' *activo* 'active,' *adoptar* 'to adopt,'  *direcção* 'direction,' *director* 'director,' *excepção* 'exception,' *redactor* 'compiler.'

(b) The reduction of double consonants which have the value of only one, except *m*, *n*, *r*, and *s*, when not explained by etymology or required by the pronunciation. Gemination is correct, for example, in *carro* 'cart' but not in *cqro* 'dear,' in *emmoldar* 'to mould,' *ennodar* 'to

make a knot,' and *emmalqr* 'to pack a trunk,' but not in *ab(b)qde* 'abbot' and *bel(l)ęza* 'beauty' (20. b).

(c) The substitution of *f*, *r*, *t*, *qu* (or *c*) with the value of *k*, for the groups *ph*, *rh*, *th*, and *ch* (with the value of *k*) respectively: *ditongo* 'diphthong,' *filosofia* 'philosophy,' *teatro* 'theatre,' *panfleto* 'pamphlet,' *Filadélfia*, *reumatismo* 'rheumatism,' *máquina* 'machine,' *quimęra* 'chimera,' *química* 'chemistry.'

(d) The abolition of *k*, *w*, and *y*, except in a few foreign proper names, and their replacement by *c* (or *qu*), *v*, and *i*, and the elimination of silent *h* from the body of words except in the digraphs *ch*, *lh*, *rh*: *comprender* 'to comprehend,' *exibir* 'to exhibit,' *sair* (for *sahir*) 'to go out,' *honra* 'honor,' but *desonra* 'dishonor,' *humano* 'human,' but *desumano* 'inhuman,' *chave* 'key,' *malha* 'mesh,' *manhã* 'morning,' *aí* (for *ahi*) 'here,' *Bata* (but *Bahia* generally in Brazil).

(e) Initial *h* is preserved when justified etymologically: *hora* 'hour,' *haver* 'to have,' *homem* 'man,' but not in *ombro* 'shoulder,' *ontem* 'yesterday.' Final *h* is kept only in the interjections *oh!* and *eh!*

(f) The accented diphthongs *ai*, *au*, *eu* (*ēu*), *oi* (*ói*), and *ua* are substituted for the former spellings *ae*, *ao*, *eo*, *oe*, and *oa* respectively: *pai* (*pae*) 'father,' *pau* (*pao*) 'wood' 'stick,' *chapéu* (*chapeo*) 'hat,' *herói* (*hero*) 'hero.' But *e* is retained in the nasal diphthong: *mãe(s)* 'mother(s).'

(g) A graphic accent to mark the pronunciation of all proparoxytonic words: *lânguido* 'languid,' *sciência* 'science,' *tépido* 'warm' (23).

(h) The separation, by a hyphen, of the pronouns

*lo, la, los, las* from the preceding verb (386. c): *amá-la* (not *amal-a*) 'to love her,' *fazê-lo* (not *fazel-o*) 'to do it.'

(i) In 1927 the following changes were made in the official orthography:

(1) When *i* or *u* is unaccented and does not form a diphthong with a preceding vowel, the diæresis is placed over it and not the grave accent: *saimento*, *saüdar*, and not *saimento*, *saüdar*. If it is accented, it bears the acute accent: *saida*, *saüde*. Likewise the diæresis, and not the grave accent, is placed over *u* in the groups *gu* and *qu* when it is pronounced: *agüentar*, *argüir*, and not *aguentar*, *arguir*.

(2) The acute accent is used instead of the circumflex on the ending *em* of oxytonic polysyllables: *ninguém*, *porém*, *relém*, and not *ninguêm*, *porêm*, *relêm*. Since *relem*, *contem*, and *vem*, may have the same form and pronunciation in the singular and plural, they may be distinguished conventionally by using the acute accent for the former and the circumflex for the latter: *êle vêem*, *êles vêem*. For those who pronounce such a plural with two nasalizations, as generally happens in Algarve, these are thus represented in the writing: *êles veem*, *êles reteem*, etc.

(3) Adverbs ending in *-mente* and in whose first element the accented vowel is open, have the grave accent over this vowel, in accordance with the general rule for the use of the grave accent, which is intended exclusively for open unaccented vowels. Hence *fácilmente*, *sòmente*, not *fácilmente*, *sómente*.

(4) The older forms *leal* and *real* are restored instead of *lial* and *rial*.

## VI. CAPITALIZATION AND PUNCTUATION

37. The rules for the use of capitals, with names of places, persons, streets, and the like, and punctuation are in general the same as in English, the chief differences being:

(a) The months and the days of the week are usually not capitalized except in dating letters and documents.

(b) *Eu* 'I' and adjectives derived from proper names (unless, of course, at the beginning of a sentence) are not written with capitals: *o português* 'the Portuguese language,' *os portugueses* 'the Portuguese,' *o inglês* 'the English language' 'the Englishman,' *o francês* 'French' 'the Frenchman,' *os índios* 'the Indians,' *a marinha americana* 'the American navy.'

(c) Personal titles are usually written with small initials, but with capitals when only the initials are given: *S.M. o imperador* or *sua majestade o imperador* 'his majesty the emperor,' *o Reitor da Universidade* 'the Rector of the University.'

(d) In addressing persons, *Senhor(a)*, *Vossa Senhoria*, *Vossa Santidade*, etc. (235) are usually written with capitals, when followed by a proper name. Modern writers, however, especially journalists, are inclined to use small letters.

(e) The cardinal points are spelled with a small initial if mere direction is indicated, but with capitals when regions are meant: *ao norte da América* to the north of America,' *os americanos do Norte* 'the North Americans.'

(f) Besides its ordinary use in compound words (116 ff.), the hyphen is required:

1. Between a verb and a following object pronoun: *dê-me* 'give me,' *dizem-no-lo* 'they say it to us' (386).

2. After the monosyllabic forms of *haver* when followed by *de* and an infinitive: *hei-de ler* 'I must read' but *havíamos de ler* 'we had to read.'

3. In the conditional composed of an infixed pronoun and a verbal termination: *fá-lo-ia* 'I would do it' (382. d).

4. By some writers the hyphen is repeated at the beginning of the next line, but not when it merely separates two syllables.

## VII. POINTS OF INTERROGATION AND EXCLAMATION

38 (a) These are, in general, governed according to the same rules as in English. In addition, if an interrogative or exclamatory sentence is relatively long, say, of a half a dozen words or more, it is sometimes preceded by an inverted ? or ! respectively, as in Spanish. Sometimes an exclamatory question is marked by ?! *Mentir eu?! nunca tã farei* 'I lie! I shall never do such a thing.'

(b) The *cedilha* is used to show that *c* has the sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, and *u*; *açúcar* 'sugar,' *caça* 'hunt,' *mço* 'boy.'

(c) The apostrophe has almost disappeared, except in poetry to mark the suppression of a vowel, especially *e* or *a*, rarely *o*: *c'roa* (*coroa*) 'crown,' *esp'rança* 'hope.' It is still retained in a few compound words and proper names: *mãe-d'água* 'reservoir,' *mão-d'obra* 'workmanship,' *d'el-rei* 'of the king,' *Sant' Ana*, *Nun' Álvares*, and is sometimes used instead of the acute after capital *E* and *A*: *A'sia*, *A'frica*.

It is preferable therefore to write out, for example, *José de Almeida*, *Teatro da Avenida*, *deputação da Associação*, *de amor*, *de água*, *de hoje*, *há de atender*, *ao romper da aurora*, and to omit the apostrophe in *d'êle*, *d'êste*, *d'aquêle*, *n'um*, *n'êste*, *n'aquêle*, *m'o*, *n'os*, *minh'* (for *minha*) *amada*, etc. (p. 16).



## VIII. ACCENT MARKS

39. Four graphic accents are used in Portuguese: the acute, the circumflex, the grave, the *til*, and the diæresis. These (with the exception of the diæresis) are sound signs as well as stress marks and may indicate quality and stress at the same time (4).

40. The acute indicates an open accented vowel

(a) In the last syllable of words ending in *-a(s)*, *-e(s)*, *-o(s)*, or *-u(s)*: *alvará* 'charter,' *Canadá*, *chá* 'tea,' *fará* 'he will do,' *nó* 'knot,' *pá* 'shovel,' *pé* 'foot,' *sé* 'cathedral,' *vós* 'you,' *só* 'alone,' *tafetá* 'taffeta,' *avó* 'grandmother,' *baú* 'trunk.'

(b) Formerly final accented *i* bore an acute accent, but, since according to the general rule (26) words ending in *i* are always accented on the last syllable, the accent mark is unnecessary: *javalí* 'wild boar.'

(c) In the penult of words ending in *-i*, *-u*, or a nasal vowel or diphthong, followed or not by a consonant: *júri* 'jury,' *órfã* 'orphan,' *quási* 'almost,' *tribu* 'tribe.' Also in the penult of words ending in a consonant other than *s*: *álbum*, *amável* 'lovely,' *carácter* 'character,' *fácil* 'easy,' *mártir* 'martyr,' *sóror* 'nun.'

(d) When the first vowel of the diphthongs *ei*, *eu*, and *oi* is open: *papéis* 'papers,' *chapéu* 'hat,' *herói* 'hero' (9, 10).

(e) In the first person plural ending of the preterite of verbs of the first conjugation, to distinguish it from the present: *louvámos* 'we praised,' *louvamos* 'we praise,' and on the vowels *a* and *i* of the infinitive of verbs

of the first and third conjugations when followed by an object pronoun: *louvá-lo* 'to praise him,' *procurá-lo* 'to seek it,' *feri-lo* 'to strike him.'

(f) In a number of emphatic monosyllabic words, to distinguish them from homographic proclitics: *dá* 'gives,' *da* 'of the;' *dó* 'pain,' *do* 'of the;' *é* 'is,' *e* 'and;' *lá* 'there,' *la* (fem. pron. = *a*); *mó* 'millstone,' *mo* (= *me + o*); *sê* 'cathedral,' *sê* 'be thou,' *se* 'if,' and reflexive pronoun.

(g) The acute is required on the last syllable of words of two or more syllables, if they end in accented *-em* or *-ens* (except plurals in *-ens*): *armazém*, pl. *armazens*, 'warehouse,' *conténs* 'thou containest.'

(h) In many words accented on the antepenult: *água* 'water,' *cônego* 'canon,' *prêgávamos* 'we were preaching' (but *pregávamos* 'we were nailing'), some of which are thereby distinguished from other words (mostly paroxytonic verbs derived from them) of the same spelling:

<i>árvore</i> 'tree'	<i>arvore</i> '(would) raise aloft'
<i>contínuo</i> 'continuous'	<i>continuo</i> 'I continue'
<i>contrário</i> 'contrary'	<i>contrario</i> 'I oppose'
<i>dúvida</i> 'doubt'	<i>duvida</i> 'doubts'
<i>fábrica</i> 'factory'	<i>fabrica</i> 'constructs'
<i>história</i> 'history'	<i>historia</i> 'relates'
<i>homólogo</i> 'homologous'	<i>homologo</i> 'I ratify'
<i>índico</i> 'Indian'	<i>indico</i> 'I indicate'
<i>prática</i> 'practice'	<i>pratica</i> 'practices'
<i>público</i> 'public'	<i>publico</i> 'I publish'
<i>recita</i> 'recitation'	<i>recita</i> 'recites'
<i>regia</i> 'royal'	<i>regia</i> 'ruled'
<i>réplica</i> 'reply'	<i>replica</i> 'replies'

<i>sábia</i> 'learned'	<i>sabia</i> 'knew'
<i>secretária</i> 'secretary' (desk)	<i>secretaria</i> 'office' 'bureau'
<i>séria</i> 'serious'	<i>seria</i> 'it would be'
<i>telégrafo</i> 'telegraph'	<i>telegrafo</i> 'I telegraph'
<i>vário</i> 'various'	<i>vario</i> 'I vary'

(i) Words ending in unaccented *-or* drop the accent in the plural form: *sénior* 'senior' pl. *seniores*, *sóror* 'nun' pl. *sorores*; also *carácter*, pl. *caractêres*.

(j) If an augmentative or diminutive containing *z* is formed from a noun or adjective ending in an accented vowel, the acute is changed to the grave: *café* 'coffee,' *cafêzinho* 'small coffee,' *só* 'alone,' *sòzinho* 'all alone.'

41. (a) The circumflex indicates a close accented *a*, *e*, or *o* in the penult or antepenult of certain words, usually nouns, ending in *-a(s)*, *-e(s)*, or *-o(s)*, and in the ultima of some words, sometimes merely to distinguish them from others (usually related verbs) identical in spelling but of different meaning and different pronunciation: *câmara* 'room,' *côncavo* 'concave,' *pêssego* 'peach' (45):

<i>almôço</i> 'lunch,' pl. <i>almôços</i>	<i>almôço</i> 'I lunch'
<i>ânimo</i> 'courage'	<i>ânimo</i> 'I encourage'
<i>avô</i> 'grandfather'	<i>avó</i> 'grandmother'
<i>cêrco</i> 'circle'	<i>cêrco</i> 'I inclose'
<i>colhêr</i> 'to gather'	<i>colhêr</i> 'spoon'
<i>cômo</i> 'I eat'	<i>cômo</i> 'as'
<i>concêrto</i> 'concert'	<i>concêrto</i> 'I put in order'
<i>contém</i> 'contains'	<i>contem</i> 'let them count'
<i>côr</i> 'color'	<i>côr</i> 'heart'
<i>côro</i> 'choir'	<i>côro</i> 'I color'
<i>côrte</i> 'court'	<i>côrte</i> 'incision' 'edge'
	'let him cut' 'cut'
<i>dêmos</i> 'we may give'	<i>dêmos</i> 'we gave'

<i>êle</i> 'he'	<i>ele</i> , the letter <i>l</i>
<i>emprêgo</i> 'undertaking'	<i>emprego</i> 'I employ'
<i>entêrro</i> 'burial'	<i>enterro</i> 'I bury'
<i>escôva</i> 'broom'	<i>escova</i> 'sweeps'
<i>espôsa</i> 'wife'	<i>esposa</i> 'marries'
<i>espôso</i> 'husband,' pl. <i>esposos</i>	<i>esposo</i> 'I marry'
'married people'	
<i>êsse</i> 'that'	<i>esse</i> , the letter <i>s</i>
<i>êste</i> 'this'	<i>este</i> 'east'
<i>fôrça</i> 'force'	<i>força</i> 'compels'
<i>gôsto</i> 'savor'	<i>gosto</i> 'I taste'
<i>gôverno</i> 'government'	<i>governo</i> 'I govern'
<i>lôbo</i> 'wolf'	<i>lobo</i> 'lobe of the ear'
<i>mêdo</i> 'fear'	<i>Mêdo</i> 'a Mede'
<i>môlho</i> 'sauce,' dimin.	<i>molho</i> 'faggot' 'handful,'
<i>molhinho</i>	dimin. <i>mòlhinho</i>
<i>ôlho</i> 'eye'	<i>olho</i> 'I see'
<i>pára</i> 'stops'	<i>para</i> 'to' 'for'
<i>pêco</i> 'blight' 'stupid'	<i>pêco</i> 'I fail' (speaking of
	fruit), 'I sin'
<i>pêgo</i> 'magpie'	<i>pêgo</i> 'abyss' 'I seize'
For <i>pêlo</i> , <i>pêlo</i> , <i>pelo</i> , <i>pêla</i> , <i>polo</i> and <i>pólo</i> , see p. 15.	
<i>pêso</i> 'weight'	<i>pêso</i> 'I weigh'
<i>pôr</i> 'to put'	<i>por</i> 'by' 'for' 'through'
<i>porém</i> 'however'	<i>porem</i> , from <i>pôr</i> 'to put'
<i>porquê</i> 'why?'	<i>porque</i> 'because'
<i>pôrto</i> 'harbor'	<i>porto</i> 'I carry'
<i>quê</i> 'what?' (pron.)	<i>que</i> 'what?' (pron. adj.)
<i>rêgo</i> 'furrow' 'sluice'	<i>rêgo</i> 'I water'
<i>rôgo</i> 'request'	<i>rôgo</i> 'I ask'
<i>rôla</i> 'turtle-dove'	<i>rôla</i> 'rolls'
<i>sêco</i> 'dry'	<i>sêco</i> 'I dry'
<i>sêde</i> 'thirst;' also 2d pers.	<i>sêde</i> 'seat'
pl. imperat. of <i>sêr</i> 'to be'	

*sôbre* 'over'*sôlto* 'loose'*tôrre* tower'*sôbre* 'remains over'*sôlto* 'I loosen'*tôrre* 'let it roast'

(b) In some substantives, however, the pronunciation, and sometimes the spelling, is identical with that of the verb: *abôno* 'guarantee,' *abono* 'I guarantee,' *desejo* 'desire' and 'I desire,' *fabrico* 'I make' and 'fabric,' *lote* 'lot' 'share' and third pers. sing. pres. subj. of *lotar* 'to allot' 'share,' *remo* 'oar' and 'I row,' also *remo* 'I row.'

(c) The circumflex is also written over the vowel *e* of the infinitive of verbs of the second conjugation when followed by an object pronoun: *dizê-lo* 'to say it.'

42. The grave accent, which is not always obligatory, is used:

(1) In the combination of the preposition *a* and the feminine article (to distinguish it from the simple preposition or the article) and the demonstrative pronoun: *à(s) casa(s)* 'to the house(s),' *àquele* = *a aquele* 'to that.' Some writers use instead the acute, which properly belongs only over an accented vowel.

(2) To mark an unaccented open *a*, *e*, or *o* and thereby, in some cases, to distinguish the word in which it occurs from a similarly spelled word in which the vowel has a close or weakened value: *prêgar* 'to preach,' *pregar* 'to nail,' *môlhada* 'large faggot' 'heap (of faggots)' *molhada* 'wet,' *amanhã* 'to-morrow,' *avózinha* 'little grandmother.'

(3) To indicate contracted vowels: *côrqr* (= *colorqr*) 'to color,' *pêgada* (from Low Lat. *pedicata*) 'footstep.'

43. When *i* and *u* after *g* or *q* are to be pronounced before *e* or *i*, or do not form a diphthong with a preceding vowel (393):

(1) If accented, they bear an acute accent: *arguí* 'I accused,' *alaúde* 'lute,' *ataúde* 'coffin,' *baú* 'trunk,' *caí* 'falls,' *caí* 'he fell,' *miúdo* 'small,' *país* 'country,' *ruína* 'ruin,' *sai* 'I went out,' *sai* 'goes out,' *saída* 'way out' 'going out,' *saúde* 'health.'

'Louis' is spelled *Luís* or *Luiz* (less correctly *Luíz*, since words ending in *z* are normally accented on the last syllable).

Before a nasal or *nh* the accent is not written: *ainda* 'still,' *rainha* 'queen,' *ruim* 'bad.'

(2) If unaccented, they bear a diæresis: *argüir* 'to argue' 'accuse' 'conclude,' *argüi* 'I accused,' *argüente* 'opponent,' *conseqüência* 'consequence,' *eqüestre* 'equestrian,' *frequênte* 'frequent,' *frequência* 'frequency,' *lingüística* 'linguistics,' *saúdqr* 'to greet.'

In the older orthography, to separate *a* and *i*, *h* was inserted between them: *sahimento* 'funeral cortege,' *Bahia* (= *Baía*), *cahir* (= *cair*) 'to fall,' *sahida* (= *saída*) 'exit' 'going out,' *sahir* (= *sair*) 'to go out.'

44. Besides its ordinary function to mark nasality, the *til* (16) occasionally serves as a sign of abbreviation: *Sñr.* = *senhor*, *Roiž.* = *Rodriguez*, *q̃* = *que*, *Glž* = *Gonçalves*, *sñça* = *sentença*.

## IX. HOMONYMOUS WORDS

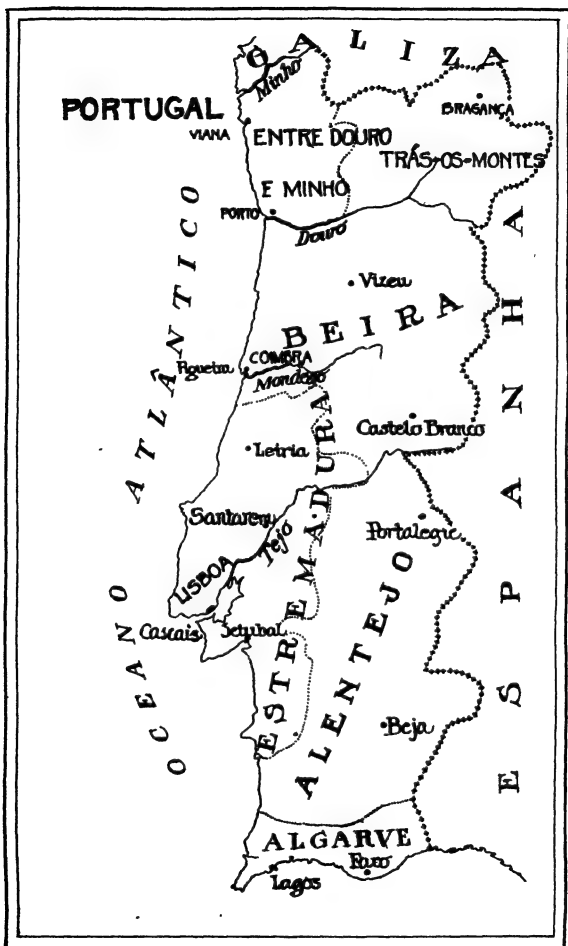
45. These are words, generally entirely unrelated, but (a) either written and pronounced exactly, or nearly, alike, or (b) with the same spelling but different pronunciation, or (c) with the same sound but different spelling (40. h, 41):

<i>acento</i> 'accent'	<i>assento</i> 'seat'
<i>acêrto</i> 'discretion' 'skill'	<i>acêrto</i> 'I discover' 'hit the mark,' <i>asserço</i> 'assertion'
<i>apreçar</i> 'to value'	<i>apressar</i> 'to hasten'
<i>bucho</i> 'maw'	<i>buxo</i> 'box-tree'
<i>cacça</i> 'hunt'	<i>cassa</i> 'muslin'
<i>cara</i> 'face'	<i>cara</i> 'dear' (fem.)
<i>cêda</i> , from <i>ceder</i> 'to yield'	<i>sêda</i> 'silk,' <i>sêda</i> 'hackles' 'calms'
<i>cegqr</i> 'to blind'	<i>segqr</i> 'to mow' 'reap'
<i>cêla</i> 'cell'	<i>sêla</i> 'saddle'
<i>censo</i> 'census' 'rent'	<i>senso</i> 'judgment'
<i>censual</i> 'censual'	<i>sensual</i> 'sensual'
<i>cerrqr</i> 'to enclose'	<i>serrqr</i> 'to saw'
<i>cêrvo</i> 'stag'	<i>sêrvo</i> 'servant'
<i>cidra</i> 'citron'	<i>sidra</i> 'cider'
<i>cilha</i> 'girth'	<i>silha</i> 'hive'
<i>cinto</i> 'belt'	<i>sinto</i> 'I feel'
<i>concelho</i> 'municipality'	<i>conselho</i> 'counsel' 'opinion'
<i>cosqr</i> 'to sew'	<i>cozqr</i> 'to boil'
<i>lqço</i> 'knot' 'lasso' 'film on the water'	<i>lqssô</i> 'loose' 'lax'
<i>livro</i> 'book'	<i>livro</i> 'I deliver' 'free'

*maça* 'club'*manga* 'sleeve'*nós* 'we' 'knots'*pqço* 'palace'*pęna* 'punishment'*pqço* 'well' 'spring'*sua* 'his' 'her,' etc.*sumo* 'moisture' 'highest'*mąssa* 'mass' 'paste'*manga*, from *mangqr* 'to  
mock'*nqz* 'nut'*pąsso* 'step'*pęna* 'feather' 'pen'*pąsso* 'am able'*sua*, from *suqr* 'to per-  
spire'*sumo* 'I hide'

and many more.





## X. HISTORY AND DIALECTS OF PORTUGUESE

46. Portuguese is one of the two branches of the *lingua rustica romana* of the Iberian Peninsula, Spanish being the other. Both idioms, now separated by very marked differences, can be traced back directly to one common source, viz., Hispanic Latin. One and the same vulgar tongue, diversely modified in the course of time, has produced Spanish and Portuguese as two varieties.

This particular Romanic idiom, henceforth to be known as a *lingua portuguesa*, probably took its origin among the dialects spoken in the north of the country, in Galicia (the *Gallego*) and in and around the present regions of Entre Douro e Minho. At the time of the oldest piece written in Portuguese, which dates from the close of the twelfth century, the language was already well formed and regularized. With this document begins the historical period of Old Portuguese which extends to the end of the fifteenth or the early part of the sixteenth century. From that time to the present day we speak of Modern Portuguese which, in its literary periods, is divided into *quinhentista* (16th century), *seiscentista* (17th century), *setecentista* (18th century), and contemporaneous.

Portuguese is an uncommonly beautiful as well as difficult language, and from the point of view of lexicography it is unquestionably one of the richest in Europe. It is also one of the most widely spoken anywhere.

In the homeland and the Spanish province of Galicia it is the speech of more than six millions, to whom are to be added about one-half a million in the Azores and Madeira, which are regarded as an integral part of the Portuguese Republic. In consequence of discovery, conquest and colonization, the language has been carried over a vast domain in Asia and Africa where it is used by nearly nine millions. But it has had its greatest dissemination in America, where, in Brazil, it is spoken by nearly forty millions, or more than the speakers of Spanish in all the countries of South America. The total number of Portuguese speakers is upwards of fifty-five millions.

The Portuguese language is not, of course, uniform as to grammar or pronunciation over the widespread territory in which it is spoken, but the literary language is practically the same everywhere. In Portugal itself three main dialects may be distinguished, one of which is spoken north of the Douro, another south of the Tagus, and the third, between these rivers. The differences between these dialects on the one hand and between the popular and literary languages on the other are far less than is the case, for example, in French or Italian. The standard pronunciation may be said to be found especially among the inhabitants of the regions of Beira and Trás-os-Montes, and in the central territory between Coimbra and Lisbon.

47. The most striking provincialisms of European Portuguese are:

(a) In the North:

(1) *ɣ* is inserted between final and initial *a* (15.f).

(2) Accented nasal *e* and *o* followed by *e* in the post-tonic syllable are denasalized and open: *dente* 'tooth,' *fonte* 'fountain.'

(3) *l* at the end of a syllable followed by a consonant is substituted by *r* and, in some parts, diphthongizes the preceding vowel: *alto* (pron. *qrto*) 'high,' *alma* (pron. *aurma*) 'soul,' *caldo* (pron. *cqrdo*) 'hot,' *soldado* (pron. *sordqdo*) 'soldier.' This pronunciation occurs popularly in other districts besides the North.

(4) The retention of nasalized *o* and *u*: *alguma* (pron. *algūa*) 'some,' *bom* (pron. *bōa*) 'good,' *lua* (pron. *lūa*) 'moon.'

(b) In the South:

(1) The diphthongs *ai* and *ei* become simple vowels by the fall of *i* (15. m): *baixo* (pron. *baxo*) 'low,' *beijo* (pron. *bejo*) 'kiss,' *caixa* (pron. *caxa*) 'box,' *peixe* (pron. *pexe*) 'fish.'

(2) In Estremadura, initial atonic *e* and *o* are pronounced *i* and *u* respectively; in Alentejo and Algarve they are pronounced *ɛ* and *ɔ*: *entrar* 'to enter,' *eterno* 'eternal,' *orelha* 'ear.'

(3) In Algarve, pretonic *e* is pronounced *ɛ*: *pedaço* 'piece,' *pedir* 'to ask.'

(c) In the Centre, the predominant traits are indicated under the letters *e* (p. 10) and *ou* (10.e).

(d) In southern and central Portugal, *b* and *v* are clearly distinguished in pronunciation. In parts of Trás-os-Montes, *b* takes the place of *v*, which does not exist in that dialect: *varão* (pron. *barão*) 'man' 'male,' *vida* (pron. *bida*) 'life,' *vento* (pron. *bento*) 'wind,' *vontade* (pron. *bontade*) 'will,' *bom vinho* (pron. *bom binho*) 'good wine,' *vinho verde* (pron. *binho berde*) 'tart wine.'

In Entre Douro e Minho and Beira, *b* and *v* are inter-

changeable, so that, e.g., *bom vinho* is pronounced and sometimes written over a tavern *vom binho*.

48. Brazil, discovered in 1500 by the Portuguese admiral Pedro Álvares Cabral, belonged to Portugal until the year 1822 when it declared its independence under Dom Pedro as emperor, and in 1889 it became the Republic of the United States of Brazil. Under the influence of the racial elements which form the population, distance from the motherland, contact with other languages and new necessities, the language of Brazil, *o luso-brasileiro*, *o português-brasileiro*, or *o luso-americano*, as it is variously called, underwent many modifications in the pronunciation and the formation and meaning of its words. Notwithstanding, dialectic variations are less pronounced in Brazil than in Portugal. The Brazilian variety of Portuguese does not differ from the European much more than American English differs from the English of England, nor is it inferior to it. Both are equally good and, except for intonation, certain phonetic divergences and a few differences in syntax, the cultivated speech is practically the same in both countries.

49. Brazilian Portuguese approaches most closely the speech of the regions of southern Portugal. The essential differences between the language in the two countries and the most striking characteristics of the Portuguese of Brazil, some of which are found in the works of representative modern authors and in the speech of the educated classes, while others are mere vulgarisms, are the following:

## A. VOCABULARY

50. (a) Many Brazilianisms are old words which have died out in Portugal, or words used only in their more original meaning. In some of its peculiarities Brazilian Portuguese represents the language of the sixteenth century.

(b) Many words for native woods, stones, animals, mountains, lakes, rivers, customs, and industries have been borrowed from African languages and from *tupi-guarani*, the idiom of one of the most important South American Indian stocks extending especially over a large part of Brazil, Paraguay, and Uruguay. On the other hand, the influence of French on the vocabulary and syntax of Portuguese has been much less in Brazil than in Portugal.

(c) A heaping up of diminutive endings: *bonitinho*, *bonitinhozinho*, from *bonito* 'pretty,' *quando chegou? inda agorinha* 'when did you arrive?' 'just a little while ago,' *o João está dormindinho* 'John is napping.'

## B. MORPHOLOGY

51. (a) The plural ending *-s* of nouns and adjectives is frequently omitted by the uneducated: in other words, one form, singular or plural, is used for both numbers: *as vaca(s)* 'the cows,' *duas galinha(s)* 'two hens,' *casas grande(s)* 'large houses.'

(b) The general use of *vosmecê* (or, in some parts of the country, of *mecê*) for *vossemecê* 'you.'

(c) The third person singular of the verb with a subject in the second person singular or in the first or third persons plural: *nós come* (for *comemos*) *a fruta* 'we eat the fruit.'

(d) The dropping of final *-s* in the first person plural of verbs: *nós havemo(s) de anda(r)* 'we have to go,' and the

substitution by *o* of final *-am* in the third person plural: *dêro* for *dêram* 'they had given.'

(e) *E* for *á* in the first person plural of the preterite of verbs of the first conjugation (also sporadically in Portuguese by the uneducated): *cheguemos* for *chegámos* 'we arrived,' *amemos* for *amámos* 'we loved.'

### C. PHONOLOGY

#### 1. Vowels

52. (a) Brazilian pronunciation is slower, more measured and sonorous, but less energetic than Portuguese. In general the tonic vowels are less open, the atonic vowels are not so reduced and obscure, and the ligature of words is not so completely carried out as in Portugal. The most noticeable difference is in the timbre of pretonic *e* and *o*. These letters which are generally pronounced *ə* (or *ɨ*) and *ɥ* in Portugal, are pronounced *ɛ* and *ɒ* in Brazil: *automóvel* 'automobile,' *bondade* 'goodness,' *colorado* 'colored,' *doloso* 'deceitful,' *imperador* 'emperor,' *menino* 'child,' *pequeno* 'small,' *para* 'for,' *senhora* 'lady.'

(b) Final *e* is not reduced as far as in Portugal: In *dente* 'tooth' and *vale* 'valley,' for example, and in the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *lhe*, etc., the final *e*, which is almost, if not entirely, silent in Portugal, is pronounced *ɛ* or *ɨ* in Brazil.

(c) The diphthong *ou* is pronounced *ɒ*: *andou* 'he went,' *pouco* 'little,' and the terminations *-eiro* and *-eira* are pronounced *-ɛro* and *-ɛra*: *brasileiro* 'Brazilian' (15. m).

(d) *-em*, pronounced *ɐ̃* in Portugal, is *ɛ̃* in Brazil (17. e), and final accented *-á* and *-ã* often become nasal diphthongs: *papá* is pronounced *papãĩ*, and *mamá*, *mamãĩ*.

(e) On the other hand, the second element of the diphthong *ai* is less pronounced than in Portugal (15. m): *caixa* 'box.'

(f) No vowel is inserted between final and initial *a* (15. f): *a água* 'the water.'

(g) The occasional use of prosthetic *v* (sporadically also, especially in verbs, in Portugal) before initial *l* and *r*: (*v*)*respirar* 'to breathe,' (*v*)*retirar* 'to retire,' (*v*)*lembrar* 'to remind.'

(h) The insertion of *v* between two consonants in the pretonic syllable of certain words, occasionally also dialectically in Portugal, especially before a pause: *flor* (pron. *folo(r)*) 'flower,' *Cláudio* (pron. *Coláudio*) 'Claudius.'

(i) Frequently *-cio* and *-cia* are pronounced *-ço* and *-ça*, and *-erio* and *-eria*, *-ero* and *-era*: *consciência* (pron. *consciença*) 'consciousness' 'conscience,' *matéria* (pron. *matêra*) 'material,' *negócio* (pron. *negôço*) 'business,' *paciência* (pron. *paciença*) 'patience,' *palácio* (pron. *palqço*) 'palace,' *sacrifício* (pron. *sacrifço*) 'sacrifice.'

## 2. Consonants

53. (a) In everyday speech final *l* and especially *r* are weakened or fall: *amar* 'to love,' *chover* 'to rain,' *ferir* 'to strike,' *geral* 'general,' *horror* 'horror,' *laranjal* 'orange-grove,' *mel* 'honey,' *prazer* 'pleasure.'

(b) *Lh* becomes *l* or is vocalized to *ɨ* (229. a): *alheio* (pronounced *aleio*) 'another's,' *batalha* (pronounced *bataia*) 'battle,' *mulher* (pronounced *mule* and *mulê*) 'woman,' *olho* (pronounced *pio*) 'eye,' *telhado* (pronounced *teiqdo*) 'tiled,' *palha* (pronounced *paia*) 'straw.'

(c) On the other hand, *demónio* 'demon,' *família* 'family,' *móvel* 'furniture,' etc., are often pronounced *demqñho*, etc., also sporadically (popularly) in Portugal.

(d) *D* is less spirant, and final *s* is less palatal, than in Portugal; the latter is seldom pronounced *ʃ* or is only slightly palatalized even at the end of words.

(e) In certain words final *-s* frequently falls after *ç* and



an off-glide *ɨ* is added to the vowel: *fêz* (pronounced *fɛɨ*) 'he did,' *três* (pronounced *trɛɨ*) 'three,' *francês* (pronounced *francɛɨ*) 'French.'

(f) The substitution of *r* for *l*, (47. a. 3): *animal* (pronounced *animar*) 'animal,' *calça* (pronounced *carça*) 'sock,' *falsa* (pronounced *farsa*) 'false,' also sporadically by the uneducated in Portugal.

(g) Occasional nasality before *gn*: *magnífico* 'magnificent.'

#### D. SYNTAX

54. (a) The most important syntactical difference is in the matter of the collocation of the personal pronouns. While in Portugal *me*, *te*, *se*, etc., normally follow the verb (249), it is usual in Brazil to commence the sentence with an oblique personal pronoun. In other respects also the position of the pronoun differs in the two countries: Braz. *me dá um copo de água* = Port. *dá-me um copo de água* 'give me a cup of water,' Braz. *me diga uma coisa* = Port. *diga-me uma coisa* 'tell me something,' Braz. *me faça o favor* = Port. *faça-me o favor* 'do me the favor,' Braz. *o homem que preza-se* = Port. *o homem que se preza* 'the man who values himself,' Braz. *não chamou-me* = Port. *não me chamou* 'he did not call me,' Braz. *não conheço-os* = Port. *não os conheço* 'I do not know them,' Braz. *sempre estimei-o e respeitei-o* = Port. *sempre o estimei e o respeitei* 'I always esteemed and respected him,' Braz. *me parece* = Port. *parece-me* 'it seems to me,' Braz. *me perdoe* = Port. *perdoe-me* 'pardon me,' Braz. *me deixe* = Port. *deixe-me* 'leave me,' Braz. *João se diverte muito* = Port. *João diverte-se muito* 'John enjoys himself very much,' Braz. *dize ao João que traga o cavalo* = Port. *dize ao João que me traga o cavalo* 'tell John to bring me the horse,' Braz. *eu lho tenho dito* = Port. *eu tenho-lho dito* 'I have told him so.'

(b) In Brazil the imperative is frequently used instead

of the subjunctive in negative commands (595): *não bebe*, instead of *não bebas* 'do not drink.'

(c) In interrogative sentences the subject is placed before the verb (728. b): *quando êle veio?* instead of *quando veio êle?* 'when did he come?'

(d) The subject case of the personal pronoun is frequently used instead of the objective: *vi êle* (also *vi-lhe*) = *=vi-o* 'I saw him,' *encontrei ela* = *encontrei-a* 'I met her,' *chamar a eles* = *chamá-los* or *chamá-los a eles* 'to call them' (234. b).

(e) In certain phrases the preposition *em*, as in Old Portuguese, is used instead of *a* or *para*: *leveí-a na* (= *para a*) *casa* 'I brought him ('her' or 'it') home,' *fui na* (= *para*) *casa* 'I went home,' *estava na* (= *à*) *janela* 'he ('she' or 'I') was at the window,' *estar na* (= *à*) *mesa* 'to be at the table.' In Portugal, in the province of Trás-os-Montes, they also say: *fui lá em cima* for *fui lá acima* 'I went up,' *vou lá em baixo* for *vou lá abaixo* 'I went down.'

(f) The possessive is more often used than its equivalents (79. d, 277): *feriu sua mão* (*dêle*) = *feriu-lhe a mão* 'he wounded his hand,' *tapa minha cara* = *tapa-me a cara* 'cover my face.'

(g) There is a noticeable preference for the gerundive construction: *estou escrevendo* = *estou a escrever* 'I am writing,' *está fazendo* = *está a fazer* 'you are doing.'

#### E. ISOLATED BRAZILIANISMS

55. *Ansim* = *assim* 'thus,' *qrve* (also popularly in Portugal) = *árvore* 'tree,' *giniêm* = *vintêm* (a coin), *si* = *se* 'if,' *sinhô* = *senhor* 'sir,' *sinhá* = *senhora* 'lady;' the frequent use of *sim* 'yes' as an interrogative immediately after a statement, to ask the approval of somebody with respect to a statement just made: *gostou muito do Rio, sim?* 'did you enjoy Rio much?' the excessive use of *mesmo*

(pronounced *mêmo*, as also popularly in Portugal) added to a noun or adjective giving them a superlative meaning: *Teodoro é maligno mesmo* 'Theodore is very wicked.'

56. Most of the Portuguese speakers in the United States are from the Azores. The most striking peculiarities of their pronunciation are:

(a) Accented *o* is pronounced *u*: *amor* 'love,' *flor* 'flower.'

Accented *u* is pronounced somewhat like French *u*: *lua* 'moon.'

Accented *ou* is pronounced somewhat like *ö* in German *schön*: *estou* 'I am.'

Accented *ão* is pronounced *ã*: *mão* 'hand.'

Accented *ei* is pronounced *ê*: *terceiro* 'third.'

(b) The termination *-iu* (third person sing. pret. of verbs of the third conjugation) is pronounced *i*: *uniu* 'he united.'

(c) The exchange of *b* and *m*: *Madalena*, pronounced *Badanêla*.

(d) The fall of *r* and *s*: *dançarmos* (pronounced *dançamos*) 'our dancing.'

(e) The vocalization of *l* (47. a. 3): *êle* (pronounced *êũ*) 'he.'

(f) The fall of an atonic syllable by haplology: *necessidade* (pronounced *necidqde*) 'necessity.'

(g) Nouns and adjectives in *-l* form their plural in *-es*: *azul*, pl. *azules* = *azuis* 'blue.'

(h) The insertion of a slender vowel in a group of consonants after a palatal: *estrada* (pronounced *estirada*) 'road.'

(i) Sporadic peculiarities: *diante* (pronounced *dente*) 'before,' *mais* (pronounced *mêif*) 'but.'

(j) In addition, the native language of the Portuguese

immigrants in the United States shows the influence of English syntax and contains many words and expressions translated word for word into Portuguese, e.g., *correr uma estoua* 'to run a store' for *administrar uma loja*; *que tal vai gostando?* 'how do you like it?' for *como acha isto?*; *tu estás direito* 'you are right' for *tu tens razão*.

## XI. EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

57. The spelling of the following texts, taken, with a few modifications, from *Portugais: Phonétique et Phonologie, Morphologie, Textes*, pp. 110-114, 136-141, by Aniceto dos Reis Gonçalves Viana (*Skizzen Lebender Sprachen, herausgegeben von Wilhelm Viëtor, Leipzig, 1903*) has been normalized according to 36. For the diacritical signs employed in the transcription to indicate the pronunciation, see 5, 6.

Furthermore, whenever necessary, the tonic syllable is marked by placing an acute accent before it. When two similar sounds, one final and the other initial, are welded together, the resulting long sound is marked by placing a colon after it. Some alternative pronunciations are given in the foot-notes, and the sounds indicated within parentheses, though pronounced in accurate diction, are not heard in ordinary natural rapid conversation and reading.

58. A morte da rainha D. Filipa,  
 v - mɔʁt(ə) dɔ - rvinhɔ dɔnɔ f(ə)lɪpɔ,  
 mulher de D. João I.  
 mulheɹ dɔ - dɔ ʒũũ(m) pɹimvũu.

Enferma, o seu cuidado era saber se estariam  
 ɛfɛɹmɔ<sup>1</sup> u - sɛũ kuidɔdũ ɛɹɔ svbɛɹ s - ʒstɔ'ɹiũũ  
 já acabadas as espadas que mandara fazer  
 ʒɔ vkbɔdɔvz vz ɹspɔdɔf k(ə) mɔ(n)dɔɹ fvzɛɹ  
 para os filhos, e como lh'as trouxessem, mi-  
 p(v)ɹ(v) uf<sup>2</sup> - filhuz,<sup>3</sup> i kɔmu lɔɹf - ɹɔ'sɛsɔĩ,<sup>4</sup> mi-  
 rava - as com amor. Eram tres lâminas pre-  
 'ɹqv - ɔf kɔ vmpɹ. 'ɛɹũũ(ɹ) ɹɛʒ 'lɔminɔf pɹ(ə)-

---

<sup>1</sup>ɛfɛɹmɔ    <sup>2</sup>ɔf    <sup>3</sup>filhuf    <sup>4</sup>ɹɔũ'sɛsɔĩ

ciosas, com os punhos guarnecidos de oiro, *s'qzɔf*, *k̃p* *uf* - *punhuɔ* *gũɔrn(ə)siðuɔ* *d̃i* *oĩu*, pedras e aljófares. Tinha - as estendidas sôbre *pɛđɔvɔ* *i* *al'zɔfvɔ(ə)f*. *tinɦ* - *qz* *ĩst̃ɛ(n)diđɔf* *sɔbr* o leite, a seu lado. E de pé, os filhos, *u* - *lvĩtu*, *v* - *sɛũ* *lqđu*. *i* *d(ə)* - *pɛ*, *uf* *filɦuf*, suspensos, esperavam. D. Duarte chorava como *sus̃pɛsuz*, *ĩsp(ə)'ıqvũũ*. *d̃p(n)* - *dũq̃st̃(ɔ)* *fııqvɔ* *kpm* uma creança; D. Pedro comprimia os soluços *umv* *kıĩvsv*; *dō(ɦ)* - *pɛđıu* *k̃p(ɦ)* *pıı'mi* *ɔf* - *sulusuf* que lhe subiam do peito; D. Henrique mordida *'kə* - *lhə* *su'biũũ(n)* *du* - *pvĩtu*; *d̃p* - *ɛrik(ə)* *muıdi(v)* os beijos com fúria, contorcendo nervo- *uz*<sup>5</sup> *bvĩsuf* *k̃p* *'fıııv*, *kō(n)tuɔsɛ(n)du* *n(ə)ıvq*-samente as mãos. Em cōro as aias gemiam. *zomɛ̃(n)t* *vɔ* - *mũũf*. *vĩ(ɦ)* - *kɔıu* *vɔ* - *q̃ıv* *ɔ:(ə)'miũũ*. A um gesto da mãe os infantes ajoelharam: *v* - *ũ* *zɛftu* *đv* - *m̃vĩ* *uz* - *ĩf̃v(ɦ)t(ə)z* *vɔzũı'lhqıũũ*; e então ela, erguendo - se com um ar de morta, *i* - *ınt̃vũũ*<sup>6</sup> *ɛlv*, *ıı'gɛndu* - *s*<sup>7</sup> *k̃p* *ũ* *qı* *d(ə)* - *m̃qııv*, deu a D. Duarte uma espada, recomen- *đɛũ* *v* - *d̃p(n)* - *dũq̃st̃* *umv* *ĩspqđv*, *rakumɛ̃(n)'dō(n)*-do - lhe que fosse um justo rei; a D. Pedro *du* - *lh(ə)* *k(ə)* - *fɔs* *ũ* *zıftu* *rvĩ*; *v* - *d̃p(n)* - *pɛđıu* outra, exortando - o à honra e cavalaria, em *ɔııv*,<sup>8</sup> *ızuı'ıṽ(n)dũu* *q* - *ɔrv* *i* *kɔvvɔlvıv*, *vĩ(n)*-defesa das donas e donzelas; a D. Henrique *đɔfɛzv*<sup>9</sup> *đvɔ* *đɔnvɔ* *i* - *đ̃p̃zɛlvɔ*,<sup>10</sup> *v* *đ̃p* - *ɛrik(ı)* outra, lembrando - lhe o amor da fidalguia *ɔ(ũ)ııv*, *lɛ̃(m)'bııṽ(n)du* - *lh* *ũ* - *vııqı* *đv* *fıđqıııv*. E deitou a todos a sua bênção. *i* - *đvĩtɔ(ũ)* *v* - *tɔđuz* *v* - *svv* *'b̃ɛsvũũ*.

<sup>5</sup>*qz*    <sup>6</sup>*ɛııvũ*    <sup>7</sup>*ıı'gɛndu-s*    <sup>8</sup>*ɔıııv*    <sup>9</sup>*đfɛzv*    <sup>10</sup>*đ̃p̃zɛlvɔf*

Depois quis que chamassem o pai, e quando  
*dəpɔɪf 'kif - k(ə) fɔ'mqsdʒi<sup>11</sup> u - pɔɪ, i - kũð(n)dũ*  
 êle, perdido de dor, entrava na câmara,  
*ɛl(ə), pɛɪdɪdu<sup>12</sup> d(ə) dɔɪ. i(ɲ)lɪqvd<sup>13</sup> nv - 'kɔmɔɪ(v),*  
 acenou - lhe, fê - lo chegar - se automaticamente à  
*vsə'nɔ - lhə,<sup>14</sup> fɛ - lu fɛgɔɪ - s<sup>15</sup> ɔũtu'mɔtikəmənti<sup>16</sup> q -*  
 cabeceira do leito e banhou - o num olhar de  
*kvðə'svɪɪv<sup>17</sup> du - lvitũ i - ðq'nɔɔ - u<sup>18</sup> nũ ɔlhɔɪ d(ə)*  
 graça inefável. Era quási um prazer divino,  
*gɪqsv in(ə)'fɔvɛɫ. ɛɪv kũqz ũ(ɲ) - pɪvzɛɪ d(ə)vɪnũ,*  
 essa dor inoportável em que se achavam  
*ɛsv dɔɪ i(ɲ)kɔ(m)pɪt'ɪvɛɫ vɪ(ɲ) - k(ə) sɪ - v'fɔvðũ*  
 mergulhados. A infanta, no meio das aias, so-  
*mɛɔgɪlhɔdɪf.<sup>19</sup> v - iðv(n)tv, nu - mɔvɪv dɔv - ɔvɔf, su-*  
 luçava.  
*lusqvɔ.*

Então a rainha, tirando do seio um reli-  
*ĩntvũ<sup>20</sup> v - vɔvɪv, tɪvð(n)du du svɪv ũ - r(ə)li-*  
 cário de ouro, abriu-o, e lá de dentro extraiu  
*'kqũv dɪ oĩv, v'ðɪv(u), i - lɔ d(ə)-dɛ(n)lɪv iðv'lvũ*  
 uma esquirola de madeira negra, religiosamente  
*umv i'kɪsvlv d(ə) mɔdvɪv nɛgɪv, r(ə)lɪzɪɔvɔmɛ(n)l(ə)*  
 dobrada em seda. Era um pedaço do santo  
*duðɪqdv i<sup>21</sup> sɛdv. ɛɪv ũ(m) p(ə)dɔsv du - svð(ɲ)tv*  
 lenho em que fôra crucificado Cristo. Com  
*lvɪnhu 'vɪ(ɲ) - k(ə) fɔɪv 'kɪsv(ə)fɪ'kqdv kɪftɪ. kɔ*  
 as suas mãos côm de cera levou - o aos .  
*vɔ - svvɔ mðũf kɔɪ d(ə) sɛɪv l(ə)'vɔ(ũ) - u vũɔ -*  
 lábios ardentes de febre e beijou - o . . . .  
*'lɔðvɪv vɪdɛɫ(ɪ)ɔ dɔ<sup>22</sup> fɛðɪ(ə) i - bvɪ'ɔɔ(ũ) - u . . . .*

Depois, fechou os olhos e ficou imóvel.  
*d(ə)pɔɪf, f(ɪ)'fɔ(ũ) uz - ɔlhuz i - fɪ'kɔ(ũ) i'mɔvɛɫ.*

<sup>11</sup>fɔmqsdʒi    <sup>12</sup>pɛɪdɪdu    <sup>13</sup>ɛlɪqvɔ    <sup>14</sup>vs'nɔɪ-lh    <sup>15</sup>fɛgɔɪ-s  
<sup>16</sup>ɔũtu'mɔtikə'mɛt    <sup>17</sup>kvð'svɪɪv    <sup>18</sup>i-ðv'nɔɔ-u    <sup>19</sup>mɛɔgɪlhɔdɪf  
<sup>20</sup>ɛĩtvũ    <sup>21</sup>vɪ    <sup>22</sup>d

Estaria morta? . . . .

*istavio môtô?* . . . .

Morta? ainda não. Entreabrindo os olhos,  
*môtô? vî(n)do nũũ. 'ē(η)tiũ''brî(n)d uz - qlhuf,*  
 com uma voz sumida, ouvindo o assobiar do  
*kō umv vqf sumidv, ρ(ũ)vî(n)d u - vsuđĩqı du-*  
 vento nas telhas do palácio, disse para os filhos:  
*vē(η)tu nvf tolhvz du pv'lqsiu, dis(ə) pva(v) uf<sup>23</sup> filhuf:*

—Que vento corre?

—*k(ə) vē(η)tu kqr(ə)?*

—Aguião; do norte.

*du nqut(ə).*

—Bom seria para a vossa viagem . . . .

—*bq səiv<sup>24</sup> p(ə)ıq vqsv*

Eu esperava assistir à façanha . . . .

*ēũ ip(ə)ıqv qstıı q fvsnhv . . . .*

—Vê - la heis.

—*'vq - lv vıj*

—Não . . . sim . . . Lá do alto a

—*nũũ . . . sî . . . lq đũ qltũ v*

verei . . . . A minha morte não vos estorva-  
*va'ıvı . . . v - minhv mqt(ə) nũũ - vuz istuıvı-*

rá a partida . . . numa semana, pela

*'ıq: (v) pqtıđv . . numv s(ə)mıvı, pıv*

festa do Santiago. . . .

*fıstv đə<sup>25</sup> svıııqu . . . .*

Tinha as mãos postas, brancas de cera, a

*tınh qz mđũf pıstvz, đıv(η)kvz đə<sup>25</sup> səıv, v*

face ebúrnea de uma suavidade seráfica, e o

*fqs idurnıv đı umv sũvıđqđ(ə) s(ə)'ıqfıkv, i ũ-*

olhar virado ao alto, contemplando a Vir-

*qlhıı vıqđũ vũ - qııı, kq(η)ıē(m)pıv(n)đũ v 'vıı-*

gem que a estava chamando do céu. Havia

*zđı(η), kî - v - sıqvıv fvmđ(n)d(u) đı - sēũ. vııı*





grande ligeireza, e movimentos rápidos e brus-  
*gãð(n)d lɜvniɛzv, i muvimẽ(n)tuɜ 'rãpiduz i - ðãuf-*  
 cos, sinal de força prodigiosa. Apenas tocára  
*kuf, sinãl d(ə) - fɔfsv pãudiʒiɔzv. vɔɛnɔf tɛkqã*  
 o centro da praça, estacou como deslumbrado,  
*ɔ - sẽ(ɲ)tuu ðv pãqsv, ʒstv'kɔ(ũ) kɔmu d(ɜ)ʒlũ(m)bãqðu,*  
 sacudiu a frente e escarvando a terra impa-  
*sɔkudũ v - fãð(ɲ)t i ʒkɔvãv(n)dũ v - tɛrrv ɜ(m)pɔ-*  
 ciente, soltou um mugido feroz no meio do  
*sĩẽ(ɲ)l(ɔ), sp'ɔp(ũ) ã muzidu fã'ɔɔ nu - mɔũ du-*  
 silêncio, que sucedera às palmas e gritos dos  
*si'lẽsiũ, k(ɔ) sus(ə)dɛã q:f - pãlmɔv i gãituz ðuz -*  
 espectadores. Dentro em pouco os capinhas,  
*ʒpɛ(k)tvðɔã(ɜ)f. dẽ(ɲ)tuũ vĩ - pɔ(ũ)k ãf kɔpĩnhɔf,*  
 salvando a pulos as trincheiras, fugiam à ve-  
*sãkvð(n)dũ v - puluz vɔ - ãĩfvãvɔf, fu'ʒiũ q - v(ə)-*  
 locidade espantosa do animal, e dois ou três  
*lusidãd ʒpð(ɲ)tɔzv ðũ vnĩmãl, i - dɔĩz ɔ(ũ) - ãɛf*  
 cavalos expirantes denunciavam a sua fúria.  
*kɔvãluz ʒpĩãv(n)l(ɜ)ʒ d(ə)nũ'sãqvũ v - svv 'fuãv.*

Nenhum dos cavaleiros se atreveu a sair  
*n(ɜ)nhũ(n) duf - kɔvɔlvãuf si - vtiãvẽũ<sup>3</sup> v sv'ia*  
 contra êle. Fêz-se uma pausa. O touro  
*kð(ɲ)tuu ɛl(ə). fɛf - s(ĩ) umv pãũzv. u - tɔ(ũ)ãu*  
 pisava a arena ameaçador e parecia desafiar  
*pĩzv q: ɛɛn qmĩvsvðɔã i - pɔã(ə)svv ðãzvfiã<sup>4</sup>*  
 em vão um contendor. De repente viu-se  
*vĩ - vũ ã(ɲ) kð(ɲ)tiẽ(n)dɔã. d(ə) r(ə)pẽ(ɲ)l(ə) vtu-s*  
 o conde dos Arcos firme na sela provocar  
*u - kð(n)d: uz - qãkuf<sup>5</sup> fiãm nv - sɛlv pãuvukã*  
 o ímpeto da fera e a háslea flexível do  
*u - 'ĩ(ɲ)p̃tu ðv - fɛrv i - 'q: fiãv<sup>6</sup> flɛ'(k)svɛl du -*

<sup>3</sup>vtiãvẽũ    <sup>4</sup>ðãzvfiã    <sup>5</sup>u-kð(n)dduz-qãkuf    <sup>6</sup>i-v-'qfiãv

rojão ranger e estalar, embebendo o ferro no  
*ruʒbũ rōʒɐ i - iʃtolqɐ, imbaðẽndʹ u: fɛru nu-*  
 pescoço musculoso do boi. Um rugido tremendo,  
*pɤfksu muʃkulɔzu ðu- bɔĩ. ũ - ruʒidũ tɔmẽndu,*<sup>8</sup>  
 uma aclamação imensa do anfiteatro interior, e  
 um *qklɔmɔsũ imẽso ðũ 'bɔi''iʒlɔũ i(n)tɔũũ, i -*  
 as vozes triunfaes das trombetas e charamelas  
*vʒ - vɔʒ(ɤ)ʃ tɔũʃqɤʒ ðɔʃ - tɔp(m)bɛtɔʒ i - ʃɔɔmɛlɔʒ*  
 encerraram esta sorte brilhante. Quando o  
*isɔ'rqɔbũ<sup>9</sup> ɛʃtɔ sɔɔt(ɔ) bɔilhɔ(n)t(ɤ). kuɔ(n)d ũ -*  
 nobre mancebo passou a galope por baixo  
*nɔbɔ(ɔ) mɔsɛbũ pɔ'sɔ(ũ) v - ɔɔlɔp(ɔ) puɔ - bɔĩʃu*  
 do camarote, diante do qual pouco antes  
*ðu - kɔmɔɔɔt(ɔ), ðið(n)t(ɔ) ðũ - kũqɔ pɔ(ũ)kũ v(n)t(ɤ)ʃ*  
 fizera ajoelhar o cavalo, a mão alva e breve  
*fizɐɔ qʒũɔlhqɔ u - kɔvɔlu, v - mɔũ ɔlvɔ i - bɔɛv*  
 de uma dama deixou cair uma rosa, e o  
*ð(i) - umv ðɔmɔ ðɔv'ʃɔ(ũ) kɔ'ia umv - rɔʒv, i - u -*  
 conde, curvando - se com donaire sôbre  
*kɔ(n)d(ɔ), kuɔ'vɔ(n)du - s(ɤ) kɔ(n) ðunqɔɔ(ɔ) sɔbɔ*  
 os arçôes, apanhou a flor do chão sem  
*uz - vɔʃsɔɤʒ, vɔpɔ'nhɔ(ũ) v - ʃlɔɔ ðu - ʃvũ sɔĩ*  
 afrouxar a carreira, levou - a aos lábios, e  
*vɔʃɔ(ũ)ʃqɔ v - kɔrvɔɔ, l(ɔ)'vɔ(ũ)(v) ɔ: ʒ 'lqðũuz, i -*  
 meteu - a no peito. Investindo depois com  
*m(ɔ)'tɛũ - v nu - pɔvɔɔ. iv(ɤ)ʃtĩndu<sup>10</sup> d(ɔ)pɔĩʃ kɔ*  
 o touro, tornado imóvel com a raiva concen-  
*u - tɔ(ũ)ɔu, tɔɔnqðũ i'mɔvɛɔ kɔ v - rɔĩvɔ kɔsɛ(n)-*  
 trada, rodeou - o estreitando em volta dêle os  
*tɔqðv, ru'diɔ(ũ) - u ʒʃtɔvɔ(n)ðũ ði vɔltɔ ðɛɔ uʃ-*  
 círculos até chegar quási a pôr - lhe a - mão  
*'sɔɔkuluʒ v'tɛ ʃ(ɤ)qɔr kũqʒ(i) v - pɔɔ - lh v - mɔũ*

<sup>7</sup>ɛbaðẽd<sup>8</sup>ɔmẽdu<sup>9</sup>ɛs'rqɔbũ<sup>10</sup>ivʃtĩndu

na anca.

*n(v) - v(η):kv.*

O mancebo desprezava o perigo e pago até  
*u - mōsēðu dīspīəzəv<sup>11</sup> q - pīgu, i - pəgũ v'tē*  
 da morte pelos sorrisos, que seus olhos furta-  
*đv - mət(ə) pluf suizuf, k sēũz qlhuf fu'iq-*  
 vam de longe, levou o arrôjo a arripiar  
*vũũ(n) d(ə) - lḡz(ə), l(ə)və(ũ) ũ - vɾəzũ q: r(ə)pīq*  
 a testa do touro com a ponta da lança.  
*o tēftv đu - tə(ũ)u kḡ v - pḡ(η)tv đv - lḡsv.*  
 Precipitou - se então o animal com fúria cega  
*pīəspī'tp-s<sup>12</sup> īnlũũ<sup>13</sup> ũ - vniməl kḡ 'fuiv sēgə*  
 e irresistível. O cavalo baqueou trespassado, e  
*i: rəzīf'tivēl.<sup>14</sup> u - kvəlu đv'kīə(ũ) t(ə)fpəsqđu, i -*  
 o cavaleiro, ferido na perna, não pôde le-  
*u - kvvvlũu, fīđu nv - pərv, nũũ(m) pəd(ə) l(ə)-*  
 vantar - se. Voltando sôbre êle o boi enrai-  
*vũ(n)lq - s(ə). vplīv(n)đu sḡḡ(ĩ) el u - ḡḡ īrql-*  
 vecido arremessou - o aos ares, esperou - lhe a  
*vəšīđu<sup>15</sup> vɾ(ə)m'sə(ũ)-u vũz - q(ə)f, īf'pīə(ũ) - lh v-*  
 queda nas armas, e não se arredou senão  
*kēđv nvz - qīmvz, i nũũ sī - vɾ(ə)'đə(ũ) s(ə)nũũ*  
 quando, assentando - lhe as patas sôbre o  
*kũv(n)đu vsḡ(η)'līv(n)đu - lh v - pqləf sḡḡ u -*  
 peito, conheceu que o seu inimigo era um  
*pvltu, kuη(ə)sēũ kī - u - sēũ in(ə)mīgu ɛv ũ(η)-*  
 cadáver.  
*kv'đqvə.*

Este doloroso lance ocorreu com a velocidade  
*ēft(ə) dulvīəzə lḡs qkureũ<sup>16</sup> kə v v(ə)lusīđqđ:-*  
 do raio. Estava já consumada a tragédia, e  
*u<sup>17</sup> - rəũ. īftqvə zq kḡsumqđ q - tvzēđv, i -*

<sup>11</sup>*dīspīəzəv*

<sup>12</sup>*pīspī'tp-s*

<sup>13</sup>*ēlũũ*

<sup>14</sup>*ī-irz'tivēl*

<sup>15</sup>*ērqīvsīđu*

<sup>16</sup>*ukureũ*

<sup>17</sup>*đu*

não havia expirado ainda o eco dos últimos  
*nõũ v'vĩo ʔspĩqđũ v'ĩ(n)dv ỹ - ɛku ðuz 'ultimuz*  
 aplausos.

*vplqũzuf.*

Rebello da Silva, "Última corrida de touros  
*r(ə)ðɛlu dv - sĩlvv, 'ultĩv kũrĩdv đ(ə) tɔ(ũ)ɹuz*  
 em Salvaterra."

*õĩ sɒlvv'tɛrv.*

## XII. THE ARTICLE

60. The article, whether definite or indefinite, precedes its noun and agrees with it in gender and number.

### A. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

61. The definite article has the following forms:

	Singular	Plural
Masculine	<i>o</i>	<i>os</i>
Feminine	<i>a</i>	<i>as</i>
<i>o pai</i> 'the father'		<i>os pais</i> 'the fathers'
<i>a mãe</i> 'the mother'		<i>as mães</i> 'the mothers'

62. Other forms of the definite article:

(a) The old Portuguese and Spanish article *el* is used conventionally, as a term of respect, only with the word *rei* 'king,' and generally only when speaking of a reigning Portuguese king:

*apresentados a el-rei* 'having been presented to the king;'

*o rei*, though less respectful, may also be used:

*o título do rei de Portugal era 'Fidelíssimo'* 'the title of the king of Portugal was 'the most faithful.' '

*El* and the preposition *de* 'of' are usually contracted to *del* or *d'el*:

*eu falo del rei Dom Pedro* 'I speak of King Peter,' or  
*o primeiro ministro de el-rei D. José* 'the prime minister of King Joseph.'

(b) In the popular speech only to-day, but formerly as a rule, when the article comes immediately after a word ending in *r* or *s*, the older forms of the article, viz., *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*, are preserved and the final *r* or *s* is assimilated to the following *l*:

*todos os dias* > *todos los dias* (pron. *topolos dias*) 'every day' (literally, 'all the days'); *ambos os braços* > *ambos los braços* (pron. *ambolos braços*) 'both arms' (literally, 'both the arms'); *vês as casas* > *vês las casas* (pron. *velas casas*) 'thou seest the houses'; *ambas as pernas* > *ambas las pernas* 'both legs'; *ver o pai* 'to see the father' and *vês o pai* 'thou seest the father' are both pronounced *vê-lo pai*.

### Contractions

63. The definite article is contracted with certain prepositions to form one word, as follows:

Definite Article:    *o*    *a*    *os*    *as*

Prepositions:

*a* 'to'                      *ao*    *à*    *aos*    *às* (some write *ás*)

*de* 'of'                    *do*    *da*    *dos*    *das*

*em* 'in' 'on'            *no*    *na*    *nos*    *nas*

*por* 'by' 'through'    *pelo* *pela* *pelos* *pelas*

The spellings *d'o*, *d'a*, *n'o*, *n'a*, *pe'lo*, *pe'la*, etc., are incorrect.

*Por* in composition with the article or a pronoun is now substituted by the old preposition *per* (688). *Polo* and *pola* are antiquated forms, and colloquially *por o*, *por a*, *por os*, and *por as* are used instead of *pelo*, *pela*, etc.

### Notes on the Contractions

64. (a) *À* is sometimes a syntactical substitution for *a moda de*:

*vestido à Luiz XV* 'dressed in the style of Louis XV,'  
*à antiga* 'in the old style,' *à portuguesa* 'in the Portuguese style.'

(b) Uncontracted *a la* 'according to' 'after the fashion of' is archaic and survives in a few expressions only:

*a la fé* 'upon my word,' *a la larga* 'in the long run.'  
In *alfim* (for *a la fim*) 'at length,' the preservation of the *l* is due to the syncopation of the second vowel.

(c) When the preposition which precedes the article governs not the article but the verb in the sentence, the two elements are kept separate:

*o facto de as* (not *das*) *manhãs estarem frescas* 'the fact that the mornings are cool.'

(d) *No, na, nos, nas* result from the nasalization of *l* due to a preceding *m*:

*em lo mundo* > *em no mundo* > *e no mundo* > *no mundo*  
'in the world;' *em la cidade* > *em na cidade* > *e na cidade*  
> *na cidade* 'in the city.'

(e) *Em* and the article are sometimes kept separate in order to avoid the repetition of the same sound at the beginning of several consecutive words:

*Ele não entrará nunca em o número dos eleitos* 'he will never enter into the number of the elect.'

(f) If the definite article is part of the title of a book or review, practice differs. According to some writers, a preposition introducing the article is separated from it by a hyphen or an apostrophe and is not italicized or placed within quotation marks:

*n-O* Dicionário Português de Morais 'in Morais's Portuguese Dictionary,' *um representante de A Época* 'a representative of *A Época*,' *em os* University of Chicago Studies 'in the "University of Chicago Studies."'

(g) According to others, the preposition and the article are not separated:

*li hoje no Século* (not *em o Século*) 'I read to-day in the *Século*,' *comprei um exemplar do Mundo* (not



*de o Mundo*) 'I bought a copy of the *Mundo*,'  
*o autor da "Vida de Cristo,"* 'the author of the "Life  
 of Christ."'

But if the article is an essential part of the name of a place, or the preposition *a* precedes 'A' of the title, the preposition and the article are usually welded together:

*A Revista do Pôrto* 'The Review of Oporto,' *o autor de*  
 "O Bobo" 'the author of "the Clown"' (a work by  
 Herculano), *à Época* 'to *A Época*;' but also *parece*  
*a A Tarde* 'it is the opinion of *A Tarde*.'

(h) The name of a newspaper, when plural, takes the plural article:

*as* (not *o* or *a*) *Novidades*, name of a well known  
 Lisbon journal (cf. 132).

### Principal Uses of the Definite Article

65. The definite article is regularly expressed before each word to which it belongs, especially if the words differ in gender or number or in both, or convey an unlikeness of meaning:

(*o dia e (a) noite* '(the) day and (the) night,'  
 (*a luz e (as) trevas* 'light and darkness,' (*os*)  
*velhos e os moços* '(the) old and (the) young,'  
 (*os grandes e (os) pequenos* '(the) great and (the)  
 small,' (*os homens e (as) mulheres* '(the) men and  
 (the) women.'

But if they convey a similar meaning, even though they are not of the same gender, the article is usually expressed only with the first word (86):

*os males e (as) calamidades* 'evils and misfortunes,'  
*a mudança e (a) variedade das línguas* 'the change  
 and variety of languages.'

66. If an adjective precedes the first of two or more plural nouns which it modifies and which are joined together by *e* 'and,' the definite article is expressed only with the first noun:

*as principais cidades, províncias e terras do mundo*  
'the principal cities, provinces, and countries of the world.'

67. If a plural noun is modified by two or more adjectives or dependent nouns which follow it in the singular, the article is not repeated with the adjectives or dependent nouns:

*as línguas portuguesa e inglesa* 'the Portuguese and English languages,' *os livros primeiro, segundo e terceiro de César* 'the first, second, and third books of Caesar,' *os exércitos da Alemanha e da França* 'the armies of Germany and of France.'

But if the noun is singular, either of the following constructions may be employed, the article being expressed if the idea is distributive, but not if collective:

*a língua portuguesa e a língua inglesa* or *a língua portuguesa e a inglesa*; *o primeiro, segundo e terceiro livro de César*; *o exército da Alemanha e o da França encontraram-se* ('met,' as foes); but *o exército da A. e da F. combateram* ('fought,' as allies).

68 (a) The definite article, most often in the masculine singular, may be used with any part of speech, and even with the letters of the alphabet, numbers, or phrases, used substantively:

*o sublime e o formoso* 'the sublime and the beautiful,'  
*o viajar não é sem perigo* 'travelling is not without

danger,' *defender o pró ou (o) contra* 'to defend the pro or the con,' *os porquês de Deus são só a êle manifestos* 'God's reasons (literally 'whys') are known only to Himself,' *o cinco* 'the five,' *é a hora dos comes e bebes* 'it is the hour for eating and drinking.'

(b) It is also used to turn appellatives into proper names (73).

#### With Place-Names

69 (a) The definite article, masculine or feminine as the case may be, is used before most names of continents, countries, provinces, mountains, rivers, and large bodies of water:

*a Alemanha* 'Germany,' *a América*, *a Ásia*, *a Baixa Bretanha* 'Brittany,' *a Bélgica* 'Belgium,' *o Brasil*, *o Canadá*, *a China*, *a Espanha* 'Spain,' *a Europa*, *a Grécia* 'Greece,' *a Índia*, *a Inglaterra* 'England,' *o México* (the country), *a Normandia* 'Normandy,' *o Panamá*, *a Rússia*, *o Saará*, the names of the Portuguese provinces *o Alentejo*, *o Algarve*, *a Beira*, *a Galiza*, and *o Minho* (but not with *Trás-os-Montes*), the Brazilian States *a Bahia* (Bata) and *a Parahyba* (Paraíba) (but not with *Alagoas*, *Mato-Grosso*, *Minas Gerais*, *Pernambuco*, *Santa Catarina*, *São Paulo*, *Sergipe*), *os Andes*, *os Apeninos*, *o Etna*, *o Vesúvio*, *o Amazonas*, *o Atlântico*, *o Bósforo*, *o Sêna* 'the Seine,' *o Têjo* 'the Tagus.'

(b) Except: *Portugal*, *Castela* 'Castile,' *Guatemala*, *Marrôcos* 'Morocco,' *Navarra* 'Navarre,' *Nicarágua*, *San Salvador*, and a few more.

70. The names of some countries, *Espanha*, *França*, *Inglaterra*, and *Itália*, may be used with or without the definite article after a preposition:

*estar em* (or less often *na*) *Espanha* 'to be in Spain,'  
*vir de* (or less often *da*) *França* 'to come from  
 France.' Formerly *África*, *Ásia*, and *Grécia* were  
 also so used, but, although more common, *em*  
*África* 'in Africa' is not as correct as *na África*.

The article should be expressed after a preposition before the names *Amazonas* and *Minas Gerais* (Brazilian states), *Brasil*, *Índia*, and *Rússia*.

71. The definite article is used before the names of some large islands and especially when a whole group of islands is meant:

*a Austrália*, *a Oceânia*, *a Sicília* 'Sicily,' *o Japão*  
 'Japan,' *a Madeira*, *os Açores* 'the Azores,' *a*  
*Córsega* 'Corsica,' *a Islândia* 'Iceland,' but not  
 with *Bornêu*, *Crêta* 'Crete,' *Cuba*, *Moçambique*,  
*as Filipinas* 'the Philippines,' and a few more.

Frequently the name of the island or group of islands is placed in apposition to *a(s) ilha(s)* 'the island(s),' or is followed by *de* 'of:'

*a ilha de Cuba*, *as ilhas Baqmas* (or *de Baqma*).

72. If a place-name, otherwise without the article, is qualified by a prepositional phrase or by an adjective not forming part of the name, or if the name is plural, the article is used before it:

*os Estados Unidos* 'the United States,' *os Países*  
*Baixos* 'the Netherlands,' *o Portugal do norte é*  
*belo* 'northern Portugal is beautiful,' *o Portugal*

*de ontem* 'the Portugal of yesterday,' *a Lisboa de nossos dias* 'Lisbon of our own days;' but not in the title of a book, *Lisboa em camisa* 'Lisbon in its Shirt.'

73. In general the definite article is omitted with the names of towns and cities:

*Berlim, Coimbra, Lisboa, Paris*; except when they are called after nature and the article forms an essential part of the name:

*o Pôrto* 'the Port,' *a Baía (Bahia)* 'the Bay,' *o Funchal* 'the place set with fennel,' *o Rio de Janeiro* 'the River of January;' similarly *o Cairo, a Figueira (da Foz), a Havana, a Haia* 'the Hague,' *o Havre, a Terceira* (one of the Azores).

74. The definite article is omitted with compound place-names that are appellatives:

*Vila-Nova, Ponte-Alegre, Pôrto Rico, Pôrto Belo*, etc., and generally when the name of a country, preceded by *de*, is equivalent to an adjective of nationality, origin, or description:

*o queijo de Suíça* 'Swiss cheese,' *a rainha de Espanha* 'the Queen of Spain.'

75. No article is used before *casa* 'house,' when it means merely 'at home' or 'from home':

*sair de casa* 'to go out,' *estar em casa* 'to be at home,' *ficar em casa* 'to remain at home,' *chegar a casa* 'to arrive home,' *ir a* (or *para*) *casa* 'to go home,' *vir de casa* 'to come from home;' but *ser da casa* 'to be one of the family.'

The article is also expressed if *casa* is modified by an adjective or other term (except one that determines the owner of the house): *queria ir à casa alheia* 'I want to go to another's house.'

On the other hand, in familiar conversation, the word for 'house' 'home,' etc., is sometimes omitted and only the preposition and article are expressed, or an auxiliary verb is used absolutely:

- \* *ir à Portugália* (= *ir à livraria a Portugália*) 'to go to the Portugalia bookstore,' *ir ao Trindade* (= *ir ao teatro da Trindade*) 'to go to the (theatre of the) Trinity,' *o patrão está?* 'is the boss in?' *não está* 'no.'

76. Of the points of the compass, *norte* 'north' is always used with the article, *sul* 'south' usually with it, and *este* 'east' and *oeste* 'west,' without it:

*para o norte* 'to the north,' *ao sul* 'in the south.'

#### With Personal Names

77. (a) Unmodified given names in general are not preceded by the definite article (c, *infra*):

*o livro de João* 'John's book;' but in familiar speech it is frequently used before the name of a person with whom the speaker is familiar: *onde está o Carlos?* 'where is Charles?' *é a Teresa* 'it is Theresa.'

(b) It is used before an adjective that is in apposition with the name of a celebrated person:

*D. Afonso o sábio* 'Alphonsus the Learned,' *Pedro o grande* 'Peter the Great;' but there are exceptions: *Alexandre Magno* 'Alexander the Great,' *Carlos Magno* 'Charlemagne,' *Frederico Barbarrøxa*, *Ri-*

*quando Coração de Leão* 'Richard the Lion-Hearted.'

(c) It is expressed before the family name of some celebrated persons, but rarely before the given name:

*o Ariosto, o Byron, o Tasso, o Gama* 'Vasco da Gama,' *leio o Camões* 'I am reading Camões,' *Horácio* 'Horace.' *O Dante* is an exception (cf. Span. *el Dante*, but Ital. *l'Alighieri*). *Cristo, o Cristo, Jesus Cristo*, and *Jesus* (but not *o Jesus* except rarely, by children) are still used.

(d) Similarly, in the feminine singular, before the names of famous singers and actresses:

*ouvi a Patti na Traviata* 'I heard Patti in *La Traviata*,' *vi a Bernhardt no Aiglon* 'I saw Bernhardt in *L'Aiglon*.'

(e) The plural article with the name of a person in the singular signifies individuals who have gifts or qualities which make them comparable to the person famous for such gifts or qualities:

*os Heine* 'poets like Heine,' *os Washington* 'men like Washington.'

(f) The article is used before a personal name preceded by an adjective:

*a formosa Helena* 'the beautiful Helen,' *o eloquente Cícero* 'the eloquent Cicero;' except before *Santo*, *São* (78, c).

(g) When a geographical term is part of a personal name, the article may be omitted:

*Paulo Veronês* (of *Verona*), *Scipião* (generally with *o*) *Africano* 'Scipio Africanus.'

(h) The article is usually omitted before a personified word:

*Amor* 'Love,' *Fortuna* 'Fortune,' *Natureza* 'Nature,'  
*Bóreas*, *Zéfiro*.

### With Titles and in Apposition

78. (a) When a proper name is preceded by a title or by an adjective having the force of a title, the article is used before the title, except in direct address (78, d):

*o senhor Costa* 'Mr. Costa,' *o coronel Amado*  
'Colonel Amado,' *o presidente Pessoa* 'President  
Pessoa,' *o padre Matias* 'Father Matthias,' *o Sr.*  
*Cônsul da América* 'the American Consul,' *Minerva*  
(but *a sábia Minerva*) *plantou a oliveira* 'Minerva  
(but 'the learned Minerva') planted the olive tree,'  
*o pequeno Billy* 'little Billy.'

(b) But when a given name is preceded by *Dom* (in Portugal a title of the highest nobility), *Dona* 'lady,' *Frei* 'brother,' *Sóror* (shortened *Sór*) 'lay-sister,' and a few more titles, and the title is not preceded by *Senhor*, *Senhora* or otherwise, the article is omitted before the title:

*Dom João*, *Dona Beatriz de Sousa*, *Frei José*.  
But *a Senhora Dona Maria Alves*, *a Senhora*  
*Marquesa*.

(c) *Santo*, *São*, etc. (152. 1) are regarded as part of the name of a saint, and consequently are not preceded by the article:

*Santo António* 'Saint Anthony.'

(d) In direct address the article is omitted before *enhor* in case a title follows:



*que diz a isto, senhor doutor?* 'what do you say to that, doctor?' *toma chocolate, senhora condessa?* 'do you take chocolate, countess?' *bons dias, senhor capitão* 'good morning, captain.'

(e) The article is omitted when a possessive adjective constitutes an essential part of a title:

*sua* (or *vossa*) *majestade* 'his (or 'your') majesty,' *vossa excelência* 'your excellency,' *minha senhora* 'madam;' or modifies a noun of address: *às* (*suas*) *ordens, meu coronel* 'at your orders, colonel,' *sim, meu pai* 'yes, father.'

(f) A numeral, indicating the order of succession of sovereigns or pontiffs, is not accompanied by the article unless the numeral precedes the name:

*Carlos quinto* 'Charles the Fifth,' *o sexto Afonso* 'Alphonsus the Sixth.'

(g) Nouns in apposition or in the predicate are generally without the article when following the name:

*Santiago (a) capital do Chile* 'Santiago, the capital of Chile,' *D. Pedro foi imperador do Brasil* 'Dom Pedro was emperor of Brazil.'

(h) But the article is used when the apposition serves to distinguish, contrast, or compare, or is in the superlative (except *primeiro* 'first,' *último* 'last,' etc.):

*Edison, o célebre inventor* 'Edison, the celebrated inventor,' *Cristóvão Colombo, o mais célebre descobridor de todos os tempos* 'Christopher Columbus, the most celebrated discoverer of all times,' *Washington, primeiro chefe do povo americano*, 'Washington, first head of the American people.'

In this case the article is often omitted colloquially:

*Dumas pai e Dumas filho* 'Dumas *père* and Dumas *fiis*.'

For the omission of the indefinite article in similar circumstances, see 96.

(i) The article is usually required before a noun in apposition with a personal pronoun:

*nós os alunos* or *nós outros alunos* 'we students,'

*V. Ex<sup>as</sup>: as senhoras* 'you ladies;' but not when the pronoun is modified: *nós, estudantes de medicina* 'we, students of medicine,' unless, for example, to contrast *nós os estudantes de medicina* with *os estudantes de letras*, *os estudantes de direito* 'students of letters' 'students of law.'

#### In Expressions of Possession

79 (a) The definite article is generally expressed before a possessive not indicating relationship (80):

*o meu relógio* 'my watch,' *as suas casas* 'your houses,'

*o seu é melhor* 'his is better.'

In more familiar style, however, and in such combinations as *com sua licença* 'with your permission,' *por tua causa* 'for your sake,' *por maior conveniência sua* 'for your greater convenience,' it is omitted. In Brazil there is a tendency to dispense with the definite article before possessives.

(b) The definite article is generally omitted before possessives when they stand alone in the predicate after such verbs as *ser* 'to be' and *tornar-se* 'to become.'

*êste livro é meu* 'this book is mine,' *êsse é seu* 'that is his.'

Except when it is desired to make the meaning more precise or to distinguish the possession of one person from that of another:

*de quem é este livro?* 'whose book is this?' *é o meu* 'it is mine,' *é o meu livro* 'it is my book,' *é meu vizinho* 'he is my neighbor' (one of several neighbors), *é o meu vizinho* 'it is my (only) neighbor;' *esta casa é minha* or *esta casa é a minha* 'this house is mine' (the former indicating rather ownership, the latter, residence), *dois dos seus cães* 'two of his dogs,' *os seus dois cães* 'his two dogs' (289).

(c) The article is expressed with a possessive in the predicate in answering the question 'which?':

*qual das penas é a sua?* *esta é a minha* 'which of the pens is yours?' 'this is mine;' but *de quem é esta pena?* *é minha* 'whose pen is this?' 'it is mine.'

(d) As far as possible, without being ambiguous, the definite article is substituted for the possessive adjective when the subject of the verb is also the possessor. This is especially the case with nouns describing parts or a condition of the body or of articles of clothing (277). In some cases, even the article may be omitted:

*estou com (as) mãos sujas* 'my hands are soiled,' *tenho os olhos cansados* 'my eyes are tired,' *dê-me a mão* 'give me your hand,' *tiraram os chapéus* 'they took off their hats,' *ter (os) olhos negros* 'to have black eyes,' *ele tem as mãos compridas* 'he has long hands,' *tinha o chapéu na cabeça* 'he kept his hat on his head,' *cortei o dedo* 'I cut my finger,' *rasguei*

*o vestido* 'I tore my clothes,' *dõem-me os dentes*  
*or tenho uma dor de dentes* 'I have a toothache.'

### In Expressions of Relationship

80. (a) The definite article is ordinarily omitted (especially in direct address and in familiar conversation) before an unmodified possessive adjective in the singular which modifies a noun of family<sup>7</sup> relationship:

*meu pai* 'my father,' *minha mãe* 'my mother;' but  
*o seu filho Jorge* 'his son George,' *Nosso-Pai*  
 'Our Father,' *Nosso-Senhôr* 'Our Lord,' *Nossa-*  
*Senhora* 'Our Lady;' but (a) *Nossa Senhora das*  
*Dores* 'Our Lady of Sorrows.'

Augmentatives and diminutives count as modifiers:

*o seu filhinho* 'your little son,' *a sua lindíssima*  
*irmã* 'your very pretty sister.'

(b) As far as possible the article takes the place of a possessive (79.d):

*o* (or *o meu*) *papá está doente* 'my father is ill,'  
*como está a* (or *a sua*) *irmãzinha?* 'how is your  
 little sister?'

### With Abstracts and in a General Sense

81 (a) The tendency is to omit the article (definite or indefinite) with abstracts and other substantives used in a general sense, especially if they have no complement:

*com licença* 'excuse me,' *tenha paciência* 'have  
 patience,' *fazer guerra* 'to make war,' *falar* (a)  
*verdade* 'to tell the truth,' *pobreza não é vileza*  
 'poverty is no crime.'

But *tenha a paciência de ler esta carta* 'have the patience to read this letter,' *a pobreza deste homem é abjecta* 'the poverty of this man is abject.'

(b) The article is required before a noun denoting, in the singular, a matter, a substance, or a whole class, and, in the plural, all the individuals or parts of a class:

*o pão é feito de farinha* 'bread is made of flour,' *as mulheres amam os adôrnos* 'women love ornaments.'

(c) The article is omitted in a partitive sense:

*comemos uvas* 'we eat grapes,' *bebo vinho* 'I drink wine.'

(d) The article is usually omitted in condensed sentences, such as enumerations, definitions, and proverbial expressions, and in the titles of books and advertisements:

(a) *biologia é a ciência da vida* 'biology is the science of life,' *últimas notícias* 'the latest news,' *homem morto não fala* 'dead men tell no tales,' *falar é prata, calar é ouro* 'speech is silver, silence is gold,' *História da Civilização Lusitana* 'The History of Portuguese Civilization.' The expression, *Revista de língua portuguesa*, for example, is much more restricted in scope than *Revista da língua portuguesa* 'Review of the Portuguese Language.'

#### In Expressions of Time

82. (a) The definite article is generally used in expressions of time (except with the name of the month,

82, c) when modified by *próximo* 'next,' *passado* 'past' 'last,' and the like:

*o qno próximo* 'next year,' *a semana passada* 'last week.'

(b) It is combined with a preposition in such expressions as:

*às duas horas* 'at two o'clock,' *no inverno* 'in winter,' *pela tarde* 'about evening,' *pela manhã* 'in the morning,' *cheguei à meia-noite* 'I arrived at midnight,' *virei ao meio-dia* 'I will come at noon,' *em* (or *no*) *dia de páscoa* 'on Easter day,' *outro dia* 'some other day' 'one of these days' 'next day,' *noutro* (= *em outro*) *dia* 'on another day' (undetermined), but *no outro* (= *em o outro*) *dia* 'on another day' (determined), also the equivalent of *há dias* 'the other day' 'some days ago' 'recently.'

If the name of a feast day is used attributively, no article is used before it:

*pelo Natal* 'at Christmas,' *cântico de Natal* 'Christmas carol.'

(c) The article is omitted before the name of the month unless the sense of the latter is restricted:

*em julho* 'in July,' *em* (or *por*, *nos*, or *pelos*, *fins*) *fim de setembro* 'at the end of September;' but *todo o* (sc. *mês de*) *julho esteve quentíssimo* 'the whole month of July was very hot,' *janeiro geralmente é frio* 'January is generally cold,' but *o janeiro deste qno esteve* (or *foi*) *frio* 'January of this year was cold.'

It is sometimes omitted before nouns of number indicating dates:

*a* (or *aos*) *dezassete de maio* 'May 17,' *a 1* (= *um*) (or *no primeiro*) *de março* 'the first of March.'

(d) It is sometimes used with the number of the year, unless the name of the month precedes:

*o 1919* '1919,' *no mil novecentos oitenta-e-sete* 'in 1987;' but *primeiro de março de 1924* 'the first of March, 1924;' but *o primeiro de dezembro de 1640 é uma data célebre na história de Portugal* 'the first of December 1640 is a celebrated date in the history of Portugal.'

(e) Usage differs as to the use of the article with the names of the days of the week:

*chega (na) quarta-feira próxima* (or *que vem*) or *chega na próxima quarta-feira* 'he comes next Wednesday.' The article is required if the words are used distributively or in a general sense: *vem ver-me ao domingo* 'he comes to see me (only) on Sunday' (or 'every Sunday'), *o vapor parte todas as terças-feiras* 'the boat leaves every Tuesday,' *há aula às* (or *nas*) *quintas- e sextas-feiras*; *não há aula aos* (or *nos*) *sábados* 'there is a class on Thursdays and Fridays; there is no class on Saturdays.'

### In Expressions of Measure

83. The definite article is used with distributive force to denote rate, with words signifying weight, measure, or distance (703.5):

*custa dois mil réis o metro* 'it costs two milréis a

meter,' *dez centavos a dúzia* 'ten cents a dozen,'  
*duas bolsas a um escudo a peça* 'two purses at a  
 dollar apiece.'

84. It is often used, unlike English, in expressing fractions:

*salvou as três quartas partes da colheita* 'he saved  
 three-fourths of the harvest.'

85. For its use in constructing the superlative degree,  
 see 156. a.

#### With a Series of Objects

86. The definite article is omitted with nouns which  
 form an enumeration, unless diversity of meaning is  
 intended (65):

*soldados, oficiais, cidadãos, todos se apressaram*  
 'soldiers, officers, citizens, everybody made haste,'  
*beleza, talento, espírito, tudo se gasta* 'beauty, talent,  
 spirit, everything is wasted,' *Espanha, Itália,*  
*Bélgica, tudo se revoltou* 'Spain, Italy, Belgium,  
 all revolted;' but *virá a julgar os vivos e os mortos*  
 'He shall come to judge the living and the dead.'

#### With Names of Languages

87. (a) An adjective of nationality, in the masculine  
 singular and denoting the language of a country, usually  
 takes the definite article:

*estudando entendo (o) português* 'by studying, I  
 understand Portuguese,' *saber (o) grego* 'to know  
 Greek.'

(b) But, in familiar speech, the article may be  
 omitted immediately after *entender* 'to understand,'



*falqr* 'to speak,' *traduzir* and *verter* 'to translate,' and *em* 'in:'

*em alemão* 'in German,' *em língua russa* (or *em russo*) 'in the Russian language,' *traduzir de inglês para* (or *em*) *português* 'to translate from English into Portuguese.'

After *falqr* there is a shade of difference in meaning depending on the presence or absence of the article before the name of the language:

*falqr português*, for example, means simply that a person is speaking or is able to speak Portuguese; *falqr o português*, on the other hand, is used when the statement is modified by some qualification, as *fala o português com a mesma facilidade com que o escreve* 'he speaks Portuguese with the same ease with which he writes it.'

The article is omitted when the name of the language has merely the force of an adjective:

*uma lição de italiano* 'a lesson in Italian,' *um professor de latim* 'a professor of Latin.' Similarly *a Faculdade de Letras* 'the Faculty of Letters.'

With *ambos*, *todo*, *outro*, etc.

88. (a) The definite article (or a demonstrative adjective) in the plural is required after *ambos*, *ambas* 'both:'

*ambos os irmãos* 'both brothers,' *ambos os dois* 'both,' *ambas estas mãos* 'both these hands.'

(b) When *todo*, -a 'all' (360), standing in the singular before a noun, is the equivalent of *qualquer* and means

'any' 'each' or 'every,' the definite article is occasionally omitted after it:

*tôda (a) casa* 'any house,' *em (or por) tôda (a) parte* 'any part,' *tôdo (o) homem* 'every man' 'each man,' *em tôdo (o) caso* 'in any case,' *tôda (a) cidade é ruidosa* 'every city is noisy.'

(c) But when, in the singular or the plural, *tôdo* stands before a noun and means 'entire' 'complete' or the whole in all its parts, it requires the definite article, a demonstrative or possessive pronoun, or a numeral after it:

*tôdo o resto* 'all the rest,' *tôda a semana* 'all the week' 'the entire week,' *tôda a nação* 'the entire nation,' *em tôda a minha vida* 'in all my life,' *tôdo este século* 'all this century,' *alarmou tôda a casa* 'he alarmed the whole house,' *era tôda a sua obra ameaçada* 'all his work was threatened,' *percorreu tôda a avenida* 'he traversed the entire avenue,' *tôdos os nossos esforços* 'all our efforts,' *tôdo o homem é mortal* or *tôdos os homens são mortais* 'all men (that is, all the individuals constituting the human race) are mortal,' *tôdos os dez dias* 'every ten days,' *tôdo o mundo* 'the whole world' 'all mankind' 'everybody,' *tôdo o país ficou imerso na água* 'the whole country was immersed in water,' *tôda a espécie de águas* 'all sorts of waters.'

In the plural, preceded by the definite article, *tôdos*, *tôdas* is the equivalent of *cada*:

*tôdos os meses* 'each (or 'every') month,' *tôdas as*

*crianças que vi* 'all the children I saw,' *todos os santos* 'all the saints.'

(d) Standing after the noun and agreeing with it, *todo* is more emphatic and sometimes means all the parts of an object:

*percorri a cidade toda* 'I ran through all parts of the city,' *a população toda estava reunida ao pé do incêndio* 'all the population were gathered at the fire,' *o mundo todo* 'the whole world,' *a cidade toda ficou imersa na água* 'all parts of the city were immersed in the water,' *queimou-se a casa toda* 'all parts of the house were burned,' *onde tem estado este tempo todo?* 'where have you been all this time?' *avô das árvores todas da minha terra* 'grandfather of all the trees in my land.'

(e) No article is required before a numeral in apposition with *todo*:

*todos cinco* 'all five,' *o pai chamou-os todos sete* 'the father called all seven of them,' except when used distributively: *todos os cinco dias* 'every five days.'

(f) *Todo*, -a, etc., when used adverbially does not take the article (176).

(g) In coördination with *ou* 'or' and *nem* 'nor,' and in such correlative expressions as 'the one and the other,' it is not the practice to repeat the article, and sometimes it is not necessary to express it at all (97):

*todo o homem ou mulher* 'every man or woman,'  
*nenhum homem nem mulher* 'no man or woman,'

*nesses dias não houve nem comer nem dormir* 'in those days there was neither eating nor sleeping.'

- (h) But the article is used in *à uma—e à outra* (where  $\grave{a} = a + a$ ), a colloquialism for *por uma parte—e por outra* or *por um lado—e por outro* 'on the one hand—and on the other.'

(i) The relative *qual* (315) is generally preceded by the definite article. But when interrogative or correlative to *tal* the article is omitted.

### In Set Phrases

89. (a) The definite article is employed in many adverbial phrases, frequently with *dar* 'to give' and *fazer* 'to do,' and in fixed expressions not easily classified, such as:

*dar os bons dias* 'to wish good morning,' *dar as boas noites* 'to say good night,' *dar os pêsames a alguém* 'to condole with a person,' *fazer as suas despedidas* 'to take leave,' *da minha parte* or *pela minha parte* 'as for me' 'for my part,' *dar as boas festas* or *os parabêns* 'to felicitate' 'express best wishes.'

(b) On the other hand, the article is omitted in many expressions such as:

*ir a bordo* 'to go on board,' *vir de bordo* and *vir a terra* 'to come ashore,' *ir para terra* and *saltar em terra* 'to land,' *pôr pé em terra* 'to alight,' *andar em* (or *de*) *carruagem* 'to ride in a carriage,' *andar de chapéu alto* 'to wear a high hat,' *fazer guerra* 'to make war,' *declarar guerra* 'to declare

war,' *pedir perdão* 'to ask pardon,' *pedir esmola* 'to beg alms,' *fazer penitência* 'to do penance,' *ouvir missa* 'to hear Mass,' *a exemplo de* 'after the example of,' *em nome de* 'in the name of,' *em poder de* 'in the power of,' *por vontade de* 'by the favor of,' *a respeito de* 'with regard to,' *ir para férias* 'to go on vacation,' *morrer de tísica* 'to die of consumption,' *perder ânimo* 'to lose courage.'

(c) The best usage is to omit the article after *saber a* 'to taste of,' *cheirar a* 'to smell of,' and their synonyms:

*saber a mel* 'to taste of honey,' *cheirar a tabaco* 'to smell of tobacco.'

(d) The definite article (or no article at all) is used in Portuguese where English employs the indefinite, in such expressions as:

*o rei leva vida ditosa* 'the king leads a happy life,' *o rapaz tem vencimento de quinhentos escudos mensais* 'the young man draws a salary of five hundred escudos a month,' *ao sul de Lisboa está a praia chamada Montestoril* 'south of Lisbon is a seaside resort called Montestoril.'

(e) The definite article is occasionally the equivalent of the demonstrative *aquêle* (303. c).

#### B. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

90. The indefinite article has the following forms:

	Singular	Plural
Masculine	<i>um</i>	<i>uns</i>
Feminine	<i>uma</i>	<i>umas</i>
<i>um livro</i> 'a' or 'one book'		<i>uns homens</i> 'some men'
<i>uma pena</i> 'a' or 'one pen'		<i>umas casas</i> 'some houses'

## Contractions

91. The indefinite article is contracted with the prepositions *de* and *em* (but not with *a*) to form one word, as follows:

Indefinite article:	<i>um</i>	<i>uma</i>	<i>uns</i>	<i>umas</i>
Prepositions:				
<i>de</i> 'of'	<i>dum</i>	<i>duma</i>	<i>duns</i>	<i>dumas</i>
<i>em</i> 'in'	<i>num</i>	<i>numa</i>	<i>nuns</i>	<i>numas</i>

*N'um*, *'num*, *n'uma*, and *'numa* are incorrect spellings. In combination with the articles and the pronouns *êste*, *aquêle*, etc., the full form of the preposition *em* is reduced to *n*.

## Principal Uses of the Indefinite Article

92. (a) The indefinite article must be repeated before each noun to which it refers:

*um rapaz e uma rapariga* 'a boy and a girl.'

(b) Without emphasis it means 'a' 'an.' With emphasis it means 'one' 'a single' or strengthens *só* 'only:'

*um só Seu Filho* 'His only Son,' *o pobre moço não tem um centavo* 'the poor boy has not a single penny,' *nem uma palavra* 'not a single word,' *um não sei quê* 'a something or other.'

(c) The plural *uns*, *umas*, with some nouns, means 'a pair:'

*umas calças* 'a pair of trousers.'

With a group or collection of persons or things, and frequently before a numeral, it expresses an indefinite number:

*uns b'plos* 'some cakes,' *a umas vinte e cinco milhas de distância* 'at some twenty-five miles distance,' *mais uns ligeiros reparos* 'a few more improvements,' *uns trinta homens* 'about thirty men,' *um grupo duns cinqüenta irlandeses* 'a group of some fifty Irishmen,' *uns dias depois* 'some days afterwards,' *durante umas horas* 'during a few hours.' It occurs also in such phrases as *ela tem uns olhos tão bonitos* 'she has such pretty eyes.'

(d) As in English, the indefinite article is used, on the one hand, before the name of a celebrated person, as *imaginemos um Camões* 'let us imagine a Camões,' and, on the other, with a depreciatory force, before the name of a person whom the speaker does not know well: *as suspeitas do crime recaíram sobre um (tal) João Pereira* 'suspicion of the crime fell on a certain John Pereira.'

93. The indefinite article is omitted before an unqualified noun in the predicate, most often denoting profession, rank, or nationality, and after such verbs as *aclamar* 'to acclaim,' *considerar* 'to consider,' *constituir* 'to appoint,' *coroar* 'to crown,' *crer* 'to regard,' *declarar* 'to announce,' *dizer-se* 'to be called' 'claim,' *eleger* 'to elect,' *fazer-se* 'to become,' *ficar* 'to remain,' *instituir* 'to constitute,' *julgar* 'to regard,' *morrer* 'to die,' *nascer* 'to be born,' *nomear* 'to name' 'appoint,' *padecer* 'to suffer,' *parecer* 'to appear,' *passar por* 'to pass for,' *proclamar* 'to proclaim,' *reputar* 'to regard,' *ser* 'to be,' *tornar-se* 'to become:'

*seu amigo é advogado* 'his friend is a lawyer,' *êste animal é ovelha* 'this animal is a sheep,' *morreu presidente* 'he died as president,' *o nosso amigo é*

*português* (cf. 94) 'our friend is a Portuguese,' *morrer vítima da revolução* 'to die a victim of the revolution,' *o rei fê-lo barão* 'the king made him a baron,' *foi eleito generál* 'he was elected general,' *seu irmão fêz-se missionário* 'his brother became a missionary,' *o estado é de guerra* 'it is a state of war,' *o dia 15 de julho era (um) dia de festa* 'the 15th of July was a feast day.'

94. But if the predicate noun has a distinctive adjunct or is in answer to the question 'who?' (not 'what?'), the indefinite article is expressed:

*o meu amigo é (um) português* 'my friend is a Portuguese,' *seu irmão é (um) prègador de fama* 'his brother is a famous preacher,' *é uma notícia triste* 'it is a sad piece of news,' *quem é aquele senhor?* 'who is that gentleman?' *é um sacerdote* 'he is a priest,' *que homem é êste* 'what man is this?' *é sacerdote* 'it is a priest.'

95. It is better to omit the indefinite article in such expressions as *tenha (uma) feliz viagem* 'may you have a pleasant journey,' *desejo-lhe (uma) longa vida* 'I wish you long life.'

96. The indefinite article is omitted before a noun in apposition:

*Viseu, cidade de Portugal* 'Viseu, a city in Portugal,' *o Têjo, rio que corre junto a Lisboa* 'the Tagus, a river which flows by Lisbon.'

For the omission of the definite article in such circumstances, see 78. g.

97. As in English, it is omitted in the expression *nem . . . nem . . .* 'neither . . . nor . . .' (88. g):



*eu não vi nem casa nem celeiro* 'I saw neither (a) house nor (a) barn.'

98. In sentences of doubt or denial and after *jâmais* and *nunca* 'never,' it is omitted before an indefinite subject:

*nunca se ouviu cantor tão melodioso* 'never was heard such a sweet singer,' *duvido que haja amigo mais leal* 'I doubt if there is a more loyal friend,' *não se viu pessoa mais dedicada* 'a more devoted person was never seen,' *já se viu criança mais inquieta?* 'was ever a more restless child seen?'

99. It is omitted after *ter* 'to have' and *estar* 'to be,' with a noun denoting some quality of the body or mind (79. e):

*estou com fome* 'I am hungry,' *tenho bom apetite* 'I have a good appetite,' *tinha vergonha* 'he was ashamed,' *ter vontade* 'to have a desire,' *o corpo humano tem cabeça* 'the human body has a head.'

100. It is omitted after *meio* 'half' before the name of a measure of weight, etc. (205. b):

*meio litro* 'half a liter,' *meia libra* 'half a pound.'

101. It is omitted after *que* in exclamations:

*que bela noite!* 'what a fine night!' *que ideal!* 'what an ideal!' *que pena!* 'what a pity!' *que desgraça!* 'what a misfortune!'

102. It is omitted in certain indefinite expressions where it is employed in English:

Before *certo* 'certain:' *em certa ocasião* 'on a certain occasion.'

After *como* 'as' 'like' 'in the character of:' *como marinheiro* 'like a sailor,' *ter como regra* 'to have as a rule.'

Before *outro* 'other' 'another:' *um dia e outro (dia)* 'one day and another,' *outra vez* 'another time,' *dê-me outro livro* 'give me another book.'

After *semelhante*, *tão*, and *tamanho* 'such' 'so great:' *semelhante proposta é quasi um insulto* 'such a proposal is the same as an insult,' *tamq̃nho barulho houve* or *houve um barulho tamq̃nho* 'there was such an uproar,' *tão grande obsêquio* or *um obsêquio tão grande* 'such great devotion.'

After *tal* 'such:' *tal dia* 'such a day,' *quando ouvi tal coisa* 'when I heard such a thing.'

Before words expressing quantity, such as *coisa*, *gente*, *número*, *parte*, *pessoa*, *porção*, *quantia*, *quantidade*, *soma*: *houve grande quantidade de pessoas* 'there was a large number of people;' and in a great many other expressions, in which either the definite or the indefinite article is used in English (89. b), e.g.:

*abrir caminho* 'to open a way'

*com vista* 'with a view'

*continuar conversa* 'to keep up a conversation'

*correr risco* 'to run a risk'

*dar batalha* 'to fight a battle'

*dar bom resultado* 'to have a good result'

*é costume* 'it is the custom'

*estar a ponto de* 'to be on the point of'

*estar com pressa* 'to be in a hurry'

*estar com raiva* 'to be in a passion'

*estar em mãos de alguém* 'to be in the hands of somebody'

*exalar bom (mau) cheiro* 'to exhale a good ('bad') odor'

*falar em voz alta (baixa)* 'to speak in a high ('low') voice'

*fazer aposta* 'to lay a wager'

*fazer barulho* 'to make an uproar'

*fazer bça (má) figura* 'to cut a fine ('sorry') figure'

*fazer de bobo* 'to act the fool'

*fazer exame* 'to pass an examination'

*fazer presente de* 'to make a present of'

*fazer sinal* 'to make a sign'

*não disse palavra* 'he did not say a word'

*pôr termo (fim or cabo) a* 'to put an end to'

*ter direito a* 'to have a right to'

*ter fim* 'to have an end'

*tomar assento* 'to take a seat'

For the Portuguese definite article instead of the indefinite, as in English, cf. 89. d.

### XIII. THE NOUN

103. The noun in Portuguese has two numbers, singular and plural, and two genders, masculine and feminine. It is not declined; prepositions take the place of case-endings and are regularly repeated before each noun to which they refer (675).

The indirect object (dative) is expressed by *a* 'to,' which must always be expressed, even when the corresponding English preposition 'to' is omitted:

*dou o prato à menina* 'I give the girl the plate.'

The possessive (genitive) is expressed by *de* 'of:'

*o menino matou o gato de João* 'the boy killed John's cat.'

#### PLURAL FORMATION

104. Nouns ending in an oral or nasal vowel or diphthong (except *-ão*) form their plural by adding *-s*:

<i>o banco</i> 'bench'	pl. <i>os bancos</i>
<i>o monte</i> 'mountain'	pl. <i>os montes</i>
<i>o pai</i> 'father'	pl. <i>os pais</i>
<i>a casa</i> 'house'	pl. <i>as casas</i>
<i>a irmã</i> 'sister'	pl. <i>as irmãs</i>
<i>o céu</i> 'sky' 'heavens'	pl. <i>os céus</i>
<i>o chapéu</i> 'hat'	pl. <i>os chapéus</i>
<i>o véu</i> 'veil'	pl. <i>os véus</i>

Likewise any part of speech used as a noun: *os bês* 'the b's,' *os prós* 'the pros.'

105. (a) In addition about forty masculine nouns ending in *o*, with accented *o* in the penult, change that

$\rho$  to  $\varrho$  (p. 19). Usage is not uniform in this matter, but differs from region to region. It may be said, however, that, with the exception of adjectives in *-oso*, the number of words in which the change in timbre from  $\rho$  to  $\varrho$  does not take place is greater than that in which it does. When such nouns are spelled like other nouns or verbs with open  $\rho$ , they take the circumflex accent:

<i>o côro</i> 'choir'	pl. <i>os cōros</i>
<i>o fogo</i> 'fire'	pl. <i>os fōgos</i>
<i>o ôlho</i> 'eye'	pl. <i>os ôlhos</i>
<i>o espôso</i> 'husband'	pl. <i>os espōsos</i>
<i>a espôsa</i> 'wife'	pl. <i>as espōsas</i>

In Lisbon the plural of *espôso* is *espōsos*.

Similarly:

<i>abrôlho</i> 'thorn'	<i>fôro</i> 'prerogative'
<i>almôço</i> 'breakfast'	<i>fôrro</i> 'lining'
<i>bota-fogo</i> 'match' 'fire-brand'	<i>fosso</i> 'ditch'
<i>cachopo</i> 'rock'	<i>impôsto</i> 'duties'
<i>carço</i> 'kernel' 'stone'	<i>jôgo</i> 'play'
<i>chôro</i> 'weeping'	<i>mira-ôlho</i> 'large peach'
<i>compôsto</i> 'mixture'	<i>ôsso</i> 'bone'
<i>corpo</i> 'body'	<i>ôvo</i> 'egg'
<i>cervo</i> 'raven'	<i>pescço</i> 'neck'
<i>côvo</i> 'wickerbasket'	<i>pço</i> 'well'
<i>despôjo</i> 'spoils' (noun)	<i>pôrco</i> 'pig'
<i>destrôço</i> 'ruins' (noun)	<i>pôrro</i> 'leek'
<i>entrefôrro</i> 'lining'	<i>pôrto</i> 'harbor'
<i>escôlho</i> 'reef'	<i>pôsto</i> 'post'
<i>esfôrço</i> 'effort'	<i>povo</i> 'people'
<i>estôrvo</i> 'hindrance'	<i>rebordo</i> 'edge'
<i>forno</i> 'furnace'	<i>refôrço</i> 'strengthening'

<i>renôvo</i> 'sprout'	<i>socorro</i> 'help'
<i>rego</i> 'request'	<i>tijolo</i> 'brick'
<i>sobrôlho</i> 'eyebrow'	<i>tôrno</i> 'lathe'
<i>trôco</i> 'small change'	

For the same change in adjectives, cf. 151. b. c.

(b) Exceptions. The following retain *o* in the plural:

<i>abôno</i> 'pledge' 'security'	<i>gôsto</i> 'taste'
<i>adôrno</i> 'ornament'	<i>lôbo</i> 'wolf'
<i>amor</i> 'love'	<i>mocho</i> 'owl'
<i>bôdo</i> 'feast'	<i>moço</i> 'young man'
<i>bolo</i> 'cake'	<i>môlho</i> 'sauce'
<i>bôlso</i> 'pocket'	<i>mono</i> 'monkey'
<i>dono</i> 'owner' 'master'	<i>morro</i> 'hill'
<i>esbôço</i> 'sketch'	<i>pilôto</i> 'pilot'
<i>estôjo</i> 'box' 'case'	<i>potro</i> 'foal'
<i>fôlho</i> 'flounce'	<i>rappso</i> 'fox'
<i>gorro</i> 'hood' 'cap'	<i>rosto</i> 'face'
<i>trambôlho</i> 'clog' 'hopples'	

and a few more.

(c) The plural of *avô* 'grandfather' and *avó* 'grandmother' is generally *avós* 'grandparents,' for both genders. Some persons, however, distinguish in the plural between *avós* 'ancestors' and *avôs* (fem. *avós*) 'grandparents:'

*as minhas avós morreram há muito tempo; só me restam os avôs* 'my grandmothers died long ago; only my grandfathers remain.'

(d) In Portugal, *sogro* 'father-in-law' has plural *sogros*, and *sogra* 'mother-in-law' has plural *sogras*; but in Brazil they have close *o* throughout.

106. (a) Most nouns ending in accented *-ão* change that diphthong to *-õe* before adding plural *-s*. These

words are mostly from Latin nouns of the third declension with the accusative plural in *-ones*:

*a acção* 'action,' pl. *ações*; *a canção* 'song,' pl. *canções*; *o coração* 'heart' 'courage,' pl. *corações*; *o ladrão* 'robber,' pl. *ladrones*; *a lição* 'lesson,' pl. *lições*; *a nação* 'nation,' pl. *nações*; *a ocasião* 'occasion,' pl. *ocasiões*; *a opinião* 'opinion,' pl. *opiniões*; *a razão* 'reason,' pl. *razões*; and all augmentatives in *-ão*: *o carrão* 'omnibus,' pl. *carrões*; *o homemzarrão* 'big stout man,' pl. *homemzarrões*; *o rapagão* 'fine, handsome man,' pl. *rapagões*.

*Benção* 'blessing' is now currently pronounced *bênção* (with the plural *bênções*) instead of the historical, and now only dialectal (*Beira*), form *benção*, pl. *benções*.

(b) Many nouns in *-ão* simply add *-s* without further change, and in some cases the diphthong is not accented. This class is composed mostly of words derived from Latin nouns of the second and fourth declensions with the accusative plural in *-anos*. Such words end in *-ano* in Spanish, *hermano* 'brother.' With the exception of *mão* 'hand,' pl. *mãos*, they are all masculine:

*o grão* 'grain,' pl. *grãos*; *o irmão* 'brother,' pl. *irmãos*; *o órfão* 'orphan,' pl. *órfãos*; *o órgão* 'organ,' pl. *órgãos*.

Adjectives: *cristão* 'Christian,' pl. *cristãos*; *são* 'sound' 'whole,' pl. *sãos*; *romão* 'Roman,' pl. *romãos*.

(c) *O aldeão* 'countryman,' *o verão* 'summer,' and *o vilão* 'rustic' are rarely used in their more exact and regular

plurals, *aldeãos*, *verãos*, and *vilãos*, but are ordinarily *aldeões* (or *aldeães*), *verões*, and *vilões*. *Cidadão* 'citizen' has two plurals, *cidadãos* and (rarely) *cidadões*, of which the former is to be preferred.

(d) A few nouns change *-ão* to *-õe* before adding *-s*. These are derived mostly from nouns of the Latin third declension with the accusative plural in *-anes*. Such words end in *-an* in Spanish, *capitan* 'captain.' They are all masculine:

*o cão* 'the dog,' pl. *cães*; *o capitão* 'captain,' pl. *capitães*; *o escrivão* 'clerk' 'notary,' pl. *escrivães*; *guardião* 'guardian,' pl. *guardiães* (and *guardiões*); *o pão* 'bread,' pl. *pães*; *o sacristão* 'sacristan,' pl. *sacristães*.

Adjectives: *alemão* 'German,' pl. *alemães*; *catalão* 'Catalan,' pl. *catalães*.

107. Nouns and adjectives ending in *-m* change the *m* to *n* (which becomes silent) before adding *-s*:

*o fim* 'end,' pl. *fins*; *o homem* 'man,' pl. *homens*; *o jardim* 'garden,' pl. *jardins*; *o som* 'sound,' pl. *sons*; *a viagem* 'voyage,' pl. *viagens*.

108. (a) Nouns in *-n*, *-r*, *-s*, and *-z*, add *-es*:

*o cális* (*calix* or *cálice*) 'Port-wine-glass,' pl. *cálices*; *o cânon* 'canon,' pl. *cânones*; *o caráter* 'character,' pl. *caracteres*; *o cadáver* 'corpse,' pl. *cadáveres*; *o cós* 'waistband,' pl. *côses*; *o deus* 'god,' pl. *deuses*; *o dólar* 'dollar,' pl. *dólares*; *o éter* 'ether,' pl. *éteres*; *a flôr* 'flower,' pl. *flôres*; *o mar* 'sea,' pl. *mãres*; *o mês* 'month,' pl. *mêses*; *a mulher* 'woman' 'wife,' pl. *mulheres*; *o país* 'country,' pl. *países*;



*o rapaz* 'boy,' pl. *rapazes*; *a sóror* 'nun' 'lay sister,' pl. *sorores*; *a voz* 'voice,' pl. *voces*.

(b) But some nouns in *-s* have the same form for both singular and plural:

*o(s) alferes* 'ensign' 'lieutenant,' *o(s) arrais* 'boatman,' *o(s) cais* 'quay,' *o(s) lápis* 'pencil,' *o(s) pires* 'saucer,' *o(s) ourives* 'goldsmith.'

109. Portuguese nouns in *-x* change *-x* to *c* before adding *-es*:

*o apêndix* or *apêndice* 'appendix,' pl. *apêndices*; *o códex* or *códice* 'codex,' pl. *códices*; *o índice* or *índice* 'index,' pl. *índices*.

110. (a) Nouns and adjectives whose final accented syllable ends in *l* add *-is*, with the drop of the intervocallic *-l-* and sometimes with the assimilation and absorption of the second vowel:

*o álcool* (more often *álcool*) 'alcohol,' pl. *alcoois* (more often *álcoois* and *álcools*); *o anel* 'ring,' pl. *anéis*; *o animal* 'animal,' pl. *animais*; *o anzol* 'fish-hook,' pl. *anzóis*; *o ardil* 'stratagem,' pl. *ardis*; *o barril* 'barrel,' pl. *barris*; *o buril* 'chisel,' pl. *buris*; *o carril* 'rail' 'track,' pl. *carris*; *o covil* 'den,' pl. *covis*; *o mal* 'evil,' pl. *males*; *o mel* 'honey,' pl. *mêles* and *méis*; *o metal* 'metal,' pl. *metais*; *o papel* 'paper,' pl. *papéis*; *o pântano* 'swamp,' pl. *pântanos*; *o sol* 'sun,' pl. *sóis*; *o real* (a coin), pl. *réis*; but *real* (adj.) 'royal,' pl. *reais*.

Adjectives: *azul* 'blue,' pl. *azuis*; *cruel* 'cruel,' pl. *cruéis*; *moral* 'moral,' pl. *morais*; *espanhol* 'Spanish,' pl. *espanhóis*; *senil* 'senile,' pl. *senis*.

- (b) But, if unaccented, final *-il* is changed to *-eis*:  
*o fósfil*, pl. *fósseis*; *o projéctil*, pl. *projécteis*; *o réptil* (now usually *reptil*) 'reptile,' pl. *rêpteis* (now usually *reptis*); *têxtil* 'textile,' pl. *têxteis*; *fácil* 'easy,' pl. *fáceis*; cf. *automóvel* 'automobile,' pl. *automóveis*.

111. Nouns used only or almost exclusively as singulars, or with a new meaning in the plural:

- (a) Names of the winds:

*o norte* 'the north wind,' *o noroeste* 'the northwest wind.'

- (b) Names of metals, the elements, substances, and animal and vegetable products:

*o cobre* 'copper,' *a prata* 'silver,' *o leite* 'milk,' *o enxôfre* 'sulphur;' but objects made of metal may be used in the plural: *os cöbres* 'copper vessels' 'copper coins,' *as pratas* 'silverware.'

- (c) Names of the sciences, arts, abstract ideas, religions, parties, systems, and professions:

*o amor* 'love,' *o belo* 'the beautiful,' *a gula* 'gluttony,' *a cirurgia* 'surgery,' *a matemática* (or *as matemáticas*) 'mathematics,' *a pintura* 'painting,' *a medicina* 'the profession (or the art or science) of medicine,' *o socialismo* 'socialism,' *o protestantismo* 'Protestantism.'

- (d) In the case of foreign words, usually only those that are completely assimilated take the plural form; the following, e.g. add *-s*:

*a agenda*  
*o álbum* (pl. *álbuns*)  
*o álibi*  
*o beefsteak*  
*a cöta* (*quöta*)

*o duo*  
*a errata*  
*o júri*  
*o nota-bem* (pl. *nota-béns*)  
*a ópera*  
*o toast*  
*o tram* (*o trâmuei, o trqma, a tranvia*) 'street railway'  
*o memorandum* (pl. *memoranda*)  
*o ultimatum* (pl. *ultimata* or *ultimatus*), or  
*o ultimato* (pl. *ultimatos*)

The following, *e.g.*, all Latin words, are invariable:

*o ámen* (popular form *âmêm*)  
*o atlas*  
*a cútis*  
*o déficit*  
*o fac-símile*  
*o infólio*  
*o in-octavo*  
*o ínterim*  
*o ítem*  
*o post scriptum*  
*o vqde mecum*  
*o veto*  
*o Te Deum* (popularly *o Tedeu*)

112. Nouns plural in form or used only or almost exclusively in the plural. Most of them are feminine:

Feminine: *algemas* 'fetters,' *alvíssaras* or *alvíçaras* 'reward,' *andadeiras* 'leading-strings,' *andas* 'bier' 'stilts,' *arras* 'earnest-money,' *bqas-noites* (equally common *bpa-noite*) 'good night,' *brqgas* 'breeches,' *calças* (popularly and by tailors also *calça*) 'trousers,' *calendas* 'calends,' *carícia(s)* 'flattery,' *ceroulas* 'drawers,' *cócegas* 'tickling,' *completas* 'complines,'

*dqmas* 'draughts,' *efemérides* 'daily news,' *endoenças* 'sufferings,' *exéquias* 'funeral rites,' *expensas* 'costs,' *fezes* 'dregs,' *matinas* 'matins,' *migas* 'bread-broth,' *nqnas* 'nones,' *núpcias* 'wedding' 'nuptials,' *primícias* 'first fruits,' *suíças* 'side whiskers,' *têmporas* 'Ember-days,' *tesoiras* (ordinarily *tesoira* or *tesoura*) 'scissors,' *trevas* (popularly *treva*) 'darkness,' *veras* 'realities,' *vitualhas* 'victuals.'

Masculine: *ademqnes* 'gesture,' *ambages* 'subterfuge' 'evasion,' *anais* 'annals,' *arredqres* 'environs,' *bons-dias* (equally common *bom-dia*) 'good day,' *esponsais* 'espousals,' *viveres* 'provisions,' *parabens* 'congratulations.'

In imitation of the French idiom, the pl. *funerais* is often, but incorrectly, used instead of the sing. *funeral* 'funeral' 'obsequies.'

113. The following are only a few of the many nouns that have different meanings in the singular and the plural:

<i>a água</i> 'water'	pl. 'curative waters'
<i>o andar</i> 'walk'	pl. 'floors' 'stories'
<i>a ânsia</i> 'anguish'	pl. 'nausea'
<i>o ar</i> 'air'	pl. 'prevailing winds' 'climate'
<i>a fonte</i> 'fountain'	pl. 'temples'
<i>o gênero</i> 'gender'	pl. 'victuals'
<i>o irmão</i> 'brother'	pl. 'brother(s) and sister(s)'
<i>o miqlo</i> 'crumb'	pl. <i>miqlos</i> 'brains'
<i>o óculo</i> 'telescope'	pl. 'spectacles'
<i>o pai</i> 'father'	pl. 'parents'
<i>a pintura</i> 'painting'	pl. 'pictures'
<i>o rei</i> 'king'	pl. 'king and queen' 'royal pair'
<i>a saúde</i> 'health'	pl. 'toasts' 'sentiments'
<i>o tio</i> 'uncle'	pl. 'uncle(s) and aunt(s)'

114. The plural of *página* 'page' is used instead of the singular in designating the page of a book (200.c), and the

plural of *dia* 'day' frequently takes the place of the singular in date idioms (223).

### Plurals of Proper Names

115. (a) Proper names of persons are pluralized like common nouns. Speaking of several individuals bearing the same name or belonging to the same family, or naming the monarchs of a dynasty, the name is usually plural:

*as três Marias* 'the three Marys,' *os dois Scipões* 'the two Scipios,' *os Céstros*. Some proper names in -s have but one form for the singular and the plural: *Guimarães*, *Magalhães*.

(b) Place-names, though plural in form, are singular or plural according as the idea is singular or plural:

*as duas Américas*. 'the two Americas,' *os Vosges* 'the Vosges,' *as Índias* 'the Indies,' *os Alpes ficam na Suíça* 'the Alps are in Switzerland;' but *Montes Claros brilha ao sol* 'Montes Claros (a town in Portugal) shines in the sun,' *Buenos Aires é a capital da Argentina* 'Buenos Ayres is the capital of Argentina.'

### Plurals of Compound Words

116. There is much divergence in the spelling of compound words. In general the hyphen is used in those compound words whose elements, when separated, give a distinct meaning, but when the word is much used as a compound, the tendency is to unite the elements as one word without a hyphen.

117. A. If the compound consists of two distinct

substantives, each representing a function belonging to the compound, and

(1) If they are placed in juxtaposition without an intervening preposition, both members take the plural form:

*o(s) banho(s)-maria(s)* 'steamer' 'double boiler'

Fr. *bain-marie*

*a(s) couve(s)-flor(es)*, or pl. *as couve-flôres* 'cauliflower'

*o(s) mestre(s)-escola(s)* 'schoolmaster'

*a(s) porta(s)-cocheira(s)* 'house-door'

*o(s) redactor(es)-chefe(s)* 'editor-in-chief;' but

*o vagão-leito* (pl. *os vagões-leitos*) or *a carruagem-leito* (pl. *as carruagens-leitos*) 'sleeping-car'

*o vagão-restaurante* (pl. *os vagões-restaurantes*) 'dining-car'

(2) Usually only the last member of the following words takes the plural form:

*a(s) água-pé(s)* 'after-wine'

*a(s) beira-mar(es)* 'sea-coast'

*a(s) mãe-pérola(s)* 'mother-of-pearl'

*a(s) mãe-silva(s)* 'honeysuckle'

*o(s) pontapé(s)* 'kick'

*o(s) tiracolo(s)* 'bandoleer'

*o(s) vara-pau(s)* or *varapau* 'pole' 'shepherd's crook'

(3) Sometimes the second term indicates a likeness or resemblance which one animal or thing has to another:

*o(s) peixe(s)-espada(s)* 'swordfish'

*o porco-espinho* or *o porco-espim*, pl. *os porcos-espinhos* or *os porcos-espins* 'porcupine'

(4) If they are joined by means of the preposition *de* and the second member of the compound defines the first, only the first member takes the plural form:

- a(s) que(s)-do-paráiso* 'bird-of paradise'
- o(s) cabo(s)-de-esquadra* 'corporal'
- o(s) caminho(s) de ferro* 'railroad'
- o(s) chapéu* (pl. *chapéus*)-*de-chuva* 'umbrella'
- a(s) estrela(s)-do-mar* 'starfish'
- a(s) flor(es)-de-lis* 'flower-de-luce'
- a(s) língua(s)-de-boi* 'beef's tongue' (a plant)
- o(s) mestre(s) de capela* 'bandmaster'
- o(s) mestre(s) de cerimónias* 'master of ceremony'
- o(s) olho* (pl. *olhos*)-*de-boi* 'bull's eye' 'skylight'
- o(s) pai(s) de família* 'father of a family'
- o(s) pé(s) de cabra* 'goat's foot' 'crow-bar'
- o(s) pé(s) de galinha* 'bird's-foot' (a plant)
- o(s) primor(es)-de-arte* (usually *obra-prima*) 'masterpiece'
- o(s) rés* (plural also *réses*)-*do-chão* 'ground-floor'

118. B. If the compound consists of a substantive and an adjective and

(1) If the substantive precedes the adjective, some compounds take the plural form in both members:

- a(s) água(s)-régia(s)* 'nitromuriatic acid'
- o(s) amor(es)-perfeito(s)* 'heart's-ease' (a plant)
- a(s) caba(s)-cega(s)* 'blind-man's-buff'
- o capitão* (pl. *os capitães*)-*mor(es)* 'commander-in-chief'
- o(s) cavalo(s)-marinho(s)* 'hippopotamus'
- o(s) cofre(s)-forte(s)* 'coffer'

- o(s) corneta(s)-mqr(es)* 'trumpeter'  
*o(s) gqto(s)-pingado(s)* 'pallbearer'  
*a(s) mão(s)-cheia(s)* 'handful'  
*a(s) obra(s)-primas* 'masterpiece'  
*o(s) padre(s)-nqssso(s)* 'the Lord's Prayer'  
*o(s) pedreiro(s)-livres* 'freemason'  
*o(s) tambqr(es)-mqr(es)* 'drum-major'

Similarly, *a acçãozinha* 'small deed,' pl. *as acçõeszinhas*.

Others take the plural form only in the second member:

- a(s) águardente(s)*, singular also *água-ardente* and pl. *águas-ardentes* 'brandy'  
*o(s) cantochão(s)* 'plain-chant'  
*o(s) lugqr-tenente(s)* 'lieutenant'

(2) If the adjective precedes the noun, the noun alone takes the plural form:

- o(s) grão-mestre(s)* 'grand-master'  
*a(s) meia-noite(s)*, pl. also *as meias-noites* 'midnight'  
*o(s) meio-dia(s)* 'mid-day'  
*a(s) preiamqr(es)* 'high tide'  
*o(s) sqlvo-conduto(s)* 'pass'  
*a(s) van-glória(s)* 'vainglory'  
*o(s) or a(s) verde-mqr(es)* 'sea-green'

Except *o gentil-homem*, pl. *os gentis-homens* 'gentleman,' and the names of the days of the week: *segunda(s)-feira(s)* 'Monday,' etc.

119. C. If the compound consists of two adjectives, only the second element takes the plural ending unless both have adjectival force (180):

- o(s) or a(s) agridoce(s)* 'bitter-sweet'



*o anglo-saxão*, pl. *os anglo-saxões* 'Anglo-Saxon'

*a(s) doce-amarga(s)* 'bitter-sweet'

120. D. If the compound consists of a verb and a substantive, only the second member takes the plural form:

*o(s) beija-flor(es)* 'humming-bird'

*o(s) cata-vento(s)* 'weather vane'

*o(s) chupa-mel(es)* 'honeysuckle'

*o(s) frege-môscas(s)* 'low tavern where fried fish is sold' (Brazil)

*o girassol* (pl. *os girassóis*) 'heliotrope'

*o massapé* (pl. *os massapães*) 'fertile soil,' etc. (Brazil)

*o mata-borrão* (pl. *os mata-borrões*) 'blotting-paper'

*o mata-cão* (pl. *os mata-cães*), name of a plant

*o mira-olho* (pl. *os mira-olhos*) 'large peach'

*o(s) passa-tempo(s)* 'pastime'

*o(s) porta-bandeira(s)* 'standard-bearer'

*a(s) porta-espada(s)* 'sword-belt'

*o(s) papa-figo(s)* 'fig-pecker'

*o(s) porta-lápis* 'pencil-holder'

*o(s) porta-machado(s)* 'sapper'

*o(s) pára-raio(s)* 'lightning-rod'

*o(s) porta-voz(es)* 'speaking-trumpet'

*o(s) quebra-mar(es)* 'breakwater'

*a(s) quebra-panela(s)*, sort of amaranth

121. E. (1) *Guarda-* is a frequent element in compound nouns. If it is regarded as a substantive, both members take the plural form:

*o(s) guarda(s)-marinha(s)* 'midshipman'

*o(s) guarḍa(s)-fiscāl* (pl. *fiscāis*) 'keeper of the exchequer'

*o(s) guarḍa(s)-m̃qr* (pl. *m̃qres*) 'head guardian'

(2) If it is the second person singular imperative of the verb *guardar* 'to guard,' governing the noun, only the second member takes the plural form:

*o(s) guarḍa-chuva(s)* 'umbrella'

*o(s) guarḍa-fôgo* (pl. *fôgos*) 'fireman'

*o(s) guarḍa-freio(s)* 'motorman' 'brakeman'

*o(s) guarḍa-livros* 'bookkeeper'

*o(s) guarḍa-pô(s)* 'duster'

*o(s) guarḍa-portão* (pl. *portões*) 'porter'

*o(s) guarḍa-roupa(s)* 'wardrobe' 'wardrobe keeper' (man)

*o(s) guarḍa-sql* (pl. *sóis*) 'parasol'

*o(s) guarḍa-ventos* 'wind-screen'

*o(s) guarḍa-vestido(s)* 'wardrobe'

Here belong also the following:

122. F. Compound words having but one form for the singular and the plural:

*o(s) espanta-lôbos*, name of a plant, 'talkative person'

*o(s) lambe-pratos* 'glutton'

*o(s) limpa-botas* 'bootblack'

*o(s) manja-lêguas* or *papa-lêguas* 'stout walker'

*o(s) mata-ratos* 'rat-killer'

*o(s) não-me-deixes* 'forget-me-not'

*o(s) papa-môscas* 'fly-catcher' (a bird or spider)

*o(s) pára-quedas* 'parachute'

*o(s) quebra-nozes* 'nut-cracker'

- o(s) sqa-rôlhas* 'corkscrew'
- o(s) sqlva-vidas* 'lifeboat'
- o(s) tira-dentes* 'tooth-drawer'
- o(s) tira-linhas* 'ruler'
- o(s) tira-teimas* 'bogy' 'decisive argument' 'dictionary'
- o(s) trinca-pintos*, name for the fox
- o(s) trqca-tintas* 'bungler'

123. G. If the first member of the compound is an invariable word, only the other member, if variable, takes the plural form:

- o(s) abaixo-assinado(s)* 'the undersigned'
- a(s) antecâmara(s)* 'antechamber'
- a(s) ante-sala(s)* 'antechamber'
- o(s) bem-te-vi(s)*,<sup>1</sup> a Brazilian bird
- o(s) contraveneno(s)* 'antidote'
- o(s) entreacto(s)* 'interlude'
- o(s) entremez(es)* 'interlude'
- o(s) ex-presidente(s)* 'ex-president'
- o(s) malmequer(es)* 'marigold'
- o(s) malfeitor(es)* 'malefactor'
- o(s) pseudo-profeta(s)* 'false prophet'
- o(s) recém-casado(s)* 'newly wed'
- o(s) recém-nascido(s)* 'newly born'
- o(s) recém-vindo(s)* 'newly come'
- a(s) sempre-noiva(s)* 'houseleek'
- a(s) sobrecasaca(s)* 'overcoat'
- a(s) sobremesa(s)* 'dessert'
- o(s) sobrenome(s)* 'surname'
- o(s) subchefe(s)* 'subcommander'

124. H. If the compound consists of two verbs, only the second takes the plural form:

*o(s) ganha-perde(s)*, a game at cards

*o(s) luze-luze(s)* 'glow-worm'

*o(s) ruge-ruge(s)* 'rustling (of silk)' 'rumor'

*o(s) vaivém* (lit. *vai e vêm* 'it goes and comes'), pl. *vaivens* 'oscillation' 'alternation' 'revolution' 'vicissitude'

### Distributive Construction

125. When speaking of objects, such as parts of the body or clothing, one of which belongs to each member of a group, the singular is generally used:

*as crianças lavaram a cara e as mãos* 'the children washed their face and hands,' *puseram o chapéu na cabeça* 'they put their hats on their heads,' *de braço dado* 'arm in arm,' *de pé descalço* 'bare-footed.'

### GENDER

126. Every Portuguese substantive is, grammatically, either masculine or feminine, and its gender may be known either by its meaning or by its ending.

127. For the most part nouns derived from Latin masculines are regularly masculine, and those from Latin feminines are feminine. But the gender of many words is different in the modern language from what it was in early Portuguese, and even in the modern period there have been changes. The following words which were used as feminine by the classic writers, and some of which, as *cometa* and *planeta*, are still so used by the people, are masculine to-day.

*clima* 'climate,' *cometa* 'comet,' *fantasma* 'phantasm,' *fim* 'end,' *maná* 'manna,' *mar* 'sea' (fem. also in early Spanish and modern French, and in *baixamar* 'low tide,' etc., cf. 134. e), *planeta* 'planet,' *problema* 'problem,' *teorema* 'theorem,' etc. On the other hand, *dor* 'pain,' *linhagem* 'lineage' (both feminine and masculine in mediaeval Portuguese), *origem* 'origin,' *tribu* (or *tribo*) 'tribe,' etc., which were formerly masculine, are now feminine (134. c).

128. Latin neuter singulars became masculine in Portuguese, and Latin neuter plurals in *-a*, with collective force, became feminine:

*tempus* > *o tempo* 'time,' but neuter plural *arma* > *a arma* 'weapon,' *bracchia* > *a brça* 'fathom,' *fila* > *a fila* 'row' 'file,' *folia* > *a fôlha* 'leaf,' *gaudia* > *a jóia* 'jewel,' *ligna* > *a lenha* 'firewood,' *opera* > *a obra* 'work.'

The corresponding masculine forms of some of these words are also preserved:

*brço* 'arm,' *fólio* 'page,' *lenho* 'block' 'log.'

#### A. Gender Determined by Meaning

Masculine are:

129. (a) Nouns that denote male beings and the professions, titles, and pursuits commonly assigned to males:

*bispo* 'bishop,' *cavalo* 'horse,' *homem* 'man,' *juiz* 'judge,' *nauta* 'sailor,' *pai* 'father,' *rei* 'king.'

(b) Names of seas, rivers, lakes, capes, and mountains, the latter only when the word *monte* 'mountain' is understood:

*o Báltico* 'the Baltic,' *o Mediterrâneo* 'the Mediterranean,' *o oceano* 'the ocean,' *o Mondego*, *os Alpes* 'the Alps,' *o Himalaia* 'the Himalayas,' *o Buçaco*, but *a Estrêla* (= *a serra* 'the range' *da E.*), *a Arrábida* (= *a serra da A.*).

(c) Names of the winds, the points of the compass, the months, the seasons (except *primavera* 'spring'), and metals (unless they end in -a):

*Bóreas*, *este* 'the east' 'the east wind,' *Abril* 'April,' *inverno* 'winter,' *ouro* 'gold,' *ferro* 'iron,' but *a prata* 'silver.'

(d) Names of the letters of the alphabet and of numbers, the notes in music, the weights, measures, and coins of the metrical and decimal systems, and any word or phrase used as a noun:

*um litro* 'a liter,' *um metro* 'a meter,' *um A* 'an 'A',' *o 5* 'the '5',' *o fá* 'the 'fa',' *um porém* 'a 'but',' *o andar* 'the going,' *os TT* (*Tês*) 'the T's,' *os EE* (*Ês*) 'the E's.'

(e) Names of trees and shrubs are, as a rule, masculine or feminine according to their termination:

*carvalho* 'oak,' *pinheiro* 'fir,' but fruit-trees are generally feminine, the name of the tree being usually of the same gender as that of its fruit: *a pereira* 'pear-tree,' *a pera* 'pear,' *a macieira* 'apple-tree,' *a maçã* 'apple,' *a laranjeira* 'orange-tree,' *a laranja* 'orange;' but *o limoeiro* 'lemon-tree,' *o limão* 'lemon,' *o ananás* 'pine-apple' (the plant and its fruit).

Feminine are:

130. (a) Nouns that denote female beings and their names, dignities, and occupations:

*ama* 'nurse,' *costureira* 'seamstress,' *criada* 'maid,' *galinha* 'hen,' *mãe* 'mother,' *mulher* 'woman,' *rainha* 'queen,' *vaca* 'cow,' except when augmentatives (n, *infra*): *o mulherão* 'strong woman.'

(b) Many names of continents, countries, and provinces, especially if they end in atonic *a*:

*América, Ásia, Califórnia, Normândia* (or *Nor-mandia*).

Masculine are: *Brasil, Chile, Japão, Panamá, Peru, Portugal*, and a few more.

Those which were originally appellatives have their gender determined by their final vowel:  
*a Baía* (*Bahia*), *o Havre, o Pôrto*.

(c) Most names of cities are feminine, the word *cidade* 'city' being understood:

*Londres* 'London,' *Lisboa* 'Lisbon,' some, however, not ending in *a*, are masculine: *Rio de Janeiro*.

(d) Nouns that denote abstract things:

*fé* 'faith,' *ira* 'anger,' *palidez* 'paleness,' *saúde* 'health,' *temperança* 'temperance.'

Except: *amor* 'love' (134. e), *vício* 'vice,' and a few more.

(e) Names of the sciences, arts, and professions:

*história* 'history,' *música* 'music,' *pintura* 'painting,' *química* 'chemistry,' *teologia* 'theology.'

Except: *desenho* 'drawing.'

- (f) Names of the muses, fates, fairies, and nymphs:

*Terpsicore, Cloto, Tisífone, as Driades.*

- (g) Names of the days of the week:

*segunda-feira* 'Monday,' etc.

Except: *domingo* 'Sunday' and *sábado* 'Saturday.'

- (h) Most fruits are feminine (129. e).

Except *ananás* 'pine-apple,' *melão* 'melon,' *damasco* 'damson,' *pêssego* 'peach,' *figo* 'fig,' *abrunho* 'plum,' *morango* 'strawberry,' and some more.

### B. Gender Determined by Ending

131. The gender of nouns denoting sexless things, and not belonging to any of the classes noted above, is determined by their ending. This arrangement of genders is, of course, entirely arbitrary, but hardly avoidable without entering into historical discussions.

132. In such cases as the following, the article agrees with a word that is not expressed:

*pelo* (sc. *tempo*, *período*) *são Miguel* 'at Michaelmas,'  
*no* (sc. *teatro*) *Avenida, A Progresso* (sc. *companhia*),  
*O República* (sc. *cruzador*), *o Notícias* (sc. *Diário*).

133. Nouns ending in a Vowel or Diphthong.  
 Those ending in

- (a) Accented *-á* are mostly masculine:

*alvará* 'charter,' *chá* 'tea,' *maná* 'manna,' *sofá* 'sofa,' *tafetá* 'taffety,' etc.

Except: *pá* 'shovel' 'spade.'

- (b) Unaccented *-a* and *-ã* are mostly feminine:

*alma* 'soul,' *capa* 'cloak,' *casa* 'house,' *irmã* 'sister,'  
*lã* 'wool,' *manhã* 'morning,' *porta* 'door,' *rua* 'street.'



Except: *afã* 'anxiety,' *alfa* 'alpha,' *cometa* 'comet,'  
*dia* 'day,' *imã* 'loadstone,' *kapa* 'kappa,' *mapa*  
 'map,' *planeta* 'planet,' *talismã* 'talisman,' *terra-  
 nova* 'Newfoundland (dog).'

(c) Many feminine nouns ending in *-a*, meaning things, actions, or instruments, are masculine when applied to the man who fills the office pertaining to the thing (cf. 143. d).

<i>a atalaia</i> 'watch-tower'	<i>o atalaia</i> 'sentinel'
<i>a cabeça</i> 'head'	<i>o cabeça</i> 'chief' 'leader'
<i>a corneta</i> 'horn'	<i>o corneta</i> 'cornetist'
<i>a cura</i> 'care' 'treatment' 'cure'	<i>o cura</i> 'parish priest' 'coadjutor'
<i>a espia</i> 'tow line'	<i>o espia</i> 'spy'
<i>a guarda</i> 'act of keeping guard' 'the watch' (collectively)	<i>o guarda</i> 'guardian' 'watchman' 'keeper'
<i>a guarda-roupa</i> 'ward- robe'	<i>o guarda-roupa</i> 'keeper of the wardrobe'
<i>a guia</i> 'act of guiding'	<i>o guia</i> 'man who serves as guide' 'guide-book'
<i>a língua</i> 'tongue'	<i>o língua</i> 'interpreter'
<i>a polícia</i> 'civil govern- ment'	<i>o polícia</i> 'policeman'
<i>a sentinela</i> 'sentry' 'watch'	<i>o sentinela</i> 'sentinel'
<i>a trombeta</i> 'trumpet'	<i>o trombeta</i> 'trumpeter'
<i>a vigia</i> 'night watch'	<i>o vigia</i> 'watchman' 'sentry'

(d) Most nouns of Greek origin, mostly scientific terms ending in *-ma* or *-ta*, are masculine:

*aneurisma*, *apostema* 'impostume,' *aroma*, *clima*, *cometa*, *diadema*, *dilema*, *diploma*, *dogma*, *drama*, *emblema*, *enigma*, *epigrama*, *fantasma* 'phantasm,' *grama* 'gram' (a *grama* 'grass'), *idioma*, *planeta*, *poema*, *prisma*, *problema*, *programa*, *protoplasma*, *sintoma* 'symptom,' *sistema*, *sofisma*, *telegrama*, *tema* 'theme,' *teorema* 'theorem.'

Except: Greek words of recent introduction: *asma* 'asthma,' *bruma* 'woodworm,' *cataplasma* 'plaster,' *teima* 'obstinacy.'

- (e) *-ê* and *-ê* are mostly masculine:

*boldriê* 'shoulder belt,' *café* 'coffee,' *cê* 'the letter 'c','' *pê* 'foot,' *rapê* 'tobacco' 'snuff.'

Except: *chaminê* 'chimney,' *fê* 'faith,' *galê* 'galley,' *librê* 'livery,' *marê* 'tide,' *sê* 'cathedral,' *polê* 'pulley.'

- (f) *-e* are mostly feminine:

*arte* 'art,' *árvore* 'tree,' *ave* 'bird,' *carne* 'flesh' 'meat,' *chave* 'key,' *cidade* 'city,' *febre* 'fever,' *fome* 'hunger,' *fonte* 'fountain,' *gente* 'people,' *lebre* 'hare,' *morte* 'death,' *neve* 'snow,' *noite* 'night,' *parede* 'wall,' *parte* 'part,' *ponte* 'bridge,' *sede* 'thirst,' *serpente* 'serpent,' *sorte* 'kind' 'lot,' *torre* 'tower,' *torrente* 'torrent,' *vide* 'vine.'

Except: *cárcere* 'prison,' *dente* 'tooth,' *tapete* 'carpet,' *vale* 'valley.'

- (g) *-qde* and *-ice* are all feminine:

*caridade* 'charity,' *idade* 'age,' *tolice* 'foolishness,' *velhice* 'old age.'

- (h) *-pte* and *-ume* are all masculine:

*capote* 'greatcloak,' *costume* 'costume,' *dote* 'dowry,'  
*lume* 'fire.'

- (i) *-ude* are mostly masculine:

*alaúde* 'lute,' *ataúde* 'coffin.'

Except: *virtude* 'virtue,' *saúde* 'health,' and *a* (or *o*)  
*grude* 'glue.'

- (j) *-i* and *-ei* are mostly masculine:

*álcali* (or *alcáli*) 'alkali,' *rubi(m)* 'ruby.'

Except: *grei* 'flock,' *lei* 'law,' *metrópole* 'metropolis.'

- (k) *-o* are mostly masculine:

*criado* 'servant,' *filho* 'son.'

Except: *virago*.

- (l) *-ô* are either masculine:

*dô* 'pain' 'mourning,' *nô* 'knot,' *pô* 'dust;' or feminine: *avô* 'grandmother,' *ilhô* 'eyelet,' *mô* 'millstone.'

- (m) *-u*, *-ú*, and *-êu* are mostly masculine:

*bambu* 'bamboo,' *baú* 'trunk,' *chapêu* 'hat,' *ilhêu*  
 'islander,' *pqu* 'club,' *peru* 'turkey cock,' *sagu*  
 'sago,' *vqu* 'ford,' *vêu* 'veil.'

Except: *nqu* 'ship' 'man-of-war,' *tribu* (or *tribo*)  
 'tribe.'

- (n) *-ão*. Some are masculine; these are mostly concrete words, including all augmentatives, even though derived from feminines:

*coração* 'heart,' *feijão* 'kidney bean,' *grão* 'grain,'  
*limão* 'lemon,' *lôdão* 'lotus,' *mulherão* 'strong  
 woman,' *órgão* 'organ,' *pão* 'bread,' *portão* 'gate-  
 way,' *sabão* 'soap,' *sermão* 'sermon,' *sertão* 'interior'  
 'backwoods,' *trovão* 'thunder.'

Others are feminine, being mostly abstract words ending in *-(c)ção*, *-(s)ção*, or *-ção*:

*acção* 'action,' *adoração* 'adoration,' *aptidão* 'aptitude,' *bênção* (or *benção*, 106. a) 'blessing,' *confusão* 'confusion,' *di(c)ção* 'word,' *direcção* 'direction,' *doação* 'bequest,' *execução* 'execution,' *extensão* 'extension,' *feição* 'figure,' *instituição* 'institution,' *legião* 'legion,' *mansidão* 'meekness,' *mão* 'hand,' *multidão* 'multitude,' *negação* 'negation,' *opinião* 'opinion,' *região* 'region,' *união* 'union,' *variação* 'variation.'

#### 134. Nouns Ending in a Consonant. Those ending in

##### (a) *-l* are mostly masculine:

*anel* 'ring,' *anil* 'indigo,' *anzol* 'fishhook,' *areal* 'sandpit,' *automóvel* 'automobile,' *barril* 'small barrel,' *cônsul*, *cordel* 'cord,' *covil* 'den,' *farol* 'lighthouse,' *funil* 'funnel,' *hospital*, *lençol* 'bed-clothes,' *manual* 'handbook,' *painel* 'picture,' *paiol* 'ship's storeroom,' *papel* 'paper,' *paúl* 'marsh,' *rosal* 'rose-garden,' *sal* 'salt,' *sol* 'sun.'

Except: *cal* 'lime,' *catedral* 'cathedral,' *locomóvel* 'locomobile,' *vogal* 'vowel.'

##### (b) *-m* are mostly masculine:

*armazém* 'warehouse,' *atum* 'tunny,' *carmim* 'carmine,' *clarim* 'trumpet,' *desdém* 'disdain,' *dom* 'gift,' *fim* 'end,' *flautim* 'small flute,' *fortim* 'fort,' *jejum* 'fast,' *marfim* 'ivory,' *marroquim* 'morocco,' *som* 'sound,' *tom* 'tone,' *vaivém* 'battering ram' 'oscillating movement.'

Except: *nuve(m)* 'cloud,' *ordem* 'order.'

- (c) *-gem* are mostly feminine:

*ferrugem* 'rust,' *imagem* 'image,' *impigem* 'ring-worm,' *margem* 'margin,' *origem* 'origin,' *vantagem* 'advantage,' *vertigem* 'dizziness,' *viagem* 'voyage.'  
 Except: *pagem* 'serving-boy' 'retainer.'

- (d) *-n* are all masculine:

*côlon*, *hífen* 'hyphen,' *pólen* 'pollen,' *regímen* 'government.'

- (e) *-r* are mostly masculine:

*altar*, *açúcar* 'sugar,' *amor* 'love,' *andor* 'a portable shrine' 'sedan chair,' *ardor*, *calcanhar* 'heel,' *elixir*, *favor*, *mar* 'sea' (127), *porvir* 'future,' *prazer* 'pleasure,' *valor*.

Except: *colher* 'spoon,' *côr* 'color,' *dor* 'pain' (127), *flor* 'flower.' *Côr*, when applied to a garment or piece of cloth serves as an attribute to *o vestido* 'garment' or *o pano* 'cloth,' with which it agrees in the masculine: *eu prefiro o côr de violeta* 'I prefer the violet-colored one.' *Baixa-mar* 'low water,' *beira-mar* 'sea-coast,' and *preia-mar* 'high tide,' are feminine and survivals of the older Portuguese gender of *mar* 'sea,' which is now masculine.

- (f) *-s*. Some are masculine:

*arrais* 'pilot,' *atlas*, *freguês* 'customer,' *gás*, *jus* 'law,' *ourives* 'goldsmith,' *país* 'country.'

A few are feminine: *bilis* (or *bile*) 'bile,' *cúlis*, *fénix* (*x* pronounced as *s*) 'phoenix.'

- (g) *-z*. Most words in *-az*, *-oz*, and *-uz* are masculine. Those in *-ex* and *-iz* are mostly feminine.

- (1) *-az*.

Masculine: *cabaz* 'pannier,' *cartaz* 'placard.'

Feminine: *pqz* 'peace,' *tenqz* 'tongs.'

(2) -*oz*.

Masculine: *albornqz* 'large, hooded cloak,' *arrqz* 'rice.'

Feminine: *fqz* 'mouth of a river,' *nqz* 'nut,' *vqz* 'voice.'

(3) -*uz*.

Masculine: *alcatruz* 'bucket,' *arcabuz* 'harquebus,' *capuz* 'cowl.'

Feminine: *cruz* 'cross,' *luz* 'light.'

(4) -*ez*.

Feminine: *altivez* 'pride,' *estupidez* 'stupidity,' *fêz* 'sediment' 'dregs,' *languidez* 'languor,' *palidez* 'paleness,' *pequenez* 'smallness,' *rapidez* 'rapidity,' *solidez* 'solidity,' *surdez* 'deafness,' *têz* 'complexion,' *timidez* 'timidity,' *torquez* 'pincers,' *vez* 'time.'

Masculine: *jaêz* 'caparison' 'condition' 'sort' 'quality,' *pêz* 'pitch.'

(5) -*iz*.

Feminine: *cerviz* 'neck,' *cicatriz* 'scar,' *codorniz* 'quail,' *matriz* 'mould,' *perdiz* 'partridge,' *raiz* 'root,' *sobrepeliz* 'surplice.'

Masculine: *nariz* 'nose,' *tapiz* 'tapestry,' *verniz* 'varnish.'

### Compound Words

135. Nouns composed of two distinct substantives are of the gender of the first element:

*a rpsa-chá* 'tea-rose,' *a cólera-morbo* (also *o cólera-mórbus*) 'cholera morbus.' *Cólera* 'anger' 'bile' is properly feminine. *Beija-flor* 'humming-bird' and *beija-mão* 'hand-kiss' are masculine.

## To Express Sex Distinction

136. (a) When the masculine ends in a consonant, the feminine is formed from it generally by adding *-a*:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o autor</i> 'author'	<i>a autora</i>
<i>o deus</i> 'god'	<i>a deusa</i>
<i>o espanhol</i> 'Spaniard'	<i>a espanhola</i>
<i>o general</i> 'general'	<i>a generala</i>
<i>o inglês</i> 'Englishman'	<i>a inglesa</i>
<i>o juiz</i> 'judge'	<i>a juíza</i>
<i>o lavrador</i> 'farmer'	<i>a lavradora</i>
<i>o leitor</i> 'reader'	<i>a leitora</i>
<i>o marquês</i> 'marquis'	<i>a marquesa</i>
<i>o português</i> 'Portuguese'	<i>a portuguesa</i>
<i>o senhor</i> 'gentleman'	<i>a senhora</i> (ordinarily <i>senhora</i> in Brazil)

(b) Some nouns ending in *-dor* change that suffix to *-triz*, others to *-eira*:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o actor</i> 'actor'	<i>a atriz</i> 'actress'
<i>o embaixador</i> 'ambassador'	<i>a embaixatriz</i> (popularly <i>embaixadora</i> )
<i>o imperador</i> 'emperor'	<i>a imperatriz</i>

while a few have more than one feminine form:

*o cantor* and *o cantador* 'singer,' *a cantora*, *a cantadeira* (and *a cantatriz*) 'songstress,' *o trabalhador* 'workman,' *a trabalhadora* 'workwoman,' *trabalhadeira* 'hard working, industrious woman.'

(c) Some other nouns ending in a consonant form their feminine in a variety of ways:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o cônsul</i> 'consul'	<i>a consuleça</i>
<i>o czar</i> ( <i>tzar</i> or <i>çar</i> ) 'czar'	<i>a czarina</i> ( <i>tsarina</i> )
<i>o prior</i> 'prior'	<i>a priorêsa</i> and <i>pripra</i>

·137. (a) Final -o or -e is changed to -a (cf. 143. a):

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o espôso</i> 'husband'	<i>a espôsa</i> (cf. 105. a)
<i>o filho</i> 'son'	<i>a filha</i>
<i>o hóspede</i> 'host' 'male guest'	<i>a hóspeda</i>
<i>lavradeiro</i> , in the masc. only as an adj., speaking of animals, 'work-horse,' 'work-ox,' etc.	<i>a lavradeira</i> 'work-woman'
<i>o mano</i> 'brother,' (ironically and in familiar conversation, 'intimate friend')	<i>a mana</i>
<i>o mēstre</i> 'master' 'teacher'	<i>a mēstra</i>
<i>o mōço</i> 'young man'	<i>a mōça</i>
<i>o monje</i> 'monk'	<i>a monja</i>

(b) Words in -ante, -ente, and -inte as a rule have but one form for both genders, both as substantives and as adjectives, assuming the masculine or feminine article according as they denote a male or female respectively:

*amante* 'lover,' *cliente* 'client,' *gerente* 'manager,' *ignorante* 'ignorant,' *inocente* 'innocent' 'baby,' *lente* 'professor' (*a lente* also 'lens,' cf. 143. d), *pedinte* 'beggar,' *pretendente* 'claimant.' But a



distinction is sometimes made in the following words (cf. 143. a. b):

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o almirante</i> 'admiral'	<i>a almiranta</i>
<i>o estudante</i> 'student'	<i>a estudante</i>
<i>o gigante</i> 'giant'	<i>a gigante</i>
<i>o governante</i> 'governor'	<i>a governanta</i>
<i>o infante</i> 'child' 'king's son'	<i>a infanta</i> 'king's daughter'
<i>o parente</i> 'kinsman'	<i>a parenta</i> (occasionally)
<i>o presidente</i> 'president'	<i>a presidenta</i>

(c) Some other nouns ending in a vowel form their feminine in a variety of ways:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o abade</i> 'abbot'	<i>a abadessa</i>
<i>o alcaide</i> 'mayor' 'governor of a fortress'	<i>a alcaidessa</i>
<i>o conde</i> 'count'	<i>a condessa</i>
<i>o diácono</i> 'deacon'	<i>a diaconisa</i>
<i>o duque</i> 'duke'	<i>a duquesa</i>
<i>o herói</i> 'hero'	<i>a heroína</i>
<i>o poeta</i> 'poet'	<i>a poetisa</i>
<i>o príncipe</i> 'prince'	<i>a princesa</i>
<i>o profeta</i> 'prophet'	<i>a profetisa</i>
<i>o sacerdote</i> 'priest'	<i>a sacerdotisa</i>

### 138. Final -ão is changed

(a) to -ã:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o aldeão</i> 'countryman'	<i>a aldeã</i>
<i>o alemão</i> 'German'	<i>a alemã</i>

<i>o anão</i> 'dwarf'	<i>a anã</i>
<i>o ancião</i> 'old man'	<i>a anciã</i>
<i>o cidadão</i> 'citizen'	<i>a cidadã</i> (pop. <i>cidadôa</i> )
<i>o cristão</i> 'Christian'	<i>a cristã</i>
<i>o escritor</i> 'writer'	<i>a escritora</i>
<i>o irmão</i> 'brother'	<i>a irmã</i>
<i>o órfão</i> 'orphan'	<i>a órfã</i>
<i>o pagão</i> 'pagan'	<i>a pagã</i>
<i>o sacristão</i> 'sexton'	<i>a sacristã</i>
<i>o vilão</i> 'peasant'	<i>a vilã</i> (or <i>vilga</i> )

(b) to *-qna*:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o João</i> 'John'	<i>a Joana</i>
<i>o sultão</i> 'sultan'	<i>a sultana</i>

(c) to *-pa*:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o abegão</i> 'farmer' 'tenant'	<i>a abegpa</i>
<i>o ermitão</i> 'hermit'	<i>a ermitpa</i>
<i>o patrão</i> 'patron'	<i>a patrpa</i>

(d) to *-pna*:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o ladrão</i> 'robber'	<i>a ladra</i> (popularly <i>ladrona</i> )
<i>o poltrão</i> 'coward'	<i>a poltrpna</i>
<i>o resmungão</i> 'brawler'	<i>a resmungpna</i>
<i>o sabichão</i> 'pedant'	<i>a sabichpna</i>
<i>o santarrão</i> 'hypocrite'	<i>a santarrpna</i>
<i>o solteirão</i> 'old bachelor'	<i>a solteirpna</i>
<i>o valentão</i> 'brave man'	<i>a valentpna</i>

and all augmentatives (147. c).

(e) to *-onça*:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o barão</i> 'baron'	<i>a baronesa</i>

139. Further pairs of words to denote the male and female. Some of these are cognate, others unrelated. The masculine form is generally used to designate the species:

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o abestruz</i> ( <i>avestruz</i> ) 'ostrich'	<i>a ema</i> or <i>a abestruz</i> ( <i>avestruz</i> )
<i>o avô</i> 'grandfather'	<i>a avó</i> 'grandmother' (105, c)
<i>o bacalhau</i> 'codfish'	<i>a bacalhau</i> or, more often, <i>o bacalhau fêmea</i>
<i>o bode</i> 'buck-goat'	<i>a cabra</i> 'goat'
<i>o boi</i> 'ox' 'bull'	<i>a vaca</i> 'cow'
<i>o burro</i> (or <i>jumento</i> ) 'ass'	<i>a burra</i> (or <i>jumenta</i> )
<i>o cão</i> 'dog'	<i>a cadela</i> 'bitch'
<i>o carneiro</i> 'ram'	<i>a ovelha</i> 'sheep'
<i>o cavalo</i> 'horse,' <i>garanhão</i> 'stallion'	<i>a égua</i> 'mare'
<i>o cervo</i> 'stag'	<i>a cervo</i> 'deer'
<i>o compadre</i> 'godfather'	<i>a comadre</i> 'godmother'
<i>o corvo</i> 'raven'	<i>a corva</i>
<i>o dom</i> 'sir' 'lord'	<i>a dona</i> 'lady'
<i>o elefante</i> 'elephant'	<i>a elefante</i> or <i>elefanta</i>
<i>o frade</i> or <i>freire</i> 'friar;' (the proclitic form <i>frei</i> is used before proper names: <i>Frei João</i> )	<i>a freira</i> , member of a religious community, and <i>Sóror</i> (shortened <i>Sór</i> ), always before a Christian name: <i>Sóror</i> <i>Joana</i>
<i>o galo</i> 'cock'	<i>a galinha</i> 'hen'

<i>o gqmo</i> 'buck' (smaller than <i>o veqdo</i> )	<i>a cqrça</i> or <i>gqma</i> , dim., <i>gamela</i> 'antelope'
<i>o ganso</i> 'gander'	<i>a gansa</i> 'goose'
<i>o garrqno</i> 'small horse' 'pony' 'nag'	<i>a garrqna</i>
<i>o gqto</i> 'cat'	<i>a gqta</i>
<i>o genro</i> 'son-in-law'	<i>a nqra</i> 'daughter-in-law'
<i>o homem</i> 'man'	<i>a mulher</i> 'woman'
<i>o ilhéu</i> 'islander'	<i>a ilha</i>
<i>o leão</i> 'lion'	<i>a lepa</i>
<i>o lôbo</i> 'wolf'	<i>a lôba</i>
<i>o marido</i> 'husband'	<i>a espôsa</i> 'wife' (105. a)
<i>o mu</i> or <i>mulo</i> 'mule'	<i>a mula</i>
<i>o padraqsto</i> 'step-father'	<i>a madraqsta</i> 'step-mother'
<i>o pqdre</i> 'father'	<i>a mqdre</i> 'mother'
<i>o padrinho</i> 'godfather'	<i>a madrinha</i> 'godmother'
<i>o pai</i> 'father'	<i>a mãe</i> 'mother'
<i>o pqto</i> 'drake'	<i>a tqta</i> 'duck'
<i>o perdigão</i> 'partridge'	<i>a perdiz</i>
<i>o peru</i> 'turkey cock'	<i>a perua</i> 'turkey hen'
<i>o pombo</i> 'dove'	<i>a pomba</i>
<i>o pprco</i> 'hog,' <i>varrão</i> 'boar'	<i>a pqrca</i> 'pig'
<i>o pqtro</i> or <i>pqldro</i> 'young horse' 'colt'	<i>a pqtra</i> or <i>pqldra</i> 'young mare'
<i>o rapqz</i> 'lad'	<i>a rapariga</i> 'girl'
<i>o rei</i> 'king'	<i>a rainha</i> 'queen'
<i>o réu</i> 'criminal'	<i>a ré</i> 'female criminal'
<i>o rinocero(n)te</i> 'rhinoceros'	<i>a abqda</i>
<i>o tigre</i> 'tiger'	<i>a tigre</i>
<i>o toiro</i> or <i>touro</i> 'ox' 'bull'	<i>a vqca</i> 'cow'
<i>o veqdo</i> 'stag'	<i>a cqrça, cerva, or veqda</i>
<i>o zângão</i> 'drone'	<i>a abelha</i>

culine or feminine only, and retain the masculine or feminine article regardless of the sex referred to:

(b) Masculine:

- o abutre* 'vulture'
- o atum* 'tunny'
- o besouro* or *besoiro* 'may-bug'
- o búfalo* 'buffalo'
- o crocodilo* 'crocodile'
- o hipopótamo* 'hippopotamus'
- o milhafre* 'kite'
- o picanço* 'woodpecker'
- o rouxinol* or *roussinol* 'nightingale'
- o sapo* 'toad'

(c) Feminine:

- a águia* 'eagle'
- a andorinha* 'swallow'
- a baleia* 'whale'
- a cobra* 'snake'
- a codorniz* 'quail'
- a foca* 'seal'
- a formiga* 'ant'
- a lampreia* 'lamprey'
- a milheira* 'linnet'
- a onça* 'panther'
- a pescada* 'whiting'
- a rã* 'frog'
- a sardinha* 'sardine'
- a serpente* 'serpent'
- a truta* 'trout'
- a víbora* 'viper'
- a zebra* 'zebra'

141. When it is necessary to indicate the natural sex of any of the animals mentioned in the preceding para-

graph, it may be done by adding *macho* 'male' or *fêmea* 'female,' but the noun and the article remain unchanged:

*uma andorinha macho* 'a male swallow'  
*uma andorinha fêmea* 'a female swallow'  
*um tigre fêmea* or *uma tigre* 'a female tiger'  
*a onça macho* 'the male panther'  
*a onça fêmea* 'the female panther'  
*o sapo macho* 'the male toad'  
*o sapo fêmea* 'the female toad'  
*a águia macho* 'the male eagle'

The distinction may also be brought out as follows:

*o macho da onça* 'the male panther'  
*a fêmea da onça* 'the female panther'  
*o macho da águia* 'the male eagle'  
*a fêmea do sapo* 'the female toad'  
*a fêmea do rouxinol* 'the female nightingale'

142. Some Collective Nouns (cf. 214):

*a boiada* or *manada* 'herd' (of cattle)  
*a cáfila* 'caravan' (of camels)  
*a carneirada* 'flock' (of sheep)  
*o casal* 'couple' (of persons living together)  
*o cardume* 'school' (of fish)  
*a cçrja* 'gang' (of thieves, etc.)  
*o enxame* 'swarm' (of bees)  
*o fãto* 'flock' (of goats)  
*o rebanho* 'flock' (of sheep, goats, etc.)  
*a matilha* 'pack' (of hounds)  
*o par* 'pair' (of things)  
*a vqra* 'herd' (of swine)

### Nouns of Two Genders

143. (a) Many words, mostly denoting persons and ending in *-a*, *-ida*, *-ita*, *-ista*, *-e*, *-ante*, *-ente*, or *-ena*, have a common form and may be of either gender,

assuming the masculine or feminine article according as they denote a male or female respectively. The following are the most common:

- o, a artista* 'artist'
- o, a artífice* 'artificer'
- o, a camarada* 'companion'
- o, a compatriota* 'compatriot'
- o, a consorte* 'consort'
- o, a convalescente* 'convalescent'
- o, a cúmplice* 'accomplice'
- o, a gerente* 'manager'
- o, a governante* 'governor'
- o, a herege* 'heretic'
- o, a indígena* 'native'
- o, a intérprete* 'interpreter'
- o, a jovem* 'young man' 'young woman'
- o, a mártir* 'martyr'
- o, a parasita* 'parasite'
- o, a pianista* 'pianist'
- o, a regente* 'regent'
- o, a regicida* 'regicide'
- o, a suicida* 'suicide'

(b) *Criança* 'baby' 'child,' *criatura* 'creature,' *sentinela* 'sentinel,' and *testemunha* 'witness' take the article and adjective in the feminine, even when referring to males, while *gêmeo* 'twin' (boy or girl) and *cônjuge* 'husband' or 'wife' are only masculine;

*uma testemunha falsa* 'a false witness,' *o testemunho falso* 'the false testimony.'

(c) Many words denoting things have a different

meaning according as they are masculine or feminine. The masculine often expresses a single specimen or a more specific, the feminine a more general or collective, idea, but the reverse is sometimes the case. For the exact shade of meaning, consult the dictionary.

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o bago</i> 'grain of corn'	<i>a baga</i> 'berry' (in general)
<i>o banco</i> 'banking house'	<i>a banca</i> 'writing table' 'the bankers' (collectively), also a game of chance
<i>o barco</i> 'bark' (ship)	<i>a barca</i> 'boat'
<i>o bolso</i> 'pocket'	<i>a bolsa</i> 'purse'
<i>o cabeço</i> 'hillock'	<i>a cabeça</i> 'head'
<i>o caldeiro</i> 'kettle'	<i>a caldeira</i> 'cauldron'
<i>o campo</i> 'field'	<i>a campa</i> 'grave'
<i>o cargo</i> 'office' 'employment'	<i>a carga</i> 'load'
<i>o cesto</i> 'basket'	<i>a cesta</i> 'hamper'
<i>o encôsto</i> 'back of a chair'	<i>a encosta</i> 'slope of a hill.'
<i>o espinho</i> 'thorn'	<i>a espinha</i> 'spinal column' 'fishbone'
<i>o fado</i> 'fate,' also a popular song	<i>a fada</i> 'fairy'
<i>o fardo</i> 'burden'	<i>a farda</i> 'uniform'
<i>o fruto</i> , a particular species of fruit, fruit on the tree	<i>a fruta</i> , various fruits, fruitage, fruit gathered for sale or to be served



<i>o horto</i> 'small kitchen garden' 'small orchard'	<i>a horta</i> 'kitchen garden'
<i>o lenho</i> 'log' 'block of wood'	<i>a lenha</i> 'fuel' 'wood'
<i>o madeiro</i> 'piece of wood' 'a beam' 'thick plank'	<i>a madeira</i> 'wood' (in general)
<i>o marujo</i> 'sailor'	<i>a maruja</i> 'seamen' 'crew'
<i>o modo</i> 'manner'	<i>a moda</i> 'fashion'
<i>o poço</i> 'well'	<i>a pôça</i> 'puddle'
<i>o porto</i> 'port'	<i>a porta</i> 'door'
<i>o prato</i> 'dish'	<i>a prata</i> 'silver'
<i>o ramo</i> 'branch'	<i>a rama</i> 'branches' 'foliage'
<i>o rato</i> 'mouse'	<i>a rata</i> 'rat'
<i>o riso</i> 'laugh'	<i>a risa</i> 'laughter'
<i>o saco</i> 'bag'	<i>a saca</i> 'sack'
<i>o troço</i> 'change' (of money) 'small coin'	<i>a troca</i> 'exchange'
<i>o valto</i> 'entrenchment'	<i>a vala</i> 'ditch'

(d) Others are invariable and are distinguished only by the article (cf. 133. c):

Masculine	Feminine
<i>o capital</i> 'principal' 'capital' (money)	<i>a capital</i> 'chief city'
<i>o crisma</i> 'chrism'	<i>a crisma</i> 'sacrament of confirmation'
<i>o lente</i> 'lecturer' 'professor'	<i>a lente</i> 'lens'
<i>o planeta</i> 'star'	<i>a planeta</i> 'chasuble'

*o sôta* 'groom'*a sôta* 'queen' (at cards)

(e) Many words apparently differ only in gender, or differ in the sound of the accented syllable, but are sometimes really unrelated and have widely different meanings:

## Masculine

*o arco* 'bow' 'arch'*o aro* 'hoop' 'rim' 'ring'*o banho* 'bath'*o barro* 'clay'*o bolo* 'cake'*o caso* 'case' 'event'*o cavalo* 'horse'*o cigarro* 'cigarette'*o colo* 'neck'*o escorço* 'cliff'*o fito* 'aim' 'purpose'*o limo* 'mud'*o luto* 'mourning'*o meio* 'half' 'means'*o peito* 'breast'*o pêlo* 'hair'*o pinto* 'chicken'*o prático* 'pilot'*o queixo* 'jaw'*o sino* 'bell'*o solo* 'soil' 'ground'

## Feminine

*a arca* 'chest' 'coffer'*a ara* 'altar'*a banha* 'fat' 'lard'*a barra* 'bar' 'ingot'*a bola* 'ball,'*a casa* 'house'*a cavala*, a kind of sardine*a cigarra* 'cicada'*a cola* 'glue'*a escolha* 'choice'*a fita* 'ribbon'*a lima* 'file'*a luta* 'wrestling' 'struggle'*a meia* 'stocking'*a peita* 'bribe'*a pêla* '(tennis) ball'*a pinta* 'spot' 'blot'*a prática* 'practice'*a queixa* 'complaint' 'process'*a sina* 'fate'*a sola* 'sole'

<i>o tesouro</i> 'treasure'	<i>a tesoura</i> or <i>tesoira</i> 'shears'
<i>o tropo</i> 'trope'	<i>a tropa</i> 'troop'
<i>o vaso</i> 'urn' 'vase'	<i>a vasa</i> 'mud'
<i>o vento</i> 'wind'	<i>a venta</i> 'nostril'

#### 144. QUALIFYING SUFFIXES TO FORM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

These are applied to different parts of speech and modify the meaning of the parent word with some accessory idea of quantity, condition, action, or effect.

145. These suffixes, as well as the augmentative and diminutive endings (146-149), all bear the word accent. If the original word ends in a vowel, that vowel is dropped before a suffix with a vocalic beginning, and the tonic vowel of the original word (if of more than two syllables), on becoming atonic, is reduced and obscured in pronunciation. The following are the most common suffixes:

*-aça* and *-aço* denote a blow with an instrument, the result of an action, or a large quantity. They also form augmentatives:

*a fumaça* 'quantity of smoke' (*fumo*)

*o lançaço* 'blow with a lance' (*lança*)

*o ricaço* 'very rich man' (*rico*)

*o terraço* 'terrace' (*terra*)

*-dão* makes abstracts from adjectives:

*a escuridão* 'darkness' (*escuro*), *mansidão* 'mildness' (*manso*).

*-qno* is used to denote the inhabitants of a country, members of a sect, etc.:

*o americano* 'American,' *o gaditano* 'resident of

Cadiz,' *o presbiteriño* or *presbiterqno* 'Presbyterian.'

*-qcho*, *-icho*, and *-ucho* denote diminution, inferiority, or both:

*o papelucho* 'waste paper' (*papel*), *o riqcho* 'stream' (*rio*), *o vulgqcho* 'mob' (*vulgo*).

*-qda* expresses a variety of ideas:

(1) a quick blow: *a facqda* 'cut with a knife' (*faca*), *a palmqda* 'stroke with the palm' (*palma*), *a pedrqda* 'lapidation' (*pedra*).

(2) blow with an instrument: *a pincelqda* 'stroke with a pencil' (*pincel*).

(3) quantity or measure: *a braçqda* 'armful' (*braça*), *a colherqda* 'spoonful' (*colher*), *a garfqda* 'forkful' (*garfo*).

(4) a collection or an abundance: *a estacqda* 'stockade' (*estaca*), *a rapaziqda* 'gang of boys' (*rapaz*).

(5) conserves, drinks: *a limonqda* 'lemonade' (*limão*), *a marmelqda* 'marmalade' (*marmelo*).

(6) duration of time: *a noitqda* 'night-time' (*noite*), *a temporqda* 'space of time' (*tempo*).

*-qde* and *-dqe* make abstracts, to express a state or equality, from adjectives and nouns:

*a amizqde* 'friendship' (*amigo*), *a beldqde* 'beauty' (*belo*), *a fidelidqde* 'faithfulness' (*fiel*), *a maldqde* 'wickedness' (*mal*), *a mortalidqde* 'mortality,' *a mortandqde* 'mortality' 'slaughter' (*mortal*).

*-qdo* and *-qto* denote likeness, honorific titles, or offices:

*o baronqto* 'baronetcy' (*barão*), *o consulqdo* 'consulship' 'consulate' (*cônsul*), *o eleitqrdo* 'electorate' (*eleitor*), *o professorqdo* 'professorship' (*professor*).

*-agem* and *-ugem* add an idea of

(1) collective force: *a folhagem* 'foliage' (*fôlha*), *a ramagem* 'branches' (*ramo*).

(2) certain duties or tribute: *a fumagem* 'hearth-money' (*fumo*), *a portagem* 'toll' (*porta*).

(3) action or condition: *a homenagem* 'homage' (*homem*), *a hospedagem* 'hospitality' (*hóspede*).

*-al* (1) forms adjectives:

*filiál* 'filial' (*filho*), *persoal* 'personal' (*pessoa*), *teatral* 'theatrical' (*teatro*).

(2) denotes a place covered or planted with trees, plants, etc.: *o cafezal* 'coffee-plantation' (*café*), *o laranjal* 'orange grove' (*laranja*), *o pinhal* and *pinheiral* 'pine grove' (*pinho*), *o rosál* and *roseiral* 'rose garden' (*rosa*).

*-alha* forms substantives expressing objects of larger dimensions than is expressed by the radical, and collectives, often with a pejorative meaning:

*a canalha* 'rabble' (*cão*), *a muralha* 'wall' (*muro*).

*-ama*, *-ame*, and *-ume* denote an accumulation of objects:

*a courama* 'rawhides' (*couro*), *a dinheirama* 'heap of money' (*dinheiro*), *o vasilhame* 'collection of casks' (*vasilha*), *o velame* 'sails' (*vela*).

*-ança*, *-ença*, *-ância*, and *-ência* form abstracts:

*a constância* 'constancy' (*constante*), *a doença* 'sickness' (*doer*), *a esperança* 'hope' (*esperar*), *a mudança* 'change' (*mudar*), *a prudência* 'prudence' (*prudente*), *a sabença* 'learning' (*saber*).

*-anha* expresses large size or extension:

*a montanha* 'range of mountains' (*monte*).

*-ar*: *o luar* 'moonlight' (*lua*).

*-ário* denotes a collection or deposit, a place where the things expressed by the radical are sold or

made: *o boticário* 'apothecary' (*botica*), *o dicionário* 'dictionary' (*dição*), *o herbário* 'herbarium.'

*-aria* and *-eria* denote acts belonging to certain individuals or the results of such acts:

*a galantaria* 'gallantry' (*galante*), *a pirataria* 'piracy' (*pirata*), *a velhacaria* 'knavery' (*velhaco*).

*-qsto*, *-qsta* is a pejorative suffix:

*a mãrqsta* 'step-mother' (*mãdre*), *o padrqsto* 'step-father' (*pãdre*).

*-ável*, *-ível*, and *-úvel* form adjectives denoting capability or worthiness of action:

*amável* 'lovely' (*amqr*), *censurável* 'censurable' (*censura*), *louvável* 'praiseworthy' (*louvqr*), *punível* 'punishable' (*punir*), *temível* 'dreadful' (*temqr*).

*-cida*: *o, a homicida* 'homicide' (*hqmem*), *o, a regicida* 'regicide' (*rei*).

*-êdo* and *-êda* (1) denote a place planted with trees, etc.:

*o arvoredo* 'cluster of trees' (*árvore*), *alamêda* 'place planted with poplars' (*álamo*), *o vinhêdo* 'vineyard' (*vinha*).

(2) a large, isolated object:

*o rochêdo* 'boulder' 'rocky place' (*rqcha*).

*-doiro*, *douro*, and *doura* denote:

(1) place where an action takes place:

*o bebedeiro* 'watering-place' (*beber*), *o matadoiro* (also *matadeiro*) 'slaughter-house' (*matqr*).

(2) means or instrument:

*a ðobadoura* 'spindle.'

*-tqr* and *-dqr* denote the agent:

*o escritqr* 'writer' (*escrever*), *o faladqr* 'talker' (*falar*), *o fumadqr* 'smoker' (*fumar*), *o matadqr* 'bull-fighter' 'bore' (*matqr*), *o cantadqr* (and

*cantqr*) 'singer' (*cantqr*), *o leitor* 'reader' (*lqr*), *o prègador* 'preacher' (*pregqr*).

*-eima* forms abstracts:

*a guloseima* 'gluttony' 'daintiness' (*guloso*), *a toleima* 'foolishness' (*tolo*).

*-eiro* and *-eira* denote:

(1) a plant or tree: *o cafezeiro* (better *cafeeiro*) 'coffee-plant' (*café*), *a laranjeira* 'orange tree' (*laranja*), *a oliveira* 'olive tree' (*oliva*).

(2) a receptacle: *a banheira* 'bathtub' (*banho*), *a capoeira* 'coop' (*capão*), *a charuteira* 'cigar holder' (*charuto*), *a coelheira* 'rabbit-warren' (*coelho*), *a frigideira* 'frying-pan' (*frigir*), *o galinheiro* 'hen-coop' (*galinha*), *o tinteiro* 'ink-stand' (*tinta*).

(3) a large quantity: *o chuveiro* 'heavy shower' (*chuva*), *a poeira* 'cloud of dust' (*pó*).

(4) abstracts denoting physical or moral defects: *a bebedeira* 'drunkenness' (*bêbedo*), *a cegueira* 'blindness' (*cego*), *a ladroeira* 'theft' (*ladrô*).

(5) the agent, the keeper, or the seller: *a cigareira* 'cigarette-maker' 'cigar-case' (*cigarro*), *o engenheiro* 'engineer' (*engenho*), *a leiteira* 'milk-maid' (*leite*), *o sapateiro* 'shoemaker' (*sapato*), *o vaqueiro* 'cowherd' (*vaca*).

*-ense*, *-ês*, *-ez(a)*, *-iza*, and *-essa* form nouns and adjectives:

(1) of nationality: *brasileense* 'Brazilian' (*Brazil*). The forms more commonly used both in Portugal and Brazil are, *brasileiro*, *brasiliانو*, and *brasiliense*; *camponês* 'countryman' (*campo*), *francês* 'French' (*França*), *lisbonense* (also, popularly, *lisboeta*) 'a Lisboner.'

(2) of quality: *a firmeza* 'firmness' (*firme*), *a riqueza* 'wealth' (*rico*), *a pequenez(a)* 'smallness' (*pequeno*), *a intrepidez* 'boldness' (*intrépido*).

-(i)ento forms adjectives signifying 'having the quality of' 'possessed of,' etc.:

*amarelento* 'yellowish' (*amarelo*), *corpulento* 'corpulent' (*corpo*), *opulento* 'opulent' (*opulência*), *sonolento* 'somnolent' (*sonolência*), *turbulento* 'turbulent' (*turbulência*).

-esco, -esca, and -isco express an idea of likeness:

*o chuveisco* 'drizzle' (*chuva*), *pitorresco* 'picturesque' (*pintura*), *princípiosco* 'princely' (*príncipe*), *soldadisco* 'soldierly' (*soldado*).

-elho and -elha, to form diminutives or depreciatives:

*o artelho* 'ankle bone,' *o francelho* 'imitator of the French' (*francês*), *a parêlha* 'pair' 'couple' (*par*).

-ia and -io denote a quality or state, the result of an action, an establishment or industry, or a collection:

*a abadia* 'abbey' (*abade*), *a alegria* 'joy' (*alegre*), *a burguesia* 'citizenry' (*burguês*), *a tesoiraria* 'treasury' (*tesouro*).

-ice, -ícia, -ície, and -iça form, from adjectives, nouns expressing personal defects:

*a beatice* 'religious hypocrisy' (*beato*), *a imundície* 'filth' (*imundo*), *a malícia* 'malice' (*mal*), *a modernice* 'innovation' (*moderno*), *a tolice* 'foolishness' (*tolô*), *a velhice* 'old age' (*velho*);

also a few abstracts: *a justiça* 'justice' (*justo*).

-iço and -ício form

(1) adjectives expressing likeness:

*adventício* 'adventitious' 'foreign.'



(2) nouns:

*o palhaço* 'chaff' (*palha*), *o caniço* 'a thin reed' (*cana*).

*-ido* and *-ida* denote an act or the result of an act:

*o mugido* 'lowing' (*mugir*), *a ferida* 'wound' (*ferir*), *o ladrido* 'barking' (*ladrar*), *a saída* 'egress' (*sair*).

*-il* and *-ino* denote

(1) quality or likeness:

*diamantino* 'adamantine' (*diamante*), *senhoril* 'lordly' (*senhor*).

(2) a place where animals live or are kept:

*o canil* 'kennel' (*cão*), *o covil* 'den' (*cova*).

*-io* denotes

(1) a collection or gathering:

*o gentio* 'crowd' (*gente*), *o mulherio* 'crowd of women' (*mulher*).

(2) quality:

*o senhorio* 'lordship' (*senhor*).

*-ismo* denotes

(1) a religious, political, or philosophical doctrine:

*o cristianismo* 'Christianity' (*cristão*), *o socialismo* 'socialism' (*sociál*).

(2) a peculiarity of style or speech:

*o barbarismo* 'barbarism' (*bárbaro*), *o latinismo* 'Latinism' (*latino*).

(3) conduct in conformity with certain individuals:

*o farisaísmo* 'hypocrisy' (*fariseu*), *o patriotismo* 'patriotism' (*patriota*).

(4) scientific or medical phenomena:

*o magnetismo* 'magnetism' (*magnete*), *o reumatismo* 'rheumatism' (*reuma*).

**-ista** denotes

(1) a follower of a doctrine or of a philosophical system:

*o, a darwinista* 'follower of Darwin,' *o, a materialista* 'materialist' (*materiql*).

(2) a person whose occupation or profession is connected with the root of the word:

*o, a artista* 'artist' (*arte*), *o, a fumista* 'heavy smoker' (*fumo*), *o, a jornalista* 'journalist' (*jornql*), *o, a oculista* 'oculist' (*ócu'o*), *o, a organista* 'organist' (*órgão*), *o, a telegrafista* 'telegrapher' (*telégrafo*).

**-ivo** denotes the property of doing what is indicated by the verb or an aptitude to suffer the action expressed by it:

*o explosivo* 'explosive' (*explodir*), *o sedativo* 'sedative' (*sedar*).

**-mento** forms nouns of action from verbs, expressing action or result of action:

*o casamento* 'marriage' (*casar*), *o documento* 'document' (*documentar*), *o instrumento* 'instrument' (*instruir*), *o pensamento* 'thought' (*pensar*).

**-ório** expresses

(1) place:

*o escritório* 'bureau' (*escrever*), *o lavatório* 'lavatory' (*lavar*), *o observatório* 'observatory' (*observar*).

(2) cause:

*inflamatório* 'inflammatory' (*inflamar*).

It is also used ironically as an augmentative suffix:

*o sabidório* 'pedant' (*sabido*).

**-oso** and **-uoso** form adjectives conveying the idea that the object possesses the quality expressed by the primitive:

*ambicioso* 'ambitious' (*ambição*), *arenoso* 'sandy' (*areia*), *impetuoso* 'impetuous' (*ímpeto*), *saboroso* 'savory' (*sabor*).

*-ude* forms abstracts from adjectives:

*a latitude* 'latitude' (*lato*), *a magnitude* 'magnitude' (*magno*), *a quietude* 'quietness' (*quieto*).

*-ura*, *-dura*, and *-tura* indicate an idea of quality, a state or result of action, or a collective:

*a brancura* 'whiteness' (*branco*), *a dentadura* 'set of teeth' (*dente*), *a escritura* 'writing' (*escrever*), *a frescura* 'coolness' (*fresco*), *a ligadura* 'ligature' (*ligar*), *a tintura* 'dye' (*tingir*).

#### AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ENDINGS

146. Most nouns, adjectives, participles used as adjectives, and some gerunds and adverbs may have their meaning modified by the addition of augmentative or diminutive terminations. Sometimes besides greatness or smallness a new shade of meaning is added to the word by a single suffix and it is not always easy to render into English the exact shade of meaning of such compounds.

#### Augmentatives

147. (a) The commonest augmentative suffixes are:

*-ão*, *-qço*, *-qz*, and *-il*. The termination *-udo* is used only to form the augmentative of adjectives (169). Some others are given in the list below.

(b) Some augmentatives have a depreciatory or grotesque meaning:

*o brigão* 'brawler,' *o chorão* 'whiner;' others are used ironically: *o sabichão* 'pedant,' *o santarrão*

'hypocrite,' *o valentão* 'bully;' while still others express a violent act: *o bofetão* 'blow,' *o empurrão* 'push.'

(c) Augmentatives in *-ão* are always masculine; the corresponding feminine is *-ona* (152. c):

*o môço* 'youth;' augmented, masc., *o mocetão*, fem., *a mocetona*; but most augmentatives are used in the masculine form even when derived from feminine nouns: *a mulher* 'woman,' *o mulherão* 'stout woman;' *a pedra* 'stone,' *o padirão* 'large stone' 'monument.'

(d) Frequently more than one suffix is added to the same word. The suffix, whether augmentative or diminutive, always bears the stress and in most cases is added directly to the stem of the word, especially if this ends in a consonant. Some nouns ending in *-z* change it to *-g* before *-ão*: *o rapaz* 'boy,' *o rapagão*. A final unstressed vowel is dropped before adding the suffix. For the plural, see 106. a.

Original	Augmentative
<i>o animal</i> 'animal'	<i>o animalqço, animalão</i> 'large animal'
<i>a caixa</i> 'box'	<i>o caixão</i> 'coffin' 'chest'
<i>a casa</i> 'house'	<i>o casão, o casarão</i> 'large house'
<i>a casaca</i> 'frock coat'	<i>o casacão, o casqço</i> 'overcoat'
<i>o copo</i> 'cup' 'glass'	<i>o copázio</i> 'large glass'
<i>a espada</i> 'sword'	<i>o espadão, o espadagão</i> 'broadsword'

<i>fino</i> 'sharp'	<i>o finório</i> 'sly, cunning fellow'
<i>a figura</i> 'figure'	<i>o figurão</i> 'important figure'
<i>o homem</i> 'man'	<i>o homemzarrão</i> 'tall, strong man'
<i>o moço</i> 'young man'	<i>o mocetão</i> (fem. <i>a mocetona</i> ) 'tall, well-built, strong fellow' (or 'girl')
<i>a mulher</i> 'woman'	<i>a mulherça, o mulherão, a mulherona</i> 'stout woman'
<i>o nariz</i> 'nose'	<i>o narigão</i> 'great, thick nose'
<i>o papel</i> 'paper'	<i>o papelão</i> 'pasteboard'
<i>a porta</i> 'door'	<i>o portão</i> 'large door' 'gate'
<i>a rapariga</i> 'young girl'	<i>o raparigão, a raparigaça, a raparigota</i> 'big, jolly, tall, pretty girl'
<i>o rapaz</i> 'boy'	<i>o rapagão, o rapazão</i> 'fine, handsome lad'
	<i>o rapazola</i> 'light-minded boy'
<i>o rato</i> 'mouse'	<i>o ratão</i> (fem. <i>a ratona</i> , only in sense of 'queer woman,' and <i>ratazana</i> ) 'large rat' 'queer fellow'
<i>a sala</i> 'room' 'hall'	<i>o salão</i> 'great hall'

(e) In some cases augmentatives in *-ão* have the force of diminutives:

*a carta* 'letter,' *o cartão* 'visiting-card,' *a corda* 'cord,' *o cordão* 'lace,' *a ponte* 'bridge,' *o pontão* 'pontoon,' and a few augmentatives are built on diminutives: *o rio* 'river,' *o riacho* 'brook,' *o riachão* (Braz.) 'rivulet.'

## Diminutives

148 (a) The commonest diminutive suffix is *-inho* (fem. *-inha*), but in familiar language, and more frequently in Portugal than in Brazil, *-ito*, *-ita*, *-zito* and *-zita* are common diminutive endings. Some others are given in the list below.

(b) The suffix is added directly to a word ending in a consonant. If the word ends in a nasal vowel or diphthong, *-zinho*, *-zinha* are used:

*a lição* 'lesson,' *a liçãozinha* 'short lesson,' *a mãe* 'mother,' *a mãezinha* 'little mother' 'mamma.'

(c) The vocalic quality of the original word is preserved in the diminutive:

*avô* 'grandfather,' dim. *avôzinho*; *avó* 'grandmother,' dim. *avózinha*.

(d) In general the infix *-z-* indicates mere diminution without any secondary meaning; without it, some additional shade of meaning, especially lowness or meanness, is usually implied:

*a cadeira* 'chair,' *a cadeirazinha* 'little chair,' *a cadeirinha* 'sedan chair,' *a mulher* 'woman,' *a mulherzinha* 'little woman,' *a mulherinha* 'scheming, intriguing woman.'

(e) A greater degree of diminution is expressed by *-inho* than by *-ito*, and the suffix *-ejo* adds the idea of scorn:

*o animal* 'animal,' *o animalejo* 'worthless little animal' 'brute' 'stupid person.'

(f) More than one diminutive suffix, and even both

augmentative and diminutive suffixes, are frequently attached to the same word:

*a caixa* 'box,' *o caixão* 'chest,' *o caixãozinho* 'a good-sized box,' *a sala* 'room,' *o salão* 'hall,' *o salãozinho* 'a good-sized room.'

(g) Diminutives in *-o* regularly become *-a* in the feminine, and those in *-inho* and *-zinho* are always of the same gender as the word from which they are derived:

*a pedra* 'stone,' *a pedrinha* or *a pedrazinha* 'pebble.'

Some diminutives of words in *-ão* form their plural by changing *-ão* to *-õe* before adding the diminutive suffix:

*a habitaçãozinha* 'poor little dwelling' (from *a habitação*), pl. *habitaçãozinhas*. But *o pãozinho* 'little loaf' (from *o pão*) has pl. *pãezinhos*, and *a mãozinha* 'little hand' (from *a mão*) has pl. *mãozinhas*.

Words in *-al*, *-ol*, and *-ul* form the plural of their diminutives by adding the suffix to the plural of the radical:

*o animal*, pl. *animais*, dim. pl. *animaizinhos*.

(h) Besides the idea of smallness, diminutive endings often express endearment, beauty, pity, dislike, or disparagement. Sometimes, on the other hand, they have the force of a superlative or intensify the idea contained in the simple word:

*um pobrezinho* 'a very poor man.'

(i) Besides nouns and adjectives, infinitives, ger-

unds, participles, adverbs, and, in Brazil, even verbs, may take a diminutive suffix:

*um andarzinho* (from *andar* 'to go') 'a little stroll,'  
*estou dormindinho* (Braz. from *dormindo* 'sleeping')  
 'I am having a nap,' *adeusinho* 'a short good-by,'  
*já estamos pertinho* 'now we are quite near,' *estou-*  
*sinho doente* (Brazil) = *estou* (or *sinto-me*) *ado-*  
*entado* (Portugal) 'I am a little indisposed,' *deva-*  
*garinho* (from *devagar* 'slowly') 'gently and slowly.'

Original	Diminutive
<i>o amigo</i> 'friend'	<i>o amiguinho</i> 'little friend'
<i>o anjo</i> 'angel'	<i>o anjinho</i> 'little angel'
<i>a ave</i> 'bird'	<i>a avezinha</i> 'little bird'
<i>o bem</i> 'good'	<i>o bemzinho</i> 'sweet little thing'
<i>a boca</i> 'mouth'	<i>a boquinha, a boquita</i> 'little mouth'
<i>o burro</i> 'ass'	<i>o burrico, o burrinho</i> 'little ass'
<i>a caixa</i> 'box'	<i>a caixinha</i> 'small box'
<i>a câmara</i> 'room'	<i>o camarote</i> 'cabin' 'stall' (in the theatre)
<i>o cão</i> 'dog'	<i>o cãozinho, o canicho</i> 'puppy'
<i>a carta</i> 'card'	<i>a cartinha, a cartilha</i> 'small card' 'primer'
<i>a casa</i> 'house'	<i>a casinha, a casita, a casinhola, a caseta, a casinhota, o casinhoto</i> 'small house' 'cottage,' with various shades of meaning
<i>o cinto</i> 'belt'	<i>o cintilho, o cintinho, o cinto-zinho</i> 'small band'



<i>a colher</i> 'spoon'	<i>a colherzinha, colherinha</i> 'small spoon'
<i>a colina</i> 'hill'	<i>a colinazinha</i> 'hillock'
<i>o copo</i> 'cup' 'glass'	<i>o copinho</i> 'small cup or glass'
<i>o cordeiro</i> 'lamb'	<i>o cordeirinho</i> 'lambkin'
<i>a corda</i> 'cord'	<i>o cordel</i> 'string,' <i>cordinha,</i> <i>cordazinha</i> 'short cord'
<i>a costa</i> 'side'	<i>a costela</i> 'rib,' <i>costeleta</i> 'chop' 'cutlet'
<i>a espada</i> 'sword'	<i>o espadim</i> 'small sword'
<i>a fazenda</i> 'estate'	<i>a fazendola</i> 'small farm'
<i>o filho</i> 'son'	<i>o filhinho, o filhito</i> 'young son'
<i>a flor</i> 'flower'	<i>a florinha, a florzinha, a flo-</i> <i>rita, a florzita</i> 'floweret'
<i>a folha</i> 'leaf'	<i>o folheto</i> 'pamphlet' <i>o folhelho</i> 'husk'
<i>o gato</i> 'cat'	<i>a folhinha</i> 'calendar' 'ordo' <i>o gatinho</i> 'kitten'
<i>o homem</i> 'man'	<i>o homemzito, o homúnculo, o</i> <i>homemzinho</i> 'little man' 'manikin' 'dwarf' 'insig- nificant person'
<i>a irmã</i> 'sister'	<i>a irmãzinha</i> 'little sister'
<i>o irmão</i> 'brother'	<i>o irmãozinho</i> 'little brother'
<i>o livro</i> 'book'	<i>o livrete, livrinho, librete</i> 'brochure'
<i>a mão</i> 'hand'	<i>a mãozinha</i> 'little hand'
<i>a mosca</i> 'fly'	<i>o mosquito, a mosquinha</i> 'mosquito'
<i>a mulher</i> 'woman'	<i>a mulherinha</i> 'intriguing woman'

	<i>a mulherita, a mulherzinha</i> 'little woman'
<i>o nada</i> 'nothing'	<i>o nadinha</i> 'trifle'
<i>o nariz</i> 'nose'	<i>o narizinho</i> 'little nose'
<i>o passeio</i> 'walk'	<i>o passeiozinho</i> 'stroll'
<i>o pé</i> 'foot'	<i>o pèzinho, o pèzito</i> 'small foot'
<i>o rapaz</i> 'boy'	<i>o rapazeelho</i> (depreciatory), <i>rapazote, rapazele, rapa-</i> <i>zinho, rapazito</i> 'little boy'
<i>a rapariga</i> 'girl'	<i>rapariguita, rapariguinha</i> 'little girl'
<i>o rio</i> 'river'	<i>o riqcho</i> 'brook'

149. Diminutives of Christian names are usually pet names or nicknames; their augmentatives often convey an idea of ridicule or scorn. The commonest are:

*Ana* 'Anna:' *Aninha, Anazinha, Aninhas, Anica, Aniquita, Anita, Naninha.*

*André* 'Andrew:' *Andrezinho.*

*António* 'Anthony:' *Antonito, Antoninho.*

*Clara:* *Clarinha.*

*João* 'John:' *Joãozinho, Janjão, Joaninho.*

*José* 'Joseph:' *Josèzinho, Zezinho, Zé, Zéca.*

*Francisco* 'Francis:' *Francisquinho, Francisquito, Chico, Chiquinho.*

*Luís* 'Louis:' *Lulu, Luízito, Luízinho.*

*Madalena* 'Magdalene:' *Magda, Lena.*

*Manuel:* *Manel, Nel, Maneca, Neca.*

*Margarida* 'Margaret:' *Guida.*

*Maria* 'Mary:' *Mariquinhas, Mariquita, Mariazinha, Marica, Maricas, Maricota, Marças, Marieta, Marça, Cota, Cotinha.*

*Pedro* 'Peter:' *Pedrinho, Pedrito.*

#### XIV. THE ADJECTIVE

150. (a) Almost any adjective may be used as a noun, with the proper form of the article before it:

*os velhos* 'the old folks,' *a cega* 'the blind woman.'

(b) The masculine singular form of an adjective preceded by the definite article often has the force of an abstract:

*o verídico* 'the truth.'

For the definite article with an adjective, usually in the feminine plural, in adverbial expressions, see 654. a.

For the plural of compound adjectives, see 119, 180

##### A. FORMATION OF THE PLURAL

151. (a) As a rule the plural of adjectives is formed like that of nouns. See 104 ff.

Singular	Plural
masc. <i>branco</i> 'white'	<i>brancos</i>
fem. <i>branca</i>	<i>brancas</i>
masc. <i>bonito</i> 'pretty'	<i>bonitos</i>
fem. <i>bonita</i>	<i>bonitas</i>
masc. <i>bom</i> 'good'	<i>bons</i>
fem. <i>bôa</i>	<i>bôas</i>
masc. <i>comum</i> 'common'	<i>comuns</i>
fem. <i>comum</i> (older form <i>comūa</i> )	<i>comuns</i>
masc. <i>espanhól</i> 'Spanish'	<i>espanhóis</i>
fem. <i>espanhola</i>	<i>espanholas</i>
masc. and fem. <i>simples</i> 'simple'	<i>simples</i>
masc. and fem. <i>feliz</i> 'happy'	<i>feliz</i>

masc. and fem. <i>azul</i> 'blue'	<i>azuis</i>
masc. and fem. <i>amável</i> 'lovable'	<i>amáveis</i>
masc. and fem. <i>crível</i> 'credible'	<i>críveis</i>

(b) If the masculine singular has accented  $\rho$  in the penult, this is usually changed to  $\varphi$  in the feminine singular and in the plural of both genders, as with nouns (105). This is most frequently the case with adjectives in *-oso*:

Singular	Plural
masc. <i>brioso</i> 'lively'	<i>briosos</i>
fem. <i>briosa</i>	<i>briosas</i>

Similarly: *canhoto* 'left-handed,' *chopo* 'hatched,' *formoso* 'beautiful,' *generoso* 'generous,' *grasso* 'big,' *morno* 'lukewarm,' *morto* 'dead,' *novo* 'new,' *porco* 'nasty,' *precioso* 'precious,' *torço* 'crooked,' the participle *posto* 'placed' and its compounds *anteposto* 'preferred,' *compuesto* 'composed,' *disposto* 'disposed,' *exposto* 'exposed,' *imposto* 'imposed,' *preposto* 'preferred,' and *supposto* 'supposed.'

(c) But there are many exceptions in which tonic  $\rho$  is retained in the feminine and the plural. The following adjectives are the commonest:

*absolto* 'absolved,' *absorto* 'absorbed,' *anão* 'yearling,' *balço* 'swollen,' *cabço* 'copper-colored,' *chamorro* 'shorn,' *choço* 'void' 'dry' 'insipid,' *côvo* 'hollow,' *cço* 'lame,' *desenvolto* 'nimble,' *ensosso* (*insosso*) 'tasteless,' *envolto* 'involved,' *fôfo* 'spongy' 'flabby,' *fôrro* 'freed,' *fôsko* 'obscure,' *gordo* 'fat,' *jalço* 'rude,' *mazorro* 'rustic,' *mço* 'polled' 'pruned,' *mço* 'young,' *ôco* 'hollow,' *revolto* 'agi-

tated' 'crooked,' *rôso* 'rough,' *rôlho* 'thick,' *rôto* 'torn' 'broken,' *rôxo* 'violet-colored,' *salôbro* 'brackish,' *sôlto* 'released' 'free,' *tôdo*, *tôda*, *tôdos*, *tôdas* (<*tult-*) 'all,' *tôlo* 'foolish,' *tôrvo* 'grim,' *tôsko* 'rude,' *zarôlho* 'one-eyed,' *zôrro* 'sly.'

(d) All adjectives ending in *-il* and accented on the penult make their plural, in both genders, in *-eis*:

*ágil* 'agile,' *difícil* 'difficult,' *dócil* 'docile,' *fácil* 'easy,' *fértil* 'fertile,' *fútil* 'futile,' *hábil* 'able,' *ignóbil* 'base,' *projétil* 'projectile,' *útil* 'useful,' plurals: *ágeis*, *difíceis*, *dóceis*, *fáceis*, *férteis*, *fúteis*, *hábeis*, *ignóbeis*, *projécteis*, *úteis*.

(e) But adjectives ending in accented *-il* make their plural in *-is*:

*civil*, *febril* 'febrile,' *gentil* 'genteel,' *senil* 'senile,' *varonil* 'manly,' plurals: *civis*, *febris*, *gentis*, *senis*, *varonis*.

(f) Adjectives in *-ão* form their masculine plural in *-ãos*, exceptionally in *-ões* and, chiefly when built on names of countries, in *-ães*:

Singular	Plural
masc. <i>alemão</i> 'German'	<i>alemães</i>
fem. <i>alemã</i>	<i>alemãs</i>
masc. <i>charlatão</i> 'charlatan'	<i>charlatães</i>
fem. <i>charlatã</i>	<i>charlatãs</i>
masc. <i>cristão</i> 'Christian'	<i>cristãos</i>
fem. <i>cristã</i>	<i>cristãs</i>
masc. <i>são</i> 'whole' 'healthy'	<i>sãos</i>
fem. <i>sã</i>	<i>sãs</i>
masc. <i>vão</i> 'vain'	<i>vãos</i>
fem. <i>vã</i>	<i>vãs</i>

## B. FORMATION OF THE FEMININE

152. (a) In adjectives, as in substantives (133. b), the characteristic sign of the feminine is the termination *-a*.

(b) Adjectives ending in *-o* change that vowel to *-a* for the feminine singular:

Masc. *grosso*, fem. *grôssa* 'great' 'thick,' masc. *novo*, fem. *nova* 'new.'

For the change from *o* to *o*, see 151. b. c.

(c) Adjectives ending in *-ão* drop the *o* or, if augmentatives, change *-ão* to *-ona* (147. c):

*vão* 'vain,' fem. *vã*; *sabichão* 'very learned' 'pedantic,' fem. *sabichona*; *são* 'sound' 'healthy' 'healthful,' fem. *sã*; *pobretão* 'poor fellow,' fem. *pobretona*; *a velha cidade bretã* 'the old Breton city,' *a colônia alemã* (popularly, but incorrect, *alempa*) 'the German colony.'

(d) Adjectives in *-eu* change that ending to *-eia*:

*ateu* 'atheist,' fem. *ateia*; *hebreu* 'Hebrew,' fem. *hebreia*; *plebeu* 'plebeian,' fem. *plebeia*; *européu* 'European,' fem. *uropeia*; also *feio* 'ugly,' fem. *feia*; except *judeu* 'Jewish,' fem. *judia*; *sandeu*, 'idiotic' 'silly,' fem. *sandia*.

(e) Adjectives in *-u* preceded by a consonant add *-a*:

*cru* 'raw,' fem. *crua*; *indu* 'Hindoo,' fem. *indua*; *nu* 'naked,' fem. *nua*; except *mqu* 'evil,' fem. *mã*.

(f) Adjectives ending in a consonant (except those under (h) *infra*) remain unchanged:

*amável* 'lovable,' *azul* 'blue,' *capaz* 'capable'

'capacious,' *comum* (older form, *comūa*) 'common,' *cortês* 'polite,' *eficaz* 'efficacious,' *fácil* 'easy,' *fatal* 'fatal,' *feliz* 'happy,' *feroz* 'wild,' *fiel* 'faithful,' *geral* 'general,' *jovem* 'youthful,' *leal* 'loyal,' *pedrês* 'stone-color,' *ruim* 'bad,' *selvagem* 'wild,' *simples* 'simple,' *soez* 'vile,' *subtil* 'subtle,' *veloz* 'swift.'

(g) Here belong most adjectives in *-r*:

*bicolor*, *elementar*, *incolor*, *multicolor* and *multicor*, *particular*, *regular*, *semsabor* 'tasteless,' *singular*, *tricolor*, and comparatives in *-or*: *anterior*, *citerior*, *exterior*, *inferior*, *interior*, *júnior*, *maior*, *melhor*, *menor*, *pior* (*peor*), *posterior*, *sênior*, *superior*, *ulterior*.

(h) Except some, chiefly of nationality, in *-ês* and *-uz*, many in *-l* and a few in *-r*, all of which add *-a* to form the feminine (see (f) *supra*):

*francês* 'French,' fem. *francesa*; *andaluz* 'Andalusian,' fem. *andaluza*; *português* 'Portuguese,' fem. *portuguesa*; *um rapaz espanhol* 'a Spanish boy,' *uma mulher espanhola* 'a Spanish woman,' *camponês* 'rural,' fem. *camponesa*; *encantador* 'charming,' fem. *encantadora*; *animador* 'stimulating,' fem. *animadora*; *falador* 'talkative,' fem. *faladora*.

(i) Some adjectives ending in a vowel, usually *-e*, have the same form for the masculine and feminine singular:

*alegre* 'gay,' *árabe* 'Arabian,' *belga* 'Belgian,' *clemente* 'clement,' *constante* 'constant,' *cosmopolita* 'cosmopolitan,' *doce* 'sweet,' *dormente* 'sleeping,' *lisboeta* 'of Lisbon,' *penetrante* 'piercing,' *persa*

(also *pérseo* and *persiāno*, fem. *pérsea* and *persiāna*)  
 'Persian,' *pobre* 'poor,' *présbita* 'far-sighted,'  
*prudente* 'prudent.'

- (j) *Só* 'alone' is invariable in the singular:

*em uma só pessoa* 'in a single person,' *os dois irmãos falavam a-sós com ele* 'the two brothers spoke alone with him,' *só uma* (sc. *parte*) *havia* 'there was but one party,' *só ela é culpada* 'she alone is to blame.'

As an adverb, *só* is equivalent to *sómente*:

*só ele falou* 'he alone spoke.'

- (k) The following adjectives are irregular in the feminine singular:

*bom* 'good,' fem. *bpa* (dialectically *bōa*), *mau* 'evil,' fem. *mã*.

- (l) *Santo* 'holy' becomes *São* (or *San*) immediately before a masculine saint's name beginning with a consonant:

*São-Miguel* 'Saint Michael,' *São-Paulo* 'Saint Paul,' *São-Francisco* 'Saint Francis,' *São-José* 'Saint Joseph,' except *Santo Tomás* 'Saint Thomas,' but *Santo* is used before a masculine name beginning with a vowel: *Santo Afonso* 'Saint Alphonsus,' *Santo Antônio* 'Saint Anthony,' and *Santiago* 'Saint James,' which latter is written as one word. Before a feminine name it is always *Santa*: *Santa Clara*, but *Sant'* before *A*: *Sant' Ana* 'Saint Anne.'

- (m) *Grande* 'great' has but one form for both genders. As the first element of a masculine compound



word, when the second element begins with a consonant, *grão* or *gran* is used without distinction:

*o grão-duque* 'grand duke,' *o grão-mestre* 'Grand Master,' *o grão-Turco* 'the Sultan.' Before a feminine noun *grã-* or *gran-* is used: *a gran-duquesa* 'grand duchess,' *Grã-Bretanha* 'Great Britain,' *a grã-bêsta* 'the elk.'

### C. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

#### 1. The Comparative

153. There are two kinds of comparative, (I) the comparative of superiority or inferiority ('relative comparative') and (II) the comparative of equality ('equative').

154. I. (a) The relative comparative is formed by placing before the positive the adverb *mais* 'more' or *menos* 'less,' which may be reinforced by *ainda* 'still,' *bem* 'well,' or *muito* 'very' (cf. 161):

*escuro* 'dark,' *mais escuro* 'darker,' *menos escuro* 'less dark,' *muito mais bonito* 'much more beautiful.'

(b) The second term of comparison 'than' may be either *que* or *do que*, but chiefly the latter to-day, especially if the second element contains a verb of its own different from that of the first term:

*êste lápis escreve melhor do que julgava* 'this pencil writes better than I thought,' *meu irmão é mais benévolo do que parece* 'my brother is more benevolent than he appears to be,' *dá menos do que promete* 'he gives less than he promises,' *mais sábio*

*do que justo* 'more learned than just,' *este homem é mais rico do que aquele* 'this man is richer than that one,' *ladra mais do que morde* 'it barks more than it bites,' *é mais cedo que ontem* 'it is earlier than yesterday,' *fá-lo hei mais rico do que tu és* 'I will make him richer than you are.'

(c) After *outro*, *diverso*, *diferente*, *diversamente*, *diferentemente* 'different(ly),' *do que* is generally used. But if the first clause contains a word meaning 'rather,' *maior* 'greater,' *melhor* 'better,' *menor* 'less,' *pior* (*peor*) 'worse,' or a negative, the second clause is usually introduced by *que*:

*maior que uma vaca* 'bigger than a cow,' *João é pior que eu* 'John is worse than I,' *antes a morte que a desonra* 'rather death than dishonor,' *não tem mais experiência que eu* 'he has no more experience than I have.'

(d) After the comparatives *anterior*, *exterior*, *inferior*, *interior*, *posterior*, *superior*, and *ulterior* the second term of comparison is introduced by *a*:

*esta seda é inferior a essoutra* 'this silk is inferior to that other,' *êle é superior a seu irmão* 'he is superior to his brother.'

(e) When *mais* or *menos* is followed by a numeral or an expression of quantity, or by a word expressing a number of years, etc., and there is no real comparison, 'than' is expressed by *de*:

*há mais de vinte anos* 'more than twenty years ago,' *em menos de cinco dias* 'in less than five days,' *não digo menos disso* 'I do not dispute that;'

but *ela tem vinte anos de* (or *a*) *menos que o pai* or *ela tem menos vinte anos do que o pai* 'she is twenty years younger than her father.'

(f) After the comparative the subject pronoun should be used:

*mais pobre (do) que eu* (not *mim*) 'poorer than I.'

For *que* in comparative sentences, see 710. e.

For *que não* after the comparative, see 655. i.

155. II. (a) The comparative of equality (or 'equative') is formed by placing the positive of the adjective between the adverbs *tão* (the contracted form of *tanto*; cf. (d) *infra*) 'as' and *como* 'as.' Frequently, though less correctly, *tão* is omitted.

(1) When the same quality is compared in two or more persons or things:

(*tão*) *rápido como o raio* 'as quick as lightning,'  
*casa (tão) alta como uma torre* 'a house as high as a tower,' *tão rico como ele* 'as rich as he,' *hoje está um calor (tão grande) como em julho* 'it is as hot to-day as in July.'

(2) When the comparison is between two or more qualities in the same person or thing, *quão* or *quanto* may take the place of *como* in the second term:

*é (tão) querido como respeitado* 'he is as loved as he is respected,' *Pedro é tão rico quão generoso* 'Peter is as rich as he is generous,' *tão formosas quão várias são as flores* 'the flowers are as beautiful as they are varied.'

(b) Whereas *quanto* (342) and *tanto* (356) usually express quantity and are used before nouns, verbs,

*mais* 'more,' and *menos* 'less,' their contracted forms *quão* and *tão* (also written *tam*) usually express quality and are used only before adjectives and other adverbs:

*tanto amor, tão completa renúncia* 'such love, such complete renunciation,' *tantas e tão veementes tristezas* 'so many and such vehement sorrows,' *esta rapariga é (tão) estudiosa quanto o irmão é preguiçoso* 'this girl is as industrious as her brother is lazy,' *dormi tão mal* 'I slept so badly,' *quão mal o tratavam* 'so badly did they treat him,' *não faz ideia quão feio é* (or *como é feio*) 'you have no idea how ugly he is.'

(c) The second term of an 'equative' is sometimes introduced by *que nem*:

*está calado que nem um rato* 'he is as quiet as a mouse.'

## 2. The Superlative

156. There are two kinds of superlative, (I) the relative and (II) the absolute.

I. (a) The relative superlative is rendered by placing the definite article (variable) or a possessive adjective (variable) before the comparative, from which it may be distinguished sometimes only by the context or by the insertion of a relative sentence:

*o mais escuro* 'the darkest,' *o menos belo* 'the least beautiful,' *o maior bem* 'the greatest good,' *João é o menos valente dos seus camaradas* 'John is the least brave of his companions,' *este meu fato é o mais caro de todos* 'this suit of mine is the dearest of all,' *o canivete está numa das caixas mais*

*próximas da janela* 'the penknife is in one of the boxes nearest to the window.'

(b) After the relative superlative, the preposition *de* 'of' translates English 'in:'

*estes homens são os mais ricos do mundo* 'these are the richest men in the world.'

(c) When the superlative immediately follows the noun, the definite article is not repeated with the adjective (168):

*a via mais curta* 'the shortest way;' but sometimes, under the influence of the corresponding French construction, the article is incorrectly repeated in Portuguese:

*os homens (os) mais inteligentes podem errar* 'the most intelligent men may err.'

(d) The position of the superlative in the sentence may sometimes be varied without changing the meaning:

*as torres mais altas* or *as mais altas torres* 'the highest towers,' *as torres maiores que tenho visto* 'the greatest towers I have seen,' *a ignorância mais crassa* or *a mais crassa ignorância* 'the densest ignorance,' but not *a ignorância a mais crassa* (supra (c)).

(e) The English absolute superlative is often expressed in Portuguese by the relative superlative in the genitive plural:

*encarregou-se duma obra das mais difíceis* 'he undertook a most difficult task.'

157. (II) The absolute superlative expresses the sense of the adjective in a very high degree, without comparison or relation to another object (English 'very,' 'exceedingly,' 'most,' etc.).

158. It is formed either by adding a suffix, most often *-íssimo*, to the stem of the adjective, or by putting an adverb before the positive (161).

### 1. Adjectives ending in a Vowel

159. In the following lists, superlative forms in *-érrimo* are purely literary and are rarely used in conversation:

- (a) *alto* 'high,' *altíssimo*  
*excelente* 'excellent,' *excelentíssimo*  
*agudo* 'sharp,' *acérrimo*  
*cru* 'raw,' *cruíssimo*  
*humilde* 'humble,' *humílimo*  
*íntegro* 'whole,' *integérrimo*  
*livre* 'free,' *libérrimo*  
*mau* 'evil,' *malíssimo*  
*miser* 'wretched,' *misérrimo*  
*pio* 'pious,' *piíssimo*  
*próspero* 'prosperous,' *prospérrimo*  
*sábio* 'learned,' *sapientíssimo*  
*sagrado* 'sacred,' *sacratíssimo*  
*salubre* 'healthful,' *salubérrimo*  
*semelhante* 'like,' *semelhante*  
*abundante* 'abundant,' *ubérrimo*

- (b) *-co* and *-go* become *-qu-* and *-gu-* respectively:  
*antigo* 'ancient,' *antiquíssimo*  
*largo* 'large,' *larguíssimo*  
*magnífico* 'magnificent,' *magnificentíssimo*  
*rico* 'rich,' *riquíssimo*  
*vago* 'vague,' *vaguíssimo*  
*seco* 'dry,' *sequíssimo*

Except *amigo* 'friend,' which is often used adjectively: *amicíssimo* 'most friendly,' rarely *amiguíssimo*.

- (c) Others have two or more forms:

*áspero* 'rough,' *aspêrrimo* (*asperíssimo*)

*doce* 'sweet,' *dulcíssimo* (*docíssimo*)

*frígido* 'cold,' *frigidíssimo* (rarely *friússimo*)

*humilde* 'humble,' *humílimo* (*humilíssimo* and *humildíssimo*)

*nobre* (archaic *nóbile*) 'noble,' *nobilíssimo* and *nobríssimo*

*pobre* 'poor,' *paupêrrimo* (colloquially *pobríssimo*)

- (d) Adjectives ending in *-ão* preserve the *n* of the stem before the ending *-íssimo*:

*cristão* 'Christian,' *cristianíssimo*

*são* 'sound,' *saníssimo*

*vão* 'vain,' *vaníssimo*

## 2. Adjectives ending in a Consonant

160. (a) Those in *-l*, *-r*, and *-s* add *-íssimo*:

*ágil* 'agile,' *agilíssimo*

*cruel* 'cruel,' *cruelíssimo* (*crudelíssimo*)

*frágil* 'fragile,' *fragilíssimo*

*hábil* 'able,' *habilíssimo*

*natural* 'natural,' *naturalíssimo*

*português* 'Portuguese,' *portuguesíssimo*

*singular* 'singular,' *singularíssimo*

*útil* 'useful,' *utilíssimo*

Except:

*difícil* 'difficult,' *difícilimo*

*fácil* 'easy,' *facilimo* (*facilíssimo*)  
*fiel* 'faithful,' *fidelissimo*  
*geral* 'general,' *generalissimo*  
*infiel* 'unfaithful,' *infidelissimo*  
*simples* 'simple,' *simplissimo* (*simplicíssimo*)

(b) Before adding *-issimo*, the following changes are made:

(1) In adjectives in *-vel*, the original *-bil-* of the Latin superlative is retained: *agradável* 'pleasing,' *agradabilíssimo*; *amável* 'amiable,' *amabilíssimo*; *horível* 'horrible,' *horribilíssimo*; *notável* 'notable,' *notabilíssimo*; *terrível* 'terrible,' *terribilíssimo*.

(2) In adjectives in *-m*, the original *-n-* of the Latin superlative remains: *bom* 'good,' *boníssimo*; *comum* 'common,' *comuníssimo*.

(3) In adjectives in *-z*, the original *-c-* of the superlative remains: *audaz* 'bold,' *audacíssimo*; *capaz* 'capacious,' *capacíssimo*; *falaz* 'fallacious,' *falacíssimo*; *feliz* 'happy,' *felicíssimo*; *feraz* 'wild,' *feracíssimo*; *tenaz* 'tenacious,' *tenacíssimo*; *veloz* 'swift,' *velocíssimo*.

161. The following adverbs are often placed before the positive of the adjective:

*altamente* 'highly,' *assaz* and *bastante* 'sufficiently,' *consideravelmente* 'considerably,' *extraordinariamente* 'extraordinarily,' *extremamente* 'extremely,' *mal* 'badly,' *pouco* 'little,' *sumamente* 'highly,' etc.: *a torre extremamente alta* 'the extremely high tower.'



162. Before the positive, *bem* 'well' and *muito* (*mui*) 'very' mean 'most,' 'quite,' or 'very:'

*bem* (or *muito*) *lindo* 'quite (or 'very') pretty.'

Before a comparative they mean 'much:'

*muito mais douto* 'much more learned,' *bem mais feliz* 'much more happy.'

163. While some adjectives, especially long ones, allow only the analytic form of the superlative, e.g., *muito douto*, *muito lindo*, etc., the other form, in *-íssimo*, e.g. *doutíssimo*, *lindíssimo*, etc., is more emphatic and the one preferred by the people.

164. The superlative meaning may also be expressed by repeating the adjective in the positive:

*é (o que se chama) bonito, bonito* 'it is very pretty.'

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISON

165. (a) Several of the commonest adjectives have special comparative and superlative forms derived directly from the Latin, and sometimes also regular forms. The irregular comparatives are invariable for masculine and feminine in the singular, but in the plural they generally add *-s*.

(b) The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

Positive	Comparative	Relative Superlative	Absolute Superlative
<i>alto</i> 'high'	<i>superior</i> <sup>(a)</sup>	<i>o superior</i>	<i>supremo</i> <sup>(b)</sup>
<i>baixo</i> 'low'	<i>inferior</i> <sup>(c)</sup>	<i>o inferior</i>	<i>ínfimo</i> <sup>(d)</sup>
<i>bom</i> 'good'	<i>melhor</i> ( <i>mais bom</i> ) <sup>(e)</sup>	<i>o melhor</i> <sup>(f)</sup>	<i>ó(p)timo</i> <sup>(g)</sup>
<i>grande</i> 'great'	<i>maior</i> <sup>(h)</sup>	<i>o maior</i> <sup>(i)</sup>	<i>máximo</i> <sup>(j)</sup>

<i>mau</i> 'bad'	<i>piqr</i> ( <i>peqr</i> )( <sup>k</sup> )	<i>o piqr</i> ( <i>peqr</i> )	<i>péssimo</i> ( <sup>l</sup> )
<i>muito</i> 'much'	<i>mais</i>	<i>o mais</i>	<i>multíssimo</i> ( <sup>m</sup> )
<i>pequeno</i> 'small'	<i>menqr</i> ( <sup>n</sup> )	<i>o menqr</i>	<i>mínimo</i> ( <sup>o</sup> )
<i>pouco</i> 'little'	<i>menos</i>	<i>o menos</i>	<i>pouquíssimo</i>
'few'			
	<i>interior</i>		<i>íntimo</i>
	<i>exterior</i>		<i>extremo</i>
	<i>posterior</i>		<i>postrêmo</i>
	<i>ulterior</i>		<i>último</i>

## Notes on the Irregular Forms

166. (a) *Mais alto* is in general use in the literal, and occasionally in the transferred, meaning of *alto*; colloquially *mais superior*:

*a árvore mais alta* 'the highest tree,' *a mais alta* (*a suprema* or *a suma*) *esperança* 'the highest hope.'

(b) Other forms are, contracted *sumo*, *mutio alto*, and *altíssimo*:

*o Sumo Pontífice* 'the Pope,' *li a sua carta com sumo prazer* 'I read your letter with the greatest pleasure,' *o Altíssimo* 'God,' *com sumo gosto* 'with the greatest pleasure.'

(c) Also *mais baixo*, and, incorrectly, *mais ínfimo*.

(d) Also *muito baixo* and *baixíssimo*.

(e) The analytic and better form, *mais bom*, has fallen into disuse. *De boa vontade* and *da melhor vontade* 'willingly' are both correct, but *da melhor boa vontade*, though very common, is not.

(f) The absolute superlative is sometimes used, but incorrectly, instead of the relative superlative:

*o ó(p)timo de todos* (for *o melhor de todos*) 'the best of all.'

(g) *Muito bom* is not often used by the people as a

superlative, but is used as a mere positive, with *boníssimo* as its superlative. *O mais bom*, as a superlative, is rare and *o mais ó(p)timo* is incorrect.

(h) *Maior* is the usual form; *mais grande* and *mais maior*, which are sometimes heard, are incorrect. In a few compound words, or regarded as such, *maior* is contracted to *mqr*:

*o altqr-mqr* or *a capela-mqr* 'high-altar,' *o capitão-mqr* 'commander-in-chief,' *o mordomo* 'major-domo,' *a mqr parte das vezes* 'most often.'

When applied to persons, *maior* signifies 'older' and *menor* 'younger:'

*de maior idade* 'older.'

(i) 'Most,' used with a noun or a pronoun, is generally expressed by *a maior parte*:

*a maior parte dos meus amigos* 'most of my friends.'

(j) Also *grandíssimo* and *muito grande*.

(k) *Mais mau* is obsolescent. *Nunca vi coisa mais péssima* or *nunca vi mais péssima coisa* (for *nunca vi tão má coisa*) 'I never saw anything worse,' which is sometimes heard, is incorrect.

(l) *Malíssimo* and *muito mau* are sometimes used as mere positives, and, on the other hand, such superlatives as *o caminho mais mau* 'the worst road' and *a medida pior* 'the worst measure' are met with.

(m) *Muitíssimo* is also used before the comparative:

*muitíssimo melhor* 'very much better.'

(n) Also, colloquially and commonly, *mais pequeno*.

(o) Also *pequeníssimo* and *o mais pequeno*.

167. Colloquially other words besides adjectives and adverbs are sometimes used in the comparative and superlative degrees:

*a mesmíssima coisa* 'the very same thing,' *portuguesíssimo* 'thoroughly Portuguese,' *coisíssima nenhuma* 'nothing whatever,' *tantíssimas coisas* 'so many things,' *Pedro é mais escultor do que poeta* 'Peter is more of a sculptor than a poet,' *uma cantora de primeira ordem, e uma actriz de primeiríssima* 'a singer of the first class, and an actress of the very first.'

168. As in English, the article may or may not be repeated before the second of two superlatives (cf. 156. c):

*a maior e (a) mais rica cidade* 'the largest and (the) richest city,' *o mais sábio e (o) mais constante dos amigos* 'the most learned and (the) most constant of friends.'

#### D. AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES OF ADJECTIVES

169. These are formed as of nouns (147 ff.), except that the suffix *-udo* is used to form the augmentative of adjectives only:

*o beijo* 'lip,' *beijudo* 'thick-lipped'  
*o nariz* 'nose,' *narigudo* 'with a big nose'  
*o olho* 'eye,' *olhudo* 'having large eyes'  
*bom* 'good,' *bomzinho* 'good little fellow,' *boazinha* 'dear little girl'  
*bonito* 'pretty,' *bonitinho* 'rather ('quite' 'very') pretty'  
*mudado* 'changed,' *mudadinho* 'somewhat changed'  
*novo* 'new,' *novinho* 'quite new'  
*obrigado* 'obliged,' *obrigadinho*, *idem*  
*pequeno* 'little,' diminutives: *pequenino* (dialectic *pequeninho*), *pequenito*, *pequenininho*, *pequeni-*

*chinho, pequerrucho, pequerruchinho, pequerrq̃lho* (dialectic, Algarve), *pequerrêlho* (dialectic, Minho), *pequenitinho, pequenitozinho, pequenitq̃te, pequeninozinho, pequenq̃te*

*pobre* 'poor;' diminutives: *pobrete, pobrito, pobrezinho, pobrinho, pobretãozinho*

*pouco* 'little;' diminutives: *pouquinho, poucachinho, poucouchinho*

*tamanho* 'so great' 'so big;' diminutives: *tamanhinho, tamanino*; augmentative: *tamanhão*

*só* 'alone;' diminutive: *sózinho* (152. j).

170. Augmentatives and diminutives of adjectives and participles, as of nouns, are often used ironically, or with a shade of pity or contempt:

*coitado* 'miserable,' *coitadinho, coitadito* 'poor' 'dear' *rico* 'rich,' *ricq̃ço* 'rich nabob'

*valente* 'brave,' *valentão* 'bully'

*soberbo* 'proud,' *soberbão* and *soberbaço* 'too proud,' *soberbinho* and *soberbito* 'somewhat proud'

*triste* 'sad,' *tristonho* 'somewhat sad,' *tristinho* 'pensive'

*velho* 'old,' *velhq̃te* 'hale old man,' *velhinho* 'little, broken down old man,' *velhozinho* 'little, old man'

171. Some diminutives are formed from comparatives:

*maiorzinho* 'somewhat greater,' *está melhorzinha* 'she is somewhat better.'

172. The diminutives of some adjectives have the force of superlatives:

*água fresquinha* 'cold water,' *alma tenrinha* 'a tender soul.'

173. Augmentatives and diminutives of adjectives are subject to the same rules of agreement as simple adjectives (174 ff.).

#### E. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

##### 1. With a Single Noun

174. (a) An adjective, whether attributive or predicate, qualifying but one noun, regularly agrees with it in gender and number:

*um belo jardim* 'a beautiful garden,' *homens velhos* 'old men,' *uma mulher sensata* 'a sensible woman,' *belas flores* 'beautiful flowers,' *a abelha é industriosa* 'the bee is industrious,' *está muito obrigada* 'she is much obliged,' *eles são americanos* 'they are Americans,' *eles chegaram sãos e salvos* 'they arrived safe and sound.'

(b) A predicate adjective qualifying a feminine title agrees with the gender of the logical subject (236. a):

*Vossa Excelência está enfêrmo* (or, if referring to a woman, *enfêrma*) 'you are ill.'

(c) The plural pronouns *nós* 'we' and *vós* 'you,' when referring to one person, take an adjective qualifying them in the singular and in the same gender as the person (547.c):

*estamos muito grato* 'we (the speaker or writer) are very thankful,' *vós sois amado* (or, if referring to a woman, *amada*) 'you are loved,' *vós éreis feliz* 'you (pl. masc. or fem.) were happy,' *nós estamos convencido* 'we (the speaker or writer) are con-

vinced,' *nós estamos certos* 'we are certain,' *nós somos obrigados* 'we are obliged.' Likewise when direct object: *jugo-vos enganado* (or, if referring to a woman, *enganada*) 'I think somebody has deceived you.'

(d) An adjective modifying one of the singular pronouns *cada um* or *cada qual* 'each one' (327), *nenhum* or *ninguém* 'no one' (335, 336), and referring to certain persons or things already mentioned, may be in the plural:

*sobressaltados com esta vista, procurava cada um pôr-se a salvo* 'overcome by that sight, every one tried to escape.'

175. *Meio* 'half,' used adverbially, is usually invariable, but it is frequently, though less correctly, attracted to the gender and number of the substantive to which the adjective or participle belongs:

*estava a porta meia-* (for *meio-*) *aberta* 'the door was half-open,' *livros meio-lidos* 'half-read books,' *pelas janelas meio-cerradas* 'by the half-closed windows,' *olhos meio-abertos* 'half-open eyes,' *obras de tapeçaria meias-* (for *meio-*) *feitas* 'half-finished tapestries.'

176. (a) Though in general agreeing in gender and number with the noun to which it refers, *tudo* 'all' may have the force of an adverb, 'quite' 'entirely':

*ela está toda molhada* 'she is all wet,' *sou tudo ouvidos* 'I am all ears,' *vi as crianças todas aflitas* 'I saw the children all distressed,' *êste frango é tudo ossos* 'this chicken is all bones.'

Likewise in some adverbial phrases:

*a tôda a brida, a tôda a preçsa, a tódo o galope*  
'at full speed.'

(b) Preceding the name of a city or country and referring to its inhabitants, *tódo* may be invariable:

*tódo* (or *tôda*) *Lisboa o soube* 'all Lisbon knew it;' but if applied to the city itself, it must agree with it: *tôda Lisboa estava iluminada* 'all Lisbon was illuminated.'

177. Several adjectives modifying the same noun agree with it in gender. If the noun is singular, the adjectives are singular; if plural, the adjectives are plural if the reference is to all the members of the subject, but singular if each adjective, when alone, would be accompanied by the noun in the singular:

*as nações canadiçna e americçna* 'the Canadian and American nations,' *a primeira e a segunda conjugação regulares* 'the first and second regular conjugations.'

178. A noun with a dependent genitive sometimes has the force of an attributive adjective:

*flôres côr de violeta* 'violet-colored flowers.'

## 2. With Two or More Nouns

179. (a) If all the nouns are singular and of the same gender, the adjective or participle is also of that gender and preferably in the plural, but may be in the singular; a predicate adjective is in the plural:

*um cão e um gato muito lindos* 'a very pretty dog and cat,' *a cultura e polícia romçnas* 'Roman



culture and policy,' *a casa e a escola são brancas* 'the house and the school are white,' *tenho um barômetro e um termômetro bons* 'I have a good barometer and thermometer,' *julgo necessárias a circunspecção e a prudência* 'I regard discretion and prudence as necessary.'

(b) If they are all of the same gender and either all plural or of different numbers, the adjective or participle is also of that gender and plural:

*quatro cadeiras e duas mesas novas* 'four new chairs and two (new) tables,' *dois pratos e um copo dourados* 'two gilded plates and a (gilded) cup,' *gesto e meneios torvos* 'stern look and manners,' *êle é homem de qualidades e sciência distintas* 'he is a man of distinguished qualities and learning.'

(c) If they are all singular and differ in gender, a preceding adjective is ordinarily singular and agrees in gender with the noun immediately after it. A following adjective is ordinarily masculine plural or agrees in gender and number with the nearest noun. It is considered more elegant to have the masculine noun (whether singular or plural) come last:

*uma casa e um jardim belos* 'a beautiful house and garden,' *a noite e o dia eram claros* 'the night and the day were clear,' *talento e habilidade raros* (or *rara*) or *habilidade e talento raros* 'rare talent and cleverness,' *é necessário muito valor e muita coragem, é necessária muita coragem e muito valor*, or *são necessários muito valor e muita coragem* 'much courage and bravery are necessary.'

(d) If the subjects are more or less synonymous and are connected by *ou* 'or,' the adjective is singular and agrees in gender with the nearest noun:

*uma raça ou povo industrioso* 'an industrious race or people.'

(e) If they are all plural but differ in gender, the adjective or participle stands in the plural and agrees in gender with the nearest noun:

*há no Brasil florestas e rios grandes* (or *rios e florestas grandes*) 'in Brazil there are great rivers and forests,' *os palácios e as casas são luxuosas* or *as casas e os palácios são luxuosos* 'the palaces and the houses are luxurious.'

(f) If they differ both in number and in gender, the adjective is preferably masculine plural, though it may agree in both respects with the nearest noun:

*dicionários e uma gramática bem feitos* 'well made dictionaries and a grammar,' *duas semanas e um mês eram passados* or *era passado um mês e duas semanas* 'two weeks and a month had passed.'

(g) With the ordinal numerals the practice varies: *(n)os volumes quarto e sexto*, *(n)o quarto volume e (n)o sexto*, *(n)o volume quarto e sexto*, or, less correctly, *(n)o quarto e sexto volumes* 'in the fourth and sixth volumes.'

(h) When a noun of one gender is in apposition with another of a different gender, an adjective agrees with the second noun:

*Lincoln, aquela fonte de justiça* 'Lincoln, that fountain of justice.'

## Agreement of Compound Adjectives

180. (a) The two words which form a compound adjective both agree with the noun they qualify when each has adjectival meaning-(119):

*meninos surdos-mudos* (not *surdo-mudos*) 'deaf and dumb boys,' *meninas surdas-mudas* 'deaf and dumb girls,' *o(s) tenente(s)-geral* (pl. *generais*) 'lieutenant-general(s).'

(b) Otherwise only the second word agrees with the noun, especially when both elements are names of peoples:

*a concórdia luso-britânica* 'the Portuguese-British agreement,' *a guerra franco-prussiana* 'the Franco-Prussian war,' *as populações austro-húngaras* 'the Austro-Hungarian peoples,' *as letras grego-romanas* 'Graeco-Roman letters,' *as ciências físico-naturais* 'the natural-physical sciences,' *os todo-poderosos* 'the all-powerful ones,' *as línguas neo-latinas* 'the neo-Latin languages.'

Likewise: *boquiaberto(s)* 'open-mouthed' 'imbecile,' *longípede(s)* 'long-footed' (cf. 122, 123).

In some cases the first word is apocopated: *heróico-cómico*, for *heróico-cómico*.

181. (a) Any adjective may be used as a noun:

*o difícil da questão* 'the difficulty of the question,' *o belo* 'the handsome man,' *o pobre* 'the poor man,' *a bela* 'the beautiful woman,' *os vivos e os mortos* 'the living and the dead.'

(b) This is frequently the case with adjectives designating colors, in such expressions as *vestido de*

*branco* 'dressed in white,' and with *alto* 'tall,' *largo* 'wide,' and *comprido* 'long' 'broad,' when designating dimensions:

*ter cinco metros de alto* 'to be five meters high,'  
*muro de dez polegadas de largo* 'a wall ten inches wide;' and with a few other adjectives in certain adverbial expressions (639. a).

(c) An adjective preceded by *de* is sometimes used instead of the corresponding abstract noun, to emphasize a quality or state of the object:

*acusar alguém de preguiçoso* (for *de preguiça*) 'to accuse one of laziness,' *a-pesar-de fraça* (for *da fraqueza*) 'in spite of her weakness.'

(d) The superlative of an adjective is sometimes used to emphasize the particular moment an event took place:

*no mais qgro da batalha* 'at the bitterest moment of the battle,' *morreu no melhor de seus qnos* 'he died in the prime of life.'

#### F. POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

182. (a) When an adjective, or a participle used as an adjective, discriminates one object from another, by ascribing to it some quality determined simply by an exercise of the judgment, such as color, size, shape, taste, position, smell, sound, material, nationality, religion, or profession, or when the adjective is modified by an adverb or adverbial phrase or other modifier, such as *muito* 'much,' *pouco* 'little,' *bastante* 'enough,' or stands in a comparison, it usually follows the noun:

*uma gravata vermelha* 'a red necktie,' *uma mesa redonda* 'a round table' also 'table d'hôte,' *uma*

*lei contrária à natureza* 'a law contrary to nature,'  
*uma porta aberta* 'an open door,' *um vinho doce*  
 'a sweet wine,' *flores brancas* 'white flowers,' *a*  
*escola espanhola* 'the Spanish school,' *a religião*  
*católica* 'the Catholic religion,' *um riacho rico em*  
*trutas* 'a stream rich in trout,' *cabelo tão amarelo*  
*como ouro* 'hair as yellow as gold,' *uma carta mui*  
*eloquente* 'a very eloquent letter,' *o judeu errante*  
 'the wandering Jew,' *uma história extremamente*  
*prolixa* 'a very tedious story,' *ser duma casa tão*  
*ilustre* 'to belong to such an illustrious house.'

(b) On the other hand, the adjective usually precedes the noun

(1) If, besides distinguishing one object from another, it is used figuratively:

*o negro mistério* 'the black mystery,' *um negro dia*  
 'an unlucky day;' cf. *a tinta negra* 'the black ink.'

(2) If the quality which it ascribes to the object expresses emotion or feeling (as of admiration, affection, hatred, or contempt) on the part of the speaker:

*aquele bom homem* 'that good man,' *aquele ruim*  
*cão* 'that bad dog,' *a mais viva curiosidade* 'the liveliest curiosity.'

(3) If it denotes a quality which is inherent in or characteristic of the object, or has become a traditional epithet of the noun, with which it sometimes forms a compound. *Bom, grande, mau, simples*, and *sumo*, unless used as a distinguishing characteristic, usually precede:

*a vanglória* 'vainglory,' *o bom-pastor* 'the Good Shepherd,' *a branca neve* 'the white snow,' *o rouco trovão* 'the rumbling thunder,' *o piedoso Eneas* 'the pious Aeneas,' *o místico Dante* 'the mystical Dante,' *a bela Helena* 'the beautiful Helen.' But, *Afonso o sábio* 'Alfonso the Learned,' *Alexandre (o) Magno* 'Alexander the Great,' *Carlos o Temerário* 'Charles the Bold.'

(c) For the position of *tpdo*, see 88.c.d.

(d) To the foregoing rules there are many exceptions. Consequently, adjectives sometimes differ more or less widely in meaning according as they precede or follow their noun, and in poetry and for emphasis the normal order of noun and adjective may be reversed. In general a post-positive adjective is stronger than when prepositive, and, as in the case of augmentatives and diminutives, it is not always easy to express the distinction of meaning in an English translation. The following adjectives occur most frequently in either position:

*os céus altos* 'the high  
skies'

*um homem belo* 'a hand-  
some man'

*noite boa* 'fine night'

*ano bom* 'new year'

*um homem bom* 'an  
honest man' 'a noble-  
man'

*altos céus* 'good Heavens!'

*um belo homem* 'a nice  
(*'superior'* *'excellent'*)  
man'

*boa noite* 'good night'

*um bom ano* 'a prosperous  
year'

*um bom homem* 'a good-  
natured man'

*uma casa cara* 'an expensive house'

*um homem bravo* 'a fierce, irascible man'

*um amigo certo* 'a dependable friend'

*manhã certa* 'the appointed morning'

*relógio certo* 'a good time-piece'

*um homem grande* 'a large man'

*um fardo leve* 'a light burden'

*dias longos* 'long days'

*um sinal mau* 'a bad sign'

*o homem mau* 'the wicked man'

*um livro novo* 'an unused book'

*homens novos* 'young men'

*vistas novas* 'modern views'

*um homem simples* 'a plain man'

*o padre nosso* 'the Lord's Prayer'

*uma viúva pobre* 'a poverty-stricken, in-

*meu caro amigo* 'my dear friend'

*um bravo soldado* 'a brave soldier'

*um certo amigo* 'a certain friend'

*certa manhã* 'a certain morning'

*certo relógio* 'a certain time-piece'

*um grande homem* 'an eminent ('great') man'

*uma leve dúvida* 'a slight doubt'

*longos dias* 'tedious days'

*um mau sinal* 'a poor indication'

*o mau homem* 'the 'bad man'' (in the play)

*um novo livro* 'a recent book'

*novos homens* 'men of recent prominence'

*novas vistas* 'new outlooks'

*um simples homem* 'a mere man'

*nosso padre* 'our priest'

*uma pobre viúva* 'an unfortunate widow' ('in-

digent widow'	pity), <i>um pobre diabo</i> 'an insignificant fellow' 'a good-for-nothing'
<i>amor próprio</i> 'self-love'.	<i>próprio amor</i> 'real love' 'love itself'
<i>a causa primeira</i> 'the first cause'	<i>a primeira causa</i> 'the principal cause'
<i>homem qualquer</i> 'a man of no importance'	<i>qualquer homem</i> 'any man whatever'
<i>homem rico</i> 'rich man'	<i>rico homem</i> 'gentleman' (formerly 'nobleman') <i>rico tempo</i> 'favorable weather'
<i>casa santa</i> 'sacred edifice'	<i>santa casa</i> 'a charitable institution' (hospital, orphanage, etc.)
<i>a semana santa</i> 'Holy Week'	<i>a santa Bíblia</i> 'Holy Writ'
<i>o Espírito Santo</i> (or <i>o Santo Espírito</i> ) 'the Holy Ghost'	<i>o santo padre</i> 'His Holi- ness'
<i>papéis vários</i> 'miscella- neous papers'	<i>vários papéis</i> 'several pa- pers'
<i>um amigo verdadeiro</i> 'a true friend'	<i>o seu verdadeiro nome</i> 'his real name'

*Num dia santo ninguém devia levar todo o santo dia a trabalhar* 'on a holyday one ought not to spend the whole blessed day working,' *o resto da santa tarde* 'the rest of the blessed evening,' *quando o ano bom principia, não se pode dizer ainda se será realmente um bom ano* 'when the new year begins, one cannot yet tell if it will really be a good year,'



*saquinhas cheias de precioso ouro e de pedras preciosas*  
 'little bags full of precious gold and of precious stones.'

(e) *Meio* 'half,' *mero* 'pure,' *muito* 'much,' and *pouco* 'little' usually precede the noun:

*mero soldado* 'a mere ('ordinary') soldier,' *meio litro*  
 'half a liter,' *poucas coisas* 'a few things.' For the  
 position of *todo*, see 88.c.d.

(f) Of compound adjectives, the shorter usually stands first; if of the same length, they may be arranged alphabetically:

*o sociedade luso-brasileira* 'Portuguese-Brazilian society,'  
*consoantes dentilabiais* 'dento-labial consonants,'  
*a mitologia greco-latina* 'Greco-Latin mythology,'  
*o conflito hispano-americano* 'the Spanish-American conflict,'  
 but *a estação telégrafo-postal* 'the postal-telegraph station.'

(g) If two or more adjectives qualify the same noun, each takes its position according to the rules stated in 182; but if joined by *e* 'and' and one of them is such as must follow the noun, they all follow and the most specific stands last:

*uma bonita casa branca* or *uma casa branca bonita*  
 'a pretty, white house,' *um homem simples e estimado*  
 'a dear, simple man,' *mercadores americanos ambiciosos*  
 'ambitious American merchants.'

# XV. THE NUMERAL

183.

Cardinals		Ordinals	Multi- plicatives	Fractionals
0	<i>zero</i>			
1	<i>um,</i> <i>fem. uma</i>	<i>primeiro</i> (or <i>primo</i> )		
2	<i>dois</i> (or <i>dous</i> ) <i>fem. duas</i>	<i>segundo</i>	<i>duplo, -a</i> (or <i>do-</i> <i>brado, -a</i> ) 'double'	<i>meio, -a,</i> <i>-os, -as,</i> <i>a metade</i> '1/2'
3	<i>três</i>	<i>terceiro</i>	<i>tríplice</i> 'triple'	<i>um têrço, -a</i> '1/3'
4	<i>quatro</i>	<i>quarto</i>	<i>quádruplo</i> 'fourfold' 'quadruple'	<i>um quarto</i> '1/4'
5	<i>cinco</i>	<i>quinto</i>	<i>quíntuplo</i> 'fivefold'	<i>um quinto</i> '1/5'
6	<i>seis</i>	<i>sêxto</i>	<i>sêxtuplo</i> 'sixfold'	<i>um sexto</i> '1/6'
7	<i>sête</i>	<i>sétimo</i>	<i>séptuplo</i> 'sevenfold'	<i>um sétimo</i> '1/7'
8	<i>oito</i>	<i>oitavo</i> (or <i>outavo</i> )	<i>óctuplo</i> 'eightfold'	<i>um oitavo</i> '1/8'
9	<i>nove</i>	<i>nono</i>	<i>nónuplo</i> 'ninefold'	<i>um nono</i> '1/9'
10	<i>dez</i>	<i>décimo</i>	<i>décuplo</i> 'tenfold'	<i>um décimo</i> '1/10'

Cardinals		Ordinals	Multi- plicative	Fractionals
11	<i>onze</i>	<i>undécimo</i> (or <i>décimo-primeiro</i> , or <i>onzeño</i> )		<i>um onze qvo</i> '1/11'
12	<i>doze</i>	<i>duodécimo</i> (or <i>décimo-segundo</i> )		<i>um doze qvo</i> '1/12'
13	<i>treze</i>	<i>décimo-terceiro</i>		<i>um treze qvo</i> '1/13'
14	<i>catörze</i> (or, less correctly, <i>quatörze</i> )	<i>décimo-quarto</i>		<i>um catörze qvo</i> '1/14'
15	<i>quinze</i>	<i>décimo-quinto</i>		<i>um quinze qvo</i> '1/15'
16	<i>dezasseis</i>	<i>décimo-sesto</i>		<i>um dezasseis qvo</i> '1/16'
17	<i>dezassete</i>	<i>décimo-sétimo</i>		<i>um dezassete qvo</i> '1/17'
18	<i>dezoito</i>	<i>décimo-oitavo</i>		
19	<i>dezanove</i>	<i>décimo-novo</i>		
20	<i>vinte</i>	<i>vigésimo</i>		<i>um vinte qvo</i> '1/20'
21	<i>vinte-e-um</i> (fem. - <i>uma</i> )	<i>vigésimo-primeiro</i>		Etc.
22	<i>vinte-e-dois</i> (fem. - <i>duas</i> )	<i>vigésimo-segundo</i>		

Cardinals		Ordinals	Multi- plicative	Fractionals
23	<i>vinte-e-três</i>			
30	<i>trinta</i>	<i>trigésimo</i>		
31	<i>trinta-e-um</i> (fem. -uma)			
32	<i>trinta-e-dois</i> (fem. -duas)			
38	<i>trinta-e-oito</i> (or <i>trint- ôito</i> )			
40	<i>quarenta</i>	<i>quadra- gésimo</i> (or <i>quarenté- simo</i> )		
50	<i>cincoenta</i> (or <i>cin- qüenta</i> )	<i>quina- gésimo</i>		
60	<i>sessenta</i>	<i>sexagésimo</i>		
70	<i>setenta</i>	<i>septuagé- simo</i>		
80	<i>oitenta</i>	<i>octogésimo</i>		
90	<i>noventa</i>	<i>nonagésimo</i>		
100	<i>cento, cem</i>	<i>centésimo</i>	<i>cêntuplo</i> 'hundred- fold'	<i>um</i> <i>centésimo</i> '1/100'
101	<i>cento-e-um</i> (fem. -uma)	<i>centésimo- primeiro</i>		

Cardinals		Ordinals	Multi- plicative	Fractionals
102	<i>cento-e-dois</i> (fem.-duas)			
200	<i>duzentos,</i> <i>-as</i>	<i>ducentésimo</i>		
300	<i>trezentos,</i> <i>-as</i>	<i>tricentésimo</i>		
400	<i>quatro-</i> <i>centos, -as</i>	<i>quadrin-</i> <i>gentésimo</i>		
500	<i>quinhentos,</i> <i>-as</i>	<i>quingen-</i> <i>tésimo</i>		
600	<i>seiscentos,</i> <i>-as</i>	<i>sex(c)enté-</i> <i>simo</i>		
700	<i>sete-centos,</i> <i>-as</i>	<i>septingen-</i> <i>tésimo</i>		
800	<i>oitocentos,</i> <i>-as</i>	<i>octingen-</i> <i>tésimo</i>		
900	<i>nove-centos,</i> <i>-as</i>	<i>noningen-</i> <i>tésimo</i> ( <i>nongen-</i> <i>tésimo</i> )		
1000	<i>mil,</i> <i>milhar</i>	<i>milésimo</i>		<i>um</i> <i>milésimo</i> '1/1000'
1001	<i>mil-e-um</i> (fem.-uma)			
2000	<i>dois</i> (fem. duas) <i>mil</i>	<i>duo-</i> <i>milésimo</i>		

Cardinals		Ordinals	Multi- plicative	Fractionals
5000	<i>cinco mil</i>			
100,000	<i>cem mil</i>	<i>centésimo</i> (or <i>cem-milésimo</i> )		
1 million	<i>um milhão</i> (pl. <i>milhões</i> )	<i>milionésimo</i>		
1 billion	<i>um bilhão</i> , <i>um bilião</i> (pl. <i>bilhões</i> ,	<i>biliões</i> )		
1 trillion	<i>um trilhão</i> , <i>um trilião</i> (pl. <i>trilhões</i> ,	<i>triliões</i> )		

## Notes on the Numerals

184. (a) *Um* and *dois*, both when standing alone and when compounded with other numerals, are the only cardinals that vary for gender. For *ambos*, see 325.

(b) *À uma* is an adverbial expression meaning 'together:'

*todos à uma* 'all together' 'all at the same time.'

185. *Primeiro* 'first' is the regular form; *primo* is used in the sense of 'excellent,' in expressions like *obra prima* 'masterpiece,' *matéria prima* 'raw material,' in arithmetical expressions, *números primos* 'prime numbers,' and in composition, like *primogênito* 'first-born.'

For *primeiro* and other ordinals as adverbs and in adverbial expressions, see 642. a.

*Secundário* generally means 'accessory' 'secondary.'

For *terço* 'third,' see 205. c.

186. The old ordinals in *-ena*, e.g., *novena* (= *nono*) 'ninth,' *dezena* (= *décimo*) 'tenth,' etc., are no longer used, except a few as feminine substantives with special meanings (214).

187. Other, but less correct, spellings are, for '16,' *desasseis*, *dezaseis*, *deseseis*, *dezeseis*; for '17,' *desasçete*, *desesçete*, *dezesçete*, *dezasçete*; and, for '19,' *dezenove*.

188. Formerly *vinte-dois*, *vinte-três*, etc. were written instead of *vinte-e-dois*, *vinte-e-três*, etc.

189. *Cento* 'hundred,' preceded by the indefinite article, is used

(a) when alone, as a substantive: *tenho um cento* 'I have a hundred;'

(b) when, also as a substantive, it is followed by another noun joined to it by *de*: *um cento de laranjas* 'a hundred oranges;'

(c) when preceded or followed immediately by another numeral except *mil*: *cinco centos de árvores* 'five hundred trees;'

(d) in the designation of numbers, between 100 and 200: *cento e duas páginas* 'one hundred and two pages.'

190. *Cem*, the contracted form of *cento*, is always invariable and is used adjectively:

(a) immediately before a noun: *cem máquinas* 'one hundred machines,' *cem dúzias de meias* '100 dozen stockings,' *mais de cem ilustrações* 'more than a hundred illustrations,' *cem rosas brancas* 'one hundred white roses,' *cem mil homens* '100,000 men;'

(b) before an adjective: *cem lindas crianças* 'one hundred pretty children,' *cem belas rosas* 'one hundred beautiful roses.'

191. Popularly '200' and '500' are *doiscentos* and *cincocentos* respectively.

192. *Cem, mil*, or any other number marking plurality, may be preceded by *uns*, fem. *umas* 'some' 'about:'

*uns cem livros* 'about one hundred books,' *umas mil mulheres* 'some thousand women.'

193. Counting by hundreds is not carried beyond 900; beginning with ten hundred, *mil* 'a thousand' is used:

*mil nove-centos e vinte* 'nineteen hundred and twenty,'  
*mil e uma noites* '1001 nights,' *mil e cem* 'eleven hundred.'

194. *Um milhar* is a substantive and is joined to a following noun by the preposition *de*. It is used only in the literary language and when speaking of money or people. In the singular it denotes the exact number; in the plural, *milhares*, it sometimes means 'some thousands' 'by thousands:'

*milhares de vezes* 'thousands of times.'

195. *Um milheiro* is used when speaking of animals and inanimate objects, and denotes an approximate number.

196. The forms *bilhão* and *trilhão*, which are due to French influence, are the ones in general use, but *bilhão* and *trilhão* are preferable. *Um milhão* (pl. *milhões*), without any addition, is used only of money; otherwise it requires the preposition *de* before the noun it multiplies:

*êle possui milhões* 'he possesses millions,' but  
*um milhão de soldados* 'a million soldiers.'

#### The Use of *e* with Numerals

197. (a) In numbers from 21 to 999 inclusive, the conjunction *e* 'and' is expressed between the hundreds, the tens, and the digits:

*vinte e quatro* '24,' *duzentos e cincoenta e cinco* '255,' *cento e vinte mil homens* '120,000 men,'  
*duzentas e oito casas* '208 houses.'



(b) From 1000 on, *e* is omitted after *mil* if none of the figures after the thousands is zero:

*mil cento e vinte-e-três* '1123,' *dez mil seis centos e setenta-e-três* '10,673,' *seis mil quinhentos e quarenta-e-um* '6541,' *mil novecentos e vinte-e-seis* '1926,' *dez mil e oitenta-e-um* '10,081,' *mil e nove-centos* '1900,' *mil e oitenta-e-quatro* '1084.'

(c) In a long series of figures, *e* is omitted between the groups but is used between the members of a group:

*vinte e três trilhões, quatrocentos e quarenta e quatro bilhões, duzentos e vinte e cinco milhões, quinhentos e vinte e oito mil, duzentos e vinte e cinco* '23,444,-225,528,225.'

(d) If, however, both tens and digits are lacking in the last group, *e* is expressed before it:

*trinta e um milhões, quinhentos e cincoenta e dois mil e quatrocentos*, '31,552,400.'

For the preposition *de* to express 'than' before a numeral, see 154. e.

### Position of the Numerals

198. (a) Cardinal numerals precede the noun, except when used in place of ordinals (199):

*há vinte dias* 'twenty days ago,' *cinco cavalos* 'five horses,' *no século treze* 'in the thirteenth century,' *página vinte* 'page twenty.'

(b) Regularly an ordinal precedes the noun, especially if it indicates merely order, except with the names of rulers (201):

*o primeiro livro* 'the first book,' *a quarta lição* 'the fourth lesson,' *o quarto andar* 'the fourth floor;'

but, if it indicates time or location, it follows:

*partirei no dia primeiro de agosto* 'I will leave on the first day of August,' *aquela passagem está no livro segundo, capítulo décimo, parágrafo último* 'that passage is in the second book, tenth chapter, last paragraph.'

(c) Counting centuries, the ordinal either precedes or follows the noun:

*no século décimo-terceiro* or *no décimo-terceiro século* 'in the thirteenth century.'

(d) When a cardinal and an ordinal come together, either may precede the other:

*os primeiros dez livros* or *os dez primeiros livros* 'the first ten books,' *as duas primeiras cenas* or *as primeiras duas cenas* 'the first two scenes.'

### Cardinals Used for Ordinals

199. The tendency, even in the literary language, is to limit the use of the ordinal to the lower numbers up to '30,' to *centésimo* and *milésimo*, and to certain fixed expressions, such as the names of the days of the week.

200. Hence the cardinal is used instead of the ordinal, especially with the higher numbers:

(a) To express the hour (224), the day of the month (221, 222), the year, or the century (220).

(b) To indicate paragraphs, chapters, or pages of

books. Here either the cardinal or the ordinal may be used after the noun; if the numeral precedes the noun the ordinal must be used:

*página vigésima* or *página vinte* 'page twenty,'  
*capítulo segundo* or *capítulo dois* 'chapter II,' *na*  
*quinta página do terceiro capítulo* 'on the fifth page  
of the third chapter.'

(c) Referring to the page of a book, the usual practice is to use the plural of the noun *página* with or without a preposition:

(a) *páginas doze* 'page 12.'

To translate, for example, 'page 62,' any of the following expressions may be used:

*página sexagésima segunda, na página sexagésima*  
*segunda, a página sessenta e duas, a páginas*  
*sessenta e duas, na página sessenta e duas.*

In Brazil both the preposition and the feminine singular of the article are frequently used:

*à página doze* (= *a a página que tem o número*  
*doze*) 'on page 12,' *em que página está?* 'on what page  
is it?' *na página vinte-e-um* 'on page 21,' *lê-se em*  
*páginas cincoenta* 'we read on page 50.'

201. Numerical titles of rulers of the same name, up to 'the tenth' inclusive, are indicated by an ordinal following the name, but without the article:

*Napoleão Primeiro* 'Napoleon I,' *Pio Nono* 'Pius IX.'

For 'eleventh,' either the cardinal or the ordinal may be used but much more commonly the cardinal:

*Luís Onze* (or *Luís Undécimo*) 'Louis XI.'

From 'twelfth' on, the cardinal is preferred:

*Luís Catorze* 'Louis XIV,' *Luís Dezasseis* (less often *Décimo-sêxto*) 'Louis XVI.'

202. When an ordinal below 2000 is composed of several numerals, each numeral (and not the last one only, as in English) is an ordinal, and the conjunction *e* is not expressed:

*o noningentésimo octogésimo primeiro* 'the 981st,'  
*a milésima ducentésima quinquagésima primeira*  
*casa desta rua* 'the 1251st house on this street.'

203. If the ordinal is above 2000, the first numeral is a cardinal:

*o dezassete milésimo quatingentésimo sexto* 'the 17,406th,' *a duas milésima ducentésima quinquagésima primeira* 'the 2251st.'

204. More frequently, when the number is large, a cardinal preceded by *número* 'number' takes the place of an ordinal:

*a casa número dois mil trezentos e um* 'house No. 2301.'

#### FRACTIONALS

205. (a) *Metade* 'half' 'a half' 'one half' 'half a' is a feminine substantive:

*metade do dinheiro* 'half of the money,' *a metade de meus bens* 'half of my means.'

(b) *Meio*, -a, -os, -as 'half' does not admit of the indefinite article after it (100):

*meia libra* 'half a pound,' *libra e meia (libra)* 'a pound and a half,' *meia hora* 'half an hour,'  
*(uma) hora e meia* 'an hour and a half,' *o relógio*

*dá as horas e meias-horas* 'the clock strikes the hour and the half-hour,' *ter a forma de meia-lua* 'to have the shape of a crescent.'

(c) *Têrço* 'a third' may be a masculine noun or an adjective:

*um têrço* 'one third,' *terceiro* 'third in order,' *a têrça (parte)* 'the third part' 'one third' (when there are but three parts), *a terceira (parte)* 'the third part' (when there are more than three), *têrça-feira* 'Tuesday.'

(d) *Dois têrços* or *duas têrças (partes)* '2/3,' *um quarto* or *uma quarta (parte)* '1/4,' *três quartos* or *três quartas (partes)* '3/4,' *um quinto* or *uma quinta (parte)* '1/5,' *dois quintos* or *duas quintas (partes)* '2/5,' *duas décimas (partes)* '2/10,' *três quintos* '3/5,' *cinco sétimos* '5/7,' *sete nonos* '7/9,' *um décimo* or *a décima (parte)* '1/10,' *um centésimo* or *a centésima parte* '1/100,' *um milésimo* or *a milésima parte* '1/1000.'

(e) Fractions from 1/11 to 1/99 are ordinarily formed by adding the suffix *qvo(s)* (from *oit-qvo* 'eighth') to the corresponding cardinal:

*um onze qvo*, *uma décima primeira parte*, or *uma undécima parte* '1/11,' *três doze qvos* or *três duodécimos* '3/12,' *cinco vinte qvos* or *cinco vigésimos* '5/20,' *quarenta e um cincoenta e quatro qvos* '41/54,' *sete (unidades) (e) seis vinte (e) cinco qvos* '7 6/25,' *quatrocentos e oitenta e nove mil quinhentos e noventa e dois qvos* '489/1592,' *um centésimo* '1/100,' *um milésimo* '1/1000.'

(f) For decimals, the feminine plural of the ordinal is used:

*sete décimas* or *um sétimo decimal* '.7,' *quatro* (unidades) (e) *seis centésimas* '4.06,' *três* (unidades) (e) *cinco centésimas* '3.05,' *onze* (unidades) (e) *quinze milésimas* '11.015.'

## ARITHMETICAL FORMULAS

206. (a)

+, *mais* 'plus'

-, *menos* 'minus'

×, *multiplicação por* or *vezes* 'multiplied by' 'times'

÷, *dividido por* 'divided by'

=, *é igual a, faz, são iguais a, fazem* 'are'

$2 \times 3 = 6$ , *duas vezes três, seis*

$2 + 5 = 7$ , *dois mais* (or *e*) *cinco* (são) *sete*

$2/5 + 3/9 = 33/45$ , *dois quintos mais três nonos fazem trinta e três quarenta e cinco avos*

$7 - 3 = 4$ , *sete menos três* (são or *é igual a*) *quatro*

$8 \times 2 = 16$ , *oito* (multiplicação) *por dois* or *oito vezes dois* (são) *dezasseis*

$2 \times 2 = 4$ , *duas vezes dois* (fazem or *são*) *quatro*

$15 \div 3 = 5$ , *quinze dividido por três* (são) *cinco*

*Quanto fazem cinco oitavos divididos por dois?* 'how much is  $5/8 \div 2$ ? São cinco dezasseis avos '5/16.'

(b) The second term of a ratio is expressed by *para*:

*de 2 para 4 há a mesma razão que de 3 para 6*  
'2 is to 4 as 3 is to 6,' *3 está para 6 assim como 7 para 14* '3 is to 6 as 7 is to 14.'

(c) In expressing by how much one thing is greater or less than another, no preposition is used:

*duas vezes maior* 'twice greater,' *outro tanto maior* 'as much more,' *é mais curta duas milhas* 'it is shorter by two miles,' *posterior muitos anos* 'later by many years,' *é mais velho alguns anos* 'he is some years older;' except in mathematical computations and occasionally under the influence of the French idiom, when *de* is used incorrectly: *êste número excede aquele (de) dois* 'this number exceeds that by two,' *aumentar e diminuir (de) um metro* 'to increase and diminish by a meter,' *envelheceu (de) dez anos naquela dia* 'he aged ten years in that day.'

#### DIMENSION

207. Dimension is expressed as follows:

*uma mesa de um metro de comprimento* (or *de comprimento*) 'a table one meter long,' *uma cama de noventa centímetros de largo* (or *de largura*) 'a bed ninety centimeters wide,' *um livro de oito polegadas de alto e da grossura de cinco* 'a book eight inches long and five thick,' *um teto de vinte pés (de comprimento) por doze de largo* 'a ceiling twenty feet ('long') by twelve wide,' *esta mesa tem três pés de comprimento por dois de largura* 'this table is three feet long by two wide.'

#### MULTIPLICATIVES

208. (a) The multiplicatives *dobre*, *duplo*, *dúplice*, and *duplicado* 'double,' *tríplice*, *tríplo*, *triple*, and *triplado* 'triple' 'threefold,' *décuplo* 'tenfold,' *cêntuplo*

'hundredfold,' *múltiplo* 'manifold,' etc., are learned forms:

*pagar o duplo* 'to pay twice as much.'

(b) Instead of these the popular speech uses *dôbro*, *dobrado*, *dois tantos*, *duas vezes mais*, or *duas vezes tantos* (-as) 'twice as much' 'twice as many,' *três dobrados*, *tresdobrado*, *três dôbros*, *três dôbro*, *três tantos* 'three times as many,' *quatro tantos* 'four times as many':

*aquela custa o dôbro desta* 'that costs twice as much as this,' *aposto dobrado contra singelo* 'I bet two to one.'

209. (a) *Tanto*, -a, -os, -as, usually in the plural and agreeing with the following noun, when added to a numeral with intervening *e*, completes in an indefinite way the quantity:

*cincoenta e tantos anos* 'fifty years or more,' *uns cento e tantos homens* 'a hundred men or more,' *êste custou dez mil (réis) e tanto* 'this cost something more than ten milréis.'

(b) Without intervening *e*, *tantos* added to a numeral repeats the value of the numeral:

*dois tantos* 'twice as much,' *três tantos* 'three times as many,' *duas vezes tantas* 'twice as many,' *êsta cesta tem dois ou três tantos daquela* 'this basket holds twice or three times as much as that.'

(c) In the plural after a noun and agreeing with it, it means 'such-and-such,' 'so-and-so:'

*li-o no livro a páginas tantas* 'I read it in the book on such-and-such a page.'

210. *Outro* (-a, -os, -as) *tanto* (-a, -os, -as) is used



to express 'as much more' or 'as many more,' that is, a quantity equal to one already mentioned:

*meia libra de açúcar com outra tanta de sal* 'a half a pound of sugar with the same quantity of salt,'  
*são outras tantas razões* 'there are as many more reasons.'

211. Popularly *pico*, always preceded by *e*, means 'a little more:'

*duas libras e pico* 'a little over two pounds,' *três horas e pico* 'a little more than three hours.'

212. Other similar expressions are *o melhor* 'the better part:'

*ganha o melhor de dez escudos* 'he earns the better part of ten escudos,' and *não mais que* 'only:' *esta obra não tem mais que dois volumes* 'this work contains only two volumes.'

213. 'One by one,' etc.:

*contei as maçãs uma a (or por) uma e os melões a dois e dois (or dois a dois)* 'I counted the apples one by one and the melons two by two,' *o infêrmo deve tomar o medicamento de três em três horas (or cada três horas)* 'the patient must take the medicine every three hours.'

#### COLLECTIVES

214. The commonest are (cf. 142):

*um par* 'couple' 'pair'

*o biénio* 'space of two years'

*um terno, um trio, um tercêto* 'trio'

*o triénio* 'space of three years'

*um quaternio, um quarteto, um quadriénio* 'quartet'

*o lustro (or quinquénio)* 'period of five years'

*uma semana* or *oito dias* 'a week'  
*uma novena* 'group of nine persons,' but especially  
 'nine days' devotion'  
*uma dezena* 'group of ten' 'decade'  
*o decênio* 'space of ten years'  
*uma dúzia* or *uma doze* 'dozen'  
*meia dúzia* 'half a dozen'  
*a onzena* 'usury'  
*uma trezena* 'space of thirteen days' 'thirteen days'  
 prayer before a saint's day'  
*uma quinquena* (*de dias*) or *uns quinze dias* 'fort-  
 night'  
*uma vintena* 'score'  
*uma centena* 'group of one hundred'  
*um centenar* 'hundreds'  
*o século* 'century'  
*uma grãsa* 'gross'  
*um milhar* 'group of a thousand' (194)

These words may be followed by the preposition *de* and a substantive:

*um par de botas* 'a pair of boots,' *morreram no*  
*combate centenas de homens valentes* 'hundreds  
 of brave men died in the combat,' *dezenas de*  
*milhares* 'tens of thousands.'

## DATE IDIOMS

215. *O ano abrange quatro estações: a primavera*  
 'spring,' *o verão* or *o estio* 'summer,' *o outono* 'autumn,'  
*o inverno* 'winter.'

216. *Os nomes dos meses em português são:*  
*janeiro* 'January'                      *julho* 'July'

<i>fevereiro</i> 'February'	<i>agosto</i> 'August'
<i>março</i> 'March'	<i>setembro</i> 'September'
<i>abril</i> 'April'	<i>outubro</i> 'October'
<i>maio</i> 'May'	<i>novembro</i> 'November'
<i>junho</i> 'June'	<i>dezembro</i> 'December'

*'Trinta dias tem novembro,  
Abril, junho, e setembro;  
Vinte-e-oito terá um,  
E todos mais: trinta-e-um.'*

217. *Os dias da semana são:*

<i>domingo</i> 'Sunday'	<i>quinta-feira</i> 'Thursday'
<i>segunda-feira</i> 'Monday'	<i>sexta-feira</i> 'Friday'
<i>terça-feira</i> 'Tuesday'	<i>sábado</i> 'Saturday'
<i>quarta-feira</i> 'Wednesday'	

218. For the article in expressions of time, see 82.

219. The word *feira* is frequently omitted in conversation, and also in announcements and the like, from a series of names of the days of the week:

*o navio parte às quintas e domingos* 'the ship sails Thursdays and Sundays,' *o 'rápido' parte de Lisboa às segundas, quartas e sábados, pelas 16.20* 'the express leaves Lisbon Mondays, Wednesdays and Saturdays at 4:20 P.M.,' *no domingo à noite iremos ficar a Málaga. Na segunda voltarei a Toulouse e estarei na terça em Paris* 'Sunday night we shall remain in Malaga. Monday I shall return to Toulouse and on Wednesday I shall be in Paris.'

220. In giving the century, the ordinal may be used before or after the noun, for the first ten centuries, or,

more commonly, the cardinal is used after the noun for any century:

*estamos no século vinte* 'this is the twentieth century,' *morreu no século dezóito, no século décimo oitavo*, or *no décimo oitavo século* 'he died in the eighteenth century.'

221. To designate the day of the month,—with the exception of the first,—the cardinal is used, preceded or not by the definite article, with which the preposition *a* or *em* 'in' is sometimes combined. In all cases the preposition *de* 'of' is expressed before the name of the month and also before the cardinal which expresses the number of the year:

*Rio de Janeiro a (aos, em, no dia) doze de novembro de mil novecentos e vinte-e-quatro* 'Rio Janeiro, November 12, 1924,' *o (dia) vinte-e-três de maio do qno (de) 1922 foi chuvoso* 'the twenty-third of May in the year 1922 was rainy,' *regressarei no mês de setembro em (or no qno de) 1924* 'I shall return in the month of September, 1924,' *hei-de chegar a dois de abril* 'I shall arrive on the second of April,' *(n)o qno de 1923 choveu muito* 'it rained a great deal in 1923,' *voltarei na semana que vem (or entra) ou o mais tarde a quinze de agosto* 'I shall return next week or at the latest on the 15th of August.'

222. The first day of the month may be expressed as follows:

*Coimbra, no dia primeiro (or dia primeiro, no primeiro, primeiro, um, a um, em um) de agosto de*

1926 'Coimbra, August 1, 1926,' *hoje é o primeiro de Janeiro* 'to-day is the first of January,' *aconteceu isso no (dia) primeiro de junho* 'that happened on the first of June.'

223. To ask the date:

Q. *A quantos estamos (hoje) do mês? quantos são hoje?* or *que dia do mês é hoje?* 'what day of the month is it?' 'what is the date of to-day?'

A. *Estamos a três* 'it is the third,' *estamos no primeiro (dia)* or *a um* 'it is the first,' *(hoje) é o primeiro* 'to-day is the first,' *é o dia quinze de março* 'it is the fifteenth of March,' *é o dia dois, (hoje) são dois* 'it is the second,' *creio que estamos a cinco (de novembro)* 'I think it is the fifth (of November).'

#### TIME OF DAY

224. (a) In replying to the questions *diga-me as horas? que horas são? quantas horas são? que hora é?* 'what time is it?' and *diga-me as horas que tem? tem horas?* 'have you the time?' the words *hora(s)* 'hour(s)' and *minuto(s)* 'minute(s)' are generally omitted:

*é uma (hora)* 'it is one (o'clock),' *é (uma) hora e meia* 'it is half past one,' *são duas (horas)* 'it is two (o'clock),' *são (as) duas e meia* 'it is half past two,' *são seis (horas) e um quarto* 'it is quarter past six,' *são (as) cinco e dez (minutos)* 'it is ten (minutes) past five,' *são nove (horas) menos um quarto* or *é um quarto para as nove* 'it is a quarter to nine,' *são nove menos dez (minutos)* 'it is ten minutes to nine,' *faltam vinte para as três* 'it is twenty (minutes) to three,' *vai nas três* 'it is going to

three,' *são cêrca das duas* 'it is about two,' *são quatro horas e trinta e cinco* 'it is 4:35,' *falta um quarto para as onze* or *são dez e três quartos* 'it is a quarter to eleven,' *é meio-dia* 'it is midday,' *é meia noite* 'it is midnight,' *são já perto de três horas* 'it is already nearly three o'clock,' *dão* (or *estão a dar*) *as cinco (horas)* 'it is striking five o'clock,' *vão dar agora cinco (horas)* 'it is about to strike five o'clock,' *já deram* (or *acqbam de dar*) *as cinco* 'it has already struck five.'

(b) In answer to the question *a que hora(s)?* 'at what time?:'

*pelas quatro (horas)* 'at about four (o'clock),' *às três (horas)* 'at three (o'clock),' *pela* (or *à*) *uma (hora)* 'at one (o'clock),' *das duas para as três (horas)* 'from two to three (o'clock),' *às onze e dez (minutos)* 'at 11:10,' *às sete (horas) precisas* 'at seven o'clock sharp,' *pelas seis* 'at about six,' *faz favor de me chamar amanhã às* (or *pelas*) *seis (horas)* 'please call me to-morrow at six o'clock,' *à uma hora e cinco minutos* 'at 1:05,' *às cinco menos um quarto* 'at a quarter to five,' *às três e três quartos, às três e quarenta e cinco minutos, or a um quarto para as quatro* 'at 3:45,' *ao meio-dia* 'at midday,' *à meia noite* 'at midnight,' *já passa das oito* 'it is past eight,' *são dez em ponto* 'it is just ten,' *desde pela manhã* 'since morning,' *pelas duas, perto das duas, or por volta das duas* 'about two o'clock,' *os combóios saem às horas e às meias (horas)* 'the trains leave on the hour and half hour.'

(c) To indicate day-time or night-time by a certain hour, the word *manhã* 'morning,' *tarde* 'afternoon,' or *noite* 'night,' preceded by the preposition *de* with or without the definite article in the feminine singular, is added after the hour:

*pelas dez da noite* 'at about 10 P. M.,' *às cinco da manhã* 'at five o'clock in the morning.'

(d) But if day-time or night-time is not precisely indicated, these same words, but preceded by *de* without the article or by *a* or *por* with the article, are used:

*à tarde, de tarde, pela tarde* 'in the afternoon,' *à tardinha* 'late in the afternoon.'

(e) Officially, in Portugal, in time-tables, theatrical announcements, etc., the day has twenty-four hours counting from midnight. Consequently *16 horas* is 4 o'clock P. M.

(f) For adverbs and adverbial expressions of time, see 653.

#### AGE

225. *Quantos anos tem? quantos anos faz? que idade é a sua? qual é a sua idade? que idade tem?* 'how old are you?' *tenho* (or *fiz*) *vinte e cinco anos* (*de idade*) 'I am twenty-five (years old)' *qual é a idade de seu irmão?* 'how old is your brother?' *tem mais cinco anos que eu* or *é mais velho que eu* *cinco anos* 'he is five years older than I am,' *é mais velho do que eu* 'he is older than I,' *é mais novo alguns meses* 'he is younger by some months,' *quantos anos lhe dá?* 'how old do you take him to

be?' *trinta e tantos qnos* 'some thirty years of age,'  
*tem duas vezes a minha idade* 'he is twice my age,'  
*com (or aos) oitenta qnos, faleceu o Sr. Ferreira*  
 'Mr. Ferreira died at eighty years of age,' *aos*  
*dezanove qnos casou-se* 'he married at nineteen

years of age,' *no meu dia de qnos* 'on my birthday,'  
*faço qnos em março* 'my birthday is in March.'

## CURRENCY

226. (a) In May of 1911, a new monetary system was established for Portugal. Till then the *mil réis* was the unit of value. The unit is now the gold *escudo* which is the equivalent of the former 1-*mil réis* piece.

One *escudo* = 100 *centavos* and is worth, normally, about \$1.08 in American money.

One *centavo* = 10 *réis* and, approximately, 1 cent (U. S.).

One thousand *escudos* is called a *conto*. Gold coins are 2-, 5-, and 10-*escudo* pieces. Silver coins are 1-*escudo*, and 50-, 20-, and 10-*centavo* pieces. Bronze coins are 4-, 2-, 1-, and  $\frac{1}{2}$ -*centavo* pieces.

In conversation and literature certain old terms of coinage are met with:

The *escudo* is still commonly called *mil réis*.

1 *vintém* = 20 *réis* = 2 *centavos* = 2 cents (U. S.).

1 *toião* = 100 *réis* = 10 *centavos* = 10 cents (U. S.).

1 *cruzado* = 400 *réis*.

1 *pinto* = 480 *réis*.

1 *coroa* = 500 *réis*.

1 *libra* = 4500 *réis*.

1 *moeda* = 4800 *réis*.



Instead of *um conto e quinhentos mil réis* '1500 mil-réis,' for example, the shorter expression *quinze centos* (*de mil réis*) is often preferred. Likewise *cinco centos* instead of *quinhentos mil réis* '500 milréis.'

(b) The monetary unit in Brazil is the *real*, pl. *réis*. The Brazilian gold *mil réis* is of par value \$0.546 in American money, or about half as much as the Portuguese *escudo*. One thousand *mil réis* is called a *conto*. Silver coins are of 2000, 1000, 500 *réis*, nickel coins are of 400, 200, 100 *réis*, and bronze coins are of 40 and 20 *réis*.

(c) Owing to the disappearance of practically all gold and silver, the present currency, both in Portugal and Brazil, is on a paper basis, and paper is much depreciated. New notes of small denomination have been issued to relieve the scarcity of small change.

(d) *Escudos* (Brazilian *mil réis*) and *centavos* (Brazilian *réis*) are expressed in decimals before and after the sign \$ respectively:

$125\$73 = 125 \text{ escudos}$  (Brazilian *mil réis*) and  $73 \text{ centavos}$  (Brazilian *réis*).

## XVI. THE PRONOUN

227.

### A. PERSONAL PRONOUN

Singular

Plural

#### First Person

subject: <i>eu</i> 'I'	<i>nós</i> 'we'
objective: <i>me</i> 'me' 'to me'	<i>nos</i> 'us' 'to us'
prepositional: <i>mim</i> 'me'	<i>nós</i> 'us'
with <i>com</i> : <i>comigo</i> 'with me'	<i>connosco</i> 'with us'

#### Second Person

subject: <i>tu</i> 'thou'	<i>vós</i> 'you' 'ye'
objective: <i>te</i> 'thee'	<i>vos</i> 'you' 'to you'
prepositional: <i>ti</i> 'thee'	<i>vós</i> 'you'
with <i>com</i> : <i>contigo</i> 'with thee'	<i>convosco</i> 'you' 'with you'

#### Third Person Masculine

subject and prepositional: <i>êle</i> 'he' 'him' 'it'	<i>êles</i> 'they' 'them'
direct object: <i>lo, no, o</i> 'him' 'it'	<i>los, nos, os</i> 'them'
indirect object: <i>lhe</i> 'to him' 'to it'	<i>lhes</i> 'to them'
with <i>com</i> : <i>consigo</i> 'with him' 'with it'	<i>consigo</i> 'with them'

#### Third Person Feminine

subject and prepositional: <i>êla</i> 'her' 'it'	<i>êlas</i> 'they' 'them'
---	---------------------------

direct object: <i>la, na, a</i> 'her' 'it'	<i>las, nas, as</i> 'them'
indirect object: <i>lhe</i> 'to her' 'to it'	<i>lhes</i> 'to them'
with <i>com</i> : <i>consigo</i> 'with her' 'with it'	<i>consigo</i> 'with them'

## Notes on the Forms

(See also 230, 231)

228. (a) *Nós* and *vós* are disjunctive forms and are used as the subject of a verb, in apposition to the subject, and after prepositions (except *com*); the corresponding conjunctive forms are *nos* and *vos*.

(b) *Mim, ti,* and *si* (232) are usually accompanied by a preposition (234. a):

*de mim* 'of me,' *para mim* 'for me,' *de ti* 'of thee,'  
*por si* 'by himself,' *disse de mim para mim* 'I said  
to myself,' *de si para si* 'to himself.'

*Migo, tigo, sigo, npsco,* and *vôscos* are always preceded by the preposition *com*. Its final *m* becomes *n* in *contigo, consigo, connpsco,* and *convpsco*, and disappears in *comigo*. *Me, te, se, nos, vos, lhe, lhes* are conjunctive forms and are used without prepositions.

(c) *Connpsco* and *convpsco* are rarely used in the popular speech. Instead, *com a gente, com você(s), com os senhores, com as senhoras* are used:

*venham com a gente* 'let them come with us.'

When the pronoun is accompanied by an apposition or attributive, the disjunctive forms are used after *com*:

*com nós mesmos* (fem. *mesmas*) 'with ourselves,'  
*com vós mesmos* (fem. *mesmas*) 'with yourselves,'

*com ambos vós* 'with both of you,' *com vós todos* 'with all of you,' *com vós outros* 'with you others,' *com nós outros* 'with us others.'

### The Third Person

229. (a) The third person alone distinguishes for gender. Note that *o*, *a*, *os*, and *as* are used both as articles and as object pronouns.

(b) In the popular speech, and especially in Brazil, the indirect object forms *lhe* and *lhes* are often used instead of the direct object forms, *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, which latter is the regular construction in Portugal:

*vi-lhe* (for *vi-o*) 'I saw him,' *visitar-lhe* (for *visitá-lo*) 'to visit him.'

Frequently, both in Portugal and in Brazil, *lhe* is pronounced *le* (53. b):

*eu le disse* 'I told him' (Braz. = Port. *eu disse-lhe*).

(c) Whenever the adverb *eis* 'behold' 'here is,' the enclitic pronouns *nos* and *vos*, or a verbal form ending in *r*, *s*, or *z* is followed by *o*, *a*, *os*, or *as*, these pronouns assume their primitive forms *lo*, *la*, *los*, and *las*, and the final consonant of the preceding word is dropped (386). If the shortened verb ends in accented *a*, it takes the acute; if in accented *e*, it takes the circumflex:

*eis-lo* > *ei-lo* 'here he is,' *ei-las* 'there they are,' *trazer-o* > *trazer-lo* > *trazel-lo* (and so, or *trazello*, written formerly) > *trazê-lo* 'to bring it,' *amar-o* > *amar-lo* > *amal-lo* > *amâ-lo* 'to love him,' *louvar-o* > *louvâ-lo* 'to praise him,' *trazemos-o* > *trazemos-lo* > *trazêmo-lo* 'we bring it,' *traz-o* > *traz-lo* > *trá-lo* 'he brings it,' *dizem-nos-lo* > *dizem-no-lo* 'they say it to us,'

*deixou-vos-la* > *deixou-vo-la* 'he left it (fem.) to you,' *dava-vo-lo* 'he gave it (masc.) to you,' *chamamos-os* > *chamamo-los* 'we call them,' *traz-nos-lo* > *traz-no-lo* 'bring it to us,' *eu disse-o* 'I said it,' *eu fi-lo* 'I did it,' *ele fê-lo* 'he did it.'

(d) Pronominal forms beginning with *l* are rarely used after the imperative or any verbal form ending in a vowel:

*ama-o* 'he loves him,' *veste-o* 'dress him,' *faze-o* or *fá-lo* 'do it,' *dize-o* or *di-lo* 'say it.'

(e) Dialectically, when *o* or *a* is united to a verbal form ending in *-s*, the assimilation is avoided by the insertion of *i*:

*vimos-i-o* (for *vimo-lo*) 'we saw him,' *pus-i-o* (for *pu-lo*) 'I put it,' *fêz-i-o* (for *fê-lo*) 'he did it.'

(f) The *l* of the pronoun should not be separated from the following vowel; e.g. the spellings *amal-o* or *amal'o*, *dizel-o*, *eil-o*, *nol-o*, *nol-a*, etc., are incorrect.

(g) Similarly, but not carried out uniformly in the written language, by a partial assimilation of consonants, the same pronouns *lo*, *la*, *los*, and *las* (standing for *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*) become *no*, *na*, *nos*, and *nas*, after the third person plural of verbs and other nasal terminations and sometimes after *não*:

*dizem-lo* > *dizem-(n)o* 'they say it,' *compram-(n)o* 'they buy it,' *teem-(n)o* 'they have it,' *dão-(n)o* 'they give it,' *chamam-(n)os* 'they call them,' *amam-(n)a* 'they love her,' *não (n)o sabem* 'they do not know it,' *eu não (n)a quero* 'I do not like her,' *e foram-(n)o sempre* 'and they were so always,' *são-(n)o* 'they are so,' *eu bem (n)o vi*

'indeed I saw it,' *sem (n)o querer* 'without wishing it,' *ninguém (n)o atura* 'nobody tolerates him,' *nem já sei quais são (n)os meus* 'I don't yet know which are mine,' *a ordem pública mantém-na a polícia* 'the police keep public order.'

This nasalizing effect is sometimes extended even to the definite article:

*os índios mataram (n)o colono* 'the Indians killed the settler.'

Here, too, the *n* of the pronoun should not be separated from the following vowel, and the spellings *dizem-o*, *dizem-n-o*, *dizem-n'o*, for example, for *dizem-no* 'they say it,' are incorrect.

(h) In such a case as the third person plural of the verb, however, there is a possibility of confusion:

in *louvam-nos*, e.g., *nos* may stand for *a nós* 'they praise us' or for *a eles* 'they praise them,' and consequently some writers would spell the latter *louvam-n'os*, or omit the nasal entirely, *louvam-os*, in spite of the hiatus.

### Prepositional Forms

230. (a) *De* 'of' and *em* 'in' combine with the prepositional forms of the pronouns of the third person and are written as one word with them (cf. 228. b):

*de + êle > dêle* 'of him,' *de + ela > dêla* 'of her,'  
*de + eles > dêles* 'of them' (masc.), *de + elas > dêlas*  
 'of them' (fem.), *em + êle > nêle* 'in him' 'in it,'  
*em + ela > nêla* 'in her,' *em + eles > nêles* 'in them'  
 (masc.), *em + elas > nêlas* 'in them' (fem.):  
*falo dêle e não dêla* 'I speak of him and not of her,'

*neles achará o que busca* 'in them you will find what you are looking for.'

(b) But if the pronoun is subject and emphatic, it does not coalesce with the preposition:

*por causa de eles não quererem* 'because of their not wishing,' *de eles não irem* 'that they should not go,' *em ele chegando* 'when he will arrive,' *irpso por o não matar* or *irpso por não o matar* 'angry for not having killed him.'

#### Further Changes in Form of the Personal Pronoun

231. (a) If the indirect object pronouns *me*, *te*, and *lhe* come before the direct object pronouns *o(s)* and *a(s)*, they are blended with them, as follows (p. 16):

<i>me + o(s)</i>	<i>&gt; mo(s)</i>	} 'it ('them') to me'
<i>me + a(s)</i>	<i>&gt; ma(s)</i>	
<i>te + o(s)</i>	<i>&gt; to(s)</i>	} 'it ('them') to thee'
<i>te + a(s)</i>	<i>&gt; ta(s)</i>	
<i>lhe + o(s)</i>	<i>&gt; lho(s)</i>	} 'it ('them') to him' ('to her,' 'to it,' 'to them')
<i>lhe + a(s)</i>	<i>&gt; lha(s)</i>	

*êle disse-mo ontem* 'he told me so yesterday,'  
*dizem-lho* 'they say so to him,' *dão-lha* 'they give it (fem.) to him,' *traz-mas boas* 'bring me good ones' (fem.).

(b) When *lhe(s)* is followed by *o*, *a*, *os*, or *as*, its final -s is dropped and the -e is absorbed in the following vowel, producing *lho*, *lha*, *lhos*, *lhas*:

*vendeu-lho* 'he sold it to him' ('to her' or 'to them'),  
*confia-lhos* 'he entrusts them to him' ('to her' or 'to them').

Thus *lho*, e.g., may stand for *lhe o* or *lhes o*, *lhos* may stand for *lhe os* or *lhes os*, *lha* may stand for *lhe a* or *lhes a*, and *lhas* may stand for *lhe as*, *lhes a*, or *lhes as*. In other words, *lhes* is generally unknown in the popular speech. To avoid confusion, instead of *dou-lhos*, which can mean 'I give them to him' 'to her' 'to it' 'to them' or 'to you,' one may say *dou-os a êle*, *a ela*, *a eles*, *a elas*, a *V.Ex.*<sup>a(s)</sup>

### The Reflexive Pronoun

232. (a) The ordinary objective personal pronouns of the first and second persons, *me*, *te*, *nos*, and *vos*, serve also as reflexives. There is a special reflexive form for the third person only, viz. *se*, which is used without a preposition, as direct or indirect object, without distinction of gender or number, and may mean 'himself' 'herself' 'oneself' 'itself' 'yourself' 'yourselves' or 'themselves.' With a preposition, it is *si*, except with *com*, when it is *sigo*.

(b) The reflexive regularly refers only to the subject of the sentence:

*êle cortou-se* 'he cut himself,' *Pêdro falou de si* 'Peter spoke of himself,' *o autor reserva-se o direito* 'the author reserves to himself the right,' *eu pensei de mim para mim* 'I thought to myself.'

(c) But the prepositional forms of the third person reflexive, *si* and *consigo*, are very frequently but incorrectly used in conversation, without reflexive force, to refer to the person addressed in the third person, as less formal than *V.Ex.* and less familiar than *vossa-mercê* and *você*. Accordingly *êle fala muito de si* means,



more often in Portugal than in Brazil, 'he speaks a good deal of you' as well as 'he speaks a good deal of himself,' its regular meaning:

*falei consigo* (for *falei com V.Ex<sup>a</sup>* or *com o senhor*)  
 'I spoke to you,' *falei de si* (for *falei de V.Ex<sup>a</sup>*)  
 'I spoke of you' *nós vamos consigo* (for *nós vamos com V.Ex<sup>a</sup>*) 'we go with you,' *gosto muito de si*  
 'I like you very much,' *tenho dó de si* 'I am sorry for you,' *este livro é para si* 'this book is for you,'  
*leve o livro consigo* 'take the book along,' *tome lá para si* 'take that for yourself,' *estou-lhe muito obrigado a si* 'I am much obliged to you.'

(d) In the plural, reflexive pronouns may have reciprocal force, but such meaning is made clearer or emphasized by the addition of *um ao outro* 'one another' 'each other,' pl. *uns aos outros*:

(*nós*) *nos amamos* or *nós amamo-nos* 'we love ourselves' or 'we love one another,' *amai-vos uns aos outros* 'love ye one another,' *ajudam-se um ao outro* 'they help each other,' *os dois guerreiros combateram(-se) um ao outro* 'the two warriors fought each other.'

For the use of the reflexive to express the indefinite 'one' 'people,' see 515.

For the position of the reflexive pronoun in the sentence, see 252. c, 263.

### The Subject Pronoun

233. (a) There is no neuter personal pronoun corresponding to English 'it' as subject—the form *elo* hav-

ing become obsolete—but *êle* and *ela* are sometimes used pleonastically to bring out more clearly the subject:

*êle é que . . .* 'the fact is that . . .,' *êle como é?* 'how is that?'

For the subject pronoun with impersonal verbs, see 300, 523.

(b) Generally speaking a subject personal pronoun, especially of the first or second persons, is not expressed.

Except (1) in clauses having different subjects, or in apposition:

*eu rio e tu choras* 'I laugh and you weep,' *se tu ficas, eu parto* 'if you remain, I depart,' *se eu fosse rico como êle é* 'if I were rich as he is,' *eu, teu servo, estou aqui* 'I, thy servant, am here,' *êle, o rei, tinha muitos escravos* 'he, the king, had many slaves.'

(2) For clearness or emphasis, especially in those tenses in which the same form stands for more than one person, e.g. *diria*, first and third pers. sing. conditional of *dizer* 'to say,' and with the gerund:

*reflectindo na morte, eu chorei* or *reflectindo eu na morte, chorei* 'as I thought of death, I wept,' *eu não dizia?* 'did I not say so?' *falo eu* 'it is I who speak,' *eu cá por minha parte* or *eu por mim* 'I, for my part,' *nós te ordenamos que vãs* 'we order you to go,' *eu não sou tu* 'I am not you,' *creio eu* 'I believe so,' *e eu admiro-me* 'and I wonder,' *quem fala?* 'who speaks?' *falo eu* 'I do.'

(c) The first person plural of pronoun and verb is used in formal speech in place of the singular, by sover-

eigns and authorities and occasionally by preachers and writers, but an adjective in attributive or predicate relation with it is ordinarily singular (174. c):

*nós, a rainha, estamos contente* 'we, the queen, are pleased,' *antes sejamos breve que prolixo* 'let us rather be brief than tedious.'

(d) When the speaker includes himself in or addresses a class of people with whom he contrasts other persons, *outros* may be added to *nós* and *vós* (78. i):

*nós os portugueses* 'we Portuguese,' *vós outros os socialistas* 'you socialists.' The personal pronoun may be further emphasized by the addition of *mesmo* (332. e).

### Irregular Constructions

234. Some irregular constructions, found in the best authors of the earlier period, are still current in the popular speech.

(a) The objective and prepositional forms of personal pronouns are frequently, but less correctly, used as subject, especially in the predicate after *ser* 'to be:'

*crendo que eu fosse a ti* (for *tu*) 'thinking that I was you,' *êle é como a mim* (for *eu*) 'he is like me,' *êle é mais alto ca* (= *que a*) *mim* (for *êle é mais alto* (do) *que eu*) 'he is taller than I,' *se eu fosse a ti* (for *se eu estivesse no teu lugar*) 'if I were you' 'if I were in your place,' *êle come mais do que a mim* (for *do que eu*) 'he eats more than I.'

(b) The reverse is also the case now in Brazil, but formerly also in Portugal, *i.e.* the subject form is incorrectly used instead of the objective or prepositional (54.d):

*que espere por eu* (for *que espere por mim*) 'let him

wait for me,' *eu vi êle* (for *eu vi-o*) 'I saw him,' *vou chamqr êle* (emphatic for *vou chamá-lo*) 'I am going to call him.'

(c) This construction is also used in Brazil when two personal pronouns (or a noun and a pronoun) are the object, direct or indirect, of the same verb:

*censuro êle e ela* (=Port. *censuro-o a êle e a ela*) 'I blame him and her,' *esperam a ti e a êle* 'they expect you and him,' *vêjo êle e não ela* (=Port. *vêjo-o a êle e não a ela*) 'I see him and not her;' also in such sentences as *nêle verás outro tu* (for *ti*) 'in him you will see another you.'

(d) The prepositions *entre* 'between' and *para* 'for' sometimes take the subject case of the personal pronouns, though the strictly grammatical oblique case is more frequently used:

*entre eu e êle* (more regularly *entre mim e êle*) 'between me and him,' *entre êle e eu* (or *mim*) 'between him and me,' *para ti e para mim* 'for you and me,' *para mim e meu irmão* 'for me and my brother.'

For *para* with a personal pronoun as subject of an infinitive, see 589. b.

### Pronouns of Address

235. The pronoun 'you' is expressed in several different ways in Portuguese.

(a) The pronoun of the second person singular, *tu*, is now used only in poetry, in addressing the Deity, and in very familiar intercourse, such as speaking to members of one's own family, near relatives, very intimate friends, children, animals, inanimate objects, by officers in the army to soldiers, sometimes to ser-

vants, and also to denote affection, scorn, or contempt. In Brazil *tu* is replaced by *você*.

The plural of *tu*, namely, *vós*, was formerly very common in Portugal, but is now rarely used in ordinary speech. It is employed at most by orators, on solemn occasions, in sermons and in prayer. It is now replaced, both in Portugal and Brazil, by *vocês*, *os senhores*, *as senhoras*.

(b) In Portugal, in ordinary polite conversation and in social correspondence among people of standing, men and women are addressed as *Vossa Excelência*, plural *Vossas Excelências* 'Your Excellency,' which may be abbreviated in conversation to *Vosselência(s)* or *Vossência(s)* and in writing to *V.Ex<sup>a</sup>*, pl. *V.Ex<sup>as</sup>*. The use of this appellation is much overdone in Portugal; in Brazil it is given only to ladies and to persons in high official position. Generally speaking, however, it is the safest title for the foreigner to apply to people of some position in society.

While, in English, the words 'sir,' 'madam,' 'miss' are frequently omitted in accosting a person, the omission of *V.Ex<sup>a</sup>* or *minha senhora* is rare in formal Portuguese.

(c) More familiar is *Vossa Mercê* or *Vossemecê* (abbreviated *V. M<sup>te</sup>*) which is shortened to *Vocemecê* (abbreviated *Vm<sup>te</sup>*, *V.M.*, or *Vm.<sup>te</sup>*), lit. 'Your Grace,' pl. *Vossas Mercês* (abbreviated *Vm<sup>tes</sup>*, *Vms.*, *Vmcés.*). This denomination is somewhat commoner in Brazil (where, in its usual form, *Vossemecê*, it generally replaces *Vossa Excelência*) than in Portugal, where its use is rather to be avoided in good society. It is used

among intimate friends and in addressing tradespeople, subordinates in office, and servants. The forms *Vossem'cê*, *Vòmecê* (by assimilation *Mòmecê* and *Mecê*), and *Você* (abbreviated *V<sup>ê</sup>*, plural *Vocês*) are still more familiar and are used only in addressing workmen and among men who are intimate friends.

(d) *Vossa Senhoria* (abbreviated *V. S.<sup>a</sup>*), formerly a title of nobility, is otherwise antiquated in Portugal except in commercial and, in certain cases, in official correspondence. In Brazil it is the regular expression in social correspondence, except when it is wished to be very formal, when *V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>* is used.

(e) In addressing a lady, the most formal salutation is *Vossa Excelência, minha senhora*:

*tenho grande prazer em conhecer V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>, minha senhora* 'I am very glad to meet you, madam,'  
*V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> viu o espectáculo, minha senhora?* 'did you see the play, madam?'

In ordinary conversation in polite society, *minha senhora* (antiquated *senhora minha* and never *senhora* alone) is the form most generally employed both for married and unmarried ladies:

*muito bom dia, minha senhora* 'good day, madam,'  
*sim, minha senhora* 'yes, madam.'

In less formal conversation, a lady is addressed with *senhora* followed by *Dona* (abbreviated *D.<sup>a</sup>*) and her baptismal name:

*como está a senhora Dona Luísa?* 'how are you, (Mrs. or Miss) Louise?' *a senhora Dona Luísa tem um lápis?* 'Louise, have you a pencil?'

In correspondence, ladies, married or unmarried, are addressed as *Ex<sup>a</sup> Senhora Dona* (usually abbreviated *D<sup>a</sup>*) *Francisca Madeira*, or whatever the given and family names may be.

(f) Young ladies are spoken of in their absence as *menina* 'Miss.'

*como está a menina Maria?* 'how is (Miss) Mary?'

Its equivalents in Brazil (but not in Portugal) are *senhorinha* and *senhorita*.

(g) In addressing a maid servant, *menina* or *senhora* is used before the given name.

(h) Among equals, in addressing strangers or mere acquaintances (but not in correspondence, except in Brazil), the ordinary expression is *o senhor* 'Mr.' 'sir' 'gentleman,' which is occasionally pronounced *spr* and abbreviated in writing to *o Sr.* or *Snr.*, plural *os senhores*, 'Messrs' 'sirs' 'gentlemen.'

*Senhor (Carlos) Bastos* 'Mr. (Charles) Bastos.'

*Senhor* (or *senhora*) precedes a title:

*o Sr. Capitão* (rarely *o Capitão Sr.*) *Bastos* 'Captain Bastos,' *como está o senhor doutor?* 'how are you, doctor?' *bons dias, senhor doutor* 'good morning, doctor,' *o senhor vai sair?* 'are you (addressing a gentleman) going out?' *a senhora quere pão?* 'do you (addressing a lady) wish bread?' *que dizem a isso os senhores?* 'what do you (masc. pl.) say to that?' *qma a senhora* 'he loves you' (fem. sing.), *falo ao senhor* 'I speak to you' (masc. sing.), *o que digo ao senhor* 'what I tell you,' *como passa o senhor?* 'how do you do?' *quem é o senhor?*

'who are you?' *o senhor fala português?* 'do you speak Portuguese?'

(i) For the use or omission of the definite article before *senhor* and *senhora*, see 78. b. d.

(j) The pronoun *êle, ela* is not applied to the person to whom we speak, as *Lei* and *Ella* are used in Italian.

(k) In commercial correspondence, *o* (or *nosso*) *amigo* 'our friend,' pl. *os* (or *nosso*) *amigos*, is frequently used for 'you.'

(l) 'Mr. and Mrs. Monteiro' is: *o Senhor Monteiro e (sua) Senhora* or *o Senhor Monteiro e sua mulher* (or *espôsa*).

(m) *Senhor* and *senhora* are sometimes used when speaking to a person of his or her relatives:

*a senhora sua mãe* (or *a mãe de V. Ex<sup>a</sup>*) *está doente?* 'is your mother ill?'

If the person addressed is a lady, it is considered more respectful to say, for example, *a sua mãe, minha senhora, está doente?* When referring to a deceased person, *senhor* and *senhora* are omitted.

(n) Like other subject pronouns, those of address are often omitted:

(*O Sr.*) *é muito bom* or, feminine, (*A Sr<sup>a</sup>*) *é muito boa* 'you are very kind.'

(o) 'You' may also be rendered by the article and the noun or by the name of the person addressed (77. a):

*o pai que quere?* 'what do you want, father?' *que diz a Ana?* 'what do you say, Anne?'



For the reflexive pronoun of the third person, used in direct address, see 232. c.

236. (a) Although all these forms of address, *Vossa Excelência*, *Vossemecê*; *Você*, *o Senhor*, etc., are applied to the second person, they take the verb in the third person and in the singular or plural according as one or more persons are addressed. An adjective or past participle, instead of agreeing with the gender of the title, agrees with the natural gender of the person to whom it refers (174. b):

*V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> é instruído* 'you (masc.) are informed,'  
*V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>, minha senhora, é incrédula* 'you are incredulous, madam,' *as senhoras são boas* 'you (fem. pl.) are good,' *está satisfeito, -a?* 'are you satisfied?' (plural *estão satisfeitos, -as?*).

(b) Likewise an object personal or reflexive pronoun or a possessive adjective must be in the third person, but the possessive agrees with the gender and number of the object possessed (276. a):

*falo-lhe ao senhor* 'I am speaking to you,' *a sua casa* 'your house' (either *a casa do senhor* or *a casa da senhora*), *vossa reverência deixou aqui os seus livros* 'your Reverence left your books here,' *vão-se os senhores antes que os vejamos* 'be off before you are seen.'

(c) In Brazil, however, the possessive often agrees with the logical subject:

*li a carta de V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> mas não aceito todas as vossas opiniões* 'I have read your letter but I do not accept all your views.'

(d) When these pronouns of address are the subjects of more than one verb, they are expressed only with the first one:

*ontem V. Ex<sup>a</sup> estava doente; hoje está melhor*  
 'yesterday you were ill; to-day you are better.'

### Duplication of Pronouns

237. (a) When a personal pronoun is the object, direct or indirect, of a verb, the meaning is made clearer and more emphatic by using the prepositional form instead of, or in addition to, the objective:

*eu feri-me (a mim)* 'I struck myself,' *lembra-me (a mim)* 'I remember,' *deu-me (a mim)* 'he gave me,' *êle disse mo (a mim)* 'he told me so,' *parece-me (a mim)* 'it appears to me,' *deixei-lhes um livro (a eles)* 'I left a book for them,' *tu dizes-me isto (a mim)!* 'and you tell me that!' *tendo-a só a ela* 'having nobody but her,' *convém-lhe a êle* 'it becomes him,' *estou-o vendo ao Senhor* 'I am seeing you, sir,' *falo-lhes aos Sr<sup>es</sup>* 'I am speaking to you' (pl.).

(b) This is especially the case if there are two pronoun objects in the same construction:

*deram-to a ti e não a mim* 'they gave it to you and not to me,' *para que se saiba o que me pertence a mim e o que pertence a êle* 'in order that it may be known what belongs to me and what belongs to him.'

(c) For further emphasis the prepositional form may precede the other:

*a mim satisfaz-me* 'it satisfies me,' *a mim me parece* (Braz.) = *a mim parece-me* (Port.) 'it seems to me,' *confiei-lhe a minha casa a êle* 'I entrusted my house to him,' *a mim è que êle já me vira* 'he had already seen me,' *a êle não lhe disse nada* 'I told him nothing,' *a ti dou-te um livro* 'I give you a book,' *ao doente não se lhe há de fazer a vontade* 'the patient must not be allowed to have his way,' *a mim basta-me saber* 'it is enough for me to know,' *o retrato que a você lhe agradou tanto* 'the picture that pleased you so much,' *a mim o disse e não a ti* 'it is to me he told it and not to you,' *o que a mim me alegra entristece-te a ti* 'what rejoices me makes you sad.'

(d) Atonic pronouns are repeated with each verb when enclitic, but are expressed only with the first verb when proclitic:

*depois de ver-me e saudar-me* or (better) *depois de me ver e saudar* 'after seeing me and saluting me.'

238. An object pronoun is often added pleonastically to emphasize one or more nouns or pronouns already expressed:

*que isto é assim, todos o sabem* 'everybody knows that that is so,' *a língua dessa terra não a sabíamos* 'we did not know the language of that country,' this is especially so if the object is at some distance from the verb: *o outro grupo, incomparavelmente mais numeroso, constituiu-o a população agrícola* 'the other group, incomparably more numerous,

was composed of the agricultural population,' *razões não as dá* 'as for reasons, he gives none,' *as flores colheu-as todas no jardim* 'he gathered all the flowers in the garden.'

239. In some familiar phrases the third person feminine personal pronoun is used elliptically:

*fê-la bonita* 'you did it well,' *há-de pagar-mas* 'you have to pay me for it.'

240. A pronoun of the third person, in the predicate after *ser* 'to be' and referring to a class, is in the masculine singular:

*é ela mãe?* 'is she a mother?' *ela o é* 'she is,' *é a senhora casada?* 'are you (fem. sing.) married?' *eu o sou* 'I am.'

241. *O* or *isso* is frequently used to avoid the repetition of a noun or an adjective, and to express predicate English 'so' 'one' (648):

*estará V.Ex<sup>a</sup> cansado?* 'perhaps you are tired?' *não o estou* 'no,' *se êle fosse ferido, tambem eu o era* 'if he was wounded, so was I,' *seja êle feliz, e eu o serei também* 'let him be happy, and I shall be so too,' *fá-lo hei, se o senhor o quere* 'I will do so if you wish,' *mas é-o sobretudo* 'but it is so especially,' and optionally with the comparative: *é mais velho que eu (o sou)* or *é mais velho do que eu* 'he is older than I am.'

242. In colloquial language the object pronoun is often omitted:

*não tem visto?* or *não viu?* 'haven't you seen it?' *nunca vi* 'I've never seen it,' *nunca ouvi* 'I have

never heard it,' *não gosta?* 'don't you like it?' *não acha?* 'don't you think so?' *acho, sim, senhor* 'yes, I do,' *o meu amigo Brazão, não sei se conhece* 'my friend Brazão, I don't know if you know him,' *não conheço, mas é o mesmo* 'no, I don't, but that makes no difference.'

243. In familiar conversation in expressions of wonder, incitement, blame, command, and the like, an indirect object pronoun is frequently added, to show that the person indicated by the pronoun is interested in, or affected by, the execution of the order, the statement, or the action:

*não me saia daqui* 'let him not go from here,' *fechem-me já essa porta* 'close that door (for me),' *ó Maria, estude-me a lição* 'Mary, do study the lesson,' *põe-mo a cirurgião!* 'why not make him a surgeon!'

244. An indetermined value is given to a sentence by the addition of *lhe*:

*come-lhe e bebe-lhe bem* 'eat and drink a lot of it.'

245. A personal pronoun subject of the same person and number as the object pronoun that follows is sometimes used before *parecer* 'to seem' and *querer* 'to wish':

*eu parece-me* (or *a mim parece-me*) *que Pedro é rico* 'it seems to me that Peter is rich,' *eu parece-me que não* 'it does not seem so to me,' *nós quere-nos parecer que não vamos* 'it appears to us that we are not going.'

For the use of the definite article as the equivalent of the demonstrative *aquêle*, see 297.

For the use of the indirect object pronoun as the equivalent of the possessive, see 278.

## Position of Personal Pronouns

246. In Portuguese the order or precedence of the subject pronouns is *eu, tu, êle* or *ela, nós, vós, eles* or *elas*:

*eu e tu somos portugueses* 'you and I are Portuguese,'  
*nós e êle vimos de Lisboa* 'we and he come from Lisbon.'

## Position of Atonic Personal and Reflexive Pronouns

## A. One Object Pronoun

247. In independent affirmative sentences, the general rule is that the object personal pronouns, *me, te, se, lhe, o, a*, etc., follow the verb or other word having a syntactical stress, and are attached to it by a hyphen, as enclitics. This is the normal order unless certain forces interfere to change it:

*tenho-o* 'I have it,' *felicito-o* 'I congratulate you,'  
*amo-te* 'I love thee,' *o vizinho deu-lhe uma maçã*  
 'the neighbor gave him an apple,' *o senador*  
*suicidou-se* 'the senator committed suicide,' *a*  
*Grécia levanta-se* 'Greece rebels,' *queixo-me* 'I  
 complain,' *João contou-me tudo* 'John told me all,'  
*chamaram-no já por duas vezes* 'they have already  
 called him twice.'

248. In direct interrogative sentences with a noun (not pronoun) subject, the position of the pronoun is the same as in declarative sentences, even when the order of words is transposed:

*o vizinho deu-te uma maçã?* or *deu-te o vizinho uma maçã?* 'did the neighbor give you an apple?'

249. Generally speaking, a declarative sentence should not begin with an object personal pronoun, a rule that is not always observed in the popular language of Brazil (54. a, 732).

*'não está em casa o padre,' informou-me a criada*  
*'the priest is not at home,' the servant informed*  
*me,' digo-lhe (not lhe digo) 'I tell him,' acabou-se*  
*a obra (not se acabou a obra) 'the work was finished,'*  
*querem-me lá (not me querem lá) 'they love me*  
*there,' parece-nos 'it seems to us,' deixe-me (not*  
*me deixe) 'leave me,' quebrou-se (not se quebrou)*  
*um espelho 'a mirror was broken.'*

250. The underlying law is that, whenever the clause begins with a word having a syntactical stress, the object pronoun is attracted and placed before the verb. Such is the case

(a) In Brazil, when the pronoun subject of the principal clause is expressed before the verb:

*êle o disse* or *disse-o êle* 'he said so,' *eu te amo*  
 (Braz.), *eu amo-te* 'I love thee,' *eu me queixo* (Braz.),  
*queixo-me* 'I complain,' *êle o teve* or *êle teve-o* 'he  
 had it,' *eu me lembro* (Braz.), *eu lembro-me* 'I  
 remember,' *eu me chamo* (Braz.), *eu chamo-me*  
*Teodoro* 'my name is Theodore,' *êle nos disse*  
 (Braz.), *êle disse-nos* 'he said to us.'

(b) When the sentence begins with an interrogative pronoun or adverb, a numeral, or a demonstrative or indefinite pronoun:

*quem a chamou?* 'who called her?' *quem lhe deu o*  
*direito?* 'who gave him the right?' *quem lho disse?*

'who told him so?' *que me dizes?* 'what do you tell me?' *como se chama?* 'what is it called?' *quando me vem ver?* 'when are you coming to see me?' *quando se passou isto?* 'when did that take place?' *quanto se lucrou?* 'how much did we gain?' *que lhe parece?* 'what do you think?' *donde nos mandará notícias?* 'from where will you send us news?' *qual de nos lhe sucederá?* 'which of us will succeed him?' *todos lhe falaram* 'all spoke to him,' *tudo me atormenta* 'everything torments me,' *todos o aplaudiram* 'all applauded him,' *tudo se paga neste mundo* 'everything is paid in this world,' *ambos se entreolharam* 'they both looked at each other,' *poucos se lembram hoje* 'few remember to-day,' *tantas coisas se viram* 'so many things were seen,' *isto me consola* (or *isto consola-me*) 'that consoles me,' *o mesmo se pode dizer* 'the same may be said,' *quantas vezes nos enganamos* 'how often are we not deceived,' *isto se confirma claramente* (or *isto confirma-se*) 'that is clearly proved,' *sabe o que lhe eu* (or *eu lhe*) *disse?* 'do you know that I said to him?'

(c) When the main or dependent sentence begins with a negative pronoun or adverb (650. b):

*não me lembro* 'I do not remember,' *não se sente aí* 'do not sit there,' *não o creio* 'I do not believe it,' *ela não me quere* 'she does not like me,' *não se lembrou do negócio* 'he did not remember the affair,' *nunca se viu coisa igual* 'never was such a thing seen,' *de modo nenhum te espero* 'indeed I will not wait for you,' *nada lhe escapou* 'nothing



escaped him,' *nada se faz* 'nothing is done,' *nenhuma coisa lhe basta* 'nothing is enough for him,' *ninguém me viu* 'nobody saw me,' *nenhum homem me apareceu* 'no man appeared to me,' *ninguém lho disse* 'nobody told him so,' *nem o estimo nem o odeio* 'I neither esteem him nor hate him.'

(d) After certain conjunctions and adverbs and adverbial phrases of time, place, and manner, such as *ainda* 'yet,' *apenas* 'scarcely,' *assim*, *assim como*, and *como* 'as,' *bem* 'indeed,' *já* 'already,' *logo* 'presently,' *longe* 'far,' *onde* 'where,' *ou* 'or,' *para (que)* 'in order that,' *pouco* 'little,' *quando* 'when,' *quer* 'whether,' *se* 'if,' *sempre* 'ever,' *só* 'alone' 'only,' *talvez* 'perhaps.'

*ainda nos não escreveu* 'as yet he has not written to us,' *ainda te vejo* 'even yet I see thee,' *assim se exprime João* 'thus John expresses himself,' *apenas me avistou* 'hardly had he got a glimpse of me,' *como se enganam os homens* 'how men are deceived,' *logo lhe direi* 'I will tell him presently,' *quando me abriu a porta* 'when he opened the door for me,' *já me tardava receber notícias suas* 'I have long wanted to hear from you,' *talvez lhe não lembre* 'perhaps he does not remember,' *para que lhe diga* 'in order that I may tell him,' *quer o diga quer não diga* 'whether he says it or not,' *assim como a língua se transformou* 'according as the language changed,' *se me fizesse um favor* 'if you would do me a favor,' *com razão se diz* 'with reason it is said,' *o Dr. Figueiredo pediu-me para que lhe enviasse os seus cumprimentos* 'Dr. Figueiredo asked me to send you his regards.'

(e) In a dependent sentence which is introduced by a relative pronoun or a subordinating conjunction:

*o homem que me viu* 'the man who saw me,' *os que o viram* 'those who saw him,' *o estado que lhe convem mais é a medicina* 'the profession that suits him best is medicine,' *não sei se ele se defende bem* 'I do not know if he defends himself well,' *conforme me convier* 'as it suits me,' *segundo se diz* 'as is said.'

(f) But after a coördinating conjunction, such as *e* 'and,' *contudo* and *todavia* 'however,' *mas* and *porém* 'but,' the object pronoun usually follows the verb:

*mas enganei-me* 'but I was mistaken.'

251. If a subject and an object pronoun both precede the verb, the former comes first:

*mandou que ele lhe entregasse o dinheiro* 'he directed him to hand over the money to him.'

But if the subject pronoun is *eu*, it may follow the other:

*mandou que lhe eu entregasse o dinheiro* 'he directed me to hand over the money to him, or *que quer então que eu lhe* (or *que lhe eu*) *faça?* 'then what does he want me to do for him?'

## B. Two Object Pronouns

252. (a) When two objects, usually pronouns, the one direct and the other indirect, are governed by the same verb, they are usually appended to the verb—or to the auxiliary in compound tenses—so as to make one word with it, and the indirect object precedes the direct:

*dou-to* 'I give it to thee,' *dá-ma* 'he gives it (fem.) to me,' *disse-mo* 'he told me so,' *disse-lho* 'he told him so,' *contei-lha* 'I told him so,' *vendeu-mo* 'he sold it to me,' *tomou-lha* 'he took it (fem.) from him,' *êle disse-no-lo* 'he told us so,' *tenho-lho dito* 'I have told him so,' *dei-lhe o livro* 'I gave him the book.'

(b) But after a negative, both objects precede the verb:

*não mo deu* 'he did not give it to me,' *não lho disse* 'he did not tell it to him.'

If the pronoun subject is expressed, both object pronouns follow the verb:

*eu expliquei-lho* 'I explained it to him,' *garanto-lho eu* 'I guarantee it to him,' *eu arranquei-lho* 'I snatched it from him.'

(c) The reflexive *se* always precedes an indirect object pronoun:

*afigura-se-me* 'it seems to me,' *imputa-se-me um êrro* 'a mistake is imputed to me,' *fêz-se-me* 'it was done to me,' *deram-se-lhes* 'they were given to them,' *o que se vos fêz* 'what was done to you,' *João apresentou-se-me* 'John presented himself to me.'

### C. With the Imperative

253. (a) With the positive imperative, the object or objects, whether nouns or personal pronouns, follow the verb and the pronouns are attached to it by a hyphen:

*diga-me* 'tell me,' *diga-mo* 'tell me it,' *sirva-se* 'help yourself,' *faça-me o favor* 'do me the favor.'

(b) In wishes and imprecations the object pronoun is placed before or after the verb according as the subject stands at the beginning or end of the phrase:

*a terra lhe seja leve* 'may the earth be light on him,'  
*pague-vos Deus* 'may God reward you,' *Deus nos*  
*livre de tal* 'may God deliver us from such a thing,'  
*Deus me dê paciência* 'may God give me patience,'  
*seja-lhe próspera a vida* 'may his life be prosperous,'  
*Deus lhe acuda* 'may God help him,' *acautèle-se o*  
*senhor* 'take care,' *bons ventos os tragam* 'may favor-

ing breezes take them,' *o diabo o leve* 'may the devil take him.'

(c) But a personal pronoun object of a verb introduced by *que* and expressing a wish or command precedes the verb:

*que a feche êle já* 'let him close it at once.'

(d) In a negative command the object pronouns precede the verb (252. b):

*não me fale* 'do not speak to me,' *mas não se admire* 'but do not be surprised,' *não se engane* 'do not deceive yourself,' *não me dê o livro* 'do not give me the book,' *mas não se esqueça do guarda-chuva* 'but do not forget the umbrella.'

(e) Both with the positive and the negative imperative the subject follows the verb:

*não mo dê V. Ex<sup>a</sup>* 'do not give it to me,' *julgai-me vós* 'do ye judge me,' *louva-te tu* 'praise thyself.'

## D. With the Gerund

254. (a) If a gerund begin the phrase, as a rule, the object personal pronouns follow the gerund—or the auxiliary in compound tenses—unless the gerund is preceded by the preposition *em* or a negative, in which case the pronouns generally precede the gerund:

*prometo que, dando-me o livro, lho restituirei* 'I promise, if you give me the book, I will return it to you,' *tendo-me ouvido* 'having heard me.'

(b) Likewise when the gerund is preceded by *já* . . . *já* . . . , *ora* . . . *ora* . . . , *agora* . . . *logo* . . . 'now . . . now . . . ,' 'now . . . then . . . :'

*ora beijando-lhos, ora abraçando-os pelos joelhos* 'now kissing them, now clasping their knees.'

But: *em me vendo, fôge* 'seeing me, he flees,' *em me levantando da mesa* 'on my getting up from the table,' *em lhe ouvindo a voz* 'on hearing his (or 'her') voice,' *em se acabando o jantar* 'on finishing the dinner,' *em me dizendo estas palavras* 'when he says these words to me,' *não lhe sendo possível* 'it not being possible for him,' *não o julgando capaz disso* 'not judging him capable of that,' *em não me ouvindo* or *em me não ouvindo* 'when he does not listen to me.'

In the following example, *nem* does not modify the gerund but the main verb, and consequently does not attract the pronoun:

*nem vendo-se velho e cansado se lembrava da pátria* 'nor, finding himself old and weary, did he think of his country.'

255. (a) If the gerund depends on a verb that is not preceded by a negative, an object personal pronoun is generally placed after the verb:

*êle está-se lavando* 'he is washing himself,' *ando-o dizendo* 'I am saying so,' *estou-lho dizendo* 'I am telling him so,' *eu estava-o dissipando* 'I was wasting it.'

(b) But if the main verb is preceded by a negative or an interrogative, the object personal pronoun is placed before the verb:

*quem o anda dizendo?* 'who says so?' *ninguém o anda dizendo* 'no one is saying so.'

256. (a) If the gerund depends on an infinitive which is itself dependent upon the main verb, the object personal pronoun preferably follows the infinitive:

*pode andá-lo dizendo* or *pode-o andar dizendo* 'you may say so,' *obrigo-o a andá-lo dizendo* 'I oblige him to say so.'

(b) But if, in such a case, the main verb is preceded by a negative or an interrogative, the pronoun is placed before the verb or after the infinitive:

*não* (or *quem?*) *o pode andar dizendo* (?) or *não pode andá-lo dizendo* 'you (or 'who?') may not say so?.'

257. (a) If the gerund is in a subordinate clause and does not depend on an infinitive, the pronoun is placed before the subordinate verb, whether positive or negative:

*creio que (não) o anda dizendo* 'I think that he is (not) saying so.'

(b) But if, in such a case, the gerund depends on an infinitive, the pronoun is placed before the subordinate verb or after the infinitive:

*creio que (não) o pode andar dizendo* or (rarely)  
*creio que (não) pode andá-lo dizendo* 'I think that  
 he can (not) say so.'

258. (a) If the gerund depends on an infinitive that is not preceded by a preposition, the object personal pronoun is placed after the infinitive:

*é preciso andá-lo dizendo* 'it is necessary to be  
 saying so.'

(b) But if, in such a case, the infinitive is preceded by a preposition, the pronoun precedes or follows the infinitive:

*para (não) o andar dizendo* or *para (não) andá-lo  
 dizendo* 'in order (not) to be saying so.'

259. (a) If the gerund depends on an infinitive which itself depends on another infinitive that is not preceded by a negative or a preposition, the pronoun may follow either infinitive:

*é preciso pôde-lo andar dizendo* or *é preciso poder  
 andá-lo dizendo* 'it is necessary to be able to go  
 on saying so.'

(b) But if the principal infinitive is preceded by a negative or a preposition, the pronoun may precede or follow that infinitive or follow the dependent infinitive:

*para (não) o poder andar dizendo, para (não)  
 pôde-lo andar dizendo, or para (não) poder andá-lo*

*dizendo* 'in order (not) to be able to go on saying so.'

260. (a) If the gerund depends on an infinitive which itself depends on another gerund that is not preceded by a negative or *em*, the pronoun may follow the infinitive or the gerund on which the infinitive depends:

*podendo-o andar dizendo* or *podendo andá-lo dizendo*  
'being able to go on saying so.'

(b) But if the principal gerund is preceded by a negative or *em*, the pronoun may precede that gerund or follow the infinitive:

*em (não) o podendo andar dizendo* or *em (não) podendo andá-lo dizendo* 'in (not) being able to go on saying so.'

261. In *quer . . . quer . . .* 'whether . . . or . . . ' and similar correlative expressions with a gerund, a pronoun is placed before the verb:

*quer o esteja fazendo quer não* 'whether he is doing so or not.'

#### E. With the Infinitive

262. (a) If an infinitive depending on a verb has an object pronoun, the latter may either be appended to the infinitive (the original construction) or, preferably, stand immediately after the main verb; e.g., *devo o fazer* 'I must do it,' rather than *devo fazê-lo*. This verb is usually one of the following (571. a):

*deixar* 'to leave,' *dever* 'to owe,' *fazer* 'to do,' *ir* 'to go,' *mandar* 'to order,' *ouvir* 'to hear,' *podêr*



'to be able,' *querer* 'to wish,' *saber* 'to know,' *sentir* 'to feel,' *vir* 'to come:'

*quero-os explicar com clareza* or *quero explicá-los com clareza* 'I wish to explain them with clearness,' *posso-lhe dar dinheiro* or *posso dar-lhe dinheiro* 'I can give you money,' *posso ver-te* or *posso-te ver* 'I can see you,' *pode-lho dizer* or *pode dizer-lho* 'he can tell it to him,' *se alguém o quere seguir* 'if anybody wishes to follow him.'

(b) But if the main verb is negative or interrogative, or if *tudo* 'all,' *sempre* 'ever,' *só* 'alone,' or some other emphatic word precedes, the object pronoun or pronouns usually precede the main verb but may be attached to the infinitive:

*não lhe posso dar dinheiro* 'I cannot give you money,' *não o posso ver* or *não posso vê-lo* 'I cannot see you,' *não o devo fazer* or *não devo fazê-lo* 'I must not do it,' *não o pude fazer* or *não pude fazê-lo* 'I could not do it,' *mal o posso esconder* 'I can scarcely hide it,' *não lho posso dizer* 'I cannot tell him it,' *quem lho pode dizer?* 'who can tell it to him?' *não me posso demorar* 'I cannot remain,' *não me pêsá dizê-lo* 'I am not sorry to say it,' *sempre me estava a repreender* 'he was always blaming me.'

263. The reflexive pronoun *se*, however, usually follows the governing verb but may precede or follow the dependent infinitive:

*deve-se corrigir* 'it must be corrected,' *isto devia-se de dar*, *isto devia de dar-se*, or *isto devia de se dar*

'that should be given,' *o que se deve dizer* or *o que deve dizer-se* (but not *o que deve-se dizer*) 'what should be said,' *pode-se fazer* or *pode fazer-se* 'it can be done,' *podendo-se fazer* or *podendo fazer-se* 'being able to be done.'

264. (a) If one of the verbs mentioned in 262 has an object pronoun and at the same time governs an infinitive that also has an object pronoun, both pronouns follow the verb, the object of the verb standing before the object of the infinitive as the dative of the interested party (571. b):

*eu ouço-lho dizer* 'I hear you say it,' *êle faz-mo compreender* 'he makes me understand it.'

(b) If either object of the infinitive is a noun, it usually follows both the verb and the infinitive:

*faz-lhe ter a carta* 'he lets her have the letter,' *vi-o castigar o cão* 'I saw him punish the dog.'

265. If the infinitive depends on a subordinate verb, an object personal pronoun precedes the latter or follows the infinitive:

*espero que lho possa fazer* or *espero que possa fazer-lho* 'I hope you are able to do it to him,' *quero que venhas falar-me* or *quero que me venhas falar* (not *quero que venhas me falar*) 'I want you to come to speak to me.'

266. (a) If the infinitive depends on another infinitive not preceded by a negative or a preposition, an object personal pronoun follows the verb or either of the infinitives:

*espero que o possa começar a fazer, espero que possa começá-lo a fazer, or espero que possa começar a fazê-lo* 'I hope you are able to begin to do it.'

(b) But if preceded by a negative or a preposition, the pronoun may precede the first infinitive or follow any of the infinitives:

*não o poder começar a fazer, não podê-lo começar a fazer, não poder começá-lo a fazer, or não poder começar a fazê-lo* 'not to be able to begin to do it,'  
*para (não) o poder começar a fazer, para (não) podê-lo começar a fazer, para (não) poder começá-lo fazer, or para (não) poder começar a fazê-lo* 'in order (not) to be able to begin to do it.'

267. (a) If the infinitive depends on another infinitive which itself depends on a gerund not preceded by a negative or the preposition *em*, an object personal pronoun is placed after the gerund or after either infinitive:

*podendo-o começar a fazer, podendo começá-lo a fazer, or podendo começar a fazê-lo* 'being able to begin to do it.'

(b) But if preceded by a negative or *em*, the pronoun is placed before the gerund or after either infinitive:

*em (não) o podendo começar a fazer, em (não) podendo começá-lo a fazer, or em (não) podendo começar a fazê-lo* 'in (not) being able to begin to do it.'

268. If a verb already expressed is understood before an infinitive, an object personal pronoun preferably follows the infinitive:

*não quero vê-lo nem ouvi-lo* 'I do not wish to see him nor to hear him,' *não posso persuadi-lo nem convencê-lo* 'I can neither persuade him nor convince him.'

269. (a) If the infinitive is introduced by a preposition, usually *de*, *para*, *por*, or *sem*, but not *a*, the object pronoun usually precedes, but may follow, the infinitive; with compound tenses it follows the auxiliary (273 b.):

*sem o ter* or *sem tê-lo* 'without having it,' *para te ver* 'in order to see thee,' *estou pronto para o servir* 'I am ready to serve you,' *para se avaliar* or *para avaliar-se* 'in order to value,' *para não amofiná-lo* 'in order not to annoy him,' *para lho (não) dizer*, *para (não) lho dizer*, or *para (não) dizer-lho* 'in order (not) to tell him it,' *depois de o obrigá-lo* or *depois de obrigá-lo* 'after having obliged him,' *em vez de se dirigir* (or *em vez de dirigir-se*) *à porta* 'instead of directing himself to the door,' *faça favor de me dar o jornal* 'please give me the paper,' *tenho a honra de lhe participá-lo* or *tenho a honra de participá-lo-lhe* 'I have the honor to inform you.'

(b) If the infinitive is introduced by *a*, the object pronoun usually follows the infinitive:

*começou a irritá-lo* 'he began to grow angry,' *estou pronto a servi-lo* 'I am ready to serve you.'

270. If there are two infinitives in a phrase introduced by a preposition, an object personal pronoun

may precede the first infinitive, follow the second, or stand between them (262):

*sem nos poder dizer, sem poder dizer-nos, or sem poder-nos dizer* 'without being able to tell us,' *faça favor de o tornar a chamar* 'please call him again,' *quando teremos o prazer de o tornar a ver entre nós?* 'when shall we have the pleasure of seeing you again with us?'

271. If the governing verb is impersonal, the object pronouns are appended to the infinitive:

*resta-me agradecer-lhe* 'it remains for me to thank him,' *é preciso fazê-lo* 'it is necessary to do it,' *convém permitir-lhe a entrada* 'it is proper to allow him to enter,' *foi bom dizer-lho* 'it was a good thing to tell it to him,' *foi bom ter-lho dito* 'it was a good thing to have told it to him.'

272. (a) If the infinitive is personal, an object pronoun precedes the subject pronoun and both follow the infinitive (589):

*ao ajudarem-me eles, caíram os livros no chão* 'as they assisted me, the books fell to the ground.'

(b) But if a personal infinitive is governed by a preposition, except *a*, the subject pronoun (if expressed) precedes the object pronoun and both precede (or, rarely, the object follows) the infinitive:

*para eles me ajudarem* 'that they might assist me,' *sem eles me ajudarem* 'without their assisting me;' but *ao levantarem-se eles* 'when they got up.'

#### F. With Compound Tenses

273. (a) With compound tenses, the object per-

sonal pronoun usually follows the auxiliary; it may be attracted before it by a pronoun subject (only in Brazil), a negative, an interrogative, or an adverb of time, as *já, sempre, nunca*; it cannot be appended to the past participle:

*tenho-lho dito* (Braz.: *eu lho tenho dito*, but not *tenho dito-lho*) 'I have told him so,' *tendo-me visto e chamado* (= *tendo-me visto e tendo-me chamado*) 'having seen me and called me,' *temo-lo visto* (Braz.: *nós o temos visto*) 'we have seen him,' *êle tinha-me escrito* (Braz.: *êle me tinha escrito*) 'he had written to me,' *quem lho teria dito?* 'who could have told him so?' *nunca mo tinham dito* 'they had never told me so,' *se êle não me tivesse dito* 'if he had not told me,' *êles tinham-se esquecido* (Braz.: *êles se tinham esquecido*) 'they had forgotten' (cf., in a subordinate clause after *que, eu sabia que êles se tinham esquecido*); *nós temos-lhe dito* 'we have told him,' *tenho-o sabido há muito* (Braz.: *eu o tenho sabido há muito*) 'I have known it for a long while,' *a certeza da vitória tinha-se desvanecido* 'the certainty of victory had vanished,' *espero não o ter feito esperar* 'I hope I have not kept you waiting.'

(b) If a perfect infinitive is introduced by a preposition (cf. 269), an object pronoun usually follows, or less often precedes, the auxiliary:

*sem ter-lho mostrado* or *sem lho ter mostrado* 'without having shown it to him,' *em razão de os não ter visto* 'by reason of not having seen them,' *admiro-*

*me de nunca a ter visto à janela* 'I am surprised I have never seen her at the window,' *dias depois de lhe ter escrito* 'some days after writing to you' (cf. 272).

For the future perfect and past future perfect, see 274. c.

### G. With the Future Tenses

274. (a) With the simple future and conditional, the pronoun objects always precede the verb:

*creio que ele te verá* 'I think that he will see thee,'  
*julgava que ele te veria* 'I thought he would see thee,'  
*digo que eu o não escreveria* 'I say that I would not write it,'  
*eu to direi* 'I will tell it to you.'

(b) But in the analytic future and conditional (382) in positive sentences, the object pronoun or pronouns are generally intercalated between the infinitive and the personal termination:

*conduzi-lo hei* 'I will conduct him,' *amá-lo-iam* 'they would love him,' *dir-se-ia* 'it would be said,'  
*amá-lo hei* 'I will love him,' *eu dir-to hei* 'I will tell it to you,' *dir-nos há* 'he will tell us,' *dar-lho-ia* 'I would give it to him,' *ele ver-te há* 'he will see thee,' *ter-lho-ia dito* 'I would have told it to him,'  
*entregá-lhos há* 'he will hand it (or 'them') over to him ('her' or 'them'), *comer-vos-iam as* *môscas* 'the flies would eat you.'

(c) With the future perfect and past future perfect, such pronouns always precede the auxiliary:

*ter-mo há dito o amigo* (but *há-de ter-mo dito o amigo*) 'my friend will have told it to me,' *ter-*

*lho-íamos ensinqdo* (but *haviámos de ter-lho ensinqdo*) 'we would have taught it to him,' *êle ter-se-ia prevenido se o soubesse* (but *êle havia de ter-se prevenido*) 'he would have been on his guard if he had known it,' *êle considerqr-se-ia honrqdo* (but *êle havia de considerqr-se honrqdo*) 'he would have considered himself honored.'

(d) When the infinitive is preceded by the preposition *de*, in expressions like *hei-de dar* 'I have to (or 'shall') give' and *havia de dar* 'I had to (or 'should') give' (which are properly analytic forms; see (c) *supra*), in the literary language the object pronoun stands either after the preposition or the infinitive, or before the main verb, if the latter is not at the head of a clause:

*hei-de o amqr* or *hei-de amá-lo* 'I have to love him' 'I shall love him,' *havia de o amqr* or *havia de amá-lo* 'I had to love him' 'I should love him,' *hei-de lho dar* or *hei-de dar-lho* 'I have to give it to him,' *hei-de lho emprestar* or *hei-de emprestar-lho* 'I shall lend it to you.'

(e) But in the popular speech the pronoun is frequently found standing before the preposition:

*êle há-de enviqr-me uma qrta*, *êle há-de me enviqr uma qrta*, *êle enviqr-me há uma qrta*, and *êle há me de enviqr uma qrta* 'he has to (or 'will') send me a letter.'

#### B. POSSESSIVES

275 (a) The possessives are:



Masculine			Feminine		
	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
1st pers.	<i>meu</i>	<i>meus</i>		<i>minha</i>	<i>minhas</i> 'my' 'mine'
2nd pers.	<i>teu</i>	<i>teus</i>		<i>tua</i>	<i>tuas</i> 'thy' 'thine'
3rd pers.	<i>seu</i>	<i>seus</i>		<i>sua</i>	<i>suas</i>
1st pers.	<i>nosso</i>	<i>nosso</i> s		<i>nossa</i>	<i>nossas</i> 'our' 'ours'
2nd pers.	<i>vosso</i>	<i>vossos</i>		<i>vossa</i>	<i>vossas</i> 'your' 'yours'
3rd pers.	<i>seu</i>	<i>seus</i>		<i>sua</i>	<i>suas</i>

(b) The possessives of the third person, *seu*, *seus*, *sua*, *suas*, have a wide range of meaning, viz., 'his' 'her' 'hers' 'its' 'their' 'theirs' 'your' 'yours' 'one's' (278).

(c) The same forms serve both as adjectives (with a noun) and as pronouns (282).

For the use of the article before the possessive, see 79, 281, 289.

276. (a) The possessive adjective agrees in gender and number with the thing possessed, and not with the possessor; in *sua boca*, for example, *sua* is feminine to agree with *boca*, though it may mean 'his,' 'her,' 'its,' 'their,' or 'one's' ('mouth').

(b) As a rule the possessive is repeated with each noun to which it refers, especially if the nouns differ in gender or number or there is a contrast:

*seus vestidos e (suas) joias* 'her garments and (her) jewels,' *meu pai e minha mãe* 'my father and (my) mother,' *a sua virtude e o seu valor* 'his virtue and courage.'

(c) But it is usually not repeated with several adjectives accompanying the same noun:

*todos admiram as minhas belas e fragrantas rosas*  
'everybody admires my beautiful and fragrant roses.'

(d) If only one possessive is expressed, it agrees with the nearest noun:

*a minha pátria e honra* or *o meu honra e pátria*  
'my country and my honor.'

(e) Two possessives referring to different possessors cannot, except colloquially, stand before the same substantive:

*as minhas cartas e as suas* or, colloquially, *as minhas e as suas cartas* 'my letters and yours.'

(f) When the third person form of address is used (236. b), the possessive must also be in the third person, but it agrees in gender and number, not with the person addressed, but with the following noun:

*estas são as suas casas* 'these are your houses,'  
*hei-de contar tudo a seu pai* 'I will tell it all to your father.'

277. Portuguese makes but little use of the possessive adjective, except before the subject of a sentence and when clearness or emphasis requires it. As far as possible, it is replaced by the definite article before the name of the thing possessed (79. d, 80. b):

*rasgou a (sua) roupa* 'he tore his (own) clothes,'  
*estou em (minha) casa* 'I am in my (own) house,'  
*não falei com ele, mas falei com o pai* 'I did not speak to him, but to his father,' *dói-me todo o corpo* 'all my body aches,' *cortou-me a mão* 'he

cut my hand,' *batem-nos à porta* 'somebody is knocking at our door.'

278. The possessives of the third person, *seu(s)* and *sua(s)*, are used only when they refer to the subject of the sentence. They ordinarily mean 'your,' unless the context or the construction of the whole clause shows them to mean 'his,' 'her,' 'its,' or 'their.' Otherwise 'his,' 'her,' etc., is expressed, if possession is expressed at all, either by appending to the verb a personal pronoun referring to the possessor, or by placing the definite article or possessive adjective before the name of the thing possessed and, after it, the personal pronoun or title preceded by the preposition *de*: *dêle*, *dêles*, *dêla(s)*, *do senhor*, *da senhora*, *de V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>*, *de Você*:

*não falei com êle mas falei com o pai dêle* 'I did not speak to him, but I did to his father,' *estranho-lhe a franqueza* 'I wonder at his frankness,' *louva-lhe a modéstia* 'he praises your modesty,' *entreguei-lhe o chapêu dêle* 'I gave him his hat,' *João tem os sapatos dêle* 'John has his shoes,' *a casa é deles* 'the house is theirs,' *o meu chapêu e o dêle* 'my hat and his,' *meus pais e os deles* 'my parents and theirs,' *conheço o pai deles* 'I know their father,' *louva-se-lhe o valor* 'they praise his valor,' *sua irmã dêle* 'his sister,' *a sua casa de V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>* 'your house,' *ouvia-se-lhe a voz* 'his voice was heard,' *é um grande acontecimento; compreendo a sua importância, compreendo a importância dêle*, or *compreendo-lhe a importância* 'it is a great event; I understand its importance,' *êle escapou-lhe das mãos* 'he escaped from his hands,' *até lhe chegar ao fim*

'till I reach the end of it,' *que se lhe há-de fazer?*  
'what are you going to do about it?'

279. The possessives of the third person, with a following noun or an adjective or numeral used as a noun, often lose their proper value and are used colloquially to express an approximate value or quantity:

*fala bem o seu pouco de francês* 'he speaks well the little French he knows,' *já faz seu frio* 'already it is becoming somewhat cold,' *a empresa tem suas dificuldades* 'the undertaking has some difficulties,' *homem dos seus quarenta anos* 'a man of some forty years,' *teve seus minutos de aborrecimento* 'it had its disgustful minutes,' *tem as suas vinte casas* 'he owns some twenty houses;' and, with disapprobation, in such familiar exclamations as, *seu bruto!* 'you (or 'the') brute!' *seu pedaço de qsnô!* 'the ass!' *seu patife!* 'you rascal!' *seu tolo!* 'you fool!' *sua mçna!* 'you little ass!'

280. The possessive is used elliptically in some familiar expressions (303. h):

*na sua* (sc. *opinião*) *estaria melhor assim* 'in his opinion it would have been better so,' *mas o que quere o senhor dizer na sua?* 'but what do you mean?' *diz-me na sua* (sc. *carta*) 'he tells me in his (sc. 'letter').'  
Likewise *conta das suas* (sc. *tolices*) *às raparigas* 'he tells his yarns to the girls,' *faz das suas* 'he plays the fool.'

281. The definite article and a possessive adjective alone may be used to refer to a noun already expressed:

*a nossa casa é grande; a vossa é pequena* 'our house is large; yours is small.'

282. When used absolutely, *o meu, a minha, os meus, as minhas, o teu, o seu, o nosso*, etc. mean '(what is) mine,' 'my property,' 'my goods,' 'yours,' etc., and, in the plural, *os meus, os teus, os nossos*, etc. often denote 'friends,' 'allies,' 'companions,' 'followers,' 'members of the family,' etc.:

*não quero senão o meu* 'I only want mine,' *os nossos foram eleitos* 'our side has been elected.'

283. In direct address, *meu, minha* is commonly used before the name of a relative or the title of a superior officer (78. e):

*bons dias, meu capitão* 'good morning, captain,' *minha mãe!* 'mother!' and, with disapprobation, *meu mentiroso* 'my false friend.'

284. Demonstrative and indefinite pronouns and numerals may be used with the possessive:

*este meu cão* 'this dog of mine,' *as minhas três filhas* 'my three daughters,' *aquêle seu amigo* 'that friend of his,' *este meu plano* 'this plan of mine,' *aquêles seus conhecidos* 'those acquaintances of yours.'

285. 'Mine,' 'thine,' etc., and distinct ownership are expressed by the verb *pertencer* followed by *a mim, a ti*, etc., or by the verb *ser* 'to be' followed by the definite article and the possessive (79. c):

*esta carta pertence-me (a mim)* 'this letter belongs to me,' *esta carta é (a) minha* 'this letter is mine.' In the latter example the article is expressed only when speaking of a determined number of letters,

e.g., *das duas (cartas), esta é a minha* 'of the two letters, this is mine.'

286. The idea of possession may be heightened by adding *próprio* 'own' (340) or *este* 'this' etc. (284):

*escrevi-o com a minha própria mão* 'I wrote it with my own hand,' *meu próprio irmão me deu este lápis* 'my own brother gave me this pencil,' *o seu próprio filho* 'his own son,' *estas são as suas próprias palavras* 'these are his own words,' *ouvi com estes meus ouvidos* 'I heard with my own ears,' *estas minhas pequenas são muito inquietas* 'these little ones of mine are very restless,' *esses vossos olhos misericordiosos a nós volvei* 'turn your eyes of mercy towards us,' *este meu amigo* 'my friend here,' *essa nossa Lisboa* 'our own Lisbon,' *esses seus negócios* 'your affairs,' *sai fora por essas ruas* 'go out into the streets.'

The sentence 'Jack killed the giant in his (the giant's) house' may be rendered in Portuguese as follows:

*João matou o gigante em sua casa*

*João matou o gigante na sua própria casa*

but most clearly thus:

*João matou o gigante em casa dêste, or*

*João matou o gigante na própria casa dêste.*

287. The possessive is omitted in some adverbial expressions with *de* after certain verbs:

*caiu de joelhos* 'he fell on his knees,' *mudar de parecer* 'to change opinion.'

## Position of the Possessive

288. The normal position of the possessive is before the noun and after the articles, the demonstratives, relatives, and indefinites;

*o seu chapéu, um seu chapéu, este seu chapéu, o tal seu chapéu, o qual seu chapéu, algum seu chapéu, ambos os seus chapéus, todos os seus chapéus* 'his hat,' 'a hat of his,' 'this hat of his,' 'such a hat of his,' 'which hat of his,' 'any hat of his,' 'both his hats,' 'all his hats.'

(a) But to express affection, intimacy in possession, or for elegance or emphasis, the possessive may follow:

*pelo mesmo Jesus Cristo Senhor Nosso* 'through the same Jesus Christ, our Lord,' *ó! Deus e Senhor meu* 'oh my God and my Lord!' *minha mãe* 'my mother,' *mãe minha muita querida* 'my dear mother,' *esta é a ditosa pátria minha amada* 'this is my own dear happy country,' *o padre-nosso* 'the Lord's Prayer,' *mas graças seu* 'against his will,' *não sem juntar algumas observações minhas* 'not without adding a few remarks of my own.'

(b) After a noun that is preceded by an interrogative or a negative:

*que chapéu seu?* 'what hat of his?' *nenhum chapéu seu* 'no hat of his.'

(c) Before an ordinal numeral that is followed by a noun:

*o seu primeiro chapéu* 'his first hat.'

(d) Immediately after a noun that is preceded by a cardinal numeral or before this numeral:

*os três chapéus seus* or *os seus três chapéus* 'his three hats.'

(e) The possessive may precede or follow a noun in the predicate or depending on a preposition; the latter expresses not so much possession as cause or origin:

*é minha a culpa* 'the fault is mine' 'it is my fault,'  
*foi culpa minha* 'it was my fault,' *em nosso nome*  
 or *em nome nosso* 'in our name.'

289. 'One of my friends' is *um meu amigo*, and 'a friend of mine' (which latter stresses the intimacy of the friendship) is rendered *um amigo meu* or, more emphatically, *um dos meus amigos*:

*é meu amigo* 'he is my friend,' *é amigo meu* 'he is a friend of mine,' *é o meu amigo* 'it is my friend,'  
*é um cão meu* 'it is a dog of mine,' *um doutor meu*  
*amigo* 'a doctor, a friend of mine' or 'one of my friends who is a doctor,' *muitos amigos meus*  
 'many friends of mine,' *os muitos amigos meus*  
 'my many friends,' *é muito meu amigo* 'he is a great friend of mine,' *este homem é seu amigo*  
 'this man is a friend of yours,' *este homem é o seu*  
*amigo* 'this man is your friend,' *a um seu correspondente*  
*dizia* 'to one of his correspondents he said,' *um*  
*vosso servo* 'one of your servants,' *um*  
*criado seu* or, frequently, *um seu criado* 'your servant' (79. b).

290. The possessive after the noun is sometimes the equivalent of a personal pronoun with *de*:



*notícias suas* (i.e. *de V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>*) 'news about you,' *saúdações suas* 'the longing that you have for someone,' *mande-me breves notícias suas* 'send me a short account of yourself,' *muitas lembranças* (or *saúdações*) *minhas* 'with my best regards,' but also *fiz as minhas despedidas* 'I took leave' 'I bid farewell,' *até novas notícias minhas* 'till further news from me.'

## C. DEMONSTRATIVES

291. (a) The following three demonstratives are used either adjectively or pronominally:

Masculine		Feminine	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<i>êste</i> 'this (one)'	<i>êstes</i> 'these'	<i>êsta</i>	<i>êstas</i>
<i>êsse</i> 'that (one)'	<i>êsses</i> 'those'	<i>êssa</i>	<i>êssas</i>
<i>aquêle</i> 'that (one)'	<i>aquêles</i> 'those'	<i>aquêla</i>	<i>aquêlas</i>

(b) These demonstratives are combined to form one word with the prepositions *de* 'of' and *em* 'in.'

Preceded by *de* they form *dêste(s)*, *dêsta(s)*, *dêsse(s)*, *dêssa(s)*, *daquêle(s)*, *daquêla(s)*.

Preceded by *em* they form *nêste(s)*, *nêsta(s)*, *nêsse(s)*, *nêssa(s)*, *naquêle(s)*, *naquêla(s)*.

The spellings *n-este*, *n'este*, *'neste*, etc., which are frequently found, are not admitted in the revised orthography.

(c) They are also combined with *outro*, *-a*, *-os*, *-as* 'other' to form the emphatic demonstratives *estoutro*, *estoutra*, *estoutros*, *estoutras*, *essoutro*, *essoutra*, *aqueloutro*, *aqueloutra*, etc., 'this other' 'that other.'

(d) *Aquêle* and *aquilo* (299) are the only demonstra-

tives that are combined with the preposition *a*; *a aquele(s)* is written *àquele(s)*:

*falou àquele* 'he spoke to that one,' *àquela hora* 'at that hour.'

292. *Este*, 'this' 'this one' 'the latter,' indicates actual events or what is near in time or place in relation to the speaker. But it is also used sometimes with the force of *aquele*.

293. *Esse*, 'that' 'that one' 'the former,' indicates past events or what is near in time or place in relation to the person addressed. But it may also be used independently without reference to any definite time or place.

294. Even in the colloquial language this distinction in meaning between *este* and *esse* is generally observed. In commercial correspondence *nesta* (sc. *cidade* 'city' or *praça* 'place') refers to the place of the writer, *nessa* to that of the person written to, and *naquela* to a place distant from both:

*um negociante desta acqba de fazer quebra* 'a merchant of this place has just failed.'

295. *Aquele* etc., 'that' 'the former,' refers to what is vague, or is more or less removed from both the speaker and the person addressed:

*este negócio e não aquele* 'this business and not that.'

296. (a) A demonstrative adjective precedes its noun and agrees with it in gender and number. It is repeated only when the subjects it refers to are of very

dissimilar meaning. When it modifies more than one noun it agrees with the nearest:

*êste homem e aquelas mulheres* 'this man and those women,' *êstes homens e mulheres* 'these men and women,' *êstes cadernos e fôlhas estão bem escritas* or *êstas fôlhas e cadernos estão bem escritos* 'these sheets and note-books are well written.'

(b) In the popular speech, however, as well as in the more cultivated language, *êste*, when emphatic and followed by a relative clause, sometimes follows the noun:

*homem êste que tanto fez* 'this man who did so much,' and in exclamations: *que mulher aquela!* 'what a woman that is!'

297. The definite article *o*, *a*, *os*, *as*, followed by the preposition *de* or the relative *que* (307), has retained the force of a demonstrative pronoun and is used as the equivalent of *aquêle*, when referring to things:

*tenho dois livros; o de que lhe quero falar é do pequeno* 'I have two books; the one of which I wish to speak to you is the small one,' *as que quero são as negras* 'what I want are the black ones,' *as luvas de seda e as de lã* 'the silk gloves and the woolen ones,' *êstes charutos são mais baratos do que os que comprei ontem* 'these cigars are cheaper than those I bought yesterday.'

298 (a) A demonstrative pronoun subject of the verb *ser* 'to be,' and referring to a definite person or thing, is usually omitted, unless the verb is followed

By a personal pronoun or the subject has already been mentioned:

*é este o seu livro?* 'is this your book?' *são esses os seus primos?* 'are those your cousins?' (*esta* or *essa*) *foi a sua resposta* 'this was his answer,' *esse (homem) é o meu pai* 'that (man) is my father,' (*estas*) *são as minhas* 'these are mine,' *quem é?* 'who is that?' *este é ele* 'this is he.'

(b) If 'this' or 'that' refers to a person, the pronoun alone is not used, as in English, but *amigo*, *cavalheiro*, *senhor*, or *senhora* must be added:

*este cavalheiro é meu amigo* 'this (gentleman) is my friend.'

299. While *este*, *esse*, and *aquêle* are used both adjectively and pronominally and refer to some definite person or thing, the three neuter demonstratives *isto* 'this,' *isso* 'that,' and *aquilo* 'that' are invariable pronouns only and refer indefinitely to 'this thing,' 'that thing,' 'that other thing,' to a whole idea, or to something not mentioned by name. They rarely refer to persons, and then usually with a shade of contempt:

*isto que digo é certo* 'what I say is certain,' *que é isto?* or *que é isso?* 'what is that?' *é isso* 'that is it' 'that is right,' *isto de que lhe falo* 'what I speak to you about,' *eu preferia isso àquilo* 'I prefer this to that,' *aquilo que é?* 'what is that?' *e a verdade é aquilo* 'and that is the truth,' *isso é que é* 'that's so' (very common in giving assent), *a isto é que não pode dizer que não* 'you cannot say no to that,' *isso nunca chega a ser homem* 'that fellow will

never be a man,' *aquilo ali trabalha-se pouco* 'they do not exert themselves much.'

300. *Isto*, *isso*, and *aquilo* are sometimes used as the real subject in an impersonal sentence:

*êle é verdade que isto são horas de irmos embora* 'the truth is that it is time for us to go,' *mas eu não sei se isto são palavras portuguesas* 'but I do not know if these are Portuguese words,' *isto não são palavras de coragem* 'these are not words of courage,' *isto que horas serão?* 'what time might it be?' *Isto é* (never *isso é*) is used to show that the speaker is going to explain a previous statement, 'that is' 'that is to say,' *isto convém* 'that is right.'

301. Combined with the prepositions *de* and *em*, *isto*, *isso*, and *aquilo* are written

<i>disto</i>	<i>disso</i>	<i>daquilo</i>
<i>nisto</i>	<i>nisso</i>	<i>naquilo</i>

but the contraction does not take place when the preposition and *isso*, *isto*, or *aquilo* stand before a gerund:

*em isto acabando* 'when that will be finished,'  
*em aquilo acontecendo* 'if that happens,' *é melhor não pensarmos nisso* 'it is better for us not to think of that.'

302. *Nisto* (never *nisso*) sometimes means 'meanwhile' 'then' 'at such a moment' 'thereupon:'

*nisto chegou êle* 'meanwhile (or 'at that moment') he arrived.'

*Por isto* or *por isso* 'therefore,' negatively *não por*

*isso* or *nem por isso* 'in spite of that' 'not so much' 'please.'

### Special Uses of the Demonstratives

303. (a) Frequently with the possessive, to strengthen the idea of possession (284).

(b) Occasionally like the article, to substantivize words and phrases:

*estes ondes e estes dondes* 'these 'wheres' and 'whences',  
*aqueles quando* 'those 'whens', *aquele não sei quê*  
 'that I know not what.'

(c) Popularly, instead of the definite article, a noun, or a personal pronoun, but with much more emphasis, and in apposition:

*aquele Antônio faz cada tolice* 'that Anthony commits every folly,' *essa gente que nos espia na sombra* 'those people who are watching us in the shadow,' *o marido, esse adorava-a* 'that husband adored her,' *o rapaz, esse é que é fino* 'it is the boy that is clever,' *olha o peixe, aquele é que sabe nadar* 'see the fish; that's the one that knows how to swim.'

(d) Poetically, in comparisons, like the indefinite article, agreeing in gender and number with the word to which it is compared:

*êste fôfo como ninho* 'this thing as puffy as a nest.'

(e) Preceded by *de*:

*há disto* 'there is such a thing;' and, in the plural, agreeing in gender with the noun to which it refers:

*quem tem mãos destas* or *quem tem destas mãos* 'whoever has hands of that kind,' *um homem daqueles* 'a man of that kind.'

(f) *Isto* followed by *de*, in the sense of *a respeito de*:

*isto de satisfação* 'in the matter of satisfaction,' *mas isto de cantar na igreja* 'but this business of singing in church,' *isto de sezões, não é nada* 'as for these fevers, it is nothing.'

(g) Some demonstrative pronouns, usually in the feminine singular, are used in a number of more or less popular expressions in which *coisa*, *graça*, or some word of like meaning is to be understood:

*foi-se embora sem mais aquela* 'he went off without saying another word,' *tem lá aquela de embirrar comigo* 'he has a mania for flying into a rage with me,' *essa é boa!* 'that's a good one!' (ironical) 'the idea!' *pra está! pra essa!* or *pra isto!* 'why, the idea!' 'what!' 'there now!' *essa agora!* 'well, now!' *essa sim, que aparece clara e distinta* 'that much seems clear and distinct,' *é por estas e outras* 'in this way and that,' *com essa* (or *esta*) *vou-me embora* 'that caps the climax,' *essa não me pode esquecer* 'I cannot forget it,' *essa não lembra ao diabo* 'the devil wouldn't have thought of it,' *se desta escapar* 'if I escape from this,' *e assim vai o homem desta para aquela* 'and so the man goes from one thing to another,' *foi-se desta (vida) para melhor* 'he departed this (life) for a better world' (294).

(h) Feminine adjectives, possessives, and other words are similarly used (280):

*caiu em uma boa* 'he fell into a trap,' *fêz uma das suas* 'he was up to one of his tricks,' *por outra* 'in other words,' *noutra não caio eu* 'I won't be caught again,' *quere ouvir uma de Pedro?* 'do you want to hear a good story?' *noutra não me meto* 'once is enough,' *os outros levam a melhor* 'the others get the better of it.'

#### D. INTERROGATIVES AND RELATIVES

304. There is but one form for both interrogative

and relative pronouns, viz., *quem*, *que* (*quê*), *qual*, *quanto*, and *cujo*.

### *Quem*

305. (a) *Quem* (interrogative) 'who?' 'whom?' or (relative) 'who' 'whom' 'he who' 'whoever' 'which' 'that' is always pronominal and invariable, and, except occasionally in the classic authors, refers only to persons or to abstracts and concrete words used personally. It may be used as subject, as object of a verb, or depending on a preposition, and in direct or indirect discourse. In the modern language, however, *sem quem* is avoided:

*quem fêz isto?* 'who did that?' *quem me chamou?* 'who called me?' *quem está ali?* 'who is there?' *quem é o homem?* 'who is the man?' (a) *quem buscam eles?* 'whom do they seek?' *a quem fala êle?* 'to whom does he speak?' *com quem fala?* 'to whom do you speak?' *de quem é a vez?* 'whose turn is it?' *diga-me quem veio* 'tell me who has come,' *quem são os outros?* 'who are the others?'

(b) Relative *quem* is rarely used in the popular speech (307) except in proverbs (p. 620 ff.) and, unlike *que* (310), it requires its verb to be in the third person singular (548. j. k). It is often the equivalent of *aquêle* or *a pessoa* followed by *que*:

*não fomos nós quem o disse* 'it was not we who said it,' *fui eu quem o comprou* 'it was I who bought it,' *fui eu quem afirmou isso* 'it was I who affirmed that,' *quem semeia ventos colhe tempestades* 'whoso sows the wind, reaps the whirlwind,' *dize-me com quem andas, dir-te hei as manhas que tens* 'tell me



what company you keep and I will tell you what you are,' *quem não vê, é cego* 'he who does not see, is blind,' *fui eu e ela quem o descobriu* 'it was she and I who made it known,' *quem fizer isso será castigado* 'whoever does that will be punished,' *conheço quem escreveu o artigo* 'I know who wrote the article,' *a mulher de quem falo* 'the woman of whom I speak,' *quem ri hoje chorará amanhã* 'he who laughs to-day will weep to-morrow.'

- (c) After *eis* (*aqui*) 'behold,' *quem* means 'one who:'  
*eis (aqui) quem nos dará notícias disso* 'here is one who will give us information about it.'

(d) As direct as well as indirect object, *quem* is preceded by the preposition *a*:

*o homem a quem V. Ex<sup>a</sup> encontrou* 'the man you met,' *o homem a quem eu entreguei o chapéu* 'the man to whom I gave the hat.'

- (e) *Quem . . . quem . . .* 'the one . . . the other . . .'  
*quem diz sim, quem diz não* 'one says 'yes,' the other 'no'.'

### Interrogative *Que* (*Quê*)

306. (a) *Que?* (interrogative) 'who?' 'whom?' 'what?' and *que* (relative) 'who' 'he who' 'whoever' 'whom' 'which' 'that' 'what' are invariable. They may be used as adjectives or as pronouns, either as subject or object of a verb, or depending on a preposition such as *com*, *em*, *por*, *sem*. They may refer to persons or things of either number or gender, but, as

a genuine relative pronoun referring to a person, *quem* preceded by a preposition (usually *a*, *com*, *de*, or *por*) is preferred (312).

When interrogative *que* is emphatic, or stands alone or before a pause, it is written *quê?*:

(o) *quê?* 'what?' (cf. *o que* 'that which'); *para quê?* 'what for?' 'why?' (cf. *para que* 'for which'); *que idade?* 'what age?' *que é isto?* 'what is this?' *que é isso?* 'what is that?' *que tem?* 'what have you?' *de que homem me fala V. Ex<sup>a</sup>?* 'of what man do you speak to me?' *que aprendeu na escola?* 'what did you learn at school?' *não sei que ideias tem* 'I do not know what ideas he has,' *a que fim?* 'for what purpose?' *que tempo está?* 'what kind of weather is it?'

(b) The neuter pronoun *o* should not be used before interrogative *que* at the beginning of a sentence, although this rule is often violated in modern times, especially in Brazil:

(o) *que quere dizer?* 'what do you mean?' (o) *que é isso?* 'what is that?' (o) *que há de novo?* 'what's the news?' (o) *que quere V. Ex<sup>a</sup>?* 'what do you wish?' (o) *que se passou?* 'what took place?'

(c) But in an indirect question depending on a verb, expressed or understood, the pronoun is correctly employed:

*disse-lhe o que fêz?* 'did he tell him what he did?'  
*sabe o que ele quere?* 'do you know what he wants?'

(d) As an adjective, *que* sometimes means 'what kind of?:'

*que casas são aquelas?* 'what (kind of) houses are those?' *que homem é este?* 'what (sort of) man is this?' *que chapéu quere o senhor?* 'which hat do you want?'

(e) Before a noun, an adjective, or an adverb, *que* (often followed by *tão* or, popularly, by *mais*) is used in exclamations, to express a quality in a high degree (710. b):

*que bonita menina!* 'what a pretty girl!' *que belo que é!* 'how beautiful it is!' *que pálida está!* 'how pale she is!' *que vista tão (or mais) bonita!* 'what a pretty view!' *que belamente escrita é esta carta!* 'how beautifully this letter is written!'

(f) Similarly when followed by *de* and a noun:

*que de gente!* or *quanta gente!* 'what a crowd!' *que de tempo perdido!* 'what a loss of time!'

For the order of words after *em que?*, see 730.

### Relative *Que*

307. *Que* is the commonest of the relative pronouns and almost the only one employed by the people:

*o homem que me encontrou* 'the man who met me,'  
*o homem que eu encontrei* 'the man whom I met,'  
*a língua que se fala* 'the language that is spoken,'  
*o de que falamos é verdade* 'what we speak of is true,' *é ele que o diz* 'it is he who says so,' *o que deseja muito sempre é pobre* 'he who desires much is always poor,' *perguntou-me em que pensava*

'he asked me what I was thinking of,' *sou eu que peço* 'it is I who ask,' *sabe o senhor o que quero?* 'do you know what I want?' *êle foi (o) que me deu a liberdade* 'it was he who gave me liberty,' *sei o que faz de tarde* 'I know what he does in the evening,' *não percebo o que diz* 'I do not grasp what he says,' *conte-me o que viu* 'tell me what you saw.'

308. An emphatic expletive, corresponding to French *qu'est-ce que?* and consisting of the third person singular present indicative of the verb *ser* 'to be,' followed by the relative pronoun (*o*) *que* and inserted after a pronoun (interrogative, relative, or personal), a noun, or an adverb, emphasizes the subject or object to which the word refers. In such cases the verb agrees with the antecedent:

*os grandes homens (ê que) o dizem* 'it is the great men who say so,' *a côrte tôda confessou que ela (ê que) era a mais linda* 'all the court confessed that it was she that was the most beautiful,' *porque deles (ê que) é o reino dos Céus* 'for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven,' *quem (ê que) o fêz?* 'who did it?' *(o) que (ê que) tem, papá?* 'what is the matter with you, papa?' *isto é (que é) a felicidade* 'this is happiness,' *então o que é que êle é?* or *então o que é êle?* 'then what is he?' *eu cá é que o disse* 'I am the one that said it,' *que (ê que) falta?* 'what is lacking?' *bela e boa é o que ela é* 'beautiful and good, that is what she is,' *é o que é* 'the fact is,' *está farto, é o que é* 'he is sick of it, that is what he is,' *os franceses é que foram a causa da revolução* 'it is the French who were the cause of the Revolu-

tion,' *tolice é que é* 'foolishness is what it is,' *as multidões é que ficaram tristes* 'it is the crowds who were sorrowful,' *porque (é que) . . . ?* 'why . . . ?' *como (é que) . . . ?* 'how . . . ?' *onde (é que) . . . ?* 'where . . . ?'

309. (a) The antecedent may be brought out clearly and emphatically by the introduction of a subject pronoun:

*ô! vós moços que estudaís* 'oh! ye boys who study,'  
*"Vinde a mim todos vós os que trabalhais"* 'come to me all you who labor.'

(b) But the antecedent *o*, *a*, *os*, or *as* is usually not repeated before *que* in the succeeding clause, if it refers to the same object as in the first clause:

*o que fizeram e que queriam repetir é . . .* 'what they have done and what they would like to repeat is. . . .'

310. *Que*, having as its antecedent a personal pronoun, requires its verb to be in the same person and number. Otherwise it is in the third person singular or plural (548. 1-q):

*sou eu que falei* 'it is I who spoke,' *nós somos os que escreveremos a carta* 'it is we who will write the letter,' *nós é que o não estávamos* 'it is we who were not so,' *eu fui o que afirmei isso* 'I am the one who stated that,' *mas ele diz que tu é que não o (or o não) farás* 'but he says you are the one that will not do it,' *não fomos nós que o fizemos* 'it is not we who did it.'

311. But if the personal pronoun of the first person has a predicate noun or adjective, the verb may agree either with it or with the pronoun:

*sou eu o único amigo que o diz* (less often *digo*)  
'I am the only friend to say it.'

312. *Que* cannot be used pronominally with a preposition to refer to a person, unless the antecedent is expressed (306):

*a casa de que falo* 'the house of which I speak,'  
*de que fala V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>?* 'of what (not 'of whom')  
do you speak?' but, *o homem a que me dirigi*  
'the man to whom I directed myself,' *muitos*  
*homens há pelos quais* (or *por quem*) *não tenho*  
*nenhum acatamento* 'there are many men for whom  
I have no respect.'

313. The relative pronoun cannot be omitted in Portuguese, as it often is in English; on the contrary, it is usually repeated with each verb, and, moreover, it must stand as near as possible to its antecedent:

*os cavalos que comprei e que vendi* 'the horses (which)  
I bought and sold,' *entreguei ao meu amigo o dinheiro*  
*que me confiou* 'I gave the money you entrusted  
to me to my friend.'

314. (a) A preposition cannot end a relative sentence in Portuguese, as it frequently does in English:

*o homem a quem dei o dinheiro* 'the man I gave the  
money to.'

(b) But sometimes a preposition which strictly belongs to the relative *que* is placed before the antecedent:

*do que eu me admiro é . . .* (for *o de que eu me admiro é . . .*) 'what I am surprised at is . . . .'

315. (a) *Quql*, plural *quais*, 'what(?)' 'which(?)' 'which one(?)' 'who' 'whom' 'that,' is both interrogative and relative. It may be used adjectively or pronominally, as subject, as object after prepositions (usually *com*, *de*, *por*), with numerals, and with indefinites like *muitos* and *poucos*, and may refer to persons or things. When relative, it is generally preceded by the definite article—*o quql*, *a quql*, *os quais*, *as quais*—except when preceded itself by *tal* (346). Being inflected and agreeing with the word to which it refers, it is stronger than either *que* or *quem* and is used instead of them to make the meaning of the antecedent clearer and more emphatic. But it is rarely used in the modern spoken language, except as an interrogative.

*O quql* etc. takes the place of *que* or *quem* after prepositions of more than two syllables and prepositional phrases:

*debaixo do quql* 'underneath which,' *durante o quql* 'during which,' and after *entre* 'among' when referring to persons: *os amigos entre os quais vivo* 'the friends with whom I live.'

1. Interrogative: *quql é o homem?* 'which is the man?' *quais são os livros que tem?* 'what (or 'which') books have you?' *quql (deles) é o seu?* 'which (of them) is yours?' *quais destas são as suas?* 'which of these are yours?' *quql dos dois prefere* (or *lhe agrada mais*)? 'which of the two do you prefer?' *diga-me quais são as suas intenções* 'tell me what are your intentions.'

2. Relative: *não sei qual* 'I do not know which,' *um amigo ao qual* (or *a quem*) 'a friend to whom,' *a capa do livro que comprei ontem* 'the cover of the book which I bought yesterday,' *hoje vi o proprietário da casa que* (or *o qual*) *está na cidade* 'to-day I saw the owner of the house which (or 'who') is in the city,' *a razão por que* (or *pela qual*) 'the reason why,' *o fim para que* (or *para o qual*) 'the end for which,' *a mãe do pequeno que* (or *a qual*, if referring to *a mãe*) *encontrei* 'the mother of the little boy I met.'

(b) When repeated, without the article, *qual* is used as a correlative:

*qual saiu, qual ficou* 'some went out, others remained,' *qual mais, qual menos* 'the one the more, the other the less,' *quais . . . quais . . .* 'some . . . others . . .'

(c) The verb is frequently omitted after interrogative *qual*:

*qual a sua história?* 'what is its story?'

(d) *Qual* is also used to introduce a comparison:

*voar qual ave* 'to fly like a bird,' *nadar qual peixe* 'to swim like a fish.'

(e) *O qual mais*, fem. *a qual mais*, means 'one more than another:'

*eles, os três palhaços, o qual* (or *qual deles*) *mais cómico* 'three clowns, each of them funnier than the others.'

316. (a) *Cujo*, -a, -os, -as (?) 'whose(?),' corresponding both to *de quem* 'of whom(?)' and to *de que*, *do qual*, etc. 'of what(?),' 'of which(?),' and



referring either to persons or to things, is rarely used interrogatively to-day, and even as a relative it is seldom heard in conversation. It agrees in gender and number with the word before, not after, which it stands:

1. Interrogative: *rapaz, cujo filho és?* (more commonly *de quem és filho?*) 'boy, whose son are you?' *cujos* (more commonly *de quem*) *são estes campos?* 'whose fields are these?'

2. Relative: *uma mulher cujo nome é Maria* 'a woman whose name is Mary,' *o homem cujo filho é morto* 'the man whose son is dead,' *aqueles cuja morte deploro eram meus amigos* 'those whose death I mourn were my friends,' *os estudantes dos quais (or de quem) fui companheiro* 'the students whose companion I was.'

(b) *Cujo* is sometimes used incorrectly in a partitive sense:

*as batalhas cujas principais são . . .* (for *as batalhas das quais as principais são . . .* or *as batalhas as principais das quais são . . .*) 'the principal battles of which are . . .'

317. (a) *Quanto*, -a, -os, -as (ø) 'how much(?)' 'how many(?)' may refer to persons or things. As an adjective, it precedes its noun and agrees with it.

Interrogative: *quanto custou?* 'how much did it cost?' *quanto é?* 'how much is it?' *quanto pagou?* 'how much did you pay?' *quanto vai do natal à páscoa?* 'how long is it from Christmas to Easter?' *quanto lhe devo?* 'how much do I owe you?' *quantos deles quere V.Ex.?* 'how many of them do you

wish?' *a quantos do mês estamos nós hoje?* 'what is the date of to-day?' *quantas vezes foi lá?* 'how many times were you there?'

(b) As a relative adjective or pronoun, *quanto(s)* usually has the value of *tudo(s)* *o(s)*, *aquêle(s)*, or *que*:

*dei-lhe quanto tinha* 'I gave him all I had,' *fiz quanto pude* 'I did all I could,' *juntou quanto dinheiro pôde* 'he gathered all the money he could,' *é estimado por quantos o conhecem* 'he is esteemed by all who know him,' *quantos homens há no mundo* 'as many men as there are in the world,' *a figura mais perfeita, de quantas inventou a natureza, é o círculo* 'of all the forms invented by nature, the circle is the most perfect,' *padecem quantos males há no mundo* 'they suffer all the evils in the world,' *quanto vê, logo deseja possuir* 'whatever he sees, immediately he desires to possess it.'

For *quanto* as an indefinite pronoun, see 342, and, in correlation with *tanto*, 342. b, 357.

318. The local adverb *onde* 'where' may be employed interrogatively or relatively and take the place of *em que*, *em qual*, *de que*, etc., sometimes without any idea of place, but to refer in a general way to things or, less often, to persons:

*no seu livro onde coligiu toda esta matéria* 'in his book in which he collected all this material,' *a casa donde sai* 'the house from which he comes,' *aonde (or para onde) vai esse vapor?* 'where is that steamer going?' *amamos sempre mais a terra onde*

*nascemos* 'we always love most the land where we were born.'

#### E. INDEFINITES

319. The English indefinites 'one,' 'they,' 'people,' 'you,' may be expressed by

(a) the reflexive form of the verb:

*diz-se muitas vezes o contrário do que se pensa* 'one often says the opposite of what one thinks,'  
*aqui fala-se português* 'Portuguese spoken here,'  
*como se escreve esta palavra?* 'how do you write this word?' *crê-se, acredita-se, or julga-se* 'it is believed,' *dir-se-ia* 'one might say;'

(b) the first or third person plural of the verb:

*dizem* 'one says' 'they say' 'I am told,' *prenderam o ladrão* 'they have caught the thief,' *acreditam, julgam* 'people believe' 'it is believed,' *dizem que há-de fazer muito calor este verão* 'they say it is going to be very hot this summer,' *contam* 'they say,' *batem à porta* 'somebody is knocking at the door,' *não devemos acreditar tudo* 'one should not believe everything;'

(c) *ninguém, o (or um) homem, or todos*:

*ninguém pode ler tudo* 'one cannot read everything,'  
*um homem não pode lembrar-se de tudo* 'one cannot remember everything,' *gostam todos de dar conselhos* 'everybody likes to give advice.'

(d) *gente* (365).

## 1. Some General Indefinites

Some of these are used as adjectives with a noun, or stand alone substantively.

320. *Al* (invariable) 'something else' 'another thing' 'the rest' is obsolete:

*o que não pode ql ser* 'what cannot be otherwise.'

321. *Algo* (invariable) 'something' 'anything' is used of things and with about the same force as *alguma coisa* (323):

*algo de doce* 'something sweet.' As an adverb, it means *algum tanto*: *êle está qlgo doente* 'he is somewhat ill,' *veio qlgo tarde* 'he came a little late,' *êle é qlgo gordo* 'he is rather fat.'

322. (a) *Alguém* (invariable) 'some one' 'somebody' 'any one' 'anybody' is used only pronominally and of persons, but is far less definite than *algum* (323):

*alguém veio* 'some one came,' *alguém está chamando à porta* 'somebody is calling at the door,' *oiço a voz de alguém* 'I hear the voice of somebody.'

(b) It is sometimes used incorrectly instead of *algum* before *de* followed by a plural:

*alguém* (for *algum*) *deles chegou* 'some of them arrived.'

When preceded by a demonstrative it has a depreciatory meaning:

*devo resposta a êsse alguém* 'I owe an answer to this somebody.'

On the other hand it sometimes means a person of

importance: *êle julga-se alguém* 'he thinks himself somebody.'

323. (a) *Algum*, fem. *alguma*, pl. *alguns*, *algumas*, 'any (one)' 'some (one)' 'a few,' negatively 'no (one)' 'none' 'not any,' may be used as an adjective or pronoun and refer to persons or things. Combined with *em*, it becomes *nalgum(a)*, *nalguns*, *nalgumas*, but it does not combine with the preposition *a*. The writing *álguns*, *álguas*, etc., for *a alguns*, *a algumas*, etc., is incorrect.

(b) *Algum* precedes its noun in an affirmative sense: *algum livro* 'some book,' *alguma coisa* 'something,' *tenho alguns livros* 'I have some books,' *conhece V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> algum deles?* 'do you know any of them?' *algum dos seus amigos* 'some of your friends,' *não sem algum medo* 'not without some fear.'

In the plural, *alguns*, *algumas* is more definite than *uns*, *umas* (362):

*conheço alguns* 'I know some,' *cheguei tarde alguns momentos* 'I came a few minutes late,' (*alguns*) *anos há* 'a few years ago,' *estas coisas e mais algumas* 'these things and a few more.'

(c) After the noun, *algum* means 'no' 'not any' and is stronger than *nenhum* before the noun (335):

*coisa alguma* 'nothing,' *livro algum* 'no book,' *povo algum o possui* 'no people possess it,' *homem algum poderá saber* 'no man can know,' *em tempo algum* 'at no time,' *de modo algum* (or, better, *de modo nenhum*) 'not at all,' *por parte alguma* 'nowhere.'

(d) When the verb is preceded by *não* or some other negative adverb or preposition, *algum* strengthens the negative and follows the noun:

*não havia remédio algum* 'there was no remedy,'  
*não há dúvida alguma* 'there is no doubt,' *não lhe acontece mal algum* 'no harm happens to him,'  
*não conheço pessoa alguma* 'I do not know anybody,'  
*não o vi em parte alguma* 'I have not seen him anywhere,' *sem hesitações algumas* (better *nenhumas*) 'without any hesitation.'

(e) *Algum* is sometimes modified by *pouco* or *outro*:  
*entre alguns poucos dos passageiros que escaparam com vida* 'among some few of the passengers who escaped with their lives.'

(f) When unemphatic and not in a negative sentence, *algum* (and similarly *nenhum*) may be omitted:  
*não lhe dê isso (algum, or rather nenhum or qualquer) cuidado* 'do not let that give you any worry;' likewise, to mean 'none,' in an answer referring to a preceding noun: *há vinho?* 'is there wine?' *não, senhor, não há*, 'no, sir, there is none.'

324. *Alheio*, -a, -os, -as 'another's' is the equivalent of *de outrem* and is used adjectively and pronominally:

*não se meta nos negócios alheios* 'do not meddle in another's affairs,' *a bolsa alheia* 'another's purse,' *quem deseja o (bem) alheio* 'who covets another's goods.'

325. (a) *Ambos*, fem. *ambas*, 'both' is used only in the plural and either adjectively or pronominally.

When followed by a substantive, the definite article, or a demonstrative or possessive adjective, is inserted:

*ambas as mãos* 'both hands,' *ambos os livros me pertencem* 'both books belong to me,' *ambos estes rapazes* 'both these boys,' *ambas as suas filhas* 'both your daughters;' but *ambos eles* 'both of them,' *sairam ambos a cavalo* 'they both rode away.'

(b) *Ambos* is strengthened by the addition of *os dois*, fem. *as duas*:

*entraram ambos os dois em casa* 'they both entered the house.'

*Ambos* is also used adverbially:

*eles foram passear ambos* 'they went to walk together.'

(c) Since *ambos* refers only to two persons or things occurring in union, it cannot be used of persons or things that are opposed to each other, nor if two only out of several are referred to; in these cases *os dois*, fem. *as duas*, is employed; consequently *ambos os partidos americanos* is incorrect for *os dois partidos americanos* 'the two (or 'both') American parties,' *ambos os advogados* 'both lawyers (of the same party),' *um e outro advogado* 'both lawyers (of the contending parties),' *os dois irmãos naufragaram* 'the two (i.e. two of several) brothers were shipwrecked.'

326. *Bastante* 'enough' may be used as an adjective, an adverb, or a substantive:

*não é bastante* 'it is not enough,' *é bastante salgado* 'it is salty enough,' *tem bastante* 'he has enough,'

*sabe o bastante para viajar* 'he knows enough to travel.'

327. (a) *Cada* (invariable) 'each' 'every' stands adjectively before a noun, a numeral, *um*, *uma*, or *qual*:

*cada vez mais* 'more and more,' *para cada dia* 'for every day,' *a cada instante* 'at every instant,' *cada (um) ano* (= *todos os anos*) 'every year,' *cada (uma) hora* 'every hour,' *cada cinco anos* (better *de cinco em cinco anos*) 'every five years,' *a cada seis deu um livro* 'to every six he gave a book,' *cada ovelha com a sua parêlha* 'birds of a feather flock together' (literally, 'every sheep with its like').

(b) *Cada um* and *cada qual* 'each one,' used pronominally, refer only to persons. The former is more precise than the latter:

*cada um deles* 'each (or 'every') one of them,' *cada uma das meninas foi a pé* 'each of the girls walked,' *encontrei três pobres e dei esmola a cada um* 'I met three poor men and gave alms to each of them,' *cada qual sente o seu mal* 'each one feels his own misfortune.'

(c) *Cada* is often used incorrectly alone, especially in commercial accounts, in imitation of French *chaque* instead of *chacun*:

*estas caixas custam quinhentos réis cada (uma)* 'these boxes cost 500 réis each.'

(d) Colloquially, in exclamations, *cada* means 'such' 'such a strange' 'extraordinary':



saw it,' *queimou-se a casa mesma* 'the house itself was burned.'

(f) It is frequently used to emphasize the reflexive pronoun of the third person (520):

*êle troça de si mesmo* 'he makes fun of himself,'  
*êles feriram-se a si mesmos* 'they struck themselves.'

(g) These combinations of a pronoun and *mesmo* should not come immediately before or after the word they emphasize:

*meu irmão deu-me êle mesmo esta pena* is better than  
*meu irmão êle mesmo deu-me esta pena* 'my brother himself gave me this pen.'

(h) *Mesmo* is frequently an adverb and used to emphasize adverbs:

*aqui mesmo* 'in this very spot,' *hoje mesmo* 'this very day,' *agora mesmo* 'just now,' *nem sei mesmo como se passaram êsses factos* 'I do not even know how those things took place.'

(i) *Mesmíssimo*, -a, -os, -as is the superlative of *mesmo*:

*ê o mesmíssimo homem* 'he is the very same man,'  
*ê a mesmíssima coisa* 'it is exactly the same thing.'

(j) *Mesmo* may be replaced by *próprio* (340. b).

333. (a) *Muito*, -a, -os, -as 'much' 'many' is used adjectively and substantively:

*de muitos poucos se faz um muito* 'many a little makes a mickle.'

(b) Meaning 'many a,' *muito* has no plural:

*há muita hora que se perde na ociosidade* 'many an hour is lost in idleness.'

For  *muito*, adverb, see 654. j.

334. (a) *Nada* (invariable) 'nothing' is the equivalent of *nenhuma coisa* and is used only substantively and of things:

*nada me trouxe* or *não me trouxe nada* 'he brought me nothing,' *V. Ex<sup>a</sup> deseja alguma coisa?* 'do you wish anything?' *não senhor, nada* 'no, sir, nothing,' *que está fazendo?* 'what are you doing?' *nada* 'nothing,' *nada tenho* 'I have nothing,' *nada vejo* 'I see nothing,' *nada de histórias!* 'no nonsense!' *nada!* 'not at all!' 'God forbid!' *um tudo nada* 'a mere trifle,' *há nada* 'just now,' *esperei-o e nada de novo* 'I waited for him but in vain.'

(b) If *nada* stands in the predicate, *não*, *nem*, or *sem* must precede the verb (661):

*não fez nada* 'he did nothing,' *não é nada* 'it is nothing,' *nada é impossível* 'nothing is impossible,' *não há nada tão bom* 'there is nothing so good,' *não sei nada disso* 'I know nothing of that,' *não tenho mais nada a dizer* or *nada tenho mais a dizer* 'I have nothing more to say,' *não faltou nada que caísse no rio* 'I almost fell into the river,' *isso não importa nada* 'that amounts to nothing,' *não quere mais nada?* 'don't you want anything more?' *foi-se embora sem dizer nada* 'he went away without saying anything.'

(c) *Nada* occasionally has the value of *alguma coisa*:

*não quere comer nada?* 'do you not wish to eat anything?'

For *nada*, adverb, see 661.

335. (a) *Nenhum*, fêrn. *nenhuma*, pl.  *nenhuns*, *nenhumas*, 'no' 'neither' 'none,' is the opposite of *algum* (323) and may be either an adjective or a pronoun:

*nenhum dos meus cães* 'none of my dogs,' *nenhuma delas* 'none of them,' *não guardei nenhum* 'I did not keep any,' *nenhum destes senhores está satisfeito* 'not one of these gentlemen is satisfied.'

(b) As an adjective, *nenhum* precedes its noun or, more emphatically, follows it (323. c. d); if it appears in a negative sentence after the verb, *não* must be expressed before the verb (656):

*nenhum homem poderá vir* or *homem algum poderá vir* 'no man shall come,' *nenhuma pessoa* 'no person,' *não tenho nenhum amigo nesta cidade* 'I have not a friend in this city,' *nenhuma relação tenho com eles* or *não tenho relação alguma com eles* 'I have no dealings with them,' *não tenho nenhuma confiança nele* or *não tenho confiança alguma nele* 'I have no confidence in him,' *de modo nenhum* 'in no manner,' *tempo nenhum* 'no time.'

Of the two constructions, *algum* after the noun has greater force of negation than *nenhum* before it.

(c) *Nenhum* may be used affirmatively, as the equivalent of *qualquer*:

*mais forte que nenhum* 'stronger than any one.'

336. (a) *Ninguém* (invariable) 'no one' 'nobody'

is the negative of *alguém* and is used only pronominally and of persons. The same distinction as between *alguém* and *algum* (322, 323) exists between *ninguém* and *nenhum* (335): the latter refers to a person expected or thought of. *Ninguém* precedes the verb without a negative particle (656):

*veio alguém?* 'has anybody come?' *ninguém* or *não veio ninguém* 'nobody,' *ninguém esteve aqui* 'no one was here,' *ninguém fala* 'no one speaks,' *ninguém está contente com a sua sorte* 'no one is satisfied with his lot.'

(b) But the negative particle must be expressed before the verb in case *ninguém* follows it:

*não fale ninguém* 'let no one speak,' *não veio ninguém* 'nobody came,' *não se pode chamar feliz a ninguém* or *a ninguém se pode chamar feliz* 'no one can be called happy.'

(c) *Ninguém* is sometimes used to mean 'anybody:'

*faz isto melhor do que ninguém* 'he does that better than anybody.'

337. *Outrem* (invariable) 'another' 'another person' 'others' 'our neighbor' is a pronoun only and the equivalent of *outro indivíduo* or *outra pessoa*. It is used only of persons and rarely occurs in ordinary conversation:

*não faça a outrem o que não queres que te façam* 'do not do to others what you would not have them do to you,' *quem ama outrem ama-se a si mesmo* 'he who loves another loves himself,' *outrem mais*

*bela do que ela* 'another more beautiful than she.'

338. (a) *Outro*; -a, -os, -as 'other' 'another' 'others' is used both adjectively and as a pronoun. It is often combined with *este*, *esse*, and *aquêle* to form *estoutro*, etc. (291. c), and with the preposition *em* to form *noutro*, -a, -os, -as:

*já noutro lugar* 'already in another place.'

(b) Unlike English 'other,' *outro* usually does not require the indefinite article before it when it means 'another:'

*dê-me outro copo* 'give me another cup,' *isso é outra coisa* 'that is another matter,' *há outro mais amável do que ele?* 'is there another more amiable than he?' *ainda tem outros?* 'have you still others?'

(c) Preceded by the definite article, *outro* is more explicit than without it:

*mostre-me outro* 'show me another,' *mostre-me o outro* 'show me the other one,' *outro dia* 'one of these days' 'the other day,' *ao outro dia* 'the next day.' *O outro* also means 'one:' *como o outro que diz* or *como diz o outro* 'as one is wont to say' 'as the saying is.'

(d) *Outro* also means 'different:'

*é outro homem* 'it is a different man,' *é hoje outro do que foi* 'he is different to-day from what he was,' *são muito outros dos de há dez anos* 'they are very different from those of ten years ago.'

(e) *Outro* may be used before *qualquer* or a numeral:

*venho em outro qualquer dia* 'I will come some other

day,' *tínhamos em frente outras duas baterias* 'in front we had two other batteries.'

(f) *Outros* is used to reinforce *nós* and *vós* (233. d).

(g) 'Another,' meaning 'one more,' is *outro*, -a, or *mais um*, -a (338. b):

*dê-me outro* (or *mais um*) *bôlo* 'give me another cake.'

(h) *Outro* (-a, -os, -as) *tanto* (-a, -os, -as) 'the same' 'as much (or 'many') more' 'nothing but' (210):

*comeu outro tanto* 'he ate as much more,' *há outras tantas cadeiras nesta sala* 'there are as many more chairs in this room,' *os alunos desta escola são outros tantos estúpidos* 'the pupils in this school are nothing but dunces.'

(i) *Outro* (fem. *outra*) *que tal*, pl. *outros* (fem. *outras*) *que tais*:

*êle é outro que tal* 'he is another of the same kind,' *êles e outros que tais* 'they and others like them.'

(j) *Outro que não o Antônio* 'another person than Anthony;' *não foi outro senão o juiz* 'it was nobody except the judge.'

For *um e (ou) outro*, see 363.

339. (a) *Pouco*, -a, -os, -as 'little' 'few' may be an adjective or a pronoun:

*poucas flores* 'few flowers,' *dormir um pouco* 'to sleep a little,' *poucos sabem o pouco que valem* 'few know how little they are worth,' *o pouco que sei* 'the little I know,' *espere um pouco* 'wait a while,' *em um pouco de hora Deus labôra* 'in a little time God performs His labors.'

(b) By a confusion of two constructions—*pouco pão* 'little bread' and *um pouco de pão* 'a little bread,'

*pouca água* 'little water' and *um pouco de água*—*pouco* is frequently, though not quite correctly, regarded as an adjective and made to agree with the following noun, to which it is bound by the proposition *de*:

*uns poucos deles* 'a few of them,' *umas poucas de casas* 'some few houses,' *umas poucas de pessoas* 'a few persons,' *estas poucas de lágrimas* 'these few tears.'

340. (a) *Próprio*, -a, -os, -as 'own' 'proper' 'fit' ordinarily precedes the noun and intensifies the possessive (286).

(b) Without a possessive it intensifies the noun and means 'self' or has the value of *mesmo* (332):

*o próprio clero* 'the clergy themselves,' *as próprias* (or *mesmas*) *paredes têm ouvidos* 'the very walls have ears.'

341. *Qualquer* (variable only for the plural, *quaisquer*), 'whoever' 'whichever' 'whatever' 'either' 'any one,' is both an adjective and a pronoun and is used both for persons and things. It ordinarily precedes, but may follow, the noun; in the latter case, the noun has a more indefinite meaning and must be preceded by the indefinite article. In the popular speech, the plural sometimes takes the place of the singular:

*qualquer homem* 'whatever man,' *um homem qualquer* 'a man of no importance' 'any man at all,' *em qualquer dia* 'on whatever day,' *qualquer outro* 'any other,' *ou outrem qualquer* 'or any other person,' *qualquer das formas é autorizada* 'any of the forms is authorized,' *vou dar-lhe uma coisa qual-*

*quer* 'I am going to give him something or other.'

342. (a) *Quanto*, -a, -os, -as, as an indefinite, 'as much' 'as many.' As an interrogative and relative, see 317:

*vivendo uma vida estúpida quanto pode ser* 'living as stupid a life as can be,' *ela sabe bem quanto (or como) é bonita* 'she is well aware how pretty she is.'

(b) *Quanto*, -a, -os, -as, with *tanto* and *tudo*, forms part of a number of correlative expressions:

*quanto . . . tanto . . .* or *tanto . . . quanto . . .* 'as . . . as . . .' 'as . . . so . . .';

(*quanto*) *mais . . . (tanto) mais . . .* or *tanto (mais) . . . quanto (or que) . . .* 'as many . . . so many . . .' 'the more . . . the more . . .';

*quanto mais . . . menos . . .* 'the more . . . the less . . .'; (*quanto*) *menos . . . (tanto) menos . . .* 'the less . . . the less . . .';

*quanto mais . . . melhor . . .* 'the more . . . the better . . .';

*quanto mais tem, (tanto) mais quer* 'the more he has, the more he wants;' *quantas cabeças, tantas sentenças* or *tantas cabeças, quantas sentenças* 'as many opinions as there are heads.'

*Tanto quanto*, *tanto como*, and *tudo quanto* all mean 'as much as:'

*faço tanto quanto outro* 'I do as much as another,' *tudo quanto tenho lhe devo* 'all I have I owe to him,' *trabalho tanto como (or tanto quanto) posso* 'I work as much as I can,' *foi sonho (tudo) quanto vi* 'all I saw was a dream.'

For *quão* instead of *quanto*, see 155. b.



343. *Que*, as an indefinite pronoun, 'something:'  
*tenho que fazer* 'I have something to do,' *tenho (de)*  
*que comer e de (que) beber* 'I have something to eat  
 and drink.' *Não há de quê* 'not at all' 'don't men-  
 tion it' is the ordinary answer to (*muito*) *obrigado*  
 or *agradecido* 'much obliged.'

344. *Quemquer* (invariable) 'whoever' 'each one'  
 'every one' 'he' ('she' 'those') 'who' is a pronoun only  
 and is used only of persons:

*quemquer o sabe* 'whoever knows it,' *quem quer*  
*que o disse é um caluniador* 'whoever said it, is a  
 slanderer.'

345. (a) *Qualquer* and *quemquer* are formed by  
 adding to the relative pronouns *qual* and *quem* the  
 third person singular present indicative of the verb  
*querer* 'to wish.' Similar expressions, intended to  
 generalize a statement by the addition of the idea of  
 'ever,' are formed chiefly by inverting the order of  
 the subject and the verb, usually the verb *ser* in the  
 present or future subjunctive (607):

*seja qual (or quem) fôr*, plural *sejam quais (or*  
*quem) fôrem*, 'whoever it ('they') may be,' *o que*  
*quer que é* 'whoever (or 'whatever') it may be,'  
*fosse quem (or qual) fosse* 'whoever (or 'whatever')  
 it might be,' *seja o que fôr* 'be that as it may,'  
*seja como fôr* 'let it be as you wish,' *digo-o a quem*  
*o queira ouvir* 'I say it to whoever may wish to  
 hear it,' *tinha o que quer que fosse de sinistro* 'it  
 had something sinister about it,' *uma pessoa só*  
*que seja* 'any single person,' *não falarei disso a*

*quem quer que seja* 'I will not speak of this to anyone whatever.'

The relative *que* is frequently, but incorrectly, omitted:

*o (que) quer que seja* (or *fosse*) 'whatever it may (or 'might') be' 'some sort of thing.'

(b) The relative adverb *onde* 'where' is similarly generalized, either by inverting the subjunctive of *ser* and the subject or by adding the present or future subjunctive of *querer*:

*seja onde for que esteja* or *seja onde quer que esteja* 'wherever he may be.'

346. *Tal*, plural *tais*, 'such' 'such a' may be an adjective or a substantive.

(1) As an adjective, without either article, *tal*

(a) means 'such' 'so great:'

*tal sujeito* 'such an individual,' *tais homens* or, more emphatically, *homens tais* 'such men,' *tal era a condição do doente* 'such was the condition of the patient,' *nunca se viu tal conflagração* 'never had such a fire been seen;'

(b) may be followed by a clause beginning with *que* and expressing the effect of the sentence introduced by *tal*:

*a sua consequência era tal que . . .* 'its result was such that . . .';

(c) has the force of *este, esse*:

*em tal parte* 'in this part,' *não conheço tal homem* 'I do not know that man;'

(d) emphasizes an assertion:

*não é tal a mesma coisa* 'it is not at all the same thing,' *não são tal as mesmas coisas* 'they are by no means the same things,' *é tal como eu disse* 'it is just as I said.'

(2) As a substantive, *tal* may be the equivalent of *isso*, *isto*, *tal coisa*, or strengthen a negation:

*eu não disse tal* 'I did not say so,' *não acredito tal* 'I do not believe that,' *quem tal dizia?* 'who said so?' *não foi tal* 'it was no such thing,' *quando tal ouviu, não se pôde conter* 'when he heard that, he could not contain himself,' *se vê que tal é preciso, vamos lá* 'if you think that is necessary, let us go there,' *não faças tal* 'do not do so,' *não há tal* or *tal não há* 'there ('it') is no such thing' 'that is not so,' *como tal* 'as such;'

or refer to some indetermined person or persons:

*tais* (or *tal*) *houve que se não deitaram* (or *deitou*) *nessa noite* 'there was many a one who did not sleep that night.'

347. Preceded by the definite article, *tal* (or *tal e tal*) indicates a certain individual or group, and usually with a depreciatory shade of meaning:

*o tal sujeito* 'the person in question,' *lá está o tal* 'so-and-so is there,' *ai vão os tais* 'there go so-and-so' 'there they go,' *aqueles são os tais* 'those are the ones (of whom we spoke),' *o tal homem veio* 'such a man came,' *o tal autor* 'such-and-such an author,' *vê-se que o tal não sabe palavra de por-*

*tuguês* 'it is clear that such a one does not know a word of Portuguese.'

348. Preceded by the indefinite article, the indication is not so precise:

*um tal homem* or *um homem tal* 'so-and-so,' *um tal sujeito* 'a certain person,' *encontrei um tal Sr. Almeida* 'I met a certain Mr. Almeida.'

349. Preceded by *de*, *tal* is the equivalent of a name we do not remember:

*encontrava-se ali um João de tal* 'I met there a John what's-his-name?'

350. Preceded by *que*, *tal* means 'like it' 'like them' and enters into many colloquial expressions:

*escolheu A, B, C, e outros que tais* 'he selected A, B, C, and others like them,' *que tal está!* 'the idea!' *que tal?* *que tal vai?* *que tal lhe parece?* 'how goes it?' 'how is this?' 'what do you think of it?' 'how do you like it?'

351. *Tal qual*, pl. *tais quais*, and *tal como* 'just so' 'exactly so' 'just as' usually express exact agreement:

*é tal qual* or *tudo está tal qual* 'it is just so,' *voltou tal qual foi* 'he returned just as he went,' *é tal qual como V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> diz* 'it is just as you say,' *vêjo as coisas tais quais* (or *tais como*) *são* 'I see the things just as they are.'

In these and similar phrases the conjunction *e* 'and' is frequently, but incorrectly, inserted after *tal*.

352. *Tal ou qual* occurs frequently in answer to the question *que tal?* (351):

(*é tal ou qual* 'it is pretty good,' *que tais são?* 'how do you like them?' (*são*) *tais ou quais* 'passably,' *que tal é a manteiga?* 'how is the butter?' *que tal está o tempo?* 'how is the weather?' *que tal qcha o pão?*

'how do you like the bread?' *que tal gosta do bôlo?*  
 'how do you like the cake?' *que tal parece ao senhor o chapéu?* 'how do you like the hat?' *é tal ou qual*  
 'so so.'

353. *Tal ou qual* usually gives the idea of approximate agreement:

*é tal ou qual como V. Ex<sup>a</sup> diz* 'it is about as you say,'  
*canta com tal ou qual gosto* 'she sings with fair taste.'

354. *Tal* may appear in either or both members of a correlative sentence, but usually as *qual . . . tal . . .* 'as . . . as . . . ' 'the one . . . the other . . . '

*quais as mães, tais as filhas* 'like mother, like daughter,' *tal (é o) pai, qual (é o) filho* or *tal pai, tal filho* 'like father, like son.'

355. Other common but incorrect expressions with *tal* are:

*tal qual como os pássaros* (for *tais quais os pássaros*)  
 'like the birds,' *tal qual são* and *tal como são* (for *tais quais são* and *tais como são*) 'such as are.'

For *outro que tal*, see 338. i.

356. (a) *Tanto*, -a, -os, -as 'as much' 'so much' 'so many' 'such a' 'so great' may be an adjective or a substantive; it precedes the noun and agrees with it in gender and number.

(b) As a substantive:

*um tanto de vinho* 'a certain quantity of wine,'  
*ganha tanto por semana* 'he makes so much per week,' *não fale tanto* 'do not talk so much,' *um tanto* or *algum tanto* 'a little' 'somewhat.'

(c) *Tanto* (invariable) is often used adverbially, sometimes in exclamations:

*trabalha tanto* 'he works so much,' *tanto pode a ambição humana!* 'so much can human ambition accomplish!' *tanto se me dá* 'it is all the same to me,' *rindo tanto que chorou* 'laughing so much that he cried.'

357. *Tanto* is correlative with *quanto* (342. b) and also with *como* and means 'both . . . and . . . ' 'as well . . . as . . . ' 'as much . . . as . . . '

If the second, or relative, element of the sentence has its own verb, *quanto*, -a, -os, -as takes the place of *como*, and *tanto*, -a, -os, -as needs not to be expressed in the first element:

*tanto ele como eu* 'he as well as I,' *já não trabalho tanto como outrora* 'I do not work as much now as formerly,' *tanto ricos como pobres* 'both rich and poor,' *tem tantas casas como nós* 'they have as many houses as we have,' *o almirante ganhou tantas vitórias como o general* 'the admiral won as many victories as the general,' *Pedro não tem tantos cavalos quantos diz* 'Peter has not as many horses as he says,' (*tanto*) *possui quanto cobiça* 'he possesses as much as he covets,' *tenho (tanto) quanto necessito* 'I have as much as I need.'

358. 'So many that' is *tanto* (agreeing with its noun) followed by a sentence introduced by *que* expressing the effect of *tanto*:

*recebeu tantas feridas que morreu* 'he received so many wounds that he died,' *era tanta a gente que mal se podia contar* 'the people were so many that they could hardly be counted,' *trabalhou*

*tanto que ficou doente* 'he worked so much that he became sick.'

359. Before an adjective or an adverb, *tanto* and *quanto* are replaced by *tão* and *quão* (155. b).

For *tanto* in expressions of quantity and with numerals, see 209.

360. *Todo, toda, todos, todas* 'all' 'every' 'whole' 'entire.'

(a) As an adjective, see 88, 176. While *cada* 'each' (327) emphasizes the individual, *todo* emphasizes the group or generality.

(b) As a substantive:

*o todo é maior que as partes* 'the whole is greater than the parts;' but generally in the plural:

*Deus é compassivo para todos* 'God is merciful to all,' *todos à uma começaram a escusar-se* 'they began all at once to make excuse.'

(c) *Todo(s) o(s) que* is frequently substituted by *quanto(s)* (317. b).

For *todo*, adverb, see 654. n.

361. (a) *Tudo* (invariable) 'all' 'everything' is used only substantively and without a preceding article:

*já vi tudo* 'I have already seen everything,' *tudo quanto tenho vos devo* 'all I have I owe to you,' *a saúde é tudo* 'health is everything.'

(b) *Tudo* is used instead of *todo* when followed by *o mais* without a substantive, and when followed by *o que*:

*tudo o mais harmonizava com ela* 'all the rest har-

monized with her,' *seria impossível dizer-lhe tudo o que está neste livro* 'it would be impossible to tell you all that is in this book.'

But *tudo*, not *tudo*, is used before the definite article or an adjective, such as *necessário*, *possível*, *preciposo*, *rápido*, *supérfluo*, and *útil*:

*tudo o útil* 'all that is useful.'

(c) In the adverb *sobretudo* 'above all' and the conjunction *contudo* 'nevertheless,' the preposition and *tudo* form but one word.

362. *Um*, fem. *uma*, pl. *uns*, *umas* (92. c); as a pronoun it means 'one' 'the one' 'any one' 'somebody':

*um conta isto, outro aquilo* 'one tells this, the other that,' *uns estavam lendo, outros escrevendo* 'some were reading, others writing.'

363. (a) Each member of *um e outro* 'both' should agree with the word to which it refers, but in the popular speech, even when referring to persons or things of different gender, the phrase is invariable:

*a morte e o inferno um e outro são temíveis* 'death and hell are both to be feared.'

(b) *Um(-a) ou outro (-a)* 'either the one or the other,' and, in a negative sentence, *nem um(-a, uns, umas) nem outro(-a, -os, -as)* 'neither the one nor the other' 'neither of them:'

*nem um nem outro nos pode auxiliar* or *não nos pode auxiliar nem um nem outro* 'neither the one nor the other is able to help us.'

(c) *Um(-a, uns, umas) . . . outro(-a, -os, -as)* 'one . . . an other . . .' is used with an indefinite meaning:



*uma cantava, outra gritava* 'one (woman) sang, another cried.'

## 2. Miscellaneous Equivalents of the Indefinites

364. *Hqmem* (popularly with the indefinite article, *um hqmem*) 'man' 'one' is used, like French *on* and German *man*, especially in proverbs:

*anda hqmem a trote para ganhar capote* 'a man goes at a trot to win a cape.'

365. (a) *Gente* 'people' is sometimes the equivalent of a reflexive construction or of *tqdos*:

*quanto mais a gente trabalha mais aproveita* or *quanto mais se trabalha mais se aproveita* 'the more one works the more one profits,' *tqda a gente sqbe* or *tqdos sqbem* 'everybody knows.'

(b) In the popular speech, *a gente* is used rather vaguely as the equivalent of *nqs*; but it usually takes the verb in the third person singular:

*a gente vai* or *nqs vamos* 'we are going,' *a gente foi l* 'we went there,' *onde h-de a gente ir esta noite?* 'where are we going to-night?' *no se esqueça da gente* 'do not forget us,' *venha com a gente* 'come with us,' *no  fcil entender-se a gente em meio dste barulho* 'it is not easy for us to hear one another with this noise.'

In this collective sense, especially in the popular speech, *gente* takes its verb in the first person plural, the idea being that the speaker wishes to include himself among those he addresses:

*a gente amanh vamos* (or *vai*) *passear* 'we are going

to take a walk to-morrow,' *a gente não somos tão tolos como parece* 'we are not such fools as it seems.'

366. *Pessoa* 'person' 'one:'

*uma pessoa não sabe* 'one does not know.'

367. *Fulano*, -a (contracted form *fuão*) is the equivalent of English 'So-and-so' 'what's-his-name' 'what you may call him' 'a certain,' a vague designation of a person whose name we avoid mentioning or do not remember. If we wish to refer to more than one such person, *beltrano* (or *beltrão*) and *sicrano* are used:

*o senhor fulano (de tal)* 'Mr. So-and-so,' *fulano disse a sicrano* 'So-and-so said to So-and-so,' *os escritores fulanos, e depois os escritores sicranos ou beltranos* 'such-and-such writers.' *Fulano de tal* 'a certain' is a name for any fictitious person.

368. In familiar speech *um quidam* and *um sujeito* 'a person' are used to refer to an unmentioned person in a depreciative sense:

*pergunta um quidam* 'a certain person asks.'

## XVII. THE VERB

### CONJUGATIONS AND TENSES

369. (a) The infinitive of verbs always ends in *-r* preceded by *a*, *e*, or *i*, and the stem of the verb is that part which precedes the termination *-qr*, *-er*, or *-ir*. Thus there are three regular conjugations, the first ending in *-qr* in the infinitive: *am-qr* 'to love,' *and-qr* 'to go,' *cant-qr* 'to sing,' the second in *-er*: *dev-er* 'to owe,' *viv-er* 'to live,' *vend-er* 'to sell,' and the third in *-ir*: *part-ir* 'to leave,' *pun-ir* 'to punish,' *un-ir* 'to unite.'

(b) The Latin third conjugation in *-êre* has left no trace in Portuguese, but conformed to either the second or fourth conjugation:

Lat. *dicere* > *dizer* (II) 'to say,' Lat. *cadere* > *cair* (III) 'to fall.'

(c) Of these conjugations, the first is by far the most numerous and the one almost exclusively used for making new verbs, such as *telegrafar* 'to telegraph.'

370. Thus the Portuguese first conjugation corresponds to the Latin first, the Portuguese second conjugation to the Latin second, including many verbs of the third, and the Portuguese third conjugation to the Latin fourth, including many of the third.

371. In the present indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and past participle of many verbs in which the penult was short in Latin, the penultimate syllable bears the accent in Portuguese:

*aplico* 'I apply,' *comunico* 'I communicate,' *con-*

## XVII. THE VERB

### CONJUGATIONS AND TENSES

369. (a) The infinitive of verbs always ends in *-r* preceded by *a*, *e*, or *i*, and the stem of the verb is that part which precedes the termination *-qr*, *-er*, or *-ir*. Thus there are three regular conjugations, the first ending in *-qr* in the infinitive: *am-qr* 'to love,' *and-qr* 'to go,' *cant-qr* 'to sing;' the second in *-er*: *dev-er* 'to owe,' *viv-er* 'to live,' *vend-er* 'to sell;' and the third in *-ir*: *part-ir* 'to leave,' *pun-ir* 'to punish,' *un-ir* 'to unite.'

(b) The Latin third conjugation in *-ere* has left no trace in Portuguese, but conformed to either the second or fourth conjugation:

Lat. *dicere* > *dizer* (II) 'to say;' Lat. *cadere* > *cair* (III) 'to fall.'

(c) Of these conjugations, the first is by far the most numerous and the one almost exclusively used for making new verbs, such as *telegrafar* 'to telegraph.'

370. Thus the Portuguese first conjugation corresponds to the Latin first, the Portuguese second conjugation to the Latin second, including many verbs of the third, and the Portuguese third conjugation to the Latin fourth, including many of the third.

371. In the present indicative, subjunctive, imperative, and past participle of many verbs in which the penult was short in Latin, the penultimate syllable bears the accent in Portuguese:

*aplico* 'I apply,' *comunico* 'I communicate,' *con-*

*ferimos* 'we confer(red),' *confiro* 'I confer,' *determino* 'I determine,' *devido* 'due,' *divida* 'he may divide,' *divide* 'divides,' *fugido* 'fugitive' 'fled,' *gemido* 'I groan,' *imagino* 'I imagine,' *impera* 'rules,' *impere* 'may he rule,' *magnifica* 'magnifies,' *penetra* 'penetrates,' *proibido* 'prohibited.'

Also in the first and second persons plural of the imperfect, the Portuguese has shifted the accent from that of the Latin imperfect.

372. There are four inflexions, the active, the passive, the reflexive, and the periphrastic.

373. The verb has three moods, the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative.

374. The indicative has the following simple tenses: the present, the imperfect (or past descriptive), the preterite (or past absolute), the future, the conditional (or past future), and the pluperfect. The subjunctive has the present, the imperfect, and the future. The imperative has only the present.

375. The principal parts of Portuguese verbs are the infinitive, the first person singular of the present indicative, and the past participle.

376. All simple tenses of regular verbs, except the future and conditional indicative, are formed by adding the personal endings to the stem; in the tenses just mentioned, however, the terminations are added directly to the infinitive.

In the following paradigms the personal endings are separated from the remainder of the verb by a hyphen. Forms in parentheses are also used but are not recommended.

The stressed syllable is indicated either by a graphic accent, according to the official orthography or, where that is lacking, by marking the quality of the accented vowel.

### 377. First Conjugation -*ar*. Simple Tenses

Infinitive: *am-ar* 'to love'

#### Indicative

PRESENT	FUTURE
<i>am -o</i> 'I love' 'do love' 'am loving'	<i>amar -ei</i> 'I shall (or 'will') love'
<i>am -as</i>	<i>amar -ás</i>
<i>am -a</i>	<i>amar -á</i>
<i>am -amos</i>	<i>amar -emos</i>
<i>am -ais</i>	<i>amar -eis</i>
<i>am -am</i> ( <i>ám-ão</i> )	<i>amar -ão</i>
IMPERFECT	CONDITIONAL
<i>am -ava</i> 'I loved' 'was loving' 'used to love'	<i>amar -ia</i> 'I should (or 'would') love'
<i>am -avas</i>	<i>amar -ias</i>
<i>am -ava</i>	<i>amar -ia</i>
<i>am -ávamos</i>	<i>amar -íamos</i>
<i>am -áveis</i>	<i>amar -íeis</i>
<i>am -avam</i> ( <i>am-ávão</i> )	<i>amar -iam</i>
PRETERITE	PLUPERFECT
<i>am -ei</i> 'I loved' 'did love'	<i>am -qra</i> 'I had loved'
<i>am -qste</i>	<i>am -qras</i>
<i>am -ou</i>	<i>am -qra</i>
<i>am -ámos</i>	<i>am -áramos</i>
<i>am -qsteis</i>	<i>am -áreis</i>
<i>am -qram</i> ( <i>am-árão</i> )	<i>am -qram</i> ( <i>am-árão</i> )

## Subjunctive

## PRESENT

*am -e* ('that I may' or 'let  
me') 'love'

*qm -es*

*qm -e*

*am -emos*

*am -eis*

*qm -em*

## FUTURE AND PERS. INF.

*am-qr* 'I ('may' or 'shall')  
love'

*am -qres*

*am -qr*

*am -qrmos*

*am -qrdes*

*am -qrem*

## IMPERFECT

*am -qsse* ('that' or 'if  
might') 'love'

*am -qsses*

*am -qsse*

*am -ássemos*

*am -ásseis*

*am -qssem*

## Imperative

Sing. 2 *qm -a* 'love'

Pl. 2 *am -ai* (*am -ae*)

The other persons are  
supplied from the present  
subjunctive.

Pres. Part. (Gerund):

*am -ando* 'loving'

Past Participle:

*am -qdo, -a, -os, -as* 'loved'

378. Second Conjugation *-er*. Simple Tenses

Infinitive: *dev -er* 'to owe'

## Indicative

## PRESENT

*dev -o* 'I owe' 'do owe'  
'am owing'

*dev -es*

*dev -e*

## FUTURE

*dever -ei* 'I shall (or 'will')  
owe'

*dever -ás*

*dever -á*

*dev -emos**dev -eis**dev -em**dever -emos**dever -eis**dever -ão*

## IMPERFECT

*dev -ia* 'I owed' 'was owing'  
'used to owe'*dev -ias**dev -ia**dev -íamos**dev -íeis**dev -iam*

## CONDITIONAL

*dever -ia* 'I should (or  
'would') owe'*dever -ias**dever -ia**dever -íamos**dever -íeis**dever -iam*

## PRETERITE

*dev -i* 'I owed' 'did owe'*dev -este**dev -eu**dev -emos**dev -estes**dev -eram*

## PLUPERFECT

*dev -era* 'I had owed'*dev -eras**dev -era**dev -êramos**dev -êreis**dev -eram*

## Subjunctive

## FUTURE AND PERS. INF.

*dev -a* ('that I may' or 'let  
me') 'owe'*dev -as**dev -a**dev -amos**dev -ais**dev -am**dev -er* 'I ('may' or 'shall')  
owe'*dev -eres**dev -er**dev -ermos**dev -erdes**dev -erem*



## IMPERFECT

*dev -esse* ('that' or 'if I  
might') 'owe'

*dev -esses*

*dev -esse*

*dev -êssemos*

*dev -êsseis*

*dev -essem*

Pres. Part. (Gerund):

*dev-endo* 'owing'

## Imperative

Sing. 2 *dev -e* 'owe'

Pl. 2 *dev -ei*

The other persons are  
supplied from the present  
subjunctive.

Past Participle:

*dev-ido, -a, -os, -as* 'owed'

379. Third Conjugation *-ir*. Simple Tenses

Infinitive: *part -ir* 'to part'

## Indicative

## PRESENT

*part -o* 'I part' 'do part'  
'am parting'

*part -es*

*part -e*

*part -imos*

*part -is*

*part -em*

## FUTURE

*partir -ei* 'I shall (or  
'will') part'

*partir -ás*

*partir -á*

*partir -emos*

*partir -eis*

*partir -ão*

## IMPERFECT

*part -ia* 'I parted' 'was  
parting' 'used to part'

*part -ias*

*part -ia*

*part -íamos*

*part -íeis*

*part -iam* (*part -ião*)

## CONDITIONAL

*partir -ia* 'I should (or  
'would') part'

*partir -ias*

*partir -ia*

*partir -íamos*

*partir -íeis*

*partir -iam* (*partir -ião*)

## PRETERITE

*part -i* 'I parted' 'did part'*part -iste**part -iu**part -imos**part -istes**part -iram* (*part -irão*)

## PLUPERFECT

*part -ira* 'I had parted'*part -ias**part -ira**part -íramos**part -íreis**part -iram* (*part -irão*)

## Subjunctive

## PRESENT

*part -a* ('that I may' or  
'let me') 'part'*part -as**part -a**part -amos**part -ais**part -am*

## FUTURE AND PERS. INF.

*part -ir* 'I ('may' or  
'shall') 'part'*part -ires**part -ir**part -irmos**part -irdes**part -irem*

## IMPERFECT

*part -isse* ('that' or 'if I  
might') 'part'*part -isses**part -isse**part -issemos**part -isseis**part -issem*

## Imperative

Sing. 2 *part -e* 'part'Pl. 2 *part -i*

The other persons are  
supplied from the present  
subjunctive.

Pres. Part. (Gerund):

*part -indo* 'parting'

Past Participle:

*part -ido, -a, -os, -as*  
'parted'

## On the Formation of Regular Verbs

380. In the third person plural the nasal diphthongal

ending *-ão* is properly written *-ão* when accented and *-am* when unaccented, but the spelling *-ão* is frequently used for both.

381. Present Indicative. The final *-e* has dropped in the third person singular present indicative of *dizer* 'to say,' *fazer* 'to do,' *jazer* 'to recline,' (a) *prazer* 'to please,' *trazer* 'to bring,' *valer* 'to be worth,' and in verbs in *-uzir* (398).

382. Future and Conditional.

(a) These tenses are formed by adding as terminations to the infinitive the shortened forms, viz. (*h*)*ei*, (*h*)*ás*, (*h*)*á*, (*h*)*ia*, etc., of the present and imperfect indicative respectively of the verb *haver* (427, 432).

(b) In three verbs, *dizer* 'to say' (473), *fazer* 'to do' (476), and *trazer* 'to bring' (504), a contracted infinitive form, *dir*, *fqr*, and *trqr*, is used to form the future and the conditional.

(c) Besides the simple or synthetic form of the future and conditional with a suffix pronoun, *dará-me* 'he will give me,' *irá-se* 'he will go,' *porei-o* 'I will put it,' there is an analytic form, in which the object pronoun is inserted between the infinitive and the termination (274. a. b):

*dqr-me há*, *ir-se há*, *pô-lo hei*. The simple is more commonly employed in the popular speech than the other, or more literary, form, and is to be preferred when the verb is negative or after *que* or when a subject pronoun is expressed emphatically, in which cases the pronoun precedes the verb: *não mo dará* 'he will not give it to me,' *creio que ele te verá* 'I believe that he will see thee,' *eu*

*lho direi* 'I will tell it to him.' But otherwise, as a rule, the analytic form, which is no longer felt to be more than a simple future, is now generally employed, and *êle vêr-te há* 'he will see thee' and *êle vêr-te-ia* 'he would see thee,' e.g. are said and written instead of *êle te verá* and *êle te veria*.

(d) When there is an infixed pronoun, initial *h* of the auxiliary is written in the future, but not in the conditional; furthermore, in the latter tense, but not in the former, the pronoun is joined to the auxiliary by a hyphen:

*dir-te hei* 'I will tell thee,' *dir-te-ia* 'I would tell thee', *di-lo hei* 'I will tell it to him,' *vê-lo heis* 'you will see it,' *louvá-lo hei* 'I will praise him,' *escrever-te hei o resultado* 'I will write you the result,' *se cá vier alguém, dir-lhe háis que não estou* 'if anyone comes here, you will tell him I am not here,' *castigá-lo-ia se estivesse no seu lugar*, 'I would punish him if I were in your place,' *podêr-se-iam vêr* 'they could be seen,' *pedi e dar-se-vos há;* *batei e abrir-se-vos há* 'ask, and it shall be given to you; knock, and it shall be opened to you.'

(e) In general, in the popular speech, the present is used instead of the future (613. c, 617. f).

383. (a) The imperative has forms for the second persons only. The other persons are supplied from the present subjunctive.

(b) In three verbs, *dizer* 'to say,' *fazer* 'to do,' and *trazer* 'to bring,' a syncopated form of the imperative

is generally used in the popular speech when the verb has no direct object pronoun:

*diz-me cá, ó João* 'tell me now, John,' *traz-me cá o livro* 'bring me the book here.'

(c) Other remains of an old plural are in regular use. in colloquial as well as in literary Portuguese:

*lede* 'read,' *vêde* 'see,' *tende* 'hold,' *ponde* 'put.'

Popularly, in Brazil only, *-de* is added to the regular form:

*estaide quêdos!* (for *estai quêdos!*) 'be quiet!' *comeide!* (for *comei!*) 'eat ye!'

384. In verbs of the first conjugation, the past participle ends in *-ado*; in all other verbs it ends in *-ido*. See list of double participles, 543-545.

385. In regular, but not in irregular, verbs the personal infinitive (588) has the same forms as the future subjunctive, though their origin etymologically is quite different.

#### With Object Pronouns

386. (a) Final *-r*, *-s*, and *-z* of verbal endings are dropped, and the second person singular present indicative of *ter* and *vir* (viz. *tens* and *vens*) become *tem* and *vem* before the pronouns *o*, *a*, *os*, and *as* (but not before *lhe*, *lhes*), which then assume their older forms *lo*, *la*, *los*, *las* (229. c):

*tu qma-lo* (not *qmas-o*) 'thou lovest him,' *nós amamo-los* (not *amamos-os*) 'we love them,' *mereceria sê-lo* 'he would deserve to be so,' *sabemo-lo* (not *sabemos-o*) 'we know it,' *fá-lo* (not *faz-o*) 'he does it,' *fi-lo* (not *fiz-o*) 'I did it,' *trá-las* (not

*traz-as*) *consigo* 'he takes them with him,' *vem-lo tu dizer?* 'do you come to say it?' *tem-lo* 'thou hast it,' *sentemo-nos* 'let us sit down,' *e sê-lo há* 'and it will be so,' *damo-lo* 'we give it,' but *damos-lhe* 'we give to him,' *damos-lho* 'we give it to him,' *devemos-lho* 'we owe it to him.'

(b) Similarly, when the unemphatic pronoun *nos* is added as a reflexive to the first person plural of a verb, the final -s of the verbal ending is dropped:

*lavamo-nos* (for *lavamos-nos*) 'we wash ourselves;' but not the emphatic subject pronoun: *lavamos nós?* 'do we wash?'

(c) By this process the infinitive and the second person singular of the present indicative result in the same form; in order to distinguish them, a circumflex is placed over the accented vowel of the infinitive of verbs of the second conjugation and an acute over the accented vowel of the infinitive of verbs of the second:

*comprá-lo* 'to buy it,' *compra-lo* 'thou buyest it,' *conhecê-las* 'to know them,' *conhece-las* 'thou knowest them,' *dizê-lo* 'to say it,' *dize-lo* 'thou sayest it,' *amá-lo* 'to love him,' *tê-lo* 'to have it,' *quero aplaudi-los* 'I wish to applaud them,' *comprová-lo hei* 'I will prove it.'

### Orthographical Changes

387. These are intended chiefly to indicate that the same consonantal sound at the end of the stem is preserved before the broad (*a*, *o*, *u*) and slender (*e*, *i*) vowels of the flexional endings.

388. If the stem ends in *c*, it is changed to *qu* before *e*:

<i>Tocqr</i> 'to touch'	Pret.	Pres. Subj.
	<i>toquei</i>	<i>toque</i>
	<i>toqaste</i>	<i>tèques</i>
	<i>tocou</i>	<i>toque</i>
	<i>toqamos</i>	<i>toquemos</i>
	<i>toqastes</i>	<i>toqueis</i>
	<i>toqram</i>	<i>toquem</i>

Similarly: *arrancqr* 'to drag' 'snatch,' pret. *arranquei*, pres. subj. *arranque*; *ficqr* 'to remain,' pret. *fiquei*, pres. subj. *fique*; *pecqr* 'to sin,' pret. *pequei*, pres. subj. *peque*.

389. If the stem ends in *g*, *u* is inserted before *e*:

<i>Negqr</i> 'to deny'	Pret.	Pres. Subj.
	<i>neguei</i>	<i>negue</i>
	<i>negaste</i>	<i>nègues</i>
	<i>negou</i>	<i>negue</i>
	<i>negamos</i>	<i>neguemos</i>
	<i>negastes</i>	<i>negueis</i>
	<i>negram</i>	<i>nèguem</i>

Similarly: *apagqr* 'to extinguish,' pret. *apaguei*, pres. subj. *apague*; *brigqr* 'to quarrel,' pret. *briguei*, pres. subj. *brigue*; *cegqr* 'to blind,' pret. *ceguei*, pres. subj. *cegue*; *folgqr* 'to rest' 'rejoice,' pret. *folguei*, pres. subj. *folgue*; *jogqr* 'to play,' pret. *joguei*, pres. subj. *jogue*; *julgqr* 'to judge,' pret. *julguei*, pres. subj. *julgue*; *pagqr* 'to pay,' pret. *paguei*, pres. subj. *pague*; *rogqr* 'to request,' pret. *roguei*, pres. subj. *rogue*.

390. If the stem ends in *j*, it is changed to *g* before *e* and *i*:

*viajar* 'to travel,' pret. *viagei*.

391. If the stem ends in *g*, it is changed to *j* before *a* and *o*:

*Fugir* 'to flee'

Pres. Ind.	Impf.	Pret.	Pres. Subj.
<i>fujo</i>	<i>fugia</i>	<i>fugi</i>	<i>fuja</i>
<i>foges</i>	etc.	etc.	etc.
<i>foge</i>			
<i>fugimos</i>			
<i>fugis</i>			
<i>fogem</i>			

Similarly: *abranger* 'to embrace' 'contain,' pres. ind. *abranjo*; *afligir* 'to afflict,' pres. ind. *aflijo*, pres. subj. *aflija*; *corregêr* (*corrigir*) 'to correct,' pres. ind. *corrijo*; *dirigir* 'to direct,' pres. ind. *dirijo*, pres. subj. *dirija*; *elegêr* 'to elect,' pres. ind. *elejo*, pres. subj. *eleja*; *proteger* 'to protect,' pres. ind. *protejo*; *reger* 'to reign,' pres. ind. *rejo*.

392. If the stem ends in *gu*, the *u*, if not to be pronounced, is dropped before *a* and *o*:

*Distinguir* 'to distinguish'

Pres. Ind.	Impf.	Pres. Subj.
<i>distingo</i>	<i>distinguia</i>	<i>distinga</i>
<i>distingues</i>	etc.	etc.
<i>distingue</i>		
<i>distinguimos</i>		
<i>distinguis</i>		
<i>distinguem</i>		



Similarly: *erguer* 'to erect,' pres. ind. *ergo*; *seguir* 'to follow' (418).

393. But if, in verbs of this class, the *u* is to be pronounced before *e* or *i*, it is marked with an acute accent when tonic and with a diæresis when atonic (43):

*argüir* 'to accuse,' pres. ind. *arguo*, *argúis*, *argúi*, *argüïmos*, *argüis*, *argüem*, impf. *argüia*, pret. *argúi*, pres. subj. *argua*, imperat. *argúi*; *apaziguqr* 'to pacify,' pret. *apazigüei*, pres. subj. *apazigüe*; *aguqr* 'to water,' pres. ind. *aguo*, *aguas*, etc., pres. subj. *agüe*, *agües*, *agüe*, *agüemos*, *agüeis*, *agüem*.

Similarly: *averiguqr* 'to verify,' *desaguqr* 'to drain,' *enxaguqr* 'to rinse,' *minguqr* 'to diminish.'

394. If the stem ends in *qu*, it is changed to *c* before *a* and *o*:

*extorquir* 'to extort,' pres. ind. *extorco*, pres. subj. *extorca*.

395. But if, in verbs of this class, the *u* is to be pronounced, this orthographic change does not take place, and the *u* is marked with an acute accent when tonic and with a diæresis when atonic (43):

*apropinquqr* 'to approach,' pres. ind. *apropinquo*, pres. subj. *apropinquê*, pret. *apropinquêi*; *delinquïr* 'to break the law,' pres. ind. *delinquo*, *delinquês*, *delinquïmos*, *delinquïs*, *delinquêm*.

396. If the stem ends in *ç*, the *cedilha* is removed from the *c* before *e*:

*alcançqr* 'to reach,' pret. *alcancei*; *caçqr* 'to hunt,'

pres. ind. *cąço*, pret. *cacei*, *caçąste*, pres. subj. *cące*, *cąces*, *cące*; *comeęqr* 'to begin,' pres. ind. *comeęo*.

397. If the stem ends in *c*, *c* takes the *cedilha* before *a* and *o*:

*conhecęr* 'to know' 'be acquainted with,' pres. ind. *conheęo*, *conheęes*; pres. subj. *conheęa*; *adoeęęr* 'to fall sick,' pres. ind. *adoeęęo*, pres. subj. *adoeęęa*; *agradecęęr* 'to thank,' pres. ind. *agradęęo*.

398. If the stem ends in *z* preceded by a vowel, final *-e* drops in the third person singular of the present indicative, and optionally in the second person singular of the imperative:

*aduzir* 'to bring,' third person sing. pres. ind. *aduz*; similarly *conduzir* 'to conduct,' *deduzir* 'to deduce,' *induzir* 'to induce,' *luzir* 'to shine,' *produzir* 'to produce,' *reduzir* 'to reduce,' *reluzir* 'to shine,' *seduzir* 'to seduce.'

But *e* does not drop if the final stem *z* is preceded by a consonant:

*benęęr* 'to bless,' *franęęir* 'to plait' 'fold,' third person sing. pres. ind. *benęęe*, *franęęe*.

Otherwise these verbs are regular.

399. A few verbs of the first conjugation, having in the stem syllable an *i* or *u* preceded by a vowel with which it does not form a diphthong, take an acute on the *i* or *u* when accented, and optionally a diæresis when unaccented:

*enraizęqr* 'to take root,' first pers. sing. pres. ind. *enraizęo*; *enraizęas*, *enraizęa*, *enraizęęmos*, *enraizęęis*,

*enraizam*; pres. subj. *enraíze, enraizemos, enraizem*; *saudqr* 'to salute,' pres. ind. *saúdo, saúdas, saúda, saúdamos, saúdais, saúdam*; pres. subj. *saúde, saüdemos, saüdem*.

But if the *i* is followed by *nh*, the written accent may be omitted (43.1):

*embainhqr* 'to sheathe,' pres. ind. *embainho, embainhas*, etc.

400. Verbs of the third conjugation whose stem ends in *a*, e.g. *cair* 'to fall' (470), *sair* 'to go out' (501), insert an *i* before the endings beginning with *a* or *o*, and in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative they have *i* (not *e*) which forms a diphthong with the preceding vowel. If the *i* is accented, it bears the acute.

### Radical-Changing Verbs

401 The root- or stem-vowels of certain verbs, when accented (*i.e.* in all the singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, and in the singular of the imperative), undergo certain vocalic changes due to the influence of the following vowel but not indicated in the orthography. Otherwise they are inflected like regular verbs.

#### I. First Conjugation

402. (a) *A* in the stem syllable is pronounced *q* when accented:

*falqr* 'to speak,' *fqlô* 'I speak,' *lavqr* 'to wash,' *lqvo* 'I wash,' *talhqr* 'to cut,' *tlqho* 'I cut.'

(b) But it is pronounced *q* before intervocalic *m*, *n*, or *nh*:

*apanhar* 'to grasp,' *apqanho* 'I grasp,' *banhar* 'to bathe,' *bqnho* 'I bathe,' *chamar* 'to call,' *chqmo* 'I call,' *sanar* 'to heal,' *sqno* 'I heal.'

Except *ganhar* (= *gaanhar*) 'to gain' which has open *a* whether tonic or atonic.

(c) Accented *a* is pronounced *ã* before *m* or *n* at the end of a syllable:

*cantar* 'to sing,' *mandar* 'to order,' *canto* 'I sing,' *mando* 'I order.'

(d) Accented *a* is pronounced *q* before *l* at the end of a syllable or *u*:

*saltar* 'to leap,' *causar* 'to cause,' *salto* 'I leap,' *cquso* 'I cause.'

403. (a) *O* in the stem syllable is pronounced *q* when accented:

*cortar* 'to cut,' *cqрто* 'I cut,' *olhar* 'to see,' *qlho* 'I see,' *soltar* 'to loosen' 'release,' *solto* 'I loosen' (cf. adj. *sôlto*, *sôlta* 'loose'); *tocar* 'to strike,' *tqco* 'I strike.'

(b) But it is pronounced *ρ* before intervocalic *m*, *n*, or *nh*, and before a vowel in verbs ending in *-oar*:

*abençoar* 'to bless,' *abençpo* 'I bless,' *abonar* 'to confirm' 'insure' 'bail,' *abpno* 'I go bail,' similarly: *aproar* 'to steer,' *assomar* 'to appear,' *coar* 'to strain' 'filter,' *coroar* 'to crown,' *engomar* 'to iron,' *enjoar* 'to nauseate,' *entoar* 'to intone,' *envergonhar*

'to shame,' *magoqr* 'to bruise,' *perdoqr* 'to pardon,' *povoqr* 'to people,' *sonhqqr* 'to dream.'

Except: *somqr* 'to add up,' *tomqr* 'to take,' *domqr* 'to tame' and its compounds, all of which have open *o*.

(c) Accented *o* is pronounced  $\bar{o}$  before *m* or *n* at the end of a syllable:

*comprqr* 'to buy,' *contqr* 'to count' 'relate,' *compro* 'I buy.'

404. (a) *E* in the stem syllable is pronounced  $\epsilon$  when accented:

*apegqr* 'to fasten,' *apegno* 'I fasten;' similarly: *avezqr* 'to accustom,' *cegqr* 'to blind,' *cercqr* 'to enclose,' *cessqr* 'to cease,' *cevqr* 'to fatten,' *começqr* 'to begin,' *concertqr* 'to arrange,' *degredqr* 'to banish,' *desprezqr* 'to despise,' *empregqr* 'to employ,' *encerqr* 'to wax,' *encetqr* 'to extract,' *ermqr* 'to vacate,' *esfregqr* 'to rub,' *esperqr* 'to hope,' *herdqr* 'to inherit,' *invejqr* 'to envy,' *levqr* 'to carry,' *negqr* 'to deny,' *pegqr* 'to fasten,' *prezqr* 'to esteem,' *regqr* 'to water,' *rezqr* 'to pray,' *secqr* 'to dry,' *terçqr* 'to divide in three,' etc.

*Prègqr* 'to declaim' 'preach' has open *e* throughout.

(b) But it is pronounced  $\epsilon$  before *m* and *n*:

*acenqr* 'to nod,' *aceno* 'I nod;' similarly: *algemqr* 'to manacle,' *estremqr* 'to bound,' *ordenqr* 'to order,' *penqr* 'to suffer pain,' *remqr* 'to row,' *serenqr* 'to calm,' etc.; also in *chegqr* 'to arrive'

and its compounds *achegar* and *conchegar* 'to approach.'

(c) In parts of Portugal, *e*, when accented before *ch*, *lh*, *nh*, and *j*, is pronounced *q* (p. 10):

*aconselhar* 'to advise,' *ajoelhar* 'to kneel,' *aparelhar* 'to prepare,' *desejar* 'to desire,' *desgrenhar* 'to dishevel,' *empenhar* 'to pledge,' *fechar* 'to close,' except *avelhar* 'to grow old.'

(d) But if one of these verbs (c) is derived from a noun with open tonic *e*, the verb retains it when accented:

*envejar* (*invejar*) 'to envy,' *a enveja* (*inveja*) 'envy,' *enveja* (*inveja*) 'envies,' *grêlhar* 'to grill,' *a grêlha* 'grill,' *grêlha* 'grills.'

(e) *Pesar* in the sense of 'to displease' 'distress' has close *e*:

*pêsa(-me)* 'I am sorry;'

in the sense of 'to weigh' it has open *e*:

*pêso* 'I weigh.'

(f) Accented *e* is pronounced *ê* before *m* or *n* at the end of a syllable:

*entrar* 'to enter,' *lembrar* 'to remember,' *entro* 'I enter,' *lembro* 'I remember.'

#### Verbs in *-eqr*

405. As a general rule if the stem ends in *e* it becomes *ei* whenever accented, that is, in the three singular forms, in the third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, and in the singular of the imperative:

*Cear* 'to dine'

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>ceio</i>	<i>ceie</i>	
<i>ceias</i>	<i>ceies</i>	<i>ceia</i>
<i>ceia</i>	<i>ceie</i>	
<i>ceamos</i>	<i>ceemos</i>	
<i>ceais</i>	<i>ceeis</i>	<i>ceiai</i>
<i>ceiam</i>	<i>ceiem</i>	

Similarly: *afeqr* 'to disfigure,' *alheqr* 'to alienate,' *apeqr* 'to dismount,' *asseqr* 'to adorn,' *custeqr* 'to defray expenses,' *enleqr* 'to tie,' *esteqr* 'to support,' *floreqr* 'to flourish,' *folheqr* 'to turn over the leaves,' *fraseqr* 'to phrase,' *gorjeqr* 'to chirp,' *granjeqr* 'to cultivate,' *ideqr* 'to fancy,' *jornadeqr* 'to journey,' *lisonjeqr* 'to flatter,' *meneqr* 'to move,' *nomeqr* 'to name,' *ondeqr* 'to float,' *passeqr* 'to take a walk,' *peqr* 'to check,' *perneqr* 'to kick,' *receqr* 'to fear,' *recheqr* 'to fill,' *rodeqr* 'to enclose,' *saneqr* 'to heal,' *semeqr* 'to sow,' *sofreqr* 'to bridle' 'check,' *vagueqr* 'to wander,' etc.

Some of these verbs are sometimes, but incorrectly, spelled *-eiar* in the infinitive:

*ceiar*, *ideiar*, *passeiar*, etc.

#### Verbs in *-iar*

406. As a general rule, if the stem ends in *i* it is preserved throughout whenever accented:

*Copiar* 'to copy'

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>copio</i>	<i>copie</i>	
<i>copias</i>	<i>copies</i>	<i>copia</i>
<i>copia</i>	<i>copie</i>	

<i>copiãmos</i>	<i>copiemos</i>	
<i>copiais</i>	<i>copieis</i>	<i>copiai</i>
<i>copiam</i>	<i>copiem</i>	

Similarly: *abreviãr* 'to shorten,' *acariciãr* 'to flatter,' *adiãr* 'to adjourn,' *afiãr* 'to sharpen,' *agoniãr* 'to afflict,' *agraciãr* 'to favor,' *aliviãr* 'to lighten,' *alumiãr* 'to light,' *ampliãr* 'to amplify,' *anunciãr* 'to announce,' *anuviãr* 'to cloud,' *apreciãr* 'to appreciate,' *aviãr* 'to expedite,' *assobiãr* 'to whistle,' *confiãr* 'to entrust,' *contrariãr* 'to oppose,' *depreciãr* 'to depreciate,' *estiãr* 'to stop raining,' *evidenciãr* 'to evidence,' *extasiãr* 'to entrance,' *fiãr* 'to trust' 'spin,' *fantasiãr* 'to fancy,' *gloriãr* 'to glorify,' *guiãr* 'to guide,' *miãr* 'to mew,' *piãr* 'to chirp,' *saciãr* 'to satiate,' *tosquiãr* 'to shear.'

407. (a) By analogy with 405, however, some verbs belonging to this class change their stem vowel *i* to *ei* when accented:

*Odiãr* 'to hate'

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>odeio</i>	<i>odeie</i>	
<i>odeias</i>	<i>odeies</i>	<i>odeia</i>
<i>odeia</i>	<i>odeie</i>	
<i>odiãmos</i>	<i>odiẽmos</i>	
<i>odiais</i>	<i>odieis</i>	<i>odeai</i>
<i>odeiam</i>	<i>odeiem</i>	

Similarly: *agenciãr* 'to transact,' *cadenciãr* 'to harmonize,' *diligenciãr* 'to effect,' *incendiãr* 'to set fire to,' *mediãr* 'to divide' 'mediate,' *obsequiãr* 'to flatter,' *penitenciãr* 'to impose a penance,' *presenciãr*



'to be present at,' *remediar* 'to remedy,' *sentenciar* 'to sentence.'

(b) In a few uncommon verbs of this class, both *i* and *ei* are used when accented, but the forms in *ei* are to be preferred:

*comerciar* 'to traffic,' *licenciar* 'to dismiss,' *negociar* 'to negotiate,' *premiar* 'to reward,' etc.

408. If the stem vowel *i* is preceded by *o*, the latter becomes open when accented and takes the acute:

*boiar* 'to float,' pres. ind. *bóio*, *bóias*, *bóia*, *boiámos*  
*boais*, *bóiam*, pres. subj. *bóie*, *bóies*, *bóie*, *boiemos*,  
*boieis*, *bóiem*.

409. In Brazil the verb *criar* is generally written *crear* when it means 'to create' 'give life to,' but *criar* when it means 'to bring up' 'educate' 'cultivate' 'breed,' and the same distinction is made in the corresponding substantives, *o creador do mundo* 'the creator of the world,' *um criador de flores* 'a cultivator of flowers.' In the former sense the verb is conjugated *eu creio*, *tu creas*, *êle crea*, *êles cream*. But this distinction is unnecessary. There is but one verb, which is more correctly spelled *criar*, and one conjugation for both classes of meanings:

*eu crio*, *tu crias*, *êle cria*, *êles criam*.

Likewise *procriar* 'to generate,' and *recriar* 'to re-create' are conjugated like *criar*, but *recrear* 'to divert' 'amuse' is *eu recreio*, *tu recreias*, *êle recreia*, etc.

## II. Second Conjugation

410. As in the first conjugation, *a* in the stem syllable is pronounced *q* when accented:

*abater* 'to beat down,' *abqto* 'I beat down;' *trazer* 'to bring,' *trqgo* 'I bring.'

411. (a) Accented *e* in the stem syllable is regularly pronounced *ɛ* in the first person singular of the present indicative and in all the singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive. In other words, it is pronounced *ɛ* if the following syllable contains *a* or *o*, but *e* if it contains *e*:

*Gemer* 'to lament'

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>gemo</i>	<i>gema</i>	
<i>gemes</i>	<i>gemas</i>	<i>gême</i>
<i>gême</i>	<i>gêma</i>	
<i>gememos</i>	<i>gemamos</i>	
<i>gemeis</i>	<i>gemais</i>	<i>gemei</i>
<i>gemem</i>	<i>gemam</i>	

Similarly: *beber* 'to drink,' *ceder* 'to yield,' *correr* 'to run,' *crescer* 'to grow,' *derreter* 'to melt,' *dever* 'to be obliged,' *eleger* 'to choose,' *escrever* 'to write,' *expressar* 'to express,' *fervêr* 'to boil,' *merecer* 'to deserve,' *meter* 'to put,' *mexer* 'to mix,' *mover* 'to move,' *padecer* 'to suffer,' *parecer* 'to appear,' *receber* 'to receive,' *reger* 'to rule,' *tecer* 'to weave,' *temer* 'to fear,' *tremêr* 'to tremble,' *verter* 'to pour,' etc.

Except *crer* 'to believe,' *ser* 'to be,' *ter* 'to have,' *ver* 'to see,' and their compounds, which retain close *e* throughout: *crêdes* 'ye believe,' *sêde* 'be ye,' *lêdes* 'ye read,' and in a few verbs whose stem ends in *c*, such as *aquecer* 'to warm' and *esquecer* 'to forget,' which have open accented *e* throughout.

(b) Accented *e* is pronounced *ɛ* before *m* or *n* at the end of a syllable:

*vender* 'to sell,' *vendo* 'I sell.'

412. (a) Accented *o* is pronounced *ɔ* or *ɛ* in the same persons and under the same conditions as *e* is pronounced *ɛ* or *e* (411):

*Cosêr* 'to sew'

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>cɔso</i>	<i>cɔsa</i>	
<i>cɔses</i>	<i>cɔsas</i>	<i>cɔse</i>
<i>cɔse</i>	<i>cɔsa</i>	
<i>cosemos</i>	<i>cosamos</i>	
<i>coseis</i>	<i>cosais</i>	<i>cosei</i>
<i>cɔsem</i>	<i>cɔsam</i>	

Similarly: *chover* 'to rain,' *colher* 'to gather,' *comer* 'to eat,' *morder* 'to bite,' *mover* 'to move,' *morrer* 'to die,' *solver* 'to solve,' *torcer* 'to twist,' *volver* 'to turn,' etc.

(b) Verbs of this conjugation whose stem ends in *o*, change it to *ɔ* and the *e* of the endings to *i*, in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative:

*doer* 'to ache,' pres. ind. *dɔo*, *dɔis*, *dɔi*, *doemos*, *doeis*, *dɔem*. Similarly: *moer* 'to grind,' *roer* 'to gnaw,' *soer* 'to be accustomed.' Wherever, in the imperfect and preterite of these verbs, *i* is accented, it bears the acute: *dota*, *doi*, 'I suffered.'

(c) Accented *o* is pronounced *ɔ* before *m* or *n* at the end of a syllable:

*esconder* 'to hide,' *escondɔ* 'I hide.'

### III. Third Conjugation

413. (a) *A* in the stem syllable is pronounced *ɛ* when accented:

*abrir* 'to open,' *qbro* 'I open,' *partir* 'to depart,'  
*parto* 'I depart.'

(b) But it is pronounced *q* before intervocalic  
*m*, *n*, or *nh*:

*ganir* 'to howl,' *qano* 'I howl.'

414. Accented *u* in the stem syllable is changed to *q* in the second and third persons singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and in the imperative; in other words, when the following syllable contains *e*:

*Sumir* 'to disappear:'

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>sumo</i>	<i>suma</i>	
<i>sqmes</i>	<i>sumas</i>	<i>sqme</i>
<i>sqme</i>	<i>suma</i>	
<i>sumimos</i>	<i>sumqmos</i>	
<i>sumis</i>	<i>sumais</i>	<i>sumi</i>
<i>sqmem</i>	<i>sumam</i>	

Similarly: *acudir* 'to hasten' 'succor,' *bulir* 'to touch' 'move,' *consumir* 'to consume,' *cubrir* (*cobrir*) 'to cover,' *cuspir* 'to spit,' *engulir* 'to swallow,' *fugir* 'to flee' 'escape' (391), *sacudir* 'to shake.'

415. In the following verbs, however, the *u* remains unchanged:

*assumir* 'to assume,' *cumprir* 'to fulfill,' *curtir* 'to tan,' *estrugir* 'to resound' 'deafen,' *iludir* 'to illude,' *mugir* 'to bellow,' *nutrir* 'to nourish,' *presumir* 'to presume,' *punir* 'to punish,' *reassumir* 'to retake,' *resumir* 'to abridge,' *rugir* 'to roar,' *suprir* 'to supply,' *surgir* 'to rise,' *surtir* 'to rise,'

*tugir* 'to whisper,' *unir* 'to unite,' *urdir* 'to weave,'  
*zumbir* 'to buzz,' *zunir* 'to rustle.'

416. (a) Verbs of this conjugation whose stem ends in *u*, change the *e* of the endings to *i* in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative and in the imperative. Wherever in these verbs the *i* before *u* is accented, it takes the acute, except in the infinitive and the present participle:

*concluir* 'to conclude,' pres. ind. *concluo*, *concluis*, *conclui*, *concluimos*, *concluis*, *concluem*; imperf. *concluía*; pret. *concluí*; pres. subj. *conclua*; pres. part. *concluindo*; past. part. *concluído*.

Similarly: *afluir* 'to flow,' *aluir* 'to shake,' *arguir* 'to accuse,' *constituir* 'to establish,' *derruir* 'to demolish,' *diluir* 'to dilute,' *excluir* 'to exclude,' *fluir* 'to flow,' *fruir* 'to enjoy,' *incluir* 'to include,' *influir* 'to influence,' *instituir* 'to institute,' *instruir* 'to instruct,' *obstruir* 'to obstruct,' *refluir* 'to flow back,' *restituir* 'to restore.'

(b) Except *construir* 'to construct,' *destruir* 'to destroy,' and *reconstruir* 'to reconstruct,' which have two forms for the second and third persons singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and the singular of the imperative:

pres. ind. *construo*, *construis* or *constróis*, *construi* or *constrói*, *construimos*, *construis*, *construem* or *constroem*; imperative *construe* or *constrói*.

417. *O* in the stem syllable, when accented, is changed to *u* if the following syllable contains *a* or *o*; that is, in the first person singular of the present indica-

tive and in all the persons of the present subjunctive; it becomes *o* in the other persons:

*Dormir* 'to sleep'

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>durmo</i>	<i>durma</i>	
<i>dormes</i>	<i>durmas</i>	<i>dorme</i>
<i>dorme</i>	<i>durma</i>	
<i>dormimos</i>	<i>durmamos</i>	
<i>dormis</i>	<i>durmais</i>	<i>dormi</i>
<i>dormem</i>	<i>durmam</i>	

Similarly: *curtir* 'to preserve' 'prepare,' *descobrir* 'to discover' 'uncover,' *encobrir* 'to cover,' *engolir* 'to swallow,' *urdir* 'to plot,' *polir* 'to polish,' *sortir* 'to go out,' *surdir* 'to rise,' *tossir* 'to cough.'

418. *E* in the stem syllable, when accented, is changed to *i* if the following syllable contains *a* or *o*, that is, in the same persons as those in which *o* becomes *u* (417); it becomes *e* in the other persons.

*Seguir* 'to follow'

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>sigo</i>	<i>siga</i>	
<i>segues</i>	<i>sigas</i>	<i>segue</i>
<i>segue</i>	<i>siga</i>	
<i>seguimos</i>	<i>sigamos</i>	
<i>seguis</i>	<i>sigais</i>	<i>seguí</i>
<i>seguem</i>	<i>sigam</i>	

Similarly: its compounds *conseguir* 'to obtain,' *perseguir* 'to persecute,' *prossequir* 'to follow' 'prose-

cute,' also *aderir* 'to adhere,' *accede to*, *advertir* 'to advise,' *aferrir* 'to compare,' *compelir* 'to compel,' *competir* 'to compete,' *conferir* 'to compare,' *despir* 'to divest' 'undress,' *digerir* 'to digest,' *discernir* 'to discern,' *divergir* 'to diverge,' *divertir* 'to divert,' *ferir* 'to strike' (and its compounds *conferir* 'to confer,' *inferir* 'to infer,' *preferir* 'to prefer,' *proferir* 'to utter,' *referir* 'to report'), *impelir* 'to impel,' *ingerir* 'to introduce,' *inserir* 'to insert' 'implant,' *preterir* 'to omit,' *reflectir* 'to reflect,' *repelir* 'to repel,' *repetir* 'to repeat,' *servir* 'to be of service,' *sugerir* 'to suggest,' *transferir* 'to transfer,' *vestir* 'to dress.'

419. A similar change takes place with verbs having nasal *e* in the stem syllable:

<i>Sentir</i> 'to feel'		
Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>sinto</i>	<i>sinta</i>	
<i>sentes</i>	<i>sinta</i>	<i>sente</i>
<i>sente</i>	<i>sinta</i>	
<i>sentimos</i>	<i>sintamos</i>	
<i>sentis</i>	<i>sintais</i>	<i>senti</i>
<i>sentem</i>	<i>sintam</i>	

Similarly in its derivatives, *assentir* 'to assent,' *consentir* 'to consent,' *dissentir* 'to dissent,' *presentir* 'to have a presentiment of,' *ressentir* 'to resent,' and in *mentir* 'to lie' and its derivative, *desmentir* 'to belie.'

420. *E* in the stem syllable, when accented, is changed to *i*, that is, in all the singular and the third person plural of the indicative, in all forms of the present subjunctive and in the singular of the imperative:

<i>Prevenir</i> 'to prevent' 'anticipate'		
Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>previno</i>	<i>previna</i>	
<i>prevines</i>	<i>previnas</i>	<i>previne</i>
<i>previne</i>	<i>previna</i>	
<i>prevenimos</i>	<i>previnamos</i>	
<i>prevenis</i>	<i>previnais</i>	<i>preveni</i>
<i>previnem</i>	<i>previnam</i>	

Similarly: *agredir* 'to attack,' *denegrir* 'to blacken' 'slander,' *progredir* 'to progress' 'thrive,' *remir* 'to redeem,' *transgredir* 'to transgress.'

421. *I* in the stem syllable, when accented, is changed to *e* when the following syllable contains *e*, that is, in the second and third persons singular of the present indicative and in the singular of the imperative:

<i>Frigir</i> 'to fry'		
Pres. Ind.	Pres. Subj.	Imperat.
<i>frijo</i>	<i>frija</i>	
<i>frejes (frijes)</i>	<i>frijas</i>	<i>freje</i>
<i>freje (frije)</i>	<i>frija</i>	
<i>frijimos</i>	<i>frijamos</i>	
<i>frijis</i>	<i>frijais</i>	<i>frigi</i>
<i>frejem (frijem)</i>	<i>frijam</i>	

#### AUXILIARY VERBS

422. The English auxiliary 'does' 'do' is not expressed in Portuguese:

*não vem* 'he does not come,' *o senhor canta?* 'do you sing?'

423. (a) The verbs most used as auxiliaries are: *ser* and *estar* 'to be' and *ter* and *haver* 'to have.' Others are given in 449 ff.



(b) The principal auxiliaries are conjugated in their simple tenses as follows. For the compound tenses, see 461 ff. Uncommon forms are in parentheses.

#### 424. Infinitive *ser* 'to be.' Simple Tenses

##### Indicative

PRESENT	FUTURE
<i>sou</i> 'I am' 'am being'	<i>ser -ei</i> 'I shall (or 'will') be'
<i>ês</i>	<i>ser -ás</i>
<i>ê</i>	<i>ser -á</i>
<i>somos</i>	<i>ser -emos</i>
<i>sois</i>	<i>ser -eis</i>
<i>são</i>	<i>ser -ão</i>
IMPERFECT	CONDITIONAL
<i>era</i> 'I was' 'was being'	<i>ser -ia</i> 'I should (or 'would') be'
<i>eras</i>	<i>ser -ias</i>
<i>era</i>	<i>ser -ia</i>
<i>éramos</i>	<i>ser -íamos</i>
<i>éreis</i>	<i>ser -íeis</i>
<i>eram</i>	<i>ser -iam</i>
PRETERITE	PLUPERFECT
<i>fui</i> 'I was'	<i>fôra</i> 'I had been'
<i>foste</i>	<i>fôras</i>
<i>foi</i>	<i>fôra</i>
<i>fomos</i>	<i>fôramos</i>
<i>fostes</i>	<i>fôreis</i>
<i>foram</i>	<i>fôram</i>

## Subjunctive

PRESENT	FUTURE
<i>seja</i> ('that') 'I ('may') be'	<i>fôr</i> 'I ('may' or 'shall') be'
<i>sejas</i>	<i>fôres</i>
<i>seja</i>	<i>fôr</i>
<i>sejamos</i>	<i>fôrmos</i>
<i>sejais</i> ( <i>sejaes</i> )	<i>fôrdes</i>
<i>sejam</i>	<i>fôrem</i>

IMPERFECT	Pers. Infin.
<i>fosse</i> ('that') 'I ('might') be'	<i>sêr</i>
<i>fosses</i>	<i>sêres</i>
<i>fosse</i>	<i>sêr</i>
<i>fôssemos</i>	<i>sêrmos</i>
<i>fôsseis</i>	<i>sêrdes</i>
<i>fôssem</i>	<i>sêrem</i>

Pres. Part. (Gerund)

*sendo* 'being'

Past Part.

*sido* 'been'

Imperative

Sing. 2, *sê* 'be'Pl. 2, *sêde*

The other persons are supplied from the present subjunctive.

425. Infinitive *estar* 'to be.' Simple Tenses

## Indicative

PRESENT	FUTURE
<i>estou</i> 'I am' 'am being'	<i>estar -ei</i> 'I shall (or 'will') be'
<i>estás</i>	<i>estar -ás</i>
<i>está</i>	<i>estar -á</i>

*estamos*  
*estais*  
*estão*

*estar -emos*  
*estar -eis*  
*estar -ão*

## IMPERFECT

*estava* 'I was' 'was being'

*estavas*  
*estava*

*estávamos*  
*estáveis*  
*estavam*

## CONDITIONAL

*estar -ia* 'I should (or  
 'would') be'

*estar -ias*  
*estar -ia*

*estar -íamos*  
*estar -íeis*  
*estar -iam*

## PRETERITE

*estive* 'I was'  
*estiveste*  
*estêve*  
*estivemos*  
*estivestes*  
*estiveram*

## PLUPERFECT

*estivera* 'I had been'  
*estiveras*  
*estevera*  
*estivêramos*  
*estivêreis*  
*estiveram*

## Subjunctive

## PRESENT

*esteja* ('that') 'I ('may')  
 be'  
*estejas*  
*esteja*  
*estejamos*  
*estejais* (*estejaes*)  
*estejam*

## FUTURE

*estiver* 'I ('may' or 'shall')  
 be'  
*estiveres*  
*estiver*  
*estivermos*  
*estiverdes*  
*estiverem*

IMPERFECT	Pers. Infin.
<i>estivesse</i> ('that') 'I ('might') be'	<i>estar</i>
<i>estivesses</i>	<i>estares</i>
<i>estivesse</i>	<i>estar</i>
<i>estivéssemos</i>	<i>estarmos</i>
<i>estivésseis</i>	<i>estardes</i>
<i>estivessem</i>	<i>estarem</i>

Pres. Part. (Gerund)

*estando* 'being'

Past Part.

*estado* 'been'

Imperative

Sing. 2, *está* 'be'

Pl. 2, *estai*

The other persons are supplied from the present subjunctive.

#### 426. Infinitive *ter* 'to have.' Simple Tenses

##### Indicative

PRESENT	FUTURE
<i>tenho</i> 'I have' 'am having'	<i>ter -ei</i> 'I shall (or 'will') have'
<i>tens</i> (429)	<i>ter -ás</i>
<i>tem</i> (17. e)	<i>ter -á</i>
<i>temos</i>	<i>ter -emos</i>
<i>tendes</i>	<i>ter -eis</i>
<i>te(e)m</i> or <i>têm</i> (17. e)	<i>ter -ão</i>

IMPERFECT	CONDITIONAL
<i>tinha</i> 'I had' 'was having'	<i>ter -ia</i> 'I should (or 'would') have'
<i>tinhas</i>	<i>ter -ias</i>
<i>tinha</i>	<i>ter -ia</i>

*tínhamos**tínheis**tinham**ler -íamos**ter -leis**ter -iam*

## PRETERITE

*tive* 'I had'*tiveste**têve**tivemos**tivestes**tiveram*

## PLUPERFECT

*tivera* 'I had had'*tiveras**tivera**tivêramos**tivêreis**tiveram*

## Subjunctive

## PRESENT

*tenha* ('that') 'I ('may') have'*tenhas**tenha**tenhamos**tenhais* (*tenhaes*)*tenham*

## FUTURE

*tiver* 'I ('may' or 'shall')  
have'*tiveres**tiver**tivermos**tiverdes**tiverem*

## IMPERFECT

*tivesse* ('that') 'I ('might')  
have'*tivesses**tivesse**tivéssemos**tivésseis**tivéssem*

## Pers. Infin.

*ter**teres**ter**termos**terdes**terem*

Pres. Part. (Gerund)  
*tendo* 'having'

Past Part.  
*tido* 'had'

Imperative

Sing. 2, *tem* 'have'

Pl. 2, *tende*

The other persons are supplied from the present subjunctive.

#### 427. Infinitive *haver* 'to have.' Simple Tenses

##### Indicative

###### PRESENT

*hei* 'I have' 'am having'

*hás*

*há*

*havemos, (h)emos*

*haveis, (h)eis*

*hão*

###### FUTURE

*haver -ei* 'I shall (or 'will') have'

*haver -ás*

*haver -á*

*haver -emos*

*haver -eis*

*haver -ão*

###### IMPERFECT

*havia, (h)ia* 'I had' 'was having'

*havas, (h)ias*

*havia, (h)ia*

*havíamos, (h)íamos*

*havíeis, (h)íeis*

*haviam, (h)iam*

###### CONDITIONAL

*haver -ia* 'I should (or 'would') have'

*haver -ias*

*haver -ia*

*haver -íamos*

*haver -íeis*

*haver -iam*

###### PRETERITE

*houve* 'I had'

*houveste*

*houve*

*houvemos*

*houvestes*

*houveram*

###### PLUPERFECT

*houvera* 'I had had'

*houveras*

*houvera*

*houvéramos*

*houvéreis*

*houveram*

## Subjunctive

PRESENT	FUTURE
<i>haja</i> ('that') 'I ('may')	<i>houvêr</i> 'I ('may' or 'shall')
have'	have'
<i>hajas</i>	<i>houvêres</i>
<i>haja</i>	
<i>hajamos</i>	<i>houvêrmos</i>
<i>hajais</i> ( <i>hajaes</i> )	<i>houvêrdes</i>
<i>hajam</i>	<i>houvêrem</i>

IMPERFECT	Pers. Infin.
<i>houvêsse</i> ('that') 'I ('might')	<i>havêr</i>
have'	
<i>houvêsses</i>	<i>havêres</i>
<i>houvêsse</i>	<i>havêr</i>
<i>houvêssemos</i>	<i>havêrmos</i>
<i>houvêsseis</i>	<i>havêrdes</i>
<i>houvêsssem</i>	<i>havêrem</i>

Pres. Part. (Gerund)  
*havendo* 'having'  
 Past Part.  
*havido* 'had'

Imperative  
 Sing. 2, *há* 'have'  
 Pl. 2, *havei*

The other persons are supplied from the present subjunctive.

## On the Forms of the Four Principal Auxiliaries

428. For the endings *-ão* and *-am* in the third person plural, see 380.

429. When followed by an object pronoun, *o*, *a*, *os*, *as* (*lo*, *la*, *los*, *las*), the second person singular of the present indicative of *têr* is *tem*, not *tens* (386).

430. Like *têr* are conjugated:

*abster* 'to deprive,' *abster-se* 'to abstain,' *conter* 'to contain,' *detêr* 'to detain,' *entreter* 'to entertain,' *manter* 'to maintain,' *obter* 'to obtain,' *reter* 'to retain,' *suster* 'to sustain.'

431. Like *estar* is conjugated *sobrestar* 'to supersede,' but its other compounds are regular:

*constar* (impersonal) 'it appears,' *distar* 'to be distant,' *obstar* 'to hinder,' *prestar* 'to give,' *restar* 'to remain,' and the contracted form *sustar* 'to uphold.'

432. Like *haver* is conjugated *reaver* 'to have back' 'to recover,' except that it is used only in those forms that contain *v*:

*reavia, reouve, reouvera, reavendo, reavido*. Consequently it is not found in the singular and the third person plural of the present indicative nor in the present subjunctive.

The shortened forms of the present and imperfect of *haver*, viz. (*h*)*ei*, (*h*)*ás*, (*h*)*á*, (*h*)*ia*, etc., are used in forming the future and the conditional of all verbs (382. a).

### On the Uses of the Auxiliaries

#### A. *Ser*

433. *Ser* (composed of parts of the Latin verbal forms *sum*, *eram*, *fui*, and *sedere*) denotes essential or permanent qualities. It is generally used

(a) with adjectives and nouns in the predicate, to denote that the attribute belongs inherently to the subject; for example, with such words as *alto* 'tall,' *duro* 'hard,' *doce* 'sweet,' *forte* 'strong,' *instruído* 'educated,' *feliz* 'happy,' *inteligente* 'intelligent,' *mortal* 'mortal,' *rico* 'rich,' *pobre* 'poor,' *doutor* 'physician,' *moço* 'boy,' *pintor* 'painter.' In this case the predicate adjective agrees with the subject (463);



(b) in expressions of time (224):

*que horas são?* 'what time is it?' *são quatro horas*  
'it is four o'clock;'

(c) as the auxiliary of passive, reflexive, and reciprocal verbs, and of many intransitive verbs denoting motion or change of condition, such as *ir* 'to go,' *vir* 'to come,' *cair* 'to fall,' *morrer* 'to die,' *nascer* 'to be born.' Here too the past participle is regarded as an adjective and agrees with the subject:

*a terra é cultivada* 'the land is cultivated,' *somos estimados* 'we are esteemed.'

### B. *Estar*

434. *Estar* (from Latin *stare* 'to stand') denotes merely a transitory or temporary state, manner, or condition:

*estou aqui* 'I am here,' *está em casa* 'he is at home,'  
*estou com fome* 'I am hungry,' *está em Roma* 'he  
is in Rome,' *como está V. Ex.ª?* 'how do you do?'  
*estou bem* or *estou bom (de saúde)* 'I am well,' *está  
sentado* 'he is seated,' *está contente, descontente,  
satisfeito* 'he is contented, discontented, satisfied.'

435. Illustrations of the differences in meaning between *ser* and *estar*:

*Coimbra é em Portugal*  
'Coimbra is in Portugal'

*Coimbra está nas margens  
do Mondego* 'Coimbra  
is situated on the banks  
of the Mondego'

*sou doente* 'I am sickly'  
'an invalid' or 'ill be-  
yond recovery'

*estou doente* 'I am ill'

*sou cego* 'I am blind' (permanently)

*ela é pálida* 'she is pale' (by nature)

*João é alegre* 'John is happy' (by nature)

*ser bêbado* 'to be a drunkard'

*ser português* 'to be a Portuguese' (by birth)

*ser homem* 'to be a man'

*ser bom* 'to be good' (by nature)

*o Brasil é um país quente* 'Brazil is a hot country'

*êle é um homem sêco* 'he is a dry (or 'crusty') fellow'

*êle é um louco furipso* 'he is a lunatic' (completely out of his mind)

*o chá é caro* 'tea is dear' (always)

*estou cego* 'I am blinded' (temporarily)

*está pálida* 'she is (now) pale' (because of sickness, etc.)

*João está alegre* 'John is in a happy mood'

*estar bêbado* 'to be intoxicated'

*estar português* 'to be a Portuguese' (by naturalization, taste, education, etc.)

*estar homem* 'to attain to manhood'

*estar bom* 'to be in good health'

*está bom* 'it is well'

*está bem* 'all right' or 'he ('it,' 'she') is well'

*a água está quente* 'the water is hot'

*a roupa está seca* 'the clothes are dry'

*êle está louco furipso* 'he has become a madman' (with occasional fits of frenzy)

*o chá está caro* 'tea is dear' (these days)

<i>êle foi nomeqdo cônsul</i> 'he was appointed consul' (and probably still holds the office)	<i>êle esteve nomeqdo cônsul</i> 'he was appointed consul' (but no longer holds the office)
<i>êle é mórto</i> 'he died' (some time ago)	<i>êle está mórto</i> 'he is dead' or 'he has just died'
<i>é clqro</i> 'it is clear' (self-evident)	<i>está clqro</i> 'it is clear' (as presented) 'of course'
<i>a cabeça é cobertade cabelo</i> 'the head is covered with hair'	<i>a cabeça está coberta com um chapéu</i> 'the head is covered with a hat'

436. A past participle with *ser* denotes the action suffered by the subject. With *estar* and with *ficar* 'to remain' (451), it has the force of an adjective and denotes rather the resultant state or condition of the subject:

*fui ferido por José* 'I was struck by Joseph,' *estava ferido quando José chegou* 'I was struck (and in that condition) when Joseph arrived,' *a cçsa é construída de tejplos* 'the house is built of bricks,' *a cçsa está construída* 'the house is finished,' *o vqso fica quebrado* 'the vase is broken,' *a qbra ficou concluída* 'the work was finished,' *êle é prqso* 'he has been taken prisoner,' *êle está prqso* 'he is a prisoner,' *Maria estava molhada da chuva* 'Mary was wet with the rain,' *estou almoqdo* 'I have had breakfast.'

437. *Estar* followed by the preposition *de* and the name of an office denotes temporary state or position:

*estar de guarda, estar de ronda, estar de sentinela, estar de vigia* 'to be on guard.'

438. In older Portuguese, *sêr* was frequently used instead of *estar*, *ter*, or *haver*:

*depois del-rei sêr (for estar) em Évora* 'after the king had been in Évora,' *porque êle não era (for tinha) ali vindo senão para conservar a vida* 'because he had not come there but to save his life.'

It is still used in the sense of *estar* in such impersonal expressions as *ê sabido* and *ê conhecido* 'it is known.'

*Estar* with the Gerund or the Infinitive

439. *Estar*, most often in the present or imperfect indicative, followed by a gerund, or by an infinitive preceded by the preposition *a*, indicates frequency, repetition, duration, or short continuance of action in the present or the past, or an action as having begun or as taking place simultaneously with another. Of the two constructions, that with the infinitive is commoner in Portugal than in Brazil, but neither is as much employed in the popular as in the literary language. They may be used without distinction, however, except that the construction with *a* and the infinitive is to be preferred if the object of the verb is not expressed and with compound tenses:

*estava a dormir* 'I was sleeping,' *estávamos a conversar* or *estávamos conversando* 'we were talking,' *que está seu irmão a fazer?* or *que está seu irmão fazendo?* 'what is your brother doing?' *estou andando* 'I am going,' *estará a chover muito* (or *estará chovendo muito*) *quando eu chegar* 'it will be raining hard when I arrive,' *tenho estado a trabalhar* (or *tenho estado trabalhando*) *tôda a manhã* 'I have

been working all the morning,' *está fazendo muito calor* 'it is very hot,' *o inverno está a chegar* 'winter is coming,' *estou a dizer* or *estou dizendo* 'I am saying,' *estou a sair* 'I am ready (or 'I mean') to go out,' *estou a ouvir* or *estou ouvindo* 'I am hearing,' *está a acabar* 'it is almost finished.

440. *Estar* followed by the preposition *para* and an infinitive also expresses the beginning of an action or a disposition or tendency to perform it. It may be translated 'to be on the point of' 'to be ready' 'to be willing' 'to be inclined.' Of the two constructions, *estar* with *a* denotes more proximate or immediate action than *estar* with *para*:

*está para casar* 'he is to be married,' *estou para ir* 'I am about (or 'ready') to go,' *estava para sair* 'I was about to go out,' *está para chover* 'it is about to rain,' *está para dar quatro horas* 'it is about to strike four o'clock.'

441. *Estar* followed by the preposition *por* and an infinitive in a passive sense denotes incompleted action (587. f):

*a carta está por escrever* 'the letter is to be written,'  
*isso está por fazer* 'that is to be done.'

442. *Estar* followed by the gerund of a passive verb expresses continued action:

*está sendo muito louvado pelo governador* 'he is being much praised by the governor.'

### C. *Ter* and *Haver*

443. *Haver* is seldom used to-day in its original

sense of 'to have' 'to possess;' that meaning has been almost completely taken over by *ter*:

*tenho um cavalo* 'I have a horse,' *tem razão* 'you are right.'

Besides its use as a finite verb, *ter* is the commonest of the auxiliaries. It is used to form the compound active tenses of all verbs, both transitive, intransitive, and reflexive, and of *ter* itself and the other auxiliaries (449. ff.). *Haver*, on the other hand, is used only occasionally in modern Portuguese, and only in the literary language, to form the compound tenses; its principal function is in the formation of the future and conditional (382. a, 432) and in impersonal phrases (524).

444. *T**er* (or *haver*) followed by *que*, or by the preposition *de* (or *a*) and an infinitive, besides expressing simple future time, denotes the necessity or intention of performing an action. In this construction, determined purpose in the first person is expressed by *haver* and obligation by *ter*. In the second and third persons, *haver* expresses obligation (582):

*irei* 'I shall go' but *hei-de ir* 'I have to ('will') go,' *amanhã hei-de levantar-me cedo* 'I must ('will') get up early to-morrow,' *tinha* (or *havia*) *de estudar* 'I had to study,' *então quem há-de saber?* 'then whose business is it to know?' *tenho de escrever uma carta* 'I must write a letter,' *tinha de ser optimista* 'he could not help being an optimist,' *êle há-de ter fome* 'he must be hungry,' *andamos* (or *estamos*) *mortos por ir lá fora* 'we are dying to go abroad,' *há-de perdoar* 'pardon me,' (o) *que se*

*há-de fazer?* 'what is to be done?' *que lhe hei-de eu fazer?* 'how can I help it?' *tenho de cá voltar hoje?* 'must I return here to-day?'

445. *Haver* in this construction also expresses probability:

*êle há-de estar agora em casa* 'he must now be at home,' *hão-de ser seis horas* 'it must be six o'clock,' *hão-de lhe as côres voltar logo* 'her color will soon return.'

446. *Haver* followed by *de* and an infinitive is also used in questions in which one asks if it is right or possible that a certain thing should or should not happen:

*pois eu havia de esquecer-me de ti?* 'how could I forget you?'

447. *Que* is rather more correct than *de* or *a* (the latter under the influence of the French idiom) when followed by the infinitive, in such phrases as *tenho que pagar* 'I have to pay,' *tenho que fazer uma coisa* 'I have something to do,' *tenho que lhe dizer muitas coisas* 'I have many things to tell you.'

448. In the popular speech, *de* is often omitted:

*hei (-de) passear* 'I shall walk.'

#### D. Other Auxiliary Verbs

449. Several other verbs besides *haver*, *ter*, *ser*, and *estar* have a sort of auxiliary function.

450. (a) *Andar* 'to go,' followed by a gerund or by an infinitive preceded by the preposition *a*, represents the prolongation of the action expressed by the

gerund or the infinitive; it may also express manner or circumstance (573):

*ando estudando* (or *ando a estudar*) *o português* 'I am studying Portuguese,' *andqr a saltqr* 'to go jumping,' *ando procurando um livro* 'I am looking for a book.'

(b) With an adjective or a participle, also, *andqr* implies continued action:

*andqva aflito* 'he was afflicted,' *ando um pouco cansado* 'I am somewhat tired.'

451. *Ficar* 'to remain' is applied to a person or thing which remains more or less permanently where it was intended to be or where it was built. It also expresses a transition from one state to another, but of longer duration than is expressed by *estar*; with this distinction it may take the place of *estar* when construed with a gerund or with the preposition *a* and an infinitive (439):

*fica triste* 'he is sad,' *fica fechada a porta* 'the door remains closed,' *onde fica a cozinha?* 'where is the kitchen?' *fica no rés-do-chão* 'it is on the ground-floor,' *V. Ex<sup>a</sup> já ficou servido?* 'have you been served?' *fica feito* 'it is done,' *e aqui fica* 'and here it is,' *ficamos a morqr na mesma casa* or *ficamos habitando a mesma casa* 'from this day forth we live in the same house,' *não sei se o senhor fica satisfeito* 'I do not know if you are satisfied,' *ela ficou-o olhando* 'she kept looking at him,' *ficqr-lhe hei grato* 'I will be thankful to you,' *devo ficar* 'I must remain,' *ficou morto* 'he was dead,'



*fica sabendo que . . . 'know that . . . ,'* *fique-o sabendo* 'I'd have you know,' *ficamos sabendo que devemos escrever* 'we know that we should write,' *ficou ainda a estudar* 'he continued to study,' *deixe as coisas como estão para que não fiquem pior* 'leave things as they are lest they become worse,' *o novo dicionário universal português ficará sendo o repositório mais completo da língua* 'the new universal Portuguese dictionary will be the most complete repository of the language.'

452. The verbs *ir* 'to go' (479) and *vir* 'to come' (507) are frequently used as auxiliaries, as the equivalent of *estar*, with predicate adjectives and participles, or when followed by a gerund or an infinitive; the only difference between the two verbs in these constructions is such as results from their primary meanings: *ir* is used if the action is away from, *vir* if towards, the place where the speaker is:

*venho maravilhado* 'I am surprised,' *já vinha jantando* 'he had already dined,' *vai incluído o arranjo do quarto?* 'is room-service included?'  
*vimos cedados* 'we have had supper.'

453. (a) Followed by a gerund, *ir* and *vir* express motion, change of condition, or the beginning or realization of an action:

*"as memórias gloriosas daqueles reis que foram dilatando a fé"* (Camões) 'the glorious memories of those kings who went spreading the faith,' *como vai o senhor?* 'how are you?' *vou indo* 'I am pretty well,' *cá vou acabando a obra* 'I am finishing the

work,' *foi-se tornando pálida* 'she was turning pale,' *os meios para ir vivendo* 'the means of making a living,' *os qves vão* (or *veem*) *voando* 'the birds are flying,' *a pouco e pouco fomos entrando* 'little by little we made our way in,' *um jornal vem tratando da guerra* 'a newspaper is treating of the war,' *o meu rapaz vem adquirindo conhecimentos práticos* 'my boy is acquiring practical knowledge,' *quem vem entrando?* 'who is entering?' *vão sendo horas também de eu chegar até casa, pois venho cansado* 'it is getting to be time for me to be home too, since I am tired.'

(b) In this construction the imperfect tense of *ir* or *vir* shows that the action was about to be completed:

*a êsse tempo ia-se já definindo a manhã* 'already by that time morning was becoming more distinct,' *vinha amanhecendo* 'dawn was breaking.'

(c) *Ir* followed by an infinitive without a preceding preposition indicates progressive action, an intention to perform a certain act, or the certainty of its proximate realization:

*vai chover* 'it is going to rain,' *vou ler agora mesmo esta carta* 'I am just now going to read this letter,' *vai partir* 'he is going to leave,' *isso vai cair* 'that is going to fall,' *iam passear* 'they were going for a walk,' *íamos falar com êle* 'we were going to talk to him,' *vou passear* 'I am going to take a walk,' *o que hei-de eu ir fazer?* 'what should I do?' *êsta rua vai ter à ponte* 'this street leads to the bridge,' *começou por amar, por batalhar, por sofrer, e ia terminar*

*os seus cansados dias no recolhimento e na meditação* 'he began by loving, by fighting, by suffering, and brought his weary days to an end in retirement and meditation.'

(d) *Ir* followed by an infinitive preceded by the preposition *a* is a more explicit form of the same construction without *a*:

*pediu-me que o fosse a ver muitas vezes* 'he asked me to come to see him often.'

(e) *Ir* also expresses the beginning of an action:

*e dizendo isto já ia a levantar-se* 'and saying so he started to get up,' *fui a procurá-lo* 'I went to find him,' *ia a correr* 'I started to run,' *vamos a ver se êle vem* 'let us go and see if he is coming.'

(f) *Vir* followed by an infinitive preceded by the preposition *a* differs from the simple verb only in expressing final result or purpose:

*vim a saber* 'I came to know' 'I finally knew,' *veio a ser rico* 'he became rich' 'succeeded in becoming rich,' *o filho há-de vir a dar um excelente estudante* 'the boy will become an excellent student,' *quanto vem a ser?* 'how much does it amount to?' *isto vem a significar* 'that means' 'that amounts to,' *veio a falecer* 'he had just died,' *se continuar a estudar diligentemente poderá um dia vir a saber a língua portuguesa* 'if he goes on studying diligently, some day he may come to know Portuguese.'

(g) *Vir* should not be used unless motion is implied:  
*vem de navegar os mares* 'he returns from sailing

the seas,' *vênho de estar com meus amigos* 'I have been with my friends.'

But it is often used in imitation of the French idiom *il vient de*:

*vênho de receber um telegrama* (for *acabo de receber* or *recebi há pouco*) *um telegrama* 'I have just received a telegram,' *o livro vem de se publicar* (for *o livro publicou-se há pouco*) 'the book has just been published,' *de que vêmho de falar* (for *de que falei há pouco* or *de que acabo de falar*) 'of whom I have just spoken,' *vimos de narrar* (for *acabamos de narrar* or *narramos há pouco*) 'we have just related.'

454. *Continuar*, *prosseguir*, and *seguir* 'to continue,' when followed by a gerund, express more continued action than the other auxiliaries:

*o cão continuava ladrando* 'the dog continued to bark.'

455. *Acabar* 'to put an end to,' followed by a gerund or by an infinitive preceded by the preposition *de*, expresses the completion of the action:

*acabo de receber um telegrama* 'I have just received a telegram.'

456. *Voltar* and *tornar* 'to return,' followed by an infinitive preceded by the preposition *a*, express repetition of action:

*voltou a fazer a mesma coisa* 'he did the same thing over again,' *quando nós tornaremos a ver?* 'when shall we see each other again?'

457. Some other verbs occasionally used as auxiliaries are:

*achar* 'to find,' *dar* 'to give,' *deixar* 'to let,' *entrar* 'to enter,' *fazer* 'to do,' *mandar* 'to order,' *ousar* 'to dare,' *parecer* 'to appear,' *poder* 'to be able,' *ver-se* 'to be seen.'

458. The English phrases 'to be hungry,' 'thirsty,' 'sleepy,' 'cold,' etc., are expressed in Portuguese by means either of the auxiliary *estar* followed by *com* 'with' and the word for 'hunger,' 'thirst,' etc., or of the same words preceded by *ter*:

*tenho fome* (*sêde, sono, frio*, etc.) or *estou com fome*, etc., 'I am hungry,' 'thirsty,' 'sleepy,' etc.

#### THE PASSIVE

459. The simple tenses of the passive are formed by adding to the forms of *ser* or *estar* (and occasionally of *ficar* 'to remain,' *achar-se* 'to be found,' *jazer* 'to recline' 'lie,' *ir* 'to go,' *vir* 'to come,' *ver-se* 'to be seen') the past participle of the active verb, which must agree in gender and number with the subject (539. d).

460. Synopsis, in the First Persons, of the Simple Tenses of the Passive of *Curar* 'to cure,' with the Auxiliaries *Ser* and *Estar*.

Infinitive: *ser* (or *estar*) *curado -a, -os, -as* 'to be cured'

#### Indicative

Pres.	1 s.	<i>sou</i> (or <i>estou</i> ) <i>curado, -a</i>	'I am cured'
	1 pl.	<i>spomos</i> (or <i>estamos</i> ) <i>curados, -as</i>	'we are cured'

Impf.	1 s.	<i>era</i> (or <i>estava</i> ) <i>curqdo, -a</i>	'I was being cured'
	1 pl.	<i>éramos</i> (or <i>estávamos</i> ) <i>curqdos, -as</i>	'we were being cured'
Pret.	1 s.	<i>fui</i> (or <i>estive</i> ) <i>curqdo, -a</i>	'I was (or 'have been') cured'
	1 pl.	<i>fomos</i> (or <i>estivemos</i> ) <i>curqdos -as</i>	'we were (or 'have been') cured'
Fut.	1 s.	<i>serei</i> (or <i>estarei</i> ) <i>curqdo, -a</i>	'I shall be cured'
	1 pl.	<i>seremos</i> (or <i>estaremos</i> ) <i>curqdos, -as</i>	'we shall be cured'
Cond.	1 s.	<i>seria</i> (or <i>estaria</i> ) <i>curqdo, -a</i>	'I should be cured'
	1 pl.	<i>seríamos</i> (or <i>estariamos</i> ) <i>curqdos -as</i>	'we should be cured'
Pluperf.			
	1 s.	<i>fôra</i> (or <i>estivera</i> ) <i>curqdo, -a</i>	'I had been cured'
	1 pl.	<i>fôramos</i> (or <i>estivêramos</i> ) <i>curqdos, -as</i>	'we had been cured'

## Subjunctive

Pres.	1 s.	<i>seja</i> (or <i>esteja</i> ) <i>curqdo, -a</i>	'(that) I (may) be cured'
	1 pl.	<i>sejamos</i> (or <i>estejamos</i> ) <i>curqdos, -as</i>	'(that) we (may) be cured'
Impf.	1 s.	<i>fosse</i> (or <i>estivesse</i> ) <i>curqdo, -a</i>	'(that) I (might) be cured'
	1 pl.	<i>fôssemos</i> (or <i>estivêssemos</i> ) <i>curqdos, -as</i>	'(that) we (might) be cured'
Fut.	1 s.	<i>fôr</i> (or <i>estiver</i> ) <i>curqdo, -a</i>	'I (may or shall) be cured'
	1 pl.	<i>*fôrmos</i> (or <i>estivermos</i> ) <i>curqdos, -as</i>	'we (may or shall) be cured'

## Imperative

2 s.	<i>sê</i> (or <i>está</i> ) <i>curqdo</i> , -a	'be cured'
2 pl.	<i>sêde</i> (or <i>estai</i> ) <i>curqdos</i> , -as	'be cured'

## Pres. Part. (Gerund)

<i>sendo curqdo</i> , -a, -os, -as	'being cured'
------------------------------------	---------------

## Personal Infinitive

<i>sêr curqdo</i> -a	'to be cured'
<i>sêrmos curqdos</i> , -as	'to be cured'

## Past Participle

<i>sido curqdo</i> , -a -os, -as	'having been cured'
----------------------------------	---------------------

## COMPOUND TENSES

461. The compound tenses of the active of all verbs, whether transitive, intransitive, or reflexive, including verbs of motion like *ir* 'to go,' *vir* 'to come,' and *correr* 'to run,' etc., are formed by adding to the forms of *têr* (or, less often, of *haver*) the past participle of the main verb in the masculine singular.

462. If, instead of *têr* or *haver*, *deixar* 'to leave,' *levar* 'to carry,' or *trazer* 'to bring' is the auxiliary employed—as is sometimes the case in order to emphasize the result or completion of the action rather than the action itself—the past participle agrees with the object of the verb whether it precedes or follows.

463. The compound tenses of the passive of all verbs are formed by inserting *sido* (the past participle of *sêr*) between the forms of *têr* (less often of *haver*) and the past participle of the main verb, which must agree in gender and number with the subject.

464. Synopsis, in the First Persons, of the Compound Tenses, Active and Passive, of *Amar* 'to love,' with the Auxiliaries *Ter* and *Haver* (active) and *Ser* (passive).

### Infinitive Past

Active: *ter* (rarely *haver*) *amado* 'to have loved'

Passive: *ter sido amado*, -a, -os, -as 'to have been loved'

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	Indicative	
Pres. Perf. 1 s.	<i>tenho</i> (or <i>hei</i> ) <i>amado</i> 'I have loved'	<i>tenho sido amado</i> , -a 'I have been loved'
1 pl.	<i>temos</i> (or <i>havemos</i> ) <i>amado</i> 'we have loved'	<i>temos sido amados</i> , -as 'we have been loved'
Past Perf. 1 s.	<i>tinha</i> (or <i>havia</i> ) <i>amado</i> 'I had loved'	<i>tinha sido amado</i> , -a 'I had been loved'
1 pl.	<i>tinhamos</i> (or <i>havi-amos</i> ) <i>amado</i> 'we had loved'	<i>tinhamos sido amados</i> , -as 'we had been loved'
Fut. Perf. 1 s.	<i>terei</i> (or <i>haverei</i> ) <i>amado</i> 'I shall have loved'	<i>terei sido amado</i> , -a 'I shall have been loved'
1 pl.	<i>teremos</i> (or <i>haveremos</i> ) <i>amado</i> 'we shall have loved'	<i>teremos sido amados</i> , -as 'we shall have been loved'
Cond. Perf. 1 s.	<i>teria</i> (or <i>haveria</i> ) <i>amado</i> 'I should have loved'	<i>teria sido amado</i> , -a 'I should have been loved'
1 pl.	<i>teríamos</i> (or <i>haveri-</i>	<i>teríamos sido</i>



<i>amos</i> ) <i>amqdo</i> 'we should have loved'	<i>amqdos, -as</i> 'we should have been loved'
---	--

## Subjunctive

Pres. Perf. 1 s.	<i>tenha</i> (or <i>haja</i> ) <i>amqdo</i> '(that) I (may) have loved'	<i>tenha sido amqdo,</i> <i>-a</i> '(that) I (may) have been loved'
------------------	--	--

1 pl.	<i>tenhamos</i> (or <i>hajam</i> <i>os</i> ) <i>amqdo</i> '(that) we (may) have loved'	<i>tenhamos sido</i> <i>amqdos, -as</i> '(that) we (may) have been loved'
-------	---	--

Past Perf. 1 s.	<i>tivesse</i> (or <i>houvesse</i> ) <i>amqdo</i> '(that) I (might) have loved'	<i>tivesse sido amqdo,</i> <i>-a</i> '(that) I might have been loved'
-----------------	--	---

1 pl.	<i>tivéssemos</i> (or <i>hou-</i> <i>véssemos</i> ) <i>amqdo</i> '(that) we (might) have loved'	<i>tivéssemos sido</i> <i>amqdos, -as</i> '(that) we (might) have been loved'
-------	--	---

Fut. Perf. 1 s.	<i>tiver</i> (or <i>houver</i> ) <i>amqdo</i> 'I (may or shall) have loved'	<i>tiver sido amqdo,</i> <i>-a</i> 'I (may or shall) have been loved'
-----------------	---	--

1 pl.	<i>tivermos</i> (or <i>hou-</i> <i>vermos</i> ) <i>amqdo</i> 'we (may or shall) have loved'	<i>tivermos sido amq-</i> <i>dos, -as</i> 'we (may or shall) have been loved'
-------	--	--

## Personal Infinitive Past

1 s.	<i>ter</i> (or <i>haver</i> ) <i>amq-</i>	<i>ter sido amqdo, -a</i> <i>do</i>
1 pl.	<i>termos</i> (or <i>haver-</i> <i>mos</i> ) <i>amqdo</i> 'to have loved'	<i>termos sido amq-</i> <i>dos, -as</i> 'to have been loved'

## Present Perfect Participle (Perfect Gerund)

<i>tendo</i> (or <i>havendo</i> )	<i>tendo sido amqdo,</i> <i>amqdo</i> 'having loved'	<i>-a, -os, -as</i> 'hav- ing been loved'
-----------------------------------	--	--

465. Synopsis, in the First Person Singular, of the Compound Tenses of *Ser*, *Estar*, *Ter*, and *Haver*, with the Auxiliary *Ter*. In the compound tenses, the past participle is invariable (461).

## Infinitive Past

<i>ter sido</i> (or <i>estado</i> ) 'to have been'	<i>ter tido</i> (or <i>havido</i> ) 'to have had'
--	--

## Indicative

Pres. Perf.	<i>tenho sido</i> (or <i>estado</i> ) 'I have been'	<i>tenho tido</i> (or <i>ha-</i> <i>vido</i> ) 'I have had'
Past Perf.	<i>tinha sido</i> (or <i>estado</i> ) 'I had been'	<i>tinha tido</i> (or <i>ha-</i> <i>vido</i> ) 'I had had'
Fut. Perf.	<i>terei sido</i> (or <i>estado</i> ) 'I shall have been'	<i>terei tido</i> (or <i>ha-</i> <i>vido</i> ) 'I shall have had'
Cond. Perf.	<i>teria sido</i> (or <i>estado</i> )	<i>teria tido</i> (or <i>ha-</i>

'I should have been'      *vido*) 'I should  
have had'

## Subjunctive

Pres. Perf. *tenham sido* (or *estqdo*) *tenham tido* (or *ha-*  
'(that) I (may) have *vido*) '(that) I  
been' (may) have had'

Past Perf. *tivesse sido* (or *estqdo*) *tivesse tido* (or  
'(that) I (might) have *havido*) '(that) I  
been' (might) have  
had'

Fut. Perf. *tiver sido* (or *estqdo*) *tiver tido* (or *ha-*  
'I (may or shall) have *vido*) 'I (may or  
been' shall) have had'

## Personal Infinitive Past

*ter sido* (or *estqdo*) 'to *ter tido* (or *havi-*  
have been' do) 'to have had'

## Present Perfect Participle (Perfect Gerund)

*tendo sido* (or *estqdo*) *tendo tido* (or *ha-*  
'having been' *vido*) 'having  
had'

## IRREGULAR VERBS

466. Irregular verbs are those that deviate from the normal conjugation. The first and third persons singular of the preterite are characterized by a change in the radical vowel and by a shifting of the accented syllable, or by the latter alone. These irregularities are chiefly due to conformity to the Latin types from which the verbs come or to analogy with other verbs.

Verbs in which the same consonant sounds are spelled

differently according to the vowels which follow them (387 ff.) are not, on that account, to be considered irregular. Certain parts of irregular verbs are always regular.

467. All the most commonly occurring monosyllabic verbs, viz. *crer*, *dq̃r*, *ir*, *ler*, *ser*, *ver*, *vir*, and *ter*, are irregular.

468. In the following list, the Roman numerals I, II, and III indicate the conjugation. Forms not given are to be regarded as regular. In general, compound verbs not differing in conjugation from their simple verbs are omitted. The future and conditional always have the same stem and are built on the infinitive.

469. *Caber* (II) 'to hold' 'contain' 'be contained in' 'fall to' 'belong to' 'happen opportunely' (527. b).

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.	Pluperf.
<i>caibo</i>	<i>cabia</i>	<i>coube</i>	<i>coubẽra</i>
<i>cq̃bes</i>	<i>cabias</i>	<i>coubẽste</i>	<i>coubẽras</i>
<i>cq̃be</i>	<i>cabia</i>	<i>coube</i>	<i>coubẽra</i>
<i>cabẽmos</i>	<i>cabiamos</i>	<i>coubẽmos</i>	<i>coubẽramos</i>
<i>cabeis</i>	<i>cabieis</i>	<i>coubẽstes</i>	<i>coubẽreis</i>
<i>cq̃bem</i>	<i>cabiam</i>	<i>coubẽram</i>	<i>coubẽram</i>
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.	Imperat.
<i>caiba</i>	<i>coubẽsse</i>	<i>coubẽr</i>	
<i>caibas</i>	<i>coubẽsses</i>	<i>coubẽres</i>	<i>cq̃be</i>
<i>caiba</i>	<i>coubẽsse</i>	<i>coubẽr</i>	
<i>caibq̃mos</i>	<i>coubẽssemos</i>	<i>coubẽrmos</i>	
<i>caibais</i>	<i>coubẽsseis</i>	<i>coubẽrdes</i>	<i>cabei</i>
<i>caibam</i>	<i>coubẽssem</i>	<i>coubẽrem</i>	

Pers. Inf.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)	Past Part.
<i>cabêr</i>	<i>cabendo</i>	<i>cabido</i>
<i>cabêres</i>		
<i>cabêr</i>		
<i>cabêrmos</i>		
<i>cabêrdes</i>		
<i>cabêrem</i>		

470. *Cair* (older *cahir*) (III) 'to fall.'

ndic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.	Pluperf.
<i>caio</i>	<i>caía</i>	<i>caí</i>	<i>caíra</i>
<i>caís</i>	<i>caías</i>	<i>caíste</i>	<i>caíras</i>
<i>cai</i>	<i>caía</i>	<i>caíu</i>	<i>caíra</i>
<i>caímos</i>	<i>caíamos</i>	<i>caímos</i>	<i>caíramos</i>
<i>caís</i>	<i>caíeis</i>	<i>caístes</i>	<i>caíreis</i>
<i>caem</i>	<i>caíam</i>	<i>caíram</i>	<i>caíram</i>
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)
<i>caia</i>	<i>caísse</i>		<i>caindo</i>
<i>caias</i>	<i>caísseis</i>	<i>cai</i>	
<i>caia</i>	<i>caísse</i>		
<i>caiaímos</i>	<i>caíssemos</i>		Past Part.
<i>caiais</i>	<i>caísseis</i>	<i>caí</i>	<i>caído</i>
<i>caiam</i>	<i>caíssem</i>		

Similarly: *atrair* 'to attract,' *distrair* 'to distract,' *esvair* 'to vanish,' *sair* (501) 'to go out,' and their compounds. These verbs are sometimes written with *h* between *a* and *i*, when *i* is accented (e.g., *cahimos*), instead of with an accent, to show that the contiguous vowels do not form a diphthong (43).

471. *Crer* (II) 'to believe' 'think' 'trust.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.	Indic. Fut.
<i>creio</i>	<i>cria</i>	<i>cri</i>	<i>crerei</i>
<i>crês</i>	<i>crias</i>	<i>crêste</i>	<i>crerás</i>
<i>crê</i>	<i>cria</i>	<i>creu</i>	<i>crerá</i>
<i>cremos</i>	<i>criamos</i>	<i>cremos</i>	<i>creremos</i>
<i>credes</i>	<i>crieis</i>	<i>crêstes</i>	<i>crereis</i>
<i>crêem</i>	<i>criam</i>	<i>creçam</i>	<i>crerão</i>
Cond.	Pluperf.	Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.
<i>ceria</i>	<i>creça</i>	<i>creia</i>	<i>crêsse</i>
<i>ceries</i>	<i>creças</i>	<i>creias</i>	<i>crêsses</i>
<i>ceria</i>	<i>creça</i>	<i>creia</i>	<i>crêsse</i>
<i>creríamos</i>	<i>crêramos</i>	<i>creqamos</i>	<i>crêssemos</i>
<i>crerieis</i>	<i>crêreis</i>	<i>creais</i>	<i>crêsseis</i>
<i>creriam</i>	<i>creçam</i>	<i>creiam</i>	<i>crêssem</i>
Subj. Fut. and Pers. Inf.	Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)	Past Part.
<i>crer</i>		<i>crendo</i>	<i>crido</i>
<i>crêres</i>	<i>crê</i>		
<i>crer</i>			
<i>cremos</i>			
<i>credes</i>	<i>crede</i>		
<i>crerem</i>			

Similarly, *ler* 'to read' (482).

472. *Dar* (I) 'to give.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>dou</i>	<i>dava</i>	<i>dei</i>
<i>dás</i>	<i>davas</i>	<i>dêste</i>
<i>dá</i>	<i>dava</i>	<i>deu</i>

<i>damos</i>	<i>dávamos</i>	<i>demos</i>	
<i>dais</i>	<i>dáveis</i>	<i>dêstes</i>	
<i>dão</i>	<i>davam</i>	<i>dêram</i>	
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.	
<i>darei</i>	<i>daria</i>	<i>dêra</i>	
<i>darás</i>	<i>darias</i>	<i>dêras</i>	
<i>dará</i>	<i>daria</i>	<i>dêra</i>	
<i>darêmos</i>	<i>dariamos</i>	<i>dêramos</i>	
<i>dareis</i>	<i>darieis</i>	<i>dêreis</i>	
<i>darão</i>	<i>dariam</i>	<i>dêram</i>	
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.	Pers. Inf.
<i>dê</i>	<i>dêsse</i>	<i>dêr</i>	<i>dqr</i>
<i>dês</i>	<i>dêsses</i>	<i>dêres</i>	<i>dqres</i>
<i>dê</i>	<i>dêsse</i>	<i>dêr</i>	<i>dqr</i>
<i>dêmos</i>	<i>dêssemos</i>	<i>dêrmos</i>	<i>dqrmos</i>
<i>deis</i>	<i>dêsseis</i>	<i>dêrdes</i>	<i>dqrdes</i>
<i>dêem</i>	<i>dêsssem</i>	<i>dêrem</i>	<i>dqrem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)	Past Part.	
2. s. <i>dá</i>	<i>dando</i>	<i>dqdo</i>	
2. pl. <i>dai</i>			

This is the only monosyllabic verb of the first conjugation. Similarly, *desdqr* 'to take back' 'untie.' *Circundqr* 'to inclose' is regular.

#### 473. *Dizêr* (II) 'to say' 'tell.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>digo</i>	<i>dizia</i>	<i>disse</i>
<i>dizes</i>	<i>dizias</i>	<i>dissêste</i>
<i>diz</i>	<i>dizia</i>	<i>disse</i>

<i>dizemos</i>	<i>dizíamos</i>	<i>dissêmos</i>	
<i>dizeis</i>	<i>dizíeis</i>	<i>dissêstes</i>	
<i>dizem</i>	<i>diziam</i>	<i>dissêram</i>	
Indic. Fut.*	Cond.*	Pluperf.	
<i>direi</i>	<i>diria</i>	<i>dissêra</i>	
<i>dirás</i>	<i>dirias</i>	<i>dissêras</i>	
<i>dirá</i>	<i>diria</i>	<i>dissêra</i>	
<i>diremos</i>	<i>diríamos</i>	<i>dissêramos</i>	
<i>direis</i>	<i>diríeis</i>	<i>dissêreis</i>	
<i>dirão</i>	<i>diriam</i>	<i>dissêram</i>	
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.	Pers. Inf.
<i>diga</i>	<i>dissêsse</i>	<i>dissêr</i>	<i>dizêr</i>
<i>digas</i>	<i>dissêsses</i>	<i>dissêres</i>	<i>dizêres</i>
<i>diga</i>	<i>dissêsse</i>	<i>dissêr</i>	<i>dizêr</i>
<i>digamos</i>	<i>dissêssemos</i>	<i>dissêrmos</i>	<i>dizêrmos</i>
<i>digais</i>	<i>dissêsseis</i>	<i>dissêrdes</i>	<i>dizêrdes</i>
<i>digam</i>	<i>dissêsem</i>	<i>dissêrem</i>	<i>dizêrem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)	Past Part.	
2. sg. <i>diz(e)**</i>	<i>dizendo</i>	<i>dito</i>	
2. pl. <i>dizei</i>			

\*For the shortened form of the infinitive used to construct the future and conditional, see 382. b. Such forms as *dizerei* and *dizêr-me-á* for *direi* and *dir-me há* are wrong.

\*\*The correct and literary form of the second person singular of the imperative is *dize*, but it is scarcely ever used in current speech, except when there is a direct object pronoun:

*dize-o tu* (*di-lo tu* is somewhat more popular) 'tell it,'  
*diz-me cá* 'tell me now.' The same remark applies to



474. *Estar* (I) 'to be.' For complete conjugation, see 425.

475. *Esvair* (III) 'to be exhausted' 'dissipate' is conjugated like *cair*, 470.

476. *Fazer* (II) 'to do' 'make.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>faço</i>	<i>fazia</i>	<i>fiz</i>
<i>fazes</i>	<i>fazias</i>	<i>fizeste</i>
<i>faz</i>	<i>fazia</i>	<i>fêz</i>
<i>fazemos</i>	<i>fazíamos</i>	<i>fizemos</i>
<i>fazeis</i>	<i>fazíeis</i>	<i>fizestes</i>
<i>fazem</i>	<i>faziam</i>	<i>fizeram</i>
Indic. Fut.*	Cond.*	Pluperf.
<i>farei</i>	<i>faria</i>	<i>fizera</i>
<i>farás</i>	<i>faria</i>	<i>fizeras</i>
<i>fará</i>	<i>faria</i>	<i>fizera</i>
<i>faremos</i>	<i>fariamos</i>	<i>fizéramos</i>
<i>fareis</i>	<i>fariéis</i>	<i>fizéreis</i>
<i>farão</i>	<i>fariam</i>	<i>fizeram</i>

---

the imperative of *fazer* 'to do' and of *trazer* 'to bring:'  
*faze-o tu* 'do it,' *traze-o tu* 'bring it' (382. b).

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *dizer*: *bemdizer* 'to bless,' *condizer* 'to harmonize' 'agree' 'suit' 'match,' *contradizer* 'to contradict,' *desdizer* 'to gainsay' 'retract,' *interdizer* 'to forbid' 'proscribe,' *maldizer* 'to curse,' and *predizer* 'to predict' 'foretell.'

\*For the shortened form of the infinitive used to form the future and conditional of this verb, see 382. b. Such forms as *fazerei* and *fazer-me-á*, for *farei* and *far-me há*, are wrong.

Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.	Pers. Inf.
<i>faça</i>	<i>fizesse</i>	<i>fizer</i>	<i>fazer</i>
<i>faças</i>	<i>fizesseis</i>	<i>fizeres</i>	<i>fazeres</i>
<i>faça</i>	<i>fizesse</i>	<i>fizer</i>	<i>fazer</i>
<i>façamos</i>	<i>fizéssemos</i>	<i>fizermos</i>	<i>fazermos</i>
<i>façais</i>	<i>fizésseis</i>	<i>fizerdes</i>	<i>fazerdes</i>
<i>façam</i>	<i>fizessem</i>	<i>fizerem</i>	<i>fazerem</i>

Imperat.

2. sg. *faça* (correct and literary), *faça* (usual form)†

2. pl. *fazei*

Pres. Part. (Gerund), *fazendo* Past Part., *feito*

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fazer*: *afazer* 'to accustom,' *contrafazer* 'to counterfeit' 'imitate' 'disguise,' *desfazer* 'to undo' 'destroy' 'annul,' *perfazer* 'to perfect' 'complete,' *refazer* 'to remake' 'restore,' and *satisfazer* 'to satisfy.'

477. *Frigir* (III) 'to fry' (421).

478. *Haver* (II) 'to have.' For complete conjugation, see 427.

479. *Ir* (III) 'to go.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>vou</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>fui</i>
<i>vais</i> (popularly <i>vás</i> )	<i>ias</i>	<i>foste</i>
<i>vai</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>foi</i>
<i>vamos</i> (less common <i>imos</i> )	<i>íamos</i>	<i>fômos</i>
<i>ides</i>	<i>íeis</i>	<i>fôstes</i>
<i>vão</i>	<i>iam</i>	<i>fôram</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>irei</i>	<i>iria</i>	<i>fôra</i>
<i>irás</i>	<i>irias</i>	<i>fôras</i>
<i>irá</i>	<i>iria</i>	<i>fôra</i>

†See note\*\* to *dizer*, 473.

<i>iremos</i>	<i>iríamos</i>	<i>fôramos</i>	
<i>ireis</i>	<i>iríeis</i>	<i>fôreis</i>	
<i>irão</i>	<i>iriam</i>	<i>fôram</i>	
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.	Pers. Inf.
<i>vá</i>	<i>fosse</i>	<i>fôr</i>	<i>ir</i>
<i>íais</i>	<i>fosses</i>	<i>fôres</i>	<i>ires</i>
<i>ia</i>	<i>fosse</i>	<i>fôr</i>	<i>ir</i>
<i>vamos</i>	<i>fôssemos</i>	<i>fôrmos</i>	<i>irmos</i>
<i>vades</i>	<i>fôsseis</i>	<i>fôrdes</i>	<i>irdes</i>
<i>vão</i>	<i>fôssem</i>	<i>fôrem</i>	<i>irem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)		Past Part.
2. sg. <i>vai</i>	<i>indo</i>		<i>ido</i>
2. pl. <i>ide</i>			

*Ir* has lost some of its proper forms, and, in the preterite and pluperfect indicative and the imperfect and future subjunctive, has borrowed from *ser* 'to be' to replace them. The two verbs are not distinguished by the spelling but only by the context. The forms meaning 'to go' are always followed by the prepositions *a* or *para* or an infinitive:

*tu que foste passear* 'you who went walking,' *foi à Europa* 'he went to Europe,' *fômos para casa* 'we went home.'

480. *Preterir* 'to pass over' does not follow the paradigm of *ir*.

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>pretiro</i>	<i>preteria</i>	<i>preteri</i>
<i>preteres</i>	etc.	etc.
<i>pretêre</i>		
<i>preterimos</i>		
<i>preteris</i>		
<i>pretêrem</i>		

Indic. Fut.

*preterirei*

etc.

Cond.

*preteriria*

etc.

481. *Jazêr* (II) 'to lie' 'recline' 'be situated.'

This verb is rare and the forms in parentheses are obsolete. It is now generally replaced by *estar deitado*. The only forms in general use are *jazêr*, *jáz*, *jázem*, *jazia*, *jazias*, and *jaziam*.

Indic. Pres.

Indic. Impf.

Pret.

*jázo* (*jáço*)*jazia**jazi* (*jouve*)*jázes**jazias**jazeste* (*jouvêste*)*jáz**jazia**jazeu* (*jouve*)*jazemos**jazíamos**jazemos* (*jouvêmos*)*jazeis**jazíeis**jazestes* (*jouvêstes*)*jázem**jaziam**jazeram* (*jouvêram*)

Indic. Fut.

Cond.

Pluperf.

*jazerei**jazeria**jazera* (*jouvêra*)*jazerás**jazérias**jazeras* (*jouvêras*)*jazerá**jazeria**jazera* (*jouvêra*)*jazeremos**jazeríamos**jazêramos* (*jouvêramos*)*jazereis**jazerieis**jazêreis* (*jouvêreis*)*jazerão**jazeriam**jazeram* (*jouvêram*)

Subj. Pres.

Subj. Impf.

Subj. Fut.

*jáza* (*jáça*)*jazesse* (*jouvêsse*)*jazêr* (*jouvêr*)*jázas* (*jáças*)*jazesses* (*jouvêsses*)*jazêres* (*jouvêres*)

etc.

etc.

etc.

Imperat.

Pers. Inf.

2. sg. *jáze* (literary), *jáz* (usual form)

*jazêr**jazêres*,2. pl. *jazei*

etc.

Pres. Part. (Gerund), *jazendo*      Past Part., *jazido*

In like manner, *adjazer* 'to be adjacent.'

482. *Ler* (II) 'to read.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.	Pluperf.
<i>leio</i>	<i>lia</i>	<i>li</i>	<i>lera</i>
<i>lês</i>	<i>lias</i>	<i>lêste</i>	<i>leras</i>
<i>lê</i>	<i>lia</i>	<i>leu</i>	<i>lera</i>
<i>lêmos</i>	<i>liamos</i>	<i>lêmos</i>	<i>lêramos</i>
<i>ledes</i>	<i>leis</i>	<i>lêstes</i>	<i>lêreis</i>
<i>lêem</i>	<i>liam</i>	<i>leram</i>	<i>leram</i>

Indic. Fut.	Cond.
<i>lerei</i>	<i>leria</i>
<i>lerás</i>	<i>lerias</i>
<i>lerá</i>	<i>leria</i>
<i>leremos</i>	<i>leríamos</i>
<i>lereis</i>	<i>leríeis</i>
<i>lerão</i>	<i>leriam</i>

Subj. Fut. and			
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Pers. Inf.	Imperat.
<i>leia</i>	<i>lesse</i>	<i>ler</i>	
<i>leias</i>	<i>lesses</i>	<i>leres</i>	<i>lê</i>
<i>leia</i>	<i>lesse</i>	<i>ler</i>	
<i>leqmos</i>	<i>lêssemos</i>	<i>lermos</i>	
<i>leais</i>	<i>lêsseis</i>	<i>lerdes</i>	<i>lede</i>
<i>leiam</i>	<i>lêssem</i>	<i>lerem</i>	

Pres. Part. (Gerund), *lendo*

Past Part., *lido*

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *ler*, *reler* 'to read over' and *tresler* 'to read too much' 'talk nonsense.'

483. *Medir* (III) 'to measure.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>meço</i>	<i>media</i>	<i>medi</i>
<i>meçes</i>	<i>medias</i>	<i>mediste</i>
<i>meçe</i>	<i>media</i>	<i>mediu</i>
<i>medimos</i>	<i>medíamos</i>	<i>medimos</i>
<i>medis</i>	<i>medíeis</i>	<i>medistes</i>
<i>meçem</i>	<i>mediam</i>	<i>mediram</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>medirei</i>	<i>mediria</i>	<i>medira</i>
<i>medirás</i>	<i>medirias</i>	<i>mediras</i>
<i>medirá</i>	<i>mediria</i>	<i>medira</i>
<i>medirêmos</i>	<i>mediríamos</i>	<i>mediramos</i>
<i>medireis</i>	<i>medirieis</i>	<i>medireis</i>
<i>medirão</i>	<i>mediriam</i>	<i>mediram</i>

Subj. Fut. and

Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Pers. Inf.	Imperat.
<i>meça</i>	<i>medisse</i>	<i>medir</i>	
<i>meças</i>	<i>medisses</i>	<i>medires</i>	<i>meçe</i>
<i>meça</i>	<i>medisse</i>	<i>medir</i>	
<i>meçamos</i>	<i>medissemos</i>	<i>medirmos</i>	
<i>meçais</i>	<i>medísseis</i>	<i>medirdes</i>	<i>medi</i>
<i>meçam</i>	<i>medissem</i>	<i>medirem</i>	

Pres. Part. (Gerund), *medindo* Past Part., *medido*

484. *Mentir* (III) 'to lie.'

Indic. Pres.	Subj. Pres.	Imperat.
<i>mino</i>	<i>mintá</i>	
<i>mentes</i>	<i>mintas</i>	<i>mente</i>
<i>mente</i>	<i>mintá</i>	

<i>mentimos</i>	<i>mintamos</i>	
<i>mentis</i>	<i>mintais</i>	<i>menti</i>
<i>mentem</i>	<i>mintam</i>	

485. *Ouvir* (III) 'to hear.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>ouço (oiço)</i>	<i>ouvía</i>	<i>ouvi</i>
<i>ouves</i>	<i>ouvias</i>	<i>ouviste</i>
<i>ouve</i>	<i>ouvía</i>	<i>ouviu</i>
<i>ouvimos</i>	<i>ouvíamos</i>	<i>ouvimos</i>
<i>ouvis</i>	<i>ouvíeis</i>	<i>ouvistes</i>
<i>ouvem</i>	<i>ouviam</i>	<i>ouviram</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>ouvirei</i>	<i>ouviria</i>	<i>ouvirá</i>
<i>ouvirás</i>	<i>ouvirias</i>	<i>ouviras</i>
<i>ouvirá</i>	<i>ouviria</i>	<i>ouvirá</i>
<i>ouviremos</i>	<i>ouviríamos</i>	<i>ouviríamos</i>
<i>ouvireis</i>	<i>ouviríeis</i>	<i>ouviríeis</i>
<i>ouvirão</i>	<i>ouviriam</i>	<i>ouviram</i>
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut. and Pers. Inf.
<i>ouça (oiça)</i>	<i>ouvisse</i>	<i>ouvir</i>
<i>ouças (oiças)</i>	<i>ouvisseis</i>	<i>ouviress</i>
<i>ouça (oiça)</i>	<i>ouvisse</i>	<i>ouvir</i>
<i>ouçamos (oiçamos)</i>	<i>ouvissemos</i>	<i>ouvirmos</i>
<i>ouçais (oiçais)</i>	<i>ouvisseis</i>	<i>ouvirdes</i>
<i>ouçam (oiçam)</i>	<i>ouvissem</i>	<i>ouviress</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund),	
2. sg. <i>ouve</i>	<i>ouvindo</i>	
2. pl. <i>ouvi</i>	Past Part., <i>ouvido</i> (colloquially but incorrect <i>ouvisto</i> )	

486. *Parir* (III) 'to bring forth.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.	Indic. Fut.
<i>paíro</i>	<i>paria</i>	<i>pari</i>	<i>parirei</i>
<i>paíres</i>	etc.	etc.	etc.
<i>paíre</i>			
<i>parimos</i>			
<i>paris</i>			
<i>paírem</i>			
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.		
<i>paíra</i>	<i>parisse</i>		
<i>paíras</i>	etc.		
<i>paíra</i>			
<i>paírãmos</i>			
<i>paírais</i>			
<i>paíram</i>			

487. *Pedir* (III) 'to ask' 'request.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>peço</i>	<i>pedia</i>	<i>pedi</i>
<i>pedes</i>	<i>pedias</i>	<i>pediste</i>
<i>pede</i>	<i>pedia</i>	<i>pediu</i>
<i>pedimos</i>	<i>pedíamos</i>	<i>pedimos</i>
<i>pedis</i>	<i>pedíeis</i>	<i>pedistes</i>
<i>pedem</i>	<i>pediam</i>	<i>pediram</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>pedirei</i>	<i>pediria</i>	<i>pedira</i>
<i>pedirás</i>	<i>pedirias</i>	<i>pediras</i>
<i>pedirá</i>	<i>pediria</i>	<i>pedira</i>
<i>pediremos</i>	<i>pediríamos</i>	<i>pediramos</i>
<i>pedireis</i>	<i>pediríeis</i>	<i>pedireis</i>
<i>pedirão</i>	<i>pediriam</i>	<i>pediram</i>



Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut. and Pers. Inf.
<i>peça</i>	<i>pedisse</i>	<i>pedir</i>
<i>peças</i>	<i>pedisses</i>	<i>pedires</i>
<i>peça</i>	<i>pedisse</i>	<i>pedir</i>
<i>peçamos</i>	<i>pedíssemos</i>	<i>pedirmos</i>
<i>peçais</i>	<i>pedísseis</i>	<i>pedirdes</i>
<i>peçam</i>	<i>pedissem</i>	<i>pedirem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)	Past Part.
2. sg. <i>peça</i>	<i>pedindo</i>	<i>pedido</i>
2. pl. <i>pedi</i> ,		

488. *Desimpedir* 'to release,' *despedir* 'to dismiss,' *despedir-se* 'to take leave,' *expedir* 'to dispatch,' and *impedir* 'to impede' are not compounds of *pedir* but are now usually conjugated like it or, less often, regularly:

## Indic. Pres.

<i>despeço, despido</i>	<i>expeço, expido</i>	<i>impeço, impido</i>
<i>despeões, despides</i>	<i>expeões, expides</i>	<i>impeões, impides</i>
<i>despe, despide</i>	<i>expe, expide</i>	<i>impe, impide</i>
etc.	etc.	etc.

## Subj. Pres.

<i>despeça, despida</i>	<i>expeça, expida</i>	<i>impeça, impida</i>
etc.	etc.	etc.

489. *Perder* (II) 'to lose' 'destroy' is regular except in the first person singular of the present indicative and in all forms of the present subjunctive.

Indic. Pres.	Indic Impf.	Pret.
<i>perco</i>	<i>perdia</i>	<i>perdi</i>
<i>perdes</i>	<i>perdias</i>	<i>perdeste</i>
<i>perde</i>	<i>perdia</i>	<i>perdeu</i>

<i>perdemos</i>	<i>perdiamos</i>	<i>perdemos</i>
<i>perdeis</i>	<i>perdieis</i>	<i>perdestes</i>
<i>perdem</i>	<i>perdiam</i>	<i>perderam</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>perderei</i>	<i>perderia</i>	<i>perdêra</i>
<i>perderás</i>	<i>perderias</i>	<i>perdêras</i>
<i>perderá</i>	<i>perderia</i>	<i>perdêra</i>
<i>perderemos</i>	<i>perderíamos</i>	<i>perdêramos</i>
<i>perdereis</i>	<i>perderieis</i>	<i>perdêreis</i>
<i>perderão</i>	<i>perderiam</i>	<i>perderam</i>
		Subj. Fut. and
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Pers. Inf.
<i>perca</i>	<i>perdesse</i>	<i>perder</i>
<i>percas</i>	<i>perdessem</i>	<i>perderes</i>
<i>perca</i>	<i>perdesse</i>	<i>perder</i>
<i>percamos</i>	<i>perdessemos</i>	<i>perdermos</i>
<i>percais</i>	<i>perdesseis</i>	<i>perderdes</i>
<i>percam</i>	<i>perdessem</i>	<i>perderem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)	Past Part.
2. sg. <i>perde</i>	<i>perdendo</i>	<i>perdido</i>
2. pl. <i>perdei</i>		

490. *Poder* (II) 'to be able' (cf., for meaning, *conhecer* and *saber*, 500).

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.*
<i>posso</i>	<i>podia</i>	<i>pude</i>
<i>podes</i>	<i>podias</i>	<i>pudeste</i>
<i>pode</i>	<i>podia</i>	<i>pôde</i>

\*The spelling *ou* instead of *u*, which is frequently found in the preterite, is incorrect.

<i>podemos</i>	<i>podíamos</i>	<i>pudemos</i>	
<i>podeis</i>	<i>podíeis</i>	<i>pudestes</i>	
<i>podem</i>	<i>podiam</i>	<i>puderam</i>	
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.	
<i>poderei</i>	<i>poderia</i>	<i>pudera</i>	
<i>poderás</i>	<i>poderias</i>	<i>puderás</i>	
<i>poderá</i>	<i>poderia</i>	<i>pudera</i>	
<i>poderemos</i>	<i>poderíamos</i>	<i>pudêramos</i>	
<i>poderéis</i>	<i>poderíeis</i>	<i>pudêreis</i>	
<i>poderão</i>	<i>poderiam</i>	<i>pudêram</i>	
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.	Pers. Inf.
<i>possa</i>	<i>pudesse</i>	<i>puder</i>	<i>poder</i>
<i>possas</i>	<i>pudesses</i>	<i>puderes</i>	<i>poderes</i>
<i>possa</i>	<i>pudesse</i>	<i>puder</i>	<i>poder</i>
<i>possamos</i>	<i>pudêssemos</i>	<i>pudermos</i>	<i>pudermos</i>
<i>possais</i>	<i>pudêsseis</i>	<i>puderdes</i>	<i>poderdes</i>
<i>possam</i>	<i>pudêssem</i>	<i>pudêrem</i>	<i>pudêrem</i>
Imperat. (rare)	Pres. Part. (Gerund), <i>podendo</i>		
2. sg. <i>pode</i>	Past Part., <i>podido</i>		
2. pl. <i>podei</i>			

491. *Pôr* (IV) 'to put' 'place' stands for obsolete *põer*, from Latin *ponĕre*, by the fall of intervocalic *n* and the contraction in many forms of *õe* to *o*. This is the only Portuguese verb with an irregular infinitive.

492. Infinitive: *pôr* 'to put' 'place' 'lay' 'set.'

Note: The spellings in parentheses are frequently used but are incorrect.

## Indicative

## FUTURE

*ponho* 'I put' 'do put' 'am putting'

*pões*

*põe*

*ponhos*

*pondes*

*ponham, põe*

*porer* 'I shall (or 'will') put'

*porás*

*porá*

*poreremos*

*poreris*

*porão*

## IMPERFECT

*punha* 'I put' 'was putting' 'used to put'

*punhas*

*punha*

*púnhamos*

*púnheis*

*punham*

## CONDITIONAL

*poria* 'I should (or 'would') put'

*porias*

*poria*

*poríamos*

*poríeis*

*poriam*

## PRETERITE

*pus* (*puz*) 'I put' 'did put'

*puseste* (*poseste, puzeste, pozeeste*)

*pôs* (*pôz*)

*pusemos* (*pozemos, puzemos*)

*pusestes* (*posestes, puzestes, pozeestes*)

*puseram* (*pozeram, puzeram*)

## PLUPERFECT

*pusera* (*posera, pozera, puzera*) 'I had put'

*puseras* (*poseras, pozeras, puzeras*)

*pusera*

*puséramos*

*puséreis*

*puseram*

## Subjunctive

## PRESENT

*põnha* '(that) I (may or  
let me) put'

*põnhas*

*põnha*

*põnhamos*

*põnhais*

*põnham*

## FUTURE

*puser* (*poser, pozer, puzer*)  
'I (may or shall) put'

*puseres* (*poseres, pozeres, puzeres*)

*puser* (*puzer*)

*pusermos* (*posermos, pozermos, puzermos*)

*puserdes* (*poserdes, pozerdes, puzerdes*)

*puserem* (*poserem, pozerem, puzerem*)

## IMPERFECT

*pusesse* (*posesse, pozesse, puzesse*) '(that or if I  
might) put'

*pusessem* (*posessem, pozessem, puzessem*)

*pusesse* (*posesse*)

*pusessemos* (*poséssemos, puzéssemos*)

*pusesseis* (*posésseis, puzésseis*)

*pusessem* (*posessem, puzessem*)

Pres. Part. (Gerund)

*põndo* 'putting' 'placing'

## Imperative

Sing. 2 *põe* 'put'

Pl. 2 *põnde*

The other persons are supplied from the present subjunctive.

## Pers. Inf.

*pôr*

*pores*

*pôr*

etc.

## Past Part.

*põsto, põsta, põstos, põstas*  
'put' 'placed'

493. The many derivatives of *pôr* are conjugated

exactly like it, but have no need of the circumflex accent in the infinitive:

*antepor* 'to set before' 'prefer,' *apor* 'to apply,' *compor* 'to compose,' *contrapor* 'to oppose' 'compare,' *decompor* 'to decompose' 'take apart,' *depor* 'to depose' 'lay down,' *descompor* 'to destroy' 'injure,' *dispor* 'to dispose,' *expor* 'to expose,' *impor* 'to impose,' *indispor* 'to disturb' 'unfit,' *interpor* 'to interpose' 'insert,' *juxtapor* 'to juxtapose,' *opor* 'to oppose,' *pospor* 'to postpone' (3rd sing. pres. ind. *pospõe*), *prepor* 'to prefer,' *pressupor* 'to presuppose,' *propor* 'to propose,' *repor* 'to restore,' *sobrepor* 'to superpose,' *solopor* 'to put under,' *supor* 'to suppose,' *transpor* 'to transpose.'

494. *Prazer* (II) 'to please' is used only in the third person singular.

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>praz</i>	<i>prazia</i>	<i>prouve</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>prazerá</i>	<i>prazeria</i>	<i>prouvera</i>
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.
<i>praza</i>	<i>prouvesse</i>	<i>prouver</i>
Imperat. (rare) <i>praze</i> (literary), <i>praz</i> (current form)		
Pres. Part. (Gerund), <i>prazendo</i> Past Part., <i>prazido</i>		

In like manner are conjugated: *aprazer* 'to please' and *desprazer* 'to displease,' except that they are used in all the persons and in both numbers. *Comprazer* 'to please' is irregular only in the 3rd pers. sing. pres. ind., in which it agrees with *prazer*. It is conjugated regularly in the preterite, *comprazi*, *comprazeste*, *comprazeu*, etc.

495. *Prover* (II) 'to provide' and *desprover* 'to deprive' are conjugated like *ver* (506), except that they are regular in the following tenses.

Pret.	Pluperf.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.
<i>provi</i>	<i>provera</i>	<i>provesse</i>	<i>prover</i>
<i>proveste</i>	<i>proveras</i>	<i>provesseis</i>	<i>proveres</i>
<i>proveu</i>	<i>provera</i>	<i>provesse</i>	<i>prover</i>
<i>provemos</i>	<i>provêramos</i>	<i>provêssemos</i>	<i>provermos</i>
<i>provestes</i>	<i>provêreis</i>	<i>provêsseis</i>	<i>proverdes</i>
<i>proveram</i>	<i>proveram</i>	<i>provessem</i>	<i>proverem</i>

Past Part., *provido* Pres. Part. (Gerund), *provendo*  
 496. *Querer* (II) 'to wish' 'like.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.**
<i>quero</i>	<i>queria</i>	<i>quis</i>
<i>queres</i>	<i>querias</i>	<i>quiseste</i>
<i>quere (quer)*</i>	<i>queria</i>	<i>quis</i>
<i>queremos</i>	<i>queríamos</i>	<i>quisemos</i>
<i>quereis</i>	<i>querieis</i>	<i>quisestes</i>
<i>querem</i>	<i>queriam</i>	<i>quiseram</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.**
<i>quererei</i>	<i>quereria</i>	<i>quisera</i>
<i>quererás</i>	<i>quererias</i>	<i>quiseras</i>
<i>quererá</i>	<i>quereria</i>	<i>quisera</i>

\*The shorter form *quer* is the one usually employed, but the fuller and strictly correct form *quere* is also used when followed by a personal pronoun beginning with a vowel, *quere-o* 'he wishes it.' *Quere* is to be preferred for the verbal form, reserving *quer* for the conjunction 'whether.'

\*\*In the preterite and pluperfect indicative and the imperfect and future subjunctive, *z* is often, but less correctly, written instead of the intervocalic *s*.

<i>quereremos</i>	<i>quereríamos</i>	<i>quiséramos</i>	
<i>querereis</i>	<i>quereríeis</i>	<i>quiséreis</i>	
<i>quererão</i>	<i>quereriam</i>	<i>quiseram</i>	
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.**	Subj. Fut.*	Pers. Inf.
<i>queira</i>	<i>quisesse</i>	<i>quiser</i>	<i>querer</i>
<i>queiras</i>	<i>quisesses</i>	<i>quiseres</i>	<i>quereres</i>
<i>queira</i>	<i>quisesse</i>	<i>quiser</i>	<i>querer</i>
<i>queiramos</i>	<i>quiséssemos</i>	<i>quisermos</i>	<i>querermos</i>
<i>queirais</i>	<i>quisésseis</i>	<i>quiserdes</i>	<i>quererdes</i>
<i>queiram</i>	<i>quisessem</i>	<i>quiserem</i>	<i>quererem</i>
Imperat. (rare)	Pres. Part. (Gerund), <i>querendo</i>		
2. sg. <i>quer(e)</i>	Past Part., <i>querido</i>		
2. pl. <i>querie</i>			

497. *Requerer* (II) 'to request' 'solicit' does not follow the conjugation of *querer*. It is regular except in the first person singular of the present indicative and in the present subjunctive.

Indic. Pres.	Impf.	Pret.	Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.
<i>requero</i>	<i>requeria</i>	<i>requeri</i>	<i>requera</i>	<i>requerêsse</i>
<i>requeres</i>	Fut.	<i>requerêste</i>	<i>requeras</i>	
<i>requer(e)*</i>	<i>requererei</i>	<i>requereu</i>	<i>requera</i>	
<i>requeremos</i>	Cond.	<i>requerêmos</i>	<i>requeramos</i>	
<i>requereis</i>	<i>requereria</i>	<i>requerêstes</i>	<i>requeráis</i>	
<i>requerem</i>		<i>requerêram</i>	<i>requerám</i>	
Imperat.	Past Part., <i>requerido</i>			
2. sg. <i>requere</i>				
2. pl. <i>requerei</i>				

\*Instead of the strictly correct third pers. sing. *requere*, the shorter form *requer* is generally used.



498. *Redimir* (III) 'to redeem.' Its contracted form (*remir*) is defective and lacks all the forms of the singular and the third person plural of the indicative, all the present subjunctive, and the imperative.

Indic. Pres.	Subj. Pres.	Imperat.
<i>redimo</i>	<i>redima</i>	
<i>redimes</i>	<i>redimas</i>	<i>redime</i>
<i>redime</i>	<i>redima</i>	
<i>redimimos, remimos</i>	<i>redimamos</i>	
<i>redimis, remis</i>	<i>redimais</i>	<i>redimi</i>
<i>redimem</i>	<i>redimam</i>	

499. *Rir* (III) 'to laugh' is most often used reflexively, *rir-se*.

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>rio</i>	<i>ria</i>	<i>ri</i>
<i>ris</i>	<i>rias</i>	<i>riste</i>
<i>ri</i>	<i>ria</i>	<i>riu</i>
<i>rimos</i>	<i>riamos</i> (cf. Pres. Subj.)	<i>rimos</i>
<i>rides</i>	<i>rieis</i>	<i>ristes</i>
<i>riem</i>	<i>riam</i>	<i>riram</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>rirei</i>	<i>riria</i>	<i>rira</i>
<i>rirás</i>	<i>ririas</i>	<i>riras</i>
<i>rirá</i>	<i>riria</i>	<i>rira</i>
<i>riríamos</i>	<i>riríamos</i>	<i>riríamos</i>
<i>rireis</i>	<i>riríeis</i>	<i>riríeis</i>
<i>rirão</i>	<i>ririam</i>	<i>ririam</i>

Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut. and Pers. Inf.
<i>ria</i>	<i>risse</i>	<i>rir</i>
<i>rias</i>	<i>risseis</i>	<i>rires</i>
<i>ria</i>	<i>risse</i>	<i>rir</i>
<i>riamos</i> (cf. Impf. Ind.)	<i>rissemos</i>	<i>irmos</i>
<i>riais</i>	<i>risseis</i>	<i>irdes</i>
<i>riam</i>	<i>rissem</i>	<i>irem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)	Past Part.
2. sg. <i>ri</i>	<i>rindo</i>	<i>rido</i>
2. pl. <i>ride</i>		

Similarly, *sorrir* 'to smile.'

500. *Saber* (II) 'to know' 'know how' 'can' (French *savoir*); cf. *conhecer* 'to know' 'be acquainted with' (French *connaître*) and *poder* 'to be able' 'be capable' 'be permitted' (French *pouvoir*) 490:

*V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> sabe português?* 'do you know Portuguese?'  
*o Snr. sabe escrever à máquina?* 'do you know  
 how to typewrite?' *pode ler* 'he can (or 'may')  
 read,' *conhece este homem?* 'do you know this  
 man?'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>sei</i>	<i>sabia</i>	<i>soube</i>
<i>sabes</i>	<i>sabias</i>	<i>soubeste</i>
<i>sabe</i>	<i>sabia</i>	<i>soube</i>
<i>sabemos</i>	<i>sabíamos</i>	<i>soubemos</i>
<i>sabeis</i>	<i>sabíeis</i>	<i>soubestes</i>
<i>sabem</i>	<i>sabiam</i>	<i>souberam</i>

Indic. Fut.		Cond.		Pluperf.
<i>saberei</i>		<i>saberia</i>		<i>soubëra</i>
<i>saberás</i>		<i>saberias</i>		<i>soubëras</i>
<i>saberá</i>		<i>saberia</i>		<i>soubëra</i>
<i>saberemos</i>		<i>saberíamos</i>		<i>soubëramos</i>
<i>sabereis</i>		<i>saberteis</i>		<i>soubëreis</i>
<i>saberão</i>		<i>saberiam</i>		<i>soubëram</i>
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.		Pers. Inf.
<i>saiba</i>	<i>soubesse</i>	<i>souber</i>		<i>saber</i>
<i>saibas</i>	<i>soubesses</i>	<i>souberes</i>		<i>sabêres</i>
<i>saiba</i>	<i>soubesse</i>	<i>souber</i>		<i>saber</i>
<i>saibamos</i>	<i>soubêssemos</i>	<i>soubermos</i>		<i>sabêrmos</i>
<i>saibais</i>	<i>soubêsseis</i>	<i>souberdes</i>		<i>sabêrdes</i>
<i>saibam</i>	<i>soubêssem</i>	<i>souberem</i>		<i>sabêrem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)			Past Part.
2. sg. <i>sabe</i>	<i>sabendo</i>			<i>sabido</i>
2. pl. <i>sabei</i>				

501. *Sair* (III) 'to go out' 'go forth' is conjugated like *cair* (470).

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>saio</i>	<i>sata</i>	<i>sai</i>
<i>sais</i>	<i>satas</i>	<i>saište</i>
<i>sai</i>	<i>sata</i>	<i>saiu</i>
<i>saimos</i>	<i>saimos</i>	<i>saimos</i>
<i>sais</i>	<i>saišeis</i>	<i>saištes</i>
<i>saem</i>	<i>saiam</i>	<i>saiŕam</i>
Pluperf.	Subj. Pres.	Imperat.
<i>saira</i>	<i>saia</i>	
<i>saiŕas</i>	<i>saias</i>	<i>sai</i>
<i>saira</i>	<i>saia</i>	

<i>sairamos</i>	<i>sairmos</i>	
<i>saitreis</i>	<i>saiiais</i>	<i>sai</i>
<i>sairam</i>	<i>saiam</i>	

Pres. Part. (Gerund), *saindo*      Past Part., *saido*

In like manner are conjugated *contrair* 'to contract,' *decair* 'to decay,' and *trair* 'to betray.'

502. *Ser* 'to be.' For complete conjugation, see 424.

503. *Ter* 'to have.' For complete conjugation, see 426.

504. *Trazêr* (II) 'to bring' 'carry' 'wear' 'bear.' The forms in parentheses are dialectic.

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.*
<i>trago</i>	<i>trazia</i>	<i>trouxe (trouve)</i>
<i>trazes</i>	<i>trazias</i>	<i>trouxeste (trouveste)</i>
<i>traz</i>	<i>trazia</i>	<i>trouxe (trouve)</i>
<i>trazemos</i>	<i>trazíamos</i>	<i>trouxemos (trouvemos)</i>
<i>trazeis</i>	<i>trazíeis</i>	<i>trouxestes (trouvestes)</i>
<i>trazem</i>	<i>traziam</i>	<i>trouxeram (trouveram)</i>

Indic. Fut.**	Cond.**	Pluperf.
---------------	---------	----------

<i>trarei</i>	<i>traria</i>	<i>trouxera</i>
<i>trarás</i>	<i>trarias</i>	<i>trouxeras</i>
<i>trará</i>	<i>traria</i>	<i>trouxera</i>

\*Among educated people the *x* of *trouxe*, etc. is pronounced *s*. The popular pronunciation is *f*.

\*\*For the shortened form of the infinitive used to make the future and the conditional, see 382. b. Such forms as *trazerei* and *trazêr-me-á*, for *trarei* and *trar-me há*, are incorrect.

<i>traremos</i>	<i>trariamos</i>	<i>trouxéramos</i>
<i>trareis</i>	<i>trarieis</i>	<i>trouxéreis</i>
<i>trarão</i>	<i>trariam</i>	<i>trouxeram</i>

Subj. Pres.    Subj. Impf.    Subj. Fut.    Pers. Inf.

<i>traga</i>	<i>trouxesse</i>	<i>trouxer</i>	<i>trazer</i>
<i>tragas</i>	<i>trouxesses</i>	<i>trouxeres</i>	<i>trazeres</i>
<i>traga</i>	<i>trouxesse</i>	<i>trouxer</i>	<i>trazer</i>
<i>tragamos</i>	<i>trouxéssemos</i>	<i>trouxermos</i>	<i>trazermos</i>
<i>tragaís</i>	<i>trouxésseis</i>	<i>trouxerdes</i>	<i>trazerdes</i>
<i>tragam</i>	<i>trouxessem</i>	<i>trouxerem</i>	<i>trazerem</i>

Imperat.

2. sg. *traze* (literary), *traz* (current form) (473).

2. pl. *trazei*

Pres. Part. (Gerund), *trazendo*    Past Part., *trazido*

505. *Valer* (II) 'to be worth' 'be of value' 'help' 'assist.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>valho</i>	<i>valia</i>	<i>vali</i>
<i>valés</i>	<i>valias</i>	<i>valêste</i>
<i>vale, (vql)</i>	<i>valia</i>	<i>valeu</i>
<i>valêmos</i>	<i>valíamos</i>	<i>valêmos</i>
<i>valeis</i>	<i>valieis</i>	<i>valêstes</i>
<i>valem</i>	<i>valiam</i>	<i>valêram</i>

Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>valerei</i>	<i>valeria</i>	<i>valêra</i>
<i>valerás</i>	<i>valerias</i>	<i>valêras</i>
<i>valerá</i>	<i>valeria</i>	<i>valêra</i>
<i>valerêmos</i>	<i>valeríamos</i>	<i>valêramos</i>
<i>valereis</i>	<i>valerieis</i>	<i>valêreis</i>
<i>valerão</i>	<i>valeriam</i>	<i>valêram</i>

		Subj. Fut. and
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Pers. Inf.
<i>valha</i>	<i>valêsse</i>	<i>valer</i>
<i>valhas</i>	<i>valêsses</i>	<i>valêres</i>
<i>valha</i>	<i>valêsse</i>	<i>valer</i>
<i>valhâmos</i>	<i>valêssemos</i>	<i>valermos</i>
<i>valhais</i>	<i>valêsseis</i>	<i>valêrdes</i>
<i>valham</i>	<i>valêssem</i>	<i>valerem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)	Past Part
2. sg. <i>vale</i>	<i>valendo</i>	<i>valido</i>
2. pl. <i>valei</i>		

Similarly *esvaler* 'to be unequal to' and *equivaler* 'to be equal to.'

506. *Ver* (I 'to see' 'behold' 'view' 'consider.')

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>veja</i>	<i>via</i>	<i>vi</i>
<i>vês</i>	<i>vias</i>	<i>viste</i>
<i>vê</i>	<i>via</i>	<i>viu</i>
<i>vemos</i>	<i>viâmos</i>	<i>vimos*</i>
<i>vêdes</i>	<i>viêis</i>	<i>vistes</i>
<i>vêem</i>	<i>viam</i>	<i>viram</i>
Indic. Fut.	Cond.	Pluperf.
<i>verei</i>	<i>veria</i>	<i>vira</i>
<i>verás</i>	<i>verias</i>	<i>viras</i>
<i>verá</i>	<i>veria</i>	<i>vira</i>
<i>veremos</i>	<i>veríamos</i>	<i>viramos</i>
<i>vereis</i>	<i>verteis</i>	<i>viréis</i>
<i>verão</i>	<i>veriam</i>	<i>viram</i>

\*See 507\*\*

Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.	Pers. Inf.
<i>veja</i>	<i>visse</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>ver</i>
<i>vejas</i>	<i>vissees</i>	<i>vires</i>	<i>veres</i>
<i>veja</i> ,	<i>visse</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>ver</i>
<i>vejamos</i>	<i>vissemos</i>	<i>virtos</i>	<i>vermos</i>
<i>vejaís</i>	<i>visseis</i>	<i>virtes</i>	<i>verdes</i>
<i>vejam</i>	<i>vissem</i>	<i>virem</i>	<i>verem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)		Past Part.
2. sg. <i>vê</i>	<i>vendo</i>		<i>visto</i>
2. pl. <i>vêde</i>			

In like manner are conjugated the derivatives *antever* and *prever* 'to foresee,' *entrever* 'to have a glimpse of,' and *rever* 'to review' 'examine.'

507. *Vir* (III) 'to come.'

Indic. Pres.	Indic. Impf.	Pret.
<i>venho</i>	<i>vinha</i>	<i>vim</i>
<i>vens*</i>	<i>vinhas</i>	<i>vieste</i>
<i>vem</i>	<i>vinha</i>	<i>veio, (veiu)</i>
<i>vimos**</i>	<i>vinhamos</i>	<i>viemos</i>
<i>vindes</i>	<i>vinheis</i>	<i>viestes</i>
<i>veem, vêm***</i>	<i>vinham</i>	<i>viçram</i>

\*When followed by an object pronoun, *o, a, os, as* (*lo, a, los, las*), the 2nd pers. sing. pres. ind. is *vem* (386).

\*\*The first person plural of the present indicative is identical in form with the first person plural of the preterite of *ver* (506). The pronunciation of *vimos* 'we come' is either *vîmos* or *vimos*.

\*\*\*The spelling of the third person plural of the present indicative is *veem* or *vêm* (cf. *vêm* from *ver*, 506). For its pronunciation, see 17. e.

Indic. Fut.		Cond.		Pluperf.
<i>virei</i>		<i>viria</i>		<i>viêra</i>
<i>virás</i>		<i>virias</i>		<i>viêras</i>
<i>virá</i>		<i>viria</i>		<i>viêra</i>
<i>viçemos</i>		<i>viríamos</i>		<i>viêramos</i>
<i>vireis</i>		<i>viríeis</i>		<i>viêreis</i>
<i>virão</i>		<i>viriam</i>		<i>viêram</i>
Subj. Pres.	Subj. Impf.	Subj. Fut.		Pers. Inf.
<i>venha</i>	<i>viêsse</i>	<i>viçer</i>		<i>vir</i>
<i>venhas</i>	<i>viêsses</i>	<i>viçeres</i>		<i>vires</i>
<i>venha</i>	<i>viêsse</i>	<i>viçer</i>		<i>vir</i>
<i>venhãmos</i>	<i>viêssemos</i>	<i>viçermos</i>		<i>virtmos</i>
<i>venhais</i>	<i>viêsseis</i>	<i>viçerdes</i>		<i>virtdes</i>
<i>venham</i>	<i>viêssem</i>	<i>viçerem</i>		<i>virem</i>
Imperat.	Pres. Part. (Gerund)			Past Part.
2. sg. <i>vem</i>	<i>vindo</i>			<i>vindo</i>
2. pl. <i>vinde</i>				

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *vir*: *admir* 'to arrive' 'happen,' *avir-se* 'to agree,' *contravir* 'to transgress,' *convir* 'to come together' 'agree,' *desavir* 'to set at variance,' *desconvir* 'to disagree,' *intervir* 'to intervene,' *provir* 'to emanate,' *sobrevir* 'to supervene' 'happen.'

#### REFLEXIVE VERBS

Note: The construction *eu me banho*, *tu te banhas*, etc., instead of *eu banho-me*, *tu banhas-te*, etc., illustrated by the examples in parentheses in the following paradigm, is employed in Portugal only in special cases, e.g. *eu sei que tu te banhas*, but is the regular order of words in Brazil (250).



508.

## (a) Simple Tenses

Infinitive *banhar-se* (I) 'to bathe'

## Indicative

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT
1. sg.	<i>banho-me</i> (or <i>eu me banho</i> ) 'I bathe'	<i>banhava-me</i> (or <i>eu me banhava</i> ) 'I was bathing'
2. sg.	<i>banhas-te</i> (or <i>tu te banhas</i> )	<i>banhavas-te</i> (or <i>tu te banhavas</i> )
3. sg.	<i>banha-se</i> (or <i>êle se banha</i> )	<i>banhava-se</i> (or <i>êle se banhava</i> )
1. pl.	<i>banhamos*-nos</i> (or <i>nós nos banhamos</i> )	<i>banhávamos*-nos</i> (or <i>nós nos banhávamos</i> )
3. pl.	<i>banham-se</i> (or <i>êles se banham</i> )	<i>banhavam-se</i> (or <i>êles se banhavam</i> )
	PRETERITE	FUTURE
1. sg.	<i>banhei-me</i> (or <i>eu me banhei</i> ) 'I bathed' 'have bathed'	<i>banhar-me hei</i> (or <i>eu me banharei</i> ) 'I shall bathe'
3. sg.	<i>banhou-se</i> (or <i>êle se banhou</i> )	<i>banhar-se há</i> (or <i>êle se banhará</i> )
1. pl.	<i>banhâmos*-nos</i> (or <i>nós nos banhâmos</i> )	<i>banhar-nos hêmos</i> (or <i>nós nos banharemos</i> )
3. pl.	<i>banharam-se</i> (or <i>êles se banharam</i> )	<i>banhar-se hão</i> (or <i>êles se banharão</i> )
	CONDITIONAL	PLUPERFECT
1. sg.	<i>banhar-me-ia</i> (or <i>eu me banharia</i> ) 'I should bathe'	<i>banhara-me</i> (or <i>eu me banhara</i> ) 'I had bathed'

\*For the fall of final -s before *nos*, see 386. b.

- |        |  |   |
|--------|--|---|
| 3. sg. | <i>banhqr-se-ia</i> (or <i>êle se banharia</i> )                 | <i>banhqra-se</i> (or <i>êle se banhqra</i> )                 |
| 1. pl. | <i>banhqr-nos-íamos</i> (or <i>nós nos banhariamos</i> )<br>etc. | <i>banhâramo*-nos</i> (or <i>nós nos banhâramos</i> )<br>etc. |

## Subjunctive

## IMPERFECT

- |        |   |   |
|--------|---|---|
| 1. sg. | <i>bqnhe-me</i> (or <i>eu me bqnhe</i> ) 'that I may bathe' | <i>banhqsse-me</i> (or <i>eu me banhqsse</i> ) 'that I might bathe' |
| 3. sg. | <i>bqnhe-se</i> (or <i>êle se bqnhe</i> )                   | <i>banhqsse-se</i> (or <i>êle se banhqsse</i> )                     |
| 1. pl. | <i>banhemo*-nos</i> (or <i>nós nos banhemos</i> )           | <i>banhássemo*-nos</i> (or <i>nós nos banhássemos</i> )             |
| 3. pl. | <i>bqnhem-se</i> (or <i>êles se bqnhem</i> )                | <i>banhqssem-se</i> (or <i>êles se banhqssem</i> )                  |

## Subj. Future and Personal

## Infinitive

## Pres. Part. (Gerund)

- |        |                       |                              |
|--------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. sg. | <i>banhqr-me</i>      | <i>banhando-me</i> 'bathing' |
| 2. sg. | <i>banhqres-te</i>    | <i>banhando-te</i>           |
| 3. sg. | <i>banhqr-se</i>      | <i>banhando-se</i>           |
| 1. pl. | <i>banhqarmo*-nos</i> | <i>banhando-nos</i>          |
| 2. pl. | <i>banhqrdes-vos</i>  | <i>banhando-vos</i>          |
| 3. pl. | <i>banhqrem-se</i>    | <i>banhando-se</i>           |

## Imperative

- |        |                              |
|--------|------------------------------|
| 2. sg. | <i>bqnha-te (tu)</i> 'bathe' |
| 2. pl. | <i>banhai-vos (vós)</i>      |

\*For the fall of final -s before *nos*, see 386. b.

## (b) Compound Tenses

Note: The compound tenses of reflexive verbs are always conjugated with *ter*, not with *ser* or *estar*, as auxiliary.

Infinitive Past: *ter-se banhado* 'to have bathed'

## Indicative

## PRESENT PERFECT

1. sg. *tenho-me* (or *eu me tenho*) *banhado* 'I have bathed'
3. sg. *tem-se* (or *êle se tem*) *banhado*
1. pl. *temo\*-nos* (or *nós nos temos*) *banhado*
3. pl. *te(e)m-se* (or *êles se te(e)m*) *banhado*

## PAST PERFECT

1. sg. *tinha-me* (or *eu me tinha*) *banhado* 'I had bathed'
2. sg. *tinhas-te* (or *tu te tinhas*) *banhado*
1. pl. *tínhamo\*-nos* (or *nós nos tínhamos*) *banhado*
3. pl. *tinham-se* (or *êles se tinham*) *banhado*

## FUTURE PERFECT

1. sg. *ter-me hei* (or *eu me terei*) *banhado* 'I shall have bathed'
2. sg. *ter-te hás* (or *tu te terás*) *banhado*
3. sg. *ter-se há* (or *êle se terá*) *banhado*
2. pl. *ter-vos heis* (or *vós vos tereis*) *banhado*
3. pl. *ter-se hão* (or *êles se terão*) *banhado*

## CONDITIONAL PERFECT

1. sg. *ter-me-ia* (or *eu me teria*) *banhado* 'I should have bathed'

\*For the fall of final -s before *nos*, see 386. b.

2. sg. *ter-te-ias* (or *tu te terias*) *banhãdo*
3. sg. *ter-se-ia* (or *êle se teria*) *banhãdo*
1. pl. *ter-nos-íamos* (or *nós nos teríamos*) *banhãdo*
3. pl. *ter-se-iam* (or *êles se teriam*) *banhãdo*

### Subjunctive

#### PRESENT PERFECT

1. sg. *tenha-me* (or *eu me tenha*) *banhãdo* 'that I may have bathed'
2. sg. *tenhas-te* (or *tu te tenhas*) *banhãdo*
3. sg. *tenha-se* (or *êle se tenha*) *banhãdo*
1. pl. *tenhamo\*-nos* (or *nós nos tenhamos*) *banhãdo*
2. pl. *tenham-vos* (or *vós vos tenham*) *banhãdo*
3. pl. *tenham-se* (or *êles se tenham*) *banhãdo*

#### PAST PERFECT

1. sg. *tivesse-me* (or *eu me tivesse*) *banhãdo* 'that I might have bathed'
2. sg. *tivesses-te* (or *tu te tivesses*) *banhãdo*
3. sg. *tivesse-se* (or *êle se tivesse*) *banhãdo*
1. pl. *tivéssemo\*-nos* (or *nós nos tivéssemos*) *banhãdo*
2. pl. *tivésseis-vos* (or *vós vos tivésseis*) *banhãdo*
3. pl. *tivéssem-se* (or *êles se tivessem*) *banhãdo*

#### Pres. Perf. Part. (Perf. Gerund)

*tendo-se banhãdo* 'having bathed'

### The Reflexive and the Passive

509. The passive voice is expressed in Portuguese either by means (a) of the auxiliary *ser*, etc. and the past participle of the verb (459), or (b) of the verb agreeing in number with the subject and the employ-

\*For the fall of final -s before *nos*, see 386. b.

ment of the reflexive pronoun *se* as a passive particle. Of the two constructions, the former is much more limited in its use than in English and is ordinarily employed only when the agent or apparent cause is expressed; otherwise the reflexive construction is preferred, especially when the subject is inanimate. For the prepositions *por* and *de* with the passive, see 683. a, 689. i:

*bêbe-se vinho bom aqui* 'good wine is drunk here,'  
*está-se vendendo a manteiga* 'the butter is being sold,'  
*acabou-se a obra* or *foi acabada a obra* 'the work was finished,'  
*a luz apagou-se* or *ficou apagada a luz* 'the light went out,'  
*a água congelou-se* or *ficou congelada a água* 'the water was frozen,'  
*aluga-se esta casa* 'this house is for rent,'  
*fala-se aqui português* 'Portuguese is spoken here,'  
*este livro lê-se* 'this book is read,'  
*pensa-se muita coisa* 'many things are thought of,'  
*isto não se diz* 'you must not say that.'

510. A few verbs are essentially reflexive in character:

*arrepender-se* 'to be sorry,' *atrever-se* 'to dare,'  
*dignar-se* 'to deign,' *finar-se* 'to waste away'  
*'die,' jactar-se* 'to boast,' *queixar-se* 'to complain.'

511. Most verbs, transitive or intransitive, have also a reflexive form. In recent times there is a tendency for the reflexive forms of such verbs to fall into disuse.

512. Many verbs are reflexive in certain meanings in Portuguese but not in English, *e.g.*:

*afogar-se* and *afundar-se* 'to sink' 'to founder' 'drown,' *apagar-se* 'to go out' (of a light), *apagar-se* 'to alight' (from a horse or carriage), *apiedar-se* 'to take pity,' *apressar-se* 'to hurry,' *aproveitar-se* 'to take advantage,' *assanhar-se* 'to become raging,' (as) *sentar-se* 'to sit down,' *calar-se* 'to be silent,' *cansar-se* 'to become tired,' *casar-se* 'to get married,' *comprazer-se* 'to take pleasure,' *deitar-se* 'to lie down' 'go to bed,' *despedir-se* 'to take leave,' *escapar-se* 'to escape,' *fiar-se* 'to trust,' *levantar-se* 'to get up,' etc.

513. These and other reflexive verbs governing an object by means of a preposition often have the value of English transitives:

*aproximar-se de* 'to approach,' *descuidar-se de* 'to neglect,' *fiar-se de* (or *em*) 'to trust,' *não nos recordamos de qualquer outro homem* 'we do not remember any other man.'

514. Some verbs that are properly intransitive, and some transitives used intransitively, may be converted into reflexives, thereby adding a new concept to the verb or imparting a certain spontaneity or directness to the expression, indicating also that the subject is interested in the act that he or she performs, a construction which recalls the ethical dative.

Such verbs are *andar(-se)* 'to go,' *ficar(-se)* 'to remain,' *morrer(-se)* 'to die,' *partir(-se)* 'to depart,' *quedar(-se)* 'to remain,' *rir(-se)* 'to laugh,' *sair(-se)* 'to go out,' *vir(-se)* 'to come,' *sorrir(-se)* 'to smile.'

*Rir*, for example, means 'to laugh' and *sorrir*, 'to

smile,' but the reflexives *rir-se* and *sorrir-se* convey a feeling of earnestness, playfulness, spite, or contradiction:

*essa é que não ria* 'she is the one that did not laugh,' *êle ria-se muitas vezes de si para si* 'he laughed many times by himself,' *quem se está a rir é o leitor* 'the one who laughs is the reader.'

*Ir* 'to go' is used in a general sense, but *ir-se embora*—the current equivalent of 'to go away'—implies a more complete and determined act:

*vamo-nos embora* 'let us go,' *vir-se* 'to come to a place,' *êle foi-se* 'he went off,' *morria-se de envêja* 'he was dying of envy,' *minha irmã ficou-se em casa* 'my sister remained at home.'

515. Certain intransitive verbs, and transitives employed intransitively, are used in the reflexive conjugation in the third person singular, leaving the subject completely indetermined, and are thus the equivalent of the English impersonals 'one,' 'we,' 'people,' 'they,' 'you,' French *on*, German *man*:

*dorme-se muito naquela casa* 'they sleep a great deal in that house,' *à última hora dera-se pela falta dum dos personagens mais importantes* 'at the last moment they noticed the absence of one of the most important personages,' *vive-se muito aqui* 'they live long here,' *no inverno sofre-se muito* 'people suffer a great deal in the winter,' *aqui não se passa* 'no trespassing,' *vai-se de aqui à cidade em quinze minutos* 'you go from here to the city in fifteen minutes,' *dançava-se* 'they were dancing,'

*fala-se d'êle* 'they speak of him,' *passeia-se para trás e para diante, volta-se para a direita e para a esquerda, e torna-se para o seu lugar* 'they walk back and forth, turn to the right and to the left, and return to their places,' *de vagar se vai ao longe* 'slowly one goes far.'

516. In modern Portuguese, by analogy with the French idiom *on est*, etc., the reflexive construction has been widely extended to the verbs *ser* and *estar*.

*se se é pobre* 'if one is poor,' *quando se é rico* 'when one is rich,' *está-se melhor do que na rua* 'it is better than in the street,' *está-se* (for *a gente* or *estamos*) *mal* 'we are not well,' *ê-se enganado pelas aparências* 'they are deceived by appearances,' *ou se é homem ou não* 'either one is a man or not,' *ê-se muitas vezes forçado a combater* 'one is often compelled to fight,' *está-se à sua espera para jantar* 'they are waiting dinner for you,' *para se ser feliz na vida é preciso ser-se rico* 'to be happy in life one must be rich.'

517. The reflexive is correctly employed in such sentences as:

*quem lê maus livros ê-se prejudicial a si próprio* or, better, *quem lê maus livros prejudica-se a si próprio* 'he who reads bad books is doing harm to himself,' in which *se* is not subject but object.

518. In the passive construction with *se*, the verb is frequently, but incorrectly, used in the singular, instead of the plural, with a plural subject:

*aluga* (better *alugam*)-*se quartos* 'rooms to rent,'



*citava* (better *citavam*)-*se três nomes* 'three names were mentioned,' *encontra* (better *encontram*)-*se muitas pessoas* 'many persons are met,' *vende* (better *vendem*)-*se e compra* (better *compram*)-*se casas* 'houses bought and sold,' *diz* (better *dizem*)-*se coisas* 'things are said.'

519. Three common verbs, *esquecer* 'to forget' and *lembrar* and *recordar* 'to remember,' are used in more than one construction, one of them being the reflexive.

(a) In its original use *esquecer* (<\**ex-cadescere* 'to drop out') was an intransitive verb and this construction persists to-day, with the name of the person who forgets as indirect object:

*esqueceu-me alguma coisa* 'I forgot something,'  
*esquecia-me dizer-lhe* 'I forgot to tell you.'

But it is also used reflexively, with the name of the thing forgotten preceded by the preposition *de* (563. e):

*esqueceu-se de alguma coisa?* 'have you forgotten anything?' *esqueci-me de tudo o mais* 'I have forgotten everything else.'

(b) *Lembrar*, meaning 'to remind,' is a causative verb:

*a vista desta praia lembra-me o passado* 'the sight of this sea-shore reminds me of the past,' *lembrei-lhe a promessa que me fizera* 'I reminded him of the promise he made me;' but, meaning 'to remember' 'recollect,' it is used reflexively: *eu não me lembro daquela transacção* 'I do not remember

that transaction,' *lembro-me do passado* 'I remember the past;' it is also used impersonally: *não me lembra ter visto esta praia* 'I do not remember having seen this sea-shore.'

By confusion of these constructions, such incorrect expressions are met with as *não nos lembra de ter visto esta praia*, *a vista desta praia lembra-me do passado*, and *eu lembra-me de ter visto esta praia*.

(c) *Recordar* 'to remember' is either transitive, as in *cujo nome eu já não recorde*, reflexive, as in *de cujo nome eu não me recorde* 'whose name I do not remember,' or impersonal, as in *recorde-me ter ouvido o seu nome* 'I remember having heard his name;' but neither of the following constructions, *cujo nome eu já me não recorde* and *recorde-me de ter ouvido o seu nome*, is correct.

520. *A si mesmo(s), mesma(s)* (332. f) is sometimes added when it is desired to make the meaning clearly reflexive:

*êste homem reputa-se rico* 'this man regards himself as rich,' *êste homem feriu-se a si mesmo* 'this man wounded himself.'

521. In the plural, the reflexives often have reciprocal force, and this meaning may be emphasized by the addition of some modifying expression (363. b):

*nós encontramos-nos no passeio público* 'we met in the park,' *eles detestam-se um ao outro* 'they detest one another.'

For the third person singular reflexive instead of the first person plural, see 552. e.

#### IMPERSONAL VERBS

522. Impersonal verbs have no real subject and are

conjugated usually only in the third person singular of each tense (548. q).

523. In colloquial speech, however, *êle* (invariable), *isto*, *isso*, or *aquilo* is frequently used in some expressions, especially for emphasis, as the grammatical subject of an impersonal verb, as in 'it rains,' '*es re<sub>g</sub>net*,' '*il <sub>pl</sub>eut*' (300):

(*êle*) *há tantos* 'there are so many,' (*êle*) *há homens* 'there are men,' (*êle*) *sempre há patifes!* 'there are such scoundrels!' (*êle*) *é verdade* 'it is true,' (*êle*) *corre por aqui* 'it is said (or 'rumored') hereabouts,' (*êle*) *sempre há desgraças!* 'there are such misfortunes!' but not in *faz bom tempo* 'it is fine weather' nor in *agora não chove* 'it is not raining now.'

### *Haver*, *Ter*, and *Ser* Used Impersonally

#### A. *Haver*

524. (a) *Haver* (in the forms *há*, *havia*, *houve*, *haverá*, *haveria*, *tem havido*) is used like French *il y a*:

*não há água* 'there is no water,' *se houvesse tempo* 'if there was time,' *houve grandes festas* 'there were great festivals,' *havia-as* 'there were,' *não há dúvida alguma* 'there is no doubt,' *não há novidade* 'there is no news,' *há que fazer* 'there is something to be done,' *pois êle há no mundo quem não conheça o Senhor Freire?* 'can there be anyone in the world that does not know Mr. Freire?' *há muitos americanos em Paris* 'there are many Americans in Paris,' *há-os* 'there are,' *há quem diz* (or, better, *há quem diga*) 'there are those who say,' *que há?* 'what is the matter?' *não há nada* 'nothing (is the matter).'

(b) Likewise when depending on *dever*, *deixar*, or *poder*:

*deve haver bons livros* 'there must be good books,'  
*deve haver muita gente lá* 'there must be many people there.'

(c) *Haver* is used impersonally of the weather and of lapse of time (527. d):

*há um ano* 'a year ago,' *houve tempo em que* 'there was a time when,' *há bom tempo* 'the weather is fine,' *há vinte anos* 'twenty years ago,' *julgava eu que haveria neve* 'I thought there would be snow,' *estavam todos há que horas à espera dele* 'they were all waiting hours for him,' *há tempo* 'a while ago,' *(já de) há muito* 'a long while ago,' *há pouco* 'a little while ago,' *as minhas afirmações de há dias* 'my statements of some days ago.'

(d) As an impersonal verb, *haver* has no plural, yet it is frequently so used incorrectly in the colloquial language:

*haviam* (for *havia*) *lá muitas pessoas* 'many persons were there,' *se não houvessem* for (*houvesse*) *erros* 'if there had not been errors.'

### B. *Ter*

525. (a) In Brazil, but not in Portugal (except in the expression *tem dias que* 'there are days when'), *ter* is sometimes used as the equivalent of impersonal *haver*:

*tem muita gente na igreja* 'there are many people in the church.'

(b) The expression *ter lugar*, in imitation of French *avoir lieu*, instead of *realizar-se* 'to take place,' is to be avoided.

C. *Ser*

526. (a) *Ser* is used impersonally in the plural in expressions of time (224):

*são duas horas* 'it is two o'clock,' *hoje são trinta do mês* 'to-day is the thirtieth of the month,' *isto são horas de ir para casa* 'it is time to go home.'

(b) *Ser* is used impersonally in the singular with adjectives:

<i>é bem</i> 'it is well'	<i>é justo</i> 'it is just' 'it is right'
<i>é bom</i> 'it is true'	
<i>é certo</i> 'it is certain'	<i>é lícito</i> 'it is permissible'
<i>é claro</i> 'it is clear'	
<i>é evidente</i> 'it is evident'	<i>é natural</i> 'it is natural'
<i>é fácil</i> 'it is easy'	<i>é necessário</i> 'it is necessary'
<i>é forçoso</i> 'it is necessary'	
<i>é (de) mister</i> or (less often) <i>faz-se mister</i> 'it is necessary;' cf. <i>haver (de) mister</i> 'to have need of'	<i>é possível</i> 'it is possible'
	<i>é preciso</i> 'it is necessary'
	<i>é provável</i> 'it is probable'
	<i>é simples</i> 'it is simple'

and with certain nouns:

*é (uma) lástima* 'it could not be worse' (said of a person or a thing)  
*é (uma) pena* 'it is a pity'  
*é verdade* 'it is true'  
*é uma vergonha* 'it is a shame.'

527. (a) Many other verbs are used impersonally, some always, others occasionally:

*acontecer* 'to happen;' *acontece* 'it happens'

*aprazer* 'to please;' *apraz-me* 'it pleases me'

*bastar* 'to suffice;' *basta* 'that is enough'

(b) As an impersonal verb, *caber* 'to be contained in' (469) has a wide range of meanings:

*quanto cabe nesta caixa?* 'how much does this box hold?' *que lugar cabe à língua portuguesa nas escolas?* 'what place does the Portuguese language hold in the schools?' *não cabe aqui* 'there is no room here,' *uma gramática, em geral, cabe debaixo do braço* 'a grammar, as a rule, fits under the arm,' *ao Sr. Freitas coube a mais dura tribulação* 'it fell to Mr. Freitas's lot to have the bitterest affliction.'

(c) *Estar* when used impersonally differs from *ser* in retaining some of its original meaning 'to stand' (526. b):

*está bom* 'it is well,' *está claro* 'it is clear,' *está* (or *faz*) *frio* 'it is cold,' *está sol* 'it is sunny.'

(d) *Fazer* 'to do' is used impersonally chiefly to express relations of time, the state of the weather, etc.:

*faz hoje uma semana* 'it is a week to-day,' *faz cincoenta anos* 'fifty years ago,' *fêz ontem quinze dias* 'yesterday a fortnight,' *faz dez anos que estou aqui* 'I have been here for ten years,' *que tempo faz?* 'what kind of weather is it?' *faz bom tempo* 'it is fine weather,' *fêz frio esta manhã* 'it was cold this morning,' *faz muito vento* 'it is very windy,' *faz* (or *há-de fazer*) *amanhã três meses* 'it will be three months to-morrow,' but only *há* (not *faz*) *muito tempo* 'it is a long time.'

- (e) *Importar* 'to matter' 'be of importance:'

*importa que estudeis* 'it is of importance that you study;' cf. *importo-me muito com essas coisas* 'I busy myself very much with those things.'

- (f) *Ir* 'to go:' *vai melhor* 'is getting better,' *isso já lá vai* 'that is past and done,' *vai haver fogo de artifício* (or *de vista*) *esta noite* 'there are going to be fireworks to-night,' *vai em quatro anos* 'it is going on four years.'

- (g) *Parecer* 'to seem' may be used personally or impersonally:

*parece-me* or, with elliptical *eu* (245), *eu parece-me* 'it seems to me,' *estes homens parece estarem* (or *parecem estar* or *parece que estão*) *doentes* 'those men seem to be ill,' *aquilo não parece bom* 'that does not seem good,' *as dificuldades parece estarem removidas* (or, more often, *parecem estar removidas*) 'the difficulties seem to be removed.'

- (h) *Pesar* 'to hurt' 'trouble' 'distress:'

*peça-me tê-lo ofendido* 'I am sorry for having offended him,' *peça-me a mim muito disso* 'I am very sorry for that.'

- (i) *Podêr* 'to be able:'

*pode haver muitos mortos* 'there may be many dead,' *não pode haver mais tristes notícias* 'there could not be sadder news,' *pode ser* 'may be' 'perhaps.'

- (j) *Carecer* 'to lack'

*chegar* 'to arrive:' *chega* 'that will do'  
*constar* 'to appear' 'be reported'

*convir* 'to suit' 'be well' 'be fitting:' *convém sabê-lo*  
 'it is well to know it'  
*costumar* 'to be the custom'  
*cumprir* 'to be necessary:' *cumpre evitá-lo* 'it must  
 be avoided'  
*custar* 'to cost' 'be difficult:' *custa dormir* 'it is hard  
 to sleep'  
*dever* 'to owe:' *deve ser* 'it must be'  
*doer* 'to pain:' *que lhe dói?* 'what ails you?'  
*ocorrer* 'to occur'  
*prazer* 'to please:' *praz-me* 'I like'  
*relevar* 'to be of importance' 'to matter:' *releva-me*  
*muito* 'it is of much importance to me'  
*restar* 'to remain'  
*resultar* 'to result' 'follow'  
*sucedêr* 'to happen'  
*urgir* 'to be urgent' 'be important'  
*vir* 'to come:' *como vai?* 'how do you do?'

528. Impersonal verbs that describe natural phenomena:

<i>aclarar</i> 'to clear up'	<i>gear</i> ( <i>gelar</i> ) 'to freeze'
<i>amanhecer</i> 'to dawn'	<i>granizar</i> (or <i>cair pedra</i> )
(sometimes with <i>dia</i>	'to hail'
'day' as subject)	<i>nevar</i> (or <i>cair neve</i> ) 'to
<i>anoitecer</i> 'to become	snow'
night'	<i>orvalhar</i> 'to fall as dew'
<i>chover</i> 'to rain'	<i>relampejar</i> ( <i>relampague-</i>
<i>chuviscar</i> 'to drizzle'	<i>qr</i> ) 'to lighten' 'flash'
<i>degelar</i> 'to thaw'	<i>trovejar</i> ( <i>trovoar</i> ) 'to
<i>escurecer</i> 'to darken'	thunder'
<i>fúzilqr</i> 'to lighten' 'flash'	<i>ventar</i> 'to blow'



529. Verbs, some of which are quite rare, to express the cries of birds and animals:

- arensqr* 'to whistle,' of the swan  
*arrulhqar* 'to coo,' of the dove  
*assobiqr* 'to hiss,' of the serpent  
*balqr* and *balir* 'to bleat,' of the sheep  
*barrir* 'to trumpet,' of the elephant  
*berrqr* 'to bellow,' of the bull, 'to bleat,' of the goat  
*blaterqr* 'to roar,' of the camel  
*bramqr* 'to bellow' 'bell' 'roar,' of the deer, lion, bull,  
 and tiger  
*cacarejqar* 'to cackle,' of the hen  
*cainhqar* 'to whine,' of the dog  
*cantqr* 'to sing,' of the bird and cricket  
*chiqr* 'to squeak,' of the rat, weasel, and hare  
*chilr(e)qr* 'to chirp,' of the bird  
*chirreqr* 'to hoot' 'screech,' of the owl  
*coaxqr* 'to caw' 'croak,' of the crow and frog  
*corvejqr* and *crocitqr* 'to croak' 'to cackle,' of the  
 raven  
*cuculqr* 'to cuckoo,' of the cuckoo  
*cucurilqr* 'to crow,' of the cock  
*fretinir* 'to chirp,' of the cicada  
*ganir* 'to yelp,' of the dog  
*gazeqr* 'to honk,' of the heron and wild goose  
*gloterqr* 'to clatter,' of the stork  
*gorgeqr* 'to warble,' of the bird  
*gralhqr* 'to caw,' of the crow  
*grasnqr* 'to croak' 'quack' 'gaggle,' of the frog and  
 duck  
*grassitqr* 'to cackle' 'quack,' of the goose and duck  
*grug(r)ulejqar* 'to gobble,' of the turkey  
*gruir* 'to trumpet,' of the crane  
*grunhir* 'to grunt,' of the pig

*guinchar* 'to screech,' of the monkey  
*ladrar* 'to bark,' of the dog  
*latir* 'to yelp,' of the dog  
*miar* 'to mew,' of the cat  
*mugir* 'to low,' of the ox and cow  
*nirir* 'to neigh,' of the horse  
*ornear* and *ornejar* 'to bray,' of the ass  
*palrar* 'to chatter,' of the magpie and parrot  
*piar* 'to peep,' of the chick  
*pipiar* and *pipilar* 'to peep' 'chirp,' of the bird  
*pissiar* 'to chatter,' of the starling  
*pupilar* 'to scream,' of the peacock  
*regougar* 'to bark,' of the fox  
*relinchar* and *rinchar* 'to neigh' 'whinny,' of the horse  
*rolar* 'to coo,' of the pigeon and dove  
*ronronar* 'to purr,' of the cat  
*rosnar* 'to growl,' of the dog  
*rugir* 'to roar,' of the lion  
*sibilar* 'to hiss,' of the serpent  
*linir* 'to sing,' of the linnet  
*trinar* 'to trill,' of the nightingale  
*trinfar*, *grinfar*, and *trissar* 'to twitter,' of the swallow  
*trucilar* 'to warble,' of the blackbird and thrush  
*uivar* 'to howl,' of the wolf  
*ulular* 'to howl,' of the dog  
*urrar* 'to bellow' 'trumpet,' of the bull and elephant  
*zunir*, *zumbir*, and *zumbor* 'to hum' 'buzz,' of the  
     insect  
*zurrar*, 'to bray,' of the ass

## DEFECTIVE VERBS

530. The following verbs, all of them belonging to the third conjugation, are generally used only in those forms in which the final consonant of the stem is fol-

lowed by *i*. In other words, they are not used in those forms in which the accent falls on the stem of the verb, viz., the entire singular and third person plural of the present indicative, the singular of the imperative, and the entire present subjunctive:

*abolir* 'to abolish,' *adir* 'to take possession of an inheritance,' *advir* 'to arrive,' *aguerrir* 'to accustom to war,' *banir* 'to banish,' *brandir* 'to brandish,' *buir* 'to polish,' *carpir* 'to bewail,' *cernir* 'to sift' 'stir about,' *colorir* 'to color,' *compelir* 'to compel,' *delinquir* 'to transgress,' *delir* 'to dissolve' 'destroy,' *demolir* 'to demolish,' *descomedir-se* 'to be rash' 'overdo,' *discernir* 'to discern,' *embair* 'to delude,' *emergir* 'to emerge,' *emolir* 'to soften,' *empedernir* 'to petrify' 'harden,' *exaurir* 'to exhaust,' *exinanir* 'to empty,' *explodir* 'to explode,' *extorquir* 'to extort,' *falir* 'to fail' 'suspend payment,' *florir* 'to bloom,' *fornir* 'to furnish,' *fruir* 'to enjoy,' *fulgir* 'to glow,' *ganir* 'to howl,' *latir* 'to bark,' *munir* 'to furnish,' *polir* 'to refine' 'civilize,' *renhir* 'to combat,' *retorquir* 'to retort,' *submergir* 'to submerge.'

Consequently such forms as *abolo*, *abole*; *coloro*, *colore*; *brando*, *branda*; *delinquo*, *delinqua*; *demolo*, *demoles*, *demole*; *extorquo*, *extorqua*; *floro*, *flores*, *flore*; *retorquo*, *retorqua* are not employed, while such as *abolimos*, *abolis*, *abolia*, *aboli*, *abolirei*, etc., are.

In order to supply the deficiencies, use is made of a verb of equivalent meaning or of a circumlocution; synonyms of *abolir* are *anular*, *extinguir*, and *fazer cessar*; *banir* may be substituted by *desterrar* or *expulsar*; *brandir*, by *mover* or *vibrar*; *retorquir*, by *retrucar*, etc.

531. *Feder* (II) 'to stink,' *fremir* (III) 'to roar' 'tremble' 'quiver,' and *sofer* (II) 'to be accustomed' are scarcely used except in those forms in which the stem vowel or consonant is followed immediately by *i* or *e*:

*frême, frêmem, frêmia, frêmi, etc., sóis, sói, soem, soía, etc.*

532. *Precaver* (II) 'to prevent' 'warn' (reflexively *precaver-se* 'to be on one's guard'), though not a compound of *ver* 'to see,' in the popular speech is sometimes conjugated like it. Otherwise it is regular, but is scarcely used except in those forms in which the final *v* of the stem is followed immediately by accented *e* or *i*, such as *precavimos, precavia, precavi, and precavido*. In other words, it is not used in the singular and the third person plural of the present indicative, in the singular of the imperative, nor in the present subjunctive. *Precaver* may be substituted by *acautelar, precatqr, or prevenir*.

533. *Precatqr* (I) 'to forewarn' is used only in the infinitive and in a few familiar expressions such as *quando mal se precatqva*, in the sense of *quando mal pensqva* or *quando menos esperqva* 'when he least expected.'

534. *Ruir* (III) 'to fall' is rare. Its commonest forms are the third persons of the present indicative, *ruí* and *ruem*, the first person singular of the preterite, *ruí*, and the gerund, *ruindo*, and these are found only in poetry.

535. *Sortir* (III) 'to assort' 'combine' is rarely used in the third persons.

#### THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

536. (a) The present participle in *-ante* or *-ente* (rarely in *-inte*), whether as an attributive or predicate adjective or as a noun, is variable as to number but not as to gender:

*homem (mulher) amante* 'a loving man ('woman')'

*homens (mulheres) amantes* 'loving men ('women').'

(b) Only a few present participles have preserved a trace of their former verbal nature:

*falante* 'speaking,' *fremente* 'roaring,' *obediente* 'obedient,' *purgante* 'purging,' *ridente* 'smiling,' *soante* 'sounding.'

(c) Most of them have assumed the character of simple or substantivized adjectives:

*caminhante* 'traveller,' *cantante* 'singer,' *cavalgante* 'rider,' *comandante* 'commander,' *correspondente* 'correspondent,' *crescente* 'crescent,' *doente* 'a patient,' *ente* (from *ser* 'to be') 'being,' *estudante* 'student,' *fabricante* 'manufacturer,' *lente* 'professor,' *levante* 'the East' 'the Levant,' *mercante* 'merchant,' *oriente* 'the Orient,' *ouvinte* 'hearer,' *poente* 'west wind' 'the Occident,' *presidente* 'president,' *regente* 'regent,' *sciente* 'scholar.'

Some present participles are even used without inflection, as prepositions: *concernente* 'in regard to,' *mediante* 'by means of,' *durante* 'during;'

as conjunctions: *não obstante* and *não embargante* (archaic for *sem embargo de*) 'notwithstanding,' or as adverbs: *bastante* 'enough.'

(d) The Portuguese equivalent of a present participle in English is nearly always a simple relative clause, a gerund, or an infinitive preceded by a:

*água a ferver*, *água que ferve*, or *água fervente* 'boiling water,' *um homem que teme a Deus* or *um homem temente a Deus* 'a god-fearing man,' *a luz do dia expirante* or *a luz do dia que expira*

'the light of the dying day,' *um dicionário compreendendo muitas palavras* or *um dicionário que compreende muitas palavras* 'a dictionary containing many words.'

#### THE GERUND

537. The gerund ends in *-ando*, *-endo*, or *-indo*, according to the conjugation that the verb belongs to, and is invariable. It is seldom used in the popular speech except to form progressive phrases with the auxiliaries *acabar*, *andar*, *continuar*, *estar*, *ficar*, *haver*, *ir*, *prosseguir*, *seguir*, *ter*, and *vir* (439, 442, 450).

538. (a) The gerund usually refers to the subject of the verb, but it may refer to the object; it may also be used absolutely, without a subject, when impersonal (cf. (d) *infra*):

*saindo da igreja dirigiu-se à estalagem* 'on leaving the church he went to the inn,' *encontrei-o vindo da minha casa* 'I met him as I (or 'he') was coming from my house,' *eu vi-o (em) indo ao correio* 'I saw him on my (or 'his') way to the postoffice,' *sendo-nos dada esta ordem, nós partimos* 'after this order had been given to us, we left.' The ambiguity can be removed by using a personal infinitive or a clause: *encontrei-o ao vir (eu or êle) da minha casa* or *encontrei-o que vinha da minha casa*.

(b) The English gerund, used as subject, object, predicate nominative, or after a preposition, is expressed in Portuguese by the infinitive, sometimes preceded by the definitive article:

*é vedado fumar* 'no smoking,' *é proibido entrar*

'no admission,' *gosto de passear* 'I like walking,' *depois de comer* 'after eating,' *ao ler a carta* 'on reading the letter,' *antes de receber o dinheiro* 'before receiving the money.'

(c) The gerund expresses a variety of relations and circumstances, such as manner, means, or instrument, and may replace, in abbreviated form, a temporal, causal, conditional, or concessive clause:

*estudando é fácil aprender* 'by studying it is easy to learn,' *esta falta repara-se ajuntando dez páginas* 'this fault is remedied by adding ten pages,' *dizendo isto o marinheiro fugiu* 'saying that, the sailor fled.'

(d) The gerund may also be used absolutely, without a subject, when impersonal:

*chovendo não sairei* 'if it rains, I will not go out,' *havendo calor só passarei de tarde* 'in case it is hot, I will take a walk only in the evening,' *continua nevando* 'it is still snowing.'

(e) When the gerund expresses a condition or hypothesis, or the immediate precedence of one happening to another or their coincidence, and the main verb indicates what in that case is wont to happen or future action, the gerund may be preceded by the preposition *em*; it must be so preceded, if its subject is different from that of the main verb:

(*em*) *amanhecendo irei vê-lo* 'at day-break I will go to see him,' *em êle chegando falqr-lhe hei* 'when he arrives I will speak to him,' *em vendo lágrimas enterneco-me* 'when I see tears I am moved to pity,'

*dqr-lhe hei o livro em o lendo* 'I will give you the book when I have read it.'

(f) In older Portuguese the preposition *sem* was used with the gerund instead of with the infinitive:

*sem havendo* (better *sem haver*) *esperança de poder pagar* 'without having hope of being able to pay.'

(g) The perfect gerund is seldom used. It is generally replaced either by the simple gerund or by an infinitive preceded by the prepositional phrase *depois de*:

*falando-lhe, depois de lhe falar*, or (rarely) *depois de falar-lhe* 'after having spoken to him,' *em êle falando* (or *em êle tendo falado*) *partirei* 'I will leave when he will have spoken.'

(h) Under the influence of the French idiom, there is a tendency, which is observable especially in newspaper Portuguese but is not to be countenanced, to use the gerund, or the verb *vir* with a gerund, as the equivalent of a simple qualifying clause:

*uma casa tendo o No. 46*, for *uma casa que tem o No. 46* or *uma casa com o No. 46*, 'a house numbered 46' (Fr. *une maison portant le numéro 46*), *encontrei um homem trajando* (for *que trajava*) *um fato azul* 'I met a man wearing a blue suit,' *um jornal da tarde vem tratando há dias* (for *tem-se ocupado nestes dias*) *dum assunto grave* 'an evening newspaper these days has been treating of an important matter.'

For the position of the gerund in the sentence, see 722.

#### THE PAST PARTICIPLE

539. (a) Used as an adjective or without an auxiliary, the past participle agrees in gender and number with the word it qualifies:



*um livro bem escrito* 'a well-written book,' *uma carta bem escrita* 'a well-written letter,' *janelas pintadas* 'painted windows.'

(b) After *ter* and *haver*, the past participle usually remains invariable, but it may agree with the object when the latter precedes the verb:

*tenho recebido cartas* 'I have received letters,' *eu tinha chegado* 'I had arrived,' *nós tínhamos chegado* 'we had arrived,' *tenho-os visto* 'I have seen them,' *a casa que tenho comprado* 'the house which I have bought.'

(c) After *deixar* 'to leave,' *levar* and *trazer* 'to bring,' as auxiliaries instead of *ter* or *haver*, a past participle agrees with the object whether this precedes or follows the verb.

(d) With *ser* and *estar*, a past passive participle agrees in gender and number with the subject, and with pronouns of address, according to the sense. For the difference in meaning between *ser* and *estar* as auxiliaries, see 435, 436:

*as flores estão orvalhadas pelo relento* 'the flowers are covered with dew,' *a carta está escrita por Jorge* 'the letter is written by George,' *eu sou louvado* 'I am praised,' *ela é louvada* 'she is praised,' *eles são louvados*, 'they are praised,' *V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> qcha-se enganado* 'you are mistaken, sir.'

(e) If the past passive participle modifies more than one subject, it is in the plural; if the subjects are of different genders, the participle is usually mascu-

line, but may be feminine if it stands next to a feminine substantive:

*foram compradas muitas cascas e terrenos, muitas cascas e terrenos foram comprados, or muitos terrenos e cascas foram compradas* 'many houses and lands were bought.'

540. After *depois de* 'after,' *antes de* 'before,' *além de* 'besides,' *a-pesar-de* 'in spite of,' *longe de* 'far from,' *perto de* 'near,' and a few more similar expressions, the auxiliary *ser* may be omitted before the past participle (587. i):

*antes de (serem) condenados* 'before being condemned,' *depois de publicada a memória* 'after the publication of the memorial,' *depois de lavada* 'after being washed,' *depois de bem cozido, o pão é tirado com a pá* 'after it has been thoroughly baked, the bread is taken out with a shovel,' *depois de escrito o que antecede* 'after having written what precedes.'

541. A past participle, usually of a transitive verb and without an auxiliary, standing at the head of a phrase and agreeing in gender and number with the following noun or pronoun, may take the place of a clause:

*acabado* (or *depois de acabar, depois de ter acabado, tendo êle acabado, acabado que tinha, or acabado que foi*) *o seu discurso, sentou-se* 'having finished his discourse, he sat down,' *proposta a questão, foi unânimemente resolvido que . . .* 'after the question had been put, it was unanimously resolved that . . .,' *ditas estas palavras* 'when these words

had been spoken,' *bebido o chá* 'having drunk the tea,' *salvas* (also as a preposition *salvo*) *algumas raríssimas exceções* 'except for some very rare exceptions,' *logo que foram ouvidos os sermões* 'as soon as the sermons were heard,' *trocados os cumprimentos* 'after exchanging compliments,' *terminada esta cerimónia* 'this ceremony being over.'

For the position of the absolute past participle, see 722.

542. Various past participles, besides their regular active function, have assumed the value of adjectives with active meaning:

*atraído* 'one who has betrayed' and therefore 'treacherous,' *confiado* 'one who has trusted' and therefore 'confiding' *arrependido* 'penitent,' *atrevido* 'bold' 'daring,' *calado* 'reticent' 'reserved,' *dissimulado* 'hypocritical,' *fingido* 'false,' *lembrado* 'mindful,' *lido* 'well-read,' *ousado* 'rash,' *sabido* 'learned' 'expert,' *ressentido* 'resentful,' *sentido* 'sensitive.'

#### DOUBLE PARTICIPLES

543. (a) Many Portuguese verbs have or had more than one past participle, one being the regular or longer form accented on the termination *-ado* or *-ido*, the other, an irregular or shorter form coming directly from the Latin or created in Portuguese and accented on the stem.

(b) In general, in verbs which have two past participles, the regular one is used with the auxiliaries *ter* and *haver* to form the perfect tenses and is invariable; the irregular participle, on the other hand, is used to form the passive voice with *ser* and *estar* and agrees in gender and number with the subject of the sentence.

The latter form is used usually (sometimes only) as an adjective or a noun or both.

(c) Some verbal adjectives can be used as past participles alongside the regular forms:

*cativar* 'to captivate,' past part. *cativado* and *cativo*

*cegar* 'to blind,' past part. *cegado* and *cego*

*conhecer* 'to know,' past part. *conhecido* (obsolete *conheçudo*) and *cógnito*

*enxugar* 'to dry,' past part. *enxugado* and *enxuto*

*escurecer* 'to darken,' past part. *escurecido* and *escuro*

*fixar* 'to fix,' past part. *fixado* and *fixo* (popular *fixe*)

*ganhar* 'to gain' 'earn,' past part. *ganhado* and *ganho*

*gastar* 'to spend' 'consume' 'waste,' past part. *gastado* and *gasto*

*ignorar* 'to be ignorant,' past part. *ignorado* and *ignoto*

*juntar* 'to join' 'collect,' past part. *juntado* and *junto*

*libertar* 'to liberate,' past part. *libertado* and *liberto*

*limpar* 'to clean,' past part. *limpado* and *limpo*

*misturar* 'to mix,' past part. *misturado* and *mixto* (popular *misto*)

*molestar* 'to molest,' past part. *molestado* and *molesto*

*ocultar* 'to hide,' past part. *ocultado* and *oculto*

*pagar* 'to pay,' past part. *pagado* and *pago*

*reconhecer* 'to recognize,' past part. *reconhecido* and *recógnito* (rare)

*revolver* 'to revolve,' past part. *revolvido* and *revoluto* (*revólto*)

*salvar* 'to save,' past part. *salvado* and *salvo*

*sepultar* 'to bury,' past part. *sepultado* and *sepulto*

*situar* 'to situate,' past part. *situado* and *sito*

*soltar* 'to loose' 'release,' past part. *soltado* and *sólto*

*vagar* 'to be vacant,' past part. *vagado* and *vago*

(d) Some adjectives in *-e* (formed on the analogy of

*firme* 'firm,' can be used as invariable past participles alongside the corresponding participial forms:

*aceitar* 'to accept,' past part. *aceitado*, *aceito*, and *aceite*. The full form is, as a rule, used to form compound tenses with *ter*, whereas the shorter form *aceito* is, as a rule, employed with *ser* and *estar*: *o discurso foi bem aceito* 'the discourse was well received,' *eu tinha aceitado* (or *aceito*) *a proposta* 'I had accepted the proposition.' *Aceito* is also used as an adjective 'well received' 'agreeable,' and as a noun 'favorite.' The form *aceite*, properly an adjective, is used indifferently with *aceito* or as a substantive meaning 'acceptance of a bill of exchange' *assentar* 'to sign' 'register,' past part. *assentado* and *assente*

*entregar* 'to deliver,' past part. *entregado* and *entregue*  
*encarregar* 'to charge' 'commission,' past part. *encarregado* and *encarregue*

*livrar* 'to deliver,' past part. *livrado* and *livre*.

544. The following irregular verbs have only the stem-accented form of the past participle:

*dizer* 'to say,' *dito*; *fazer* 'to do,' *feito*; *pôr* 'to place,' *pôsto*; *ver* 'to see,' *visto*; *vir* 'to come,' *vindo*.

545. The Most Commonly Occurring Double Participles:

	Termination- Accented (Regular) Form	Stem- Accented (Irregular) Form
<i>abrir</i> 't open'	<i>abrido</i> (obsolete)	<i>aberto</i>

<i>absolver</i> 'to absolve'	<i>absolvido</i> (about the only form used to- day)	<i>absoluto, absolto</i>
<i>absorver</i> 'to absorb'	<i>absorvido</i>	<i>absorto</i>
<i>abstrair</i> 'to abstract'	<i>abstraído</i>	<i>abstracção</i>
<i>acender</i> 'to light' 'set fire to'	<i>acendido</i>	<i>acesso</i>
<i>afligir</i> 'to afflict'	<i>afligido</i>	<i>aflito</i>
<i>anexar</i> 'to annex'	<i>anexado</i>	<i>anexo</i>
<i>assumir</i> 'to assume'	<i>assumido</i>	<i>assunto</i>
<i>atender</i> 'to consider'	<i>atendido</i>	<i>atento</i>
<i>cingir</i> 'to gird'	<i>cingido</i> (an analogical formation)	<i>cinto</i> (the regu- lar Latin parti- ciple, now used only as an ad- jective)
<i>cobrir</i> 'to cover'	<i>cobrido</i> (obsolete)	<i>coberto</i>
<i>colher</i> 'to collect'	<i>colhido</i>	now only <i>a colheita</i> 'harvest'
<i>compelir</i> 'to compel'	<i>compelido</i>	<i>compulso</i>
<i>completar</i> 'to complete'	<i>completado</i>	<i>completo</i>
<i>concluir</i> 'to conclude'	<i>concluído</i>	<i>concluso</i>
<i>confessar</i> 'to confess'	<i>confessado</i>	<i>confesso</i>
<i>confundir</i> 'to confound'	<i>confundido</i>	<i>confuso</i>
<i>contrair</i> 'to contract'	<i>contraído</i>	<i>contracto</i>
<i>contundir</i> 'to bruise'	<i>contundido</i>	<i>contuso</i>
<i>convencer</i> 'to convince'	<i>convencido</i>	<i>convicto</i>
<i>converter</i> 'to convert'	<i>convertido</i>	<i>converso</i>
<i>corrigir</i> 'to correct'	<i>corrigido</i>	<i>correto</i>
<i>corromper</i> 'to corrupt'	<i>corrompido</i>	<i>corru(p)to</i>

<i>cultivar</i> 'to cultivate'	<i>cultivado</i>	<i>culto</i>
<i>defender</i> 'to defend'	<i>defendido</i>	<i>defeso</i>
<i>despender</i> 'to spend'	<i>despendido</i> (the usual form)	<i>despeso</i>
<i>despertar</i> 'to awaken'	<i>despertado</i>	<i>desperto</i>
<i>deter</i> 'to detain'	<i>deteúdo</i>	<i>detido</i>
<i>difundir</i> 'to spread'	<i>difundido</i>	<i>difuso</i>
<i>dirigir</i> 'to direct'	<i>dirigido</i>	<i>directo</i>
<i>dispersar</i> 'to disperse'	<i>dispersado</i>	<i>disperso</i>
<i>dissolver</i> 'to dissolve'	<i>dissolvido</i>	<i>dissoluto</i>
<i>distinguir</i> 'to distinguish'	<i>distinguido</i>	<i>distinto</i>
<i>distrair</i> 'to distract'	<i>distraído</i>	<i>distracto</i>
<i>dividir</i> 'to divide'	<i>dividido</i>	<i>diviso</i>
<i>eleger</i> 'to elect'	<i>elegido</i>	<i>electo</i> or <i>eleito</i> (the adjectival form generally used as participle to-day)
<i>envolver</i> 'to involve'	<i>envolvido</i>	<i>envolto</i>
<i>erigir</i> 'to erect'	<i>erigido</i>	<i>erecto</i>
<i>esconder</i> 'to hide'	<i>escondido</i>	<i>escuso, esconso</i>
<i>escrever</i> 'to write'	<i>escrevido</i> (obsolete)	<i>escrito</i> (a Latin survival)
<i>excusar</i> 'to excuse'	<i>excusado</i>	<i>excuso</i>
<i>estender</i> 'to extend'	<i>estendido</i>	<i>extenso</i>
<i>estreitar</i> 'to narrow'	<i>estreitado</i>	<i>estrito</i>
<i>exaurir</i> 'to exhaust'	<i>exaurido</i>	<i>exausto</i>
<i>exceptuar</i> 'to accept'	<i>exceptuado</i>	<i>excepto</i> (prep.)
<i>excluir</i> 'to exclude'	<i>excluido</i>	<i>excluso</i>
<i>eximir</i> 'to exempt'	<i>eximido</i>	<i>exento, isento</i>
<i>expelir</i> 'to expel'	<i>expelido</i>	<i>expulso</i>
<i>expressar</i> 'to express'	<i>expressado</i>	<i>expresso</i>

<i>exprimir</i> 'to express'	<i>exprimido</i>	<i>expresso</i>
<i>extinguir</i> 'to extinguish'	<i>extinguido</i>	<i>extinto</i>
<i>extrair</i> 'to draw out'	<i>extraído</i>	<i>extracto</i>
<i>faltar</i> 'to fail'	<i>faltado</i>	<i>falto</i>
<i>fartar</i> 'to satisfy'	<i>fartado</i>	<i>farto</i>
<i>findar</i> 'to finish'	<i>findado</i>	<i>findo</i>
<i>fingir</i> 'to feign'	<i>fingido</i>	<i>ficto</i>
<i>frigir</i> 'to fry'	<i>frigido</i>	<i>frito</i>
<i>iludir</i> 'to deceive'	<i>iludido</i>	<i>iluso</i>
<i>imprimir</i> 'to print'	<i>imprimido</i>	<i>impresso</i>
<i>incluir</i> 'to include'	<i>incluido</i>	<i>incluso</i>
<i>incorrer</i> 'to incur'	<i>incorrido</i>	<i>incurso</i>
<i>infundir</i> 'to infuse'	<i>infundido</i>	<i>infuso</i>
<i>inquietar</i> 'to disturb'	<i>inquietado</i>	<i>inquiêto</i>
<i>inserir</i> 'to insert'	<i>inserido</i>	<i>inserto</i>
<i>instruir</i> 'to instruct'	<i>instruido</i>	<i>instruto</i> (rare)
<i>interromper</i> 'to interrupt'	<i>interrompido</i>	<i>interrupto</i>
<i>introduzir</i> 'to introduce'	<i>introduzido</i>	<i>introduito</i> (rare)
<i>isentar</i> 'to exempt'	<i>isentado</i>	<i>isento</i>
<i>lesar</i> 'to damage'	<i>lesado</i>	<i>leso</i>
<i>manifestar</i> 'to manifest'	<i>manifestado</i>	<i>manifesto</i>
<i>manter</i> 'to maintain'	<i>manteúdo</i> (obsolete)	<i>mantido</i>
<i>matar</i> 'to kill'	<i>matado</i>	<i>morto</i> *
<i>morrer</i> 'to die'	<i>morrido</i>	<i>morto</i> *

\**Matado*, the regular participle of *matar*, is used with *ter*. *Morto*, a Latin survival, is the stem-accented participle of *morrer* and is now used with *estar* as an adjective, in the sense of 'dead.' With *ser* it is used passively and with *ter* actively and means 'killed.' *Morrido*, the regular participle of *morrer*, is used only in modern times:

*naquele tempo já minha mãe era morta* 'my mother was dead at that time,' *naquele tempo já minha mãe*



<i>murchar</i> 'to wither' 'fade'	<i>murchado</i>	<i>murcho</i>
<i>nascer</i> 'to be born'	<i>nascido</i> (usual form)	<i>nato, nado</i> (the original participle, preserved as such only in a few expressions)
<i>omitir</i> 'to omit'	<i>omitido</i>	<i>omisso</i>
<i>oprimir</i> 'to oppress'	<i>oprimido</i>	<i>opresso</i>
<i>possuir</i> 'to possess'	<i>possuído</i>	<i>posseço</i>
<i>prender</i> 'to take' 'catch' 'seize'	<i>prendido</i>	<i>preso</i>
<i>pretender</i> 'to claim'	<i>pretendido</i>	<i>pretenso</i>
<i>professar</i> 'to profess'	<i>professado</i>	<i>professo</i>
<i>querer</i> 'to wish'	<i>querido</i>	<i>quistado</i> (obsolete, except in compounds <i>bem-quisto</i> 'beloved' and <i>malquistado</i> 'hated')
<i>remover</i> 'to remove'	<i>removido</i>	<i>rempto</i>
<i>repelir</i> 'to repel'	<i>repelido</i>	<i>repulso</i>
<i>reprimir</i> 'to repress'	<i>reprimido</i>	<i>represso</i>
<i>resolver</i> 'to resolve'	<i>resolvido</i>	<i>resoluto</i>
<i>restringir</i> 'to restrict'	<i>restringido</i>	<i>restrito</i>
<i>romper</i> 'to break'	<i>rompido</i>	<i>rôto</i>
<i>saber</i> 'to know'	<i>sabido</i> ( <i>sabudo</i> obsolete)	

---

*tinha morrido* 'at that time my mother had died,'  
*tem morto* (better *matado*) *muitos cervos* 'he has killed many deer,' *teem morrido muitas pessoas* 'many persons have died,' *foi morto por um inimigo* 'he was slain by an enemy.'

<i>solver</i> 'to solve'	<i>solvido</i>	<i>soluto</i>
<i>submergir</i> 'to submerge'	<i>submergido</i>	<i>submerso</i>
<i>submeter</i> 'to subjugate'	<i>submetido</i>	<i>submisso</i>
<i>sujeitar</i> 'to subject'	<i>sujeitado</i>	<i>sujeito</i>
<i>suprimir</i> 'to suppress'	<i>suprimido</i>	<i>supresso</i>
<i>surpreender</i> 'to surprise'	<i>surpreendido</i>	<i>surprêso</i>
<i>suspeitar</i> 'to suspect'	<i>suspeitado</i>	<i>suspeito</i>
<i>suspender</i> 'to suspend'	<i>suspendido</i>	<i>suspenso</i>
<i>temer</i> 'to fear'	<i>temido</i> ( <i>temudo</i> obsolete)	
<i>tender</i> 'to stretch'	<i>tendido</i>	<i>tenso</i>
<i>tingir</i> 'to dye'	<i>tingido</i>	<i>tinto</i>
<i>torcer</i> 'to twist'	<i>torcido</i>	<i>torço</i>
<i>vender</i> 'to sell'	<i>vendido</i> ( <i>ven-</i> <i>dudo</i> , obso- lete)	
<i>voltar</i> 'to turn'	<i>voltado</i>	<i>volto</i> (rare)

#### AGREEMENT OF VERB WITH SUBJECT

546. When the subject is simple the verb regularly agrees with it in number and person:

*Carlos dorme* 'Charles sleeps,' *os meninos estudam* 'the boys study,' *nós é que somos patriotas* 'it is we who are patriots.'

#### A. Number of Verb

##### 1. With One Subject

547. (a) Some names of countries, mountains, etc., generally used in the plural and with the article, take a plural verb when they represent a number of places:

*os Açores pertencem a Portugal* 'the Azores belong to Portugal.'

(b) But, generally unaccompanied by the article, such subjects take a singular verb when they represent only one place:

*Buenos-Aires é a mais bela cidade de América*  
'Buenos Aires is the most beautiful city in America.'

(c) When *nós* and *vós*, or the relative *que* referring to them, are used, as editorially, for *eu* and *tu* respectively, they take a plural verb, but a predicate adjective referring to them is ordinarily in the singular (174. c).

(d) *Gente*, when the equivalent of *nós*, takes its verb in the first person plural or the third person singular (365. b).

## 2. With Partitive and Collective Subjects and Numerals

548. (a) Collective subjects, such as *grupo* 'group,' *metade* 'half,' *multidão* 'multitude,' *número* 'number,' *um grande número* 'a large number,' *parte* 'part,' *uma grande parte* 'a large part,' *a maior parte* 'the greater part,' *porção* 'portion,' *quantidade* 'quantity,' *resto* 'rest,' take a singular verb if the subject is regarded as a whole:

*a maior parte da tripulação foi salva* 'the greater part of the crew was saved,' *metade da multidão estava afogada* 'half the multitude were drowned.'

(b) But if the collective word is defined by a genitive plural or the idea of plurality prevails, the verb is usually plural or it may agree with the nearest noun:

*a maioria das crianças são obedientes* 'most children are obedient,' *parte dos prisioneiros foram massacrados*

*dos* 'some of the prisoners were massacred,' *uma multidão de índios pereceram* 'a multitude of Indians perished,' *metade das casas estão estragadas* 'half the houses are destroyed,' *a quarta parte dos soldados foram presos* 'one-fourth of the soldiers were captured.'

(c) Similarly the interrogatives *quais*, *quantos*, *que*, and the indefinites *alguns*, *muitos*,  *nenhuns*, and *poucos*, when followed by a plural complement governed by *de*, usually take the verb in the plural:

*quais* (or *quantos*) *deles estão, como eu, cansados?* 'how many of them are as tired as I am?' *que de corações estão tristes!* 'how many hearts are sad!'

(d) *Mais de* 'more than' and *menos de* 'less than' before numerals take a plural verb:

*mais de mil estão nas ruas* 'more than a thousand are in the streets,' *menos de três não valem nada* 'less than three is worth nothing.'

(e) But if *mais de* is followed by *um*, the verb is in the singular:

*mais de um mendigo é rico* 'more than one beggar is rich.'

(f) When *um* in the predicate is defined by a dependent genitive plural, a singular verb may be used, though the plural construction is more regular:

*eu sou um dos que entendem* 'I am one of those who understand,' *um dos homens que lá esteve* (better *estiveram*) 'one of the men who were there.'

(g) When the subject is unity plus a fraction, a verb in the singular is preferred:

*um e meio basta* 'one and a half is enough.'

(h) When the subject of *ser* or *parecer* is *aquilo, isso, isto, o (que), tudo*, or a word of collective meaning, and the verb is accompanied by a predicate consisting of a plural noun, the verb, as a rule, agrees with the predicate (300):

*tudo são trevas* 'all is darkness,' *isto são boatos sem fundamento* 'these are groundless rumors,' *isto são mentiras* 'these are lies,' *tudo nesta vida parecem espinhos e dores* 'everything in this life seems to be thorns and sorrows,' *tudo são flores e danças* 'all is flowers and dances,' *os moços é que serão os velhos de amanhã* 'it is the young men who will be the old men of to-morrow,' *só os nomes, pronomes e verbos é que são capazes de flexão* 'only nouns, pronouns, and verbs are capable of inflection.'

(i) *Ser* when used impersonally with numerals, unlike the English idiom, agrees with the following predicate noun:

*são dez horas* 'it is ten o'clock,' *são horas de partir* 'it is time to go,' *eram sete de dezembro* 'it was the seventh of December.'

(j) The relative and interrogative pronoun *quem*, whatever may be the person and number of its antecedent, takes its verb in the third person singular (305. b):

*fui eu quem o fez* 'it was I who did it,' *quem é?* 'who is it?' *sou eu quem o diz* 'I am the one that says it,' *éramos nós quem falava* or, more often, *quem falava éramos nós* 'it is we who were speaking.'

(k) But if the subject *quem* is followed by *ser* 'to be' and there is a plural substantive in the predicate, the verb agrees with the latter:

*quem foram os mais famosos compositores?* 'who were the most famous composers?' *quem são os mais ricos?* 'who are the richest?' *quem eram eles?* 'who were they?'

(l) The relative *que* takes its verb in the same person and number as those of its antecedent (310):

*sou eu* (or *eu é*) *que comprei* (or *quem comprou*) *esta casa* 'it is I who bought this house,' *somos nós que temos este cão* 'it is we who have this dog,' *fui o primeiro brasileiro que guiou um automóvel* 'I was the first Brazilian to drive an automobile.'

(m) If the relative *que* is introduced by *aquêle*, the verb is in the third person singular:

*eu sou aquêle* (*mesmo*) *que foi chamado pelo presidente* 'I am the (very) one who was called by the president.'

(n) If the relative *que* refers to a preceding *um dos*, the verb is usually in the plural:

*êle foi um dos homens que mais fizeram pela arte* 'he was one of the men who did most for art,' *fui um dos primeiros portugueses que navegaram num aeroplano* 'I was one of the first Portuguese to sail in an aeroplane,' *êle foi um dos soldados que mais proezas praticaram* 'he was one of the soldiers who showed most bravery.'

(o) By analogy with *quem*, the third person singular is sometimes, though not so correctly, used with *que*:

*somos nós que o tem* (better *temos*) 'it is we who have it.'

(p) Verbs signifying sufficiency or want are usually in the singular though followed by a plural noun:

*falta(m) poucos dias para as férias* 'it lacks but a few

days till vacation,' *falçe(m)-nos o pão e a água* 'we need bread and water.'

(q) Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, even though the nouns that accompany them are plural (522):

*há* (less correctly *hão*) *multos ricos nos Estados Unidos* 'there are many rich men in the United States,' *não pode* (less correctly *podem*) *haver mais mōscas* 'there could not be more flies,' *costuma* (less correctly *costumam*) *haver carruagens na estação* 'there are usually carriages at the station,' *é preciso haver garantias seguras* or *são precisas garantias seguras*, but not *é preciso garantias seguras*, 'certain guarantees are necessary.'

### 3. With More Than One Subject

549. (a) If all the subjects are plural, the verb is plural whether it precedes or follows:

*o moço e a moça cantam* 'the young man and the girl sing.'

(b) But if the several plural subjects are summed up by a word in the singular, such as *alguém*, *algum*, *cada qual*, *cada um*, *nada*, *nenhum*, *ninguém*, *outrem*, *outro*, *todo*, or *tudo*, the verb which follows is singular:

*riquezas, honras, grandezas, glórias, tudo isto em breve desaparece* 'riches, honors, greatness, glory, all disappear in a short time,' *jogos e espectáculos, nada o tirava do seu retiro* 'games and spectacles, nothing drew him from his retirement,' *as flores, as árvores, os rios, tudo se iluminou com os raios do sol* 'the flowers, the trees, the rivers, everything

was lighted up by the rays of the sun,' *pai e filho cada um seguia por seu caminho* 'father and son each went his way.'

(c) If the several subjects are in the singular and denote persons or things perfectly distinct from each other, the verb is in the plural if it follows and is usually so if it precedes:

*o sol e a lua são brilhantes* 'the sun and the moon are brilliant,' *meu pai e minha mãe são os meus melhores amigos* 'my father and mother are my best friends,' *são coisas tão diferentes amizade e adulação* 'friendship and flattery are such very different things,' *Isabel e Cecília eram as filhas do médico* 'Isabel and Cecilia were the doctor's daughters,' *no mesmo país nasceram Washington e Lincoln* 'Washington and Lincoln were born in the same country.'

(d) But if the several subjects are in the singular and are more or less synonymous, the verb is singular whether it precedes or follows:

*mar e céu é um só véu* 'sea and sky are but one veil,' *dia e noite causa-lhe um terror* 'day and night cause him one terror,' *seu filho e sucessor subiu ao trono um ano depois* 'his son and successor ascended the throne a year afterwards,' *passará o vento e a chuva* 'the wind and rain will pass away,' *onde está sua paz e alegria?* 'where are his peace and happiness?'

(e) If the several subjects are of different numbers,



the verb is plural, but may be singular if it precedes and stands next to a singular subject:

*o sol e as estrêlas teem luz própria, teem luz própria as estrêlas e o sol, or tem luz própria o sol e as estrêlas* 'the sun and the stars have a light of their own,'  
*morreu Pedro e todos que lá estavam* 'Peter and all who were there died.'

#### 4. Coordinated Subjects

550. (a) A verb following two or more singular subjects linked together by *e* 'and,' *ou* 'or,' or *nem* 'nor' (*um e outro, um ou outro, nem um nem outro*) is in the singular if the action suits or seems to suit only one of the subjects, or if we wish to bring out each subject separately; otherwise the verb is in the plural. If one of the coordinated subjects is in the plural, the verb is either in the plural or agrees with the nearest subject:

*nem a pesca nem a caça o diverte* (or *divertem*) 'neither fishing nor hunting amuses him,' *nem eu nem ele será nomeado* 'neither he nor I will be named,' *o pai ou o filho será eleito presidente* 'the father or the son will be elected president,' *nem Carlos nem Artur são preguiçosos* 'neither Charles nor Arthur is lazy,' *nem ele nem eu temos esperanças de nos vermos* 'neither he nor I have hope of seeing one another,' *nem ele nem outro poeta escreveu tal poema* 'neither he nor another poet wrote such a poem,' *não era necessário que ele nem outro o dissesse* 'it was not necessary that he or another should say it,' *nem ele nem algum*

*dos outros chegaram a terra* 'neither he nor any of the others reached land,' *nem a lisonja, nem a razão, nem o exemplo, nem a esperança bastava a moderar-lhe o pessimismo* 'neither flattery, reason, example, nor hope sufficed to moderate his pessimism,' *um e outro é meu irmão* or *um e outro são meus irmãos* 'each is my brother' or 'both are my brothers,' *nem um nem outro é meu irmão* 'neither the one nor the other is my brother.'

(b) Singular subjects linked together directly by *quer . . . quer* 'whether . . . or . . . ,' *assim . . . como . . .* 'as well . . . as . . . ,' *tanto . . . como . . .* 'so much ('as many') . . . as . . . ,' 'both . . . as well as . . . ' take a plural verb:

*tanto o pai como o filho estão aqui* 'the father as well as the son are here.'

(c) *Não só . . . mas também . . .* 'not only . . . but . . . ' is most often followed by a singular verb:

*não só o pão mas também a água faltou aos marinheiros* 'the sailors were in want not only of bread but also of water.'

(d) A subject bound to another subject, in the singular or plural, by the preposition *com* generally takes a following verb in the plural, but in the singular, if the verb precedes and stands next to a subject in the singular:

*o descobridor com todos os seus homens padeciam grande fome* or *padecia o descobridor com todos os seus homens grande fome* 'the discoverer with all his men suffered great hunger,' *o pai com os filhos saiu* (or *sáiram*) *a passeio* 'the father went out with his sons for a walk,' *o tigre com o leão ganhavam dinheiro nas feiras* 'the tiger and the lion made money at the fairs.'

## 5. Infinitive Subjects

551. (a) A verb standing before or after two or more subject infinitives is in the singular:

*perdoar erros e engrandecer bons intentos é de espírito generoso* 'to pardon mistakes and praise good intentions is the part of a generous spirit,'  
*comer, andar, dormir é proveitoso à saúde* 'eating, walking, and sleeping are advantageous to health,'  
*é loucura dar conselhos a outrem e não os tomar para si* 'it is foolish to give advice to another and not to take it oneself.'

(b) If, however, the article is expressed with the infinitives, or they express contrast or opposition, the plural verb is preferred:

*o comer, o andar, e o dormir são proveitosos à saúde; amar, agravar, e empecar não se compadecem* 'to love, to offend, and to hurt do not agree.'

## B. Person of Verb

552. (a) If all the subjects are of the third person, the verb is also of that person.

(b) If one of the words composing a compound subject is of the first person, then the verb, if it follows, is in the first person plural:

*eu, tu e ele partiremos juntos* 'you, he, and I will leave together,' *nem eu nem vós sabemos dançar* 'neither you nor I know how to dance,' *eu e ele ficaremos aqui* 'he and I will remain here,' *eu e a minha irmã parecemo-nos tanto* 'my sister and I resemble each other so much.'

(c) If the verb precedes the subjects, it agrees in person with the first subject:

*hoje os bons cidadãos somos eu e outros como eu*  
 'to-day the good citizens are I and others like me.'

(d) If none of the subjects is of the first person, but one of them is of the second, then the verb is in the second person plural if it follows. It may, however, agree in person with the first subject if it precedes:

*tu e êle partireis juntos or partirão êle e tu juntos*  
 'you and he will leave together.'

(e) With titles of address, *Vossa(s) Excelência(s)*, *Vossa(s) Mercê(s)*, etc., the verb is in the third person, singular or plural (236).

For the person of the verb with *quem* and *que*, see 548. j-o.

#### THE PREDICATE

553. The preposition *a*, corresponding to the preposition 'to,' which is often not expressed in English, cannot be omitted before the indirect object in Portuguese:

*deu a faca ao menino* 'he gave the boy the knife.'

554. (a) Transitive verbs generally take a direct object without a preposition. But when the direct object is the name of a person or denotes a definite living being or a personified thing, it is frequently preceded by the preposition *a*, or, if a pronoun, it takes the dative form. This practice is not so rigorously observed in Portuguese as in Spanish:

*César venceu (a) Pompeu* 'Caesar conquered Pompey,' *êle subjugou (a) o leão* 'he overcame the lion,'

*se fôsse (a) V.Ex:* 'if I were you,' *para livrar de erros (a) quem não sabe português* 'to save one who does not know Portuguese from making mistakes,' *para a qual convidou (a) muitos* 'to which he invited many,' *a meu irmão ele odeia como a uma cobra* 'he hates my brother like a snake,' *a pessoa a quem interpelava* 'the person he questioned,' *amarás a Deus sobre todas as coisas e ao teu próximo como a ti mesmo* 'thou shalt love God above all things and thy neighbor as thyself,' *homem temente a Deus* 'a god-fearing man,' *ninguém pode servir ao mesmo tempo (a) dois senhores* 'no man can at the same time serve two masters.'

(b) The preposition *a* is sometimes so used even before an inanimate object, simply to distinguish it from the subject of the verb or for emphasis or, even though there is no confusion, when the object stands before the verb at the head of the sentence:

*vence o inverno ao verão* or *ao verão vence o inverno* 'winter overcomes summer,' *e à luz chamou dia, e às trevas noite* 'and He called the light Day and darkness Night.'

(c) It must also be used before *outro* in the expression *um (uns) ao(s) outro(s)* designating reciprocity:

*sem se verem um ao outro com o fumo* 'without seeing each other with the smoke;'

and after *como*, to mark out clearly the following word as object, not subject:

*tratei-o como homem de bem* 'I treated him as a gentleman (would treat one),' *tratei-o como a homem*

*de bem* 'I treated him as a gentleman (should be treated).'

555. But the preposition *a* is omitted

(a) When the object is governed by such verbs as *cumprimentar* 'to compliment,' *convidar* 'to invite,' and *felicitar* 'to congratulate:'

*cumprimento V.Ex<sup>a</sup>* 'I compliment you.'

(b) When the object refers to persons in an indefinite sense:

*desejar amigos* 'to desire friends.'

(c) When ambiguity would arise from its use:

*comparar Pedro a João* 'to compare Peter to John,'  
*vendeu a Pedro* 'he sold Peter,' but *vendeu Pedro a João* 'he sold Peter to John.'

(d) When the object is qualified by a relative pronoun which is itself preceded by *a* and is the object of another verb:

*admiro os homens a quem não abalam os reveses*  
'I admire men who are not affected by reverses.'

(e) When the object is governed by *ter*, in its literal meaning:

*tenho dois amigos* 'I have two friends,' but not  
when it means 'to consider' 'to regard' (557. h):  
*ter a alguém por homem de talento* 'to regard somebody as a man of talent.'

Verbs of Calling, Naming, etc.

556. (a) *Aclamar* 'to acclaim,' *chamar* 'to call,' and *nomear* 'to appoint' take a direct object:

*vou chamar o guia* 'I am going to call the guide.'

(b) But when the direct object is followed by another in apposition with it, or the verb of calling applies an epithet of praise or blame to the object, this latter is regularly preceded by the preposition *a* or, if a pronoun, takes the indirect form:

*chamar a alguém ladrão* 'to call one a thief,' *a Washington chamar o pai da pátria* 'they call Washington the Father of his Country,' *chamando teatrais às suas atitudes e calculados aos seus silêncios* 'calling his attitude theatrical and his silence calculated,' *a nação aclamou rei de Portugal a D. João* 'the nation proclaimed Dom John King of Portugal,' *chamava amigo a quem não o era* 'he called him friend who was not one,' *assim lhe chamaremos por comodidade de linguagem* 'we shall call it so for convenience of language,' *chamou-lhe tolo* 'he called him a fool.'

557. (a) With verbs of this class some variants of the regular construction are more or less current:

*chamar alguém tolo* 'to call somebody a fool,' *chamá-lo hábil como o chama o autor* 'to call him clever, as the author does,' *ele chamou-me mentiroso* 'he called me a liar,' *eu vos nomeio por embaixador* 'I name you ambassador.'

(b) *Condenar* 'to condemn' is followed by *por* or *como* (565.c):

*foi condenado por (or como) réu* 'he was condemned as a criminal.'

(c) With *considerar* 'to consider' 'to regard,' *como* 'as' may or may not be expressed:

*considerá-lo (como) pai* 'to consider him as father,'  
*considerar alguém (como) feliz* 'to regard somebody as happy.'

(d) *Eleger* 'to elect' is followed by the direct object, or by *para* or *como*:

*elegeram-no (para or como) presidente* 'they elected him president.'

(e) *Fazer de*:

*faz de nós tolos (faz-nos de tolos, Brazil)* 'he makes fools of us,' *faz de tolo* 'he acts like a fool.'

(f) *Pôr* (or *dq̃r*) *o nome de* 'to name:'

*pôs-lhe o nome de António* 'he gave him the name (of) Anthony,' *a ela puseram-lhe Rosa* 'they called her Rose.'

(g) *Qualificar* in the meaning 'to entitle' 'to characterize' is usually construed with *de*:

*qualificá-lo de mestre* 'to give him the title of master.'

(h) A large number of verbs, among them *dq̃r*, *estq̃r*, *haver*, *ir*, *mandq̃r*, *passq̃r*, *prender*, *receber*, *tomq̃r*, and *vir*, in the sense of 'to regard,' 'be taken for,' 'pass for,' and *instituir* 'to constitute' 'declare,' are construed with *por* (555.e, 687.h):

*adotei-o por filho* 'I adopted him as a son,' *reputado por homem de probidade* 'reputed to be an upright man,' *trocar* (or *deixar*) *uma coisa por outra* 'to change one thing for another,' *este homem passa por muito rico* 'this man passes as very rich,' *tenho-o por sábio* 'I consider him a learned man,' *instituir o filho por herdeiro* 'to appoint his son heir,' *dq̃ram-se por perdidos* 'they gave themselves up as lost,' *Pedro compareceu por Paulo* 'Peter appeared in the part of Paul,' *foi por*



*embaixador* 'he went as ambassador,' *tenho-o por honesto* 'I consider him to be honest.'

558. (a) A variable predicate noun referring to a single substantive must agree with it in gender and number:

*o dinheiro é senhor do mísero avarento* 'money is the master of the wretched miser,' *as riquezas são senhoras do mísero avarento* 'riches is the mistress of the wretched miser.'

(b) But referring to two or more substantives of different genders, the predicate noun is masculine plural:

*a honra e o dever são os mestres cuja voz sempre devemos escutar e seguir* 'honor and duty are the masters whose voice we must always listen to and follow.'

#### PREPOSITIONS WITH VERBS

559. Many verbs which in English require a preposition before their object are transitive in Portuguese or take a different preposition than in English:

*aproveitando a doença do pai* 'taking advantage of his father's illness,' *agradeço a sua amabilidade* 'I thank you for your kindness,' *almoçar peixe* 'to breakfast on fish,' *cumprir a lei* 'to comply with the law,' *estranho a audácia dele* 'I am surprised at his boldness,' *vou presenciar a récita* 'I am going to be present at the recital,' *aquêle senhor diz-me que alguém estranhou ter êle empregado a expressão* 'that gentleman tells me that somebody was surprised at his using the expression,' *cautela com a espingarda* 'look out for the gun,' *comprei o fato ao* (also, with a slight difference

in meaning, *do*) *Sr. Mendes* 'I bought the suit of Mr. Mendes.'

560. On the other hand many verbs which are transitive in English require a preposition in Portuguese:

*gosto de café* 'I like coffee' (563. d).

### Verbs Requiring a Preposition

561. A. The following verbs, among others, take *a* or the indirect form of the personal pronoun.

(a) Many verbs difficult to classify but signifying in general 'to aid,' 'to assure,' 'to answer,' 'to ask,' 'to beg,' 'to envy,' 'to escape,' 'to satisfy,' 'to please,' 'to refuse,' 'to resist,' 'to teach,' 'to thank,' such as

*aconselhar* 'to advise'

*acudir* 'to assist'

*agradar* 'to please'

*agradecer* 'to thank'

*ajudar* 'to aid'

*assistir* 'to assist'

*faltar* 'to fail'

*fugir* 'to flee'

*negar* 'to deny'

*obedecer* 'to obey'

*ordenar* 'to order'

*pedir* 'to ask'

*perdoar* 'to pardon'

*permitir* 'to permit'

*prazer* 'to please'

*preguntar* 'to ask' 'inquire'

*proibir* 'to prohibit'

*prometer* 'to promise'

*recusar* 'to refuse'

*renunciar* 'to reject'

*resistir* 'to resist'

*responder* 'to answer'

*rogar* 'to entreat'

*sacrificar* 'to sacrifice'

*sobreviver* 'to survive'

*sucedêr* 'to succeed'

*suplicar* 'to entreat'

*resisti ao primeiro impulso de cólera* 'I resisted the first impulse of anger,' *isto não agradará a muita gente* 'that will not please many people,' *a República*

*sucedeu à Monarquia* 'the Republic succeeded the Monarchy,' *peço um favor a meu tio* 'I ask a favor of my uncle,' *eu perdoei à menina* 'I pardoned the girl,' *preguntou ao médico* 'he asked the physician,' *proibiu ao moço* 'he forbade the youth,' *nunca falta à sua palavra* 'he never breaks his word.'

(b) With some verbs there is a difference of meaning when *a* is used or omitted:

*querer alguma coisa* 'to desire something,' *quero o Manuel* 'I want Manuel,' *quero ao Manuel* 'I am fond of Manuel,' *quero-lhe muito* 'I like him very much.'

(c) *Ensinar* 'to teach' is followed by the direct object of the person, if the subject matter is not expressed:

*ensinar os alunos* 'to teach the pupils;'

but by the indirect object if the matter is mentioned:

*ensinei-lhe a música* 'I taught him music.'

If the matter taught is expressed by an infinitive governed by *a*, the name of the person taught is direct object:

*ensinei o menino a dançar* 'I taught the boy to dance,'  
*ensiná-lo a fazer brinquedos* 'to teach him to make toys.'

(d) *Jogar* 'to play' may or may not be followed by *a*:  
*jogar as* (or *às*) *cartas* 'to play cards,' *jogar a* (or *à*) *bola* 'to play ball.'

(e) *Preguntar* and *rogar* 'to ask:'

*preguntar alguma coisa a alguém* 'to ask somebody for something,' *preguntar alguém sobre alguma coisa* 'to enquire of some one about something,' *perguntei-lhe que nome tinha* (or *qual era o seu nome*) 'I asked him what his name was,' *perguntei pelo meu amigo* 'I inquired about my friend.'

(f) *Prover* 'to provide:'

*prover ao bem do país* 'to provide for the good of the country,' *prover às necessidades do hospital* 'to provide for the needs of the hospital,' *prover com víveres* 'to provide with provisions,' *prover de remédio* 'to provide with a remedy,' *prover em um cargo* 'to take charge of an office,' *prover da ceia frugal* 'to furnish the frugal meal,' *prover sobre os mantimentos do exército* 'to look after the provisions of the army.'

(g) *Fugir* 'to flee' and *requisitar* 'to claim' 'demand' may be followed by *a* or *de* before the name of the person requested:

*requisitei-lhe* (or *a êle*) *a entrega* or *requisitei dele a entrega* 'I required him to deliver it,' *fugiu dos inimigos* 'he fled from the enemy,' but *fugiu aos inimigos* 'he escaped from ('avoided') the enemy.'

(h) *Resistir* 'to resist' is used with *a* or *contra* or without a preposition:

*Esta barraca não resiste à chuva* 'this tent does not stand the rain,' *não pôde resistir seu furioso ímpeto* 'he could not withstand its furious violence.'

(i) *Saber* 'to taste' and *cheirar* 'to smell' take *a*:

*sabe a queimado* 'it tastes burned,' *as roupas cheiravam a sabão* 'the clothes smelt of soap.'

562. B. The following verbs, among others, are frequently construed with *com*:

(a) *Acabar* 'to complete:'

*acabemos com isso* 'let us put an end to that,' *acaba-se com as queixas* or *acabam-se as queixas*, but not *acabam-se com as queixas*, 'the complaints are put an end to.'

(b) *Carregar* 'to load:'

*Ele carregou com todo êsso pêsso* 'he took all that load upon him.'

- (c) *Casqr* 'to marry:'

*casou com a filha do padeiro* 'he married the baker's daughter.'

- (d) *Contqr* 'to intend' 'expect' is followed by a simple infinitive without a preceding preposition:

*conta fazer a sua fortuna com o petróleo* 'he expects to make his fortune in oil;' but in the meaning 'to depend on,' it is followed by *com*: *pqde V.Exª contqr com o meu auxílio* 'you may count on my help,' *pqde contqr com o seu regresso antes de cinco* 'you may depend on it that he will return before five o'clock.'

- (e) *Cumprir* 'to fulfill' is usually not followed by a preposition:

*cumprir o preceito do mestre* 'to fulfill the master's precept;'

but when it refers in a more intimate sense to what is proper to the subject of the verb, it may be followed by *com*:

*cumpriu (com) o seu dever* 'he fulfilled his duty.'

- (f) *Dqr* 'to give' (cf. j):

*dqr com* 'to act towards' 'to treat with,' *ao dqr com uma escolta* 'on meeting a guard,' *fui dqr com êle* 'I went to meet him.'

- (g) *Encontrqr* and *acertqr* 'to meet:'

*João e António encontrqram-se* or *João encontrou António* 'John met Anthony;' *João encontrou-se com António* is a common, but faulty, construction.

- (h) *Encurtqr* 'to shorten' is occasionally, but incorrectly, followed by *com*:

*encurtou as despesas* 'he curtailed expenses.'

- (i) *Ficar* 'to remain:'

*fico com o quarto* 'I will take the room.'

- (j) *Have*r and *ter* 'to have,' in certain idioms, are used with *com* (cf. f):

*ter caridade com os inimigos* 'to have charity for the enemy,' *fui ter com êle* 'I went to meet him.'

- (k) *Importar* 'to be of importance:'

*sem me importar com a manhã de chuva que estava* 'without concerning myself about the rainy morning it was.'

- (l) *Ir* 'to go:'

*foi com a barraca* 'he went to the hut.'

- (m) *Parecer* 'to seem' is construed with *com*:

*o filho parece-se muito com o pai* 'the son resembles his father very much,' *parece-se muito com cebolas* 'it looks very much like onions.'

- (n) *Ser* 'to be:'

*isso não é comigo, não diz respeito a mim*, or *não me diz respeito* 'that is no affair of mine.'

- (o) *Sonhar* 'to dream:'

*sonhei com riquezas* 'I dreamt of riches,' *sonhei com o meu amigo* 'I dreamt of my friend.'

- (p) *Topar* 'to meet' 'find' and *acertar* 'to discover:'

*topei com Francisco* 'I met Francis,' *acertei com uma coisa* 'I found out something.'

# 563. C. The following take *de*:

- (a) Verbs of 'accusing,' 'convincing,' 'acquitting,' 'praising,' 'blaming,' etc., many of which in English

are followed by 'of,' 'for,' 'at,' 'about.' Such verbs, for example, are

<i>abonar</i> 'to vouch for'	<i>gozar</i> 'to enjoy'
<i>acusar</i> 'to accuse'	<i>jactar-se</i> 'to boast'
<i>admirar-se</i> 'to wonder'	<i>lograr-se</i> 'to enjoy'
<i>adoecer</i> 'to fall sick'	'profit'
<i>agradar-se</i> 'to be pleased'	<i>maldizer</i> 'to speak ill'
<i>alegrar-se</i> 'to rejoice'	<i>maravilhar-se</i> 'to wonder'
<i>apoderar-se</i> 'to take possession'	<i>molejar</i> 'to scoff'
<i>aproveitar-se</i> 'to take advantage'	<i>padecer</i> 'to suffer'
<i>arguir</i> 'to accuse'	<i>persuadir</i> 'to persuade'
<i>arrepender-se</i> 'to repent'	<i>prevenir</i> 'to advise'
<i>assenhorear-se</i> 'to get the mastery'	<i>prezar-se</i> 'to boast'
<i>certificar-se</i> 'to certify'	<i>querelar</i> 'to complain'
<i>condoer-se</i> 'to condole'	<i>rir(-se)</i> 'to laugh'
<i>convencer</i> 'to convince'	<i>ser</i> 'to be' 'belong'
<i>culpar</i> 'to blame'	<i>servir</i> 'to serve'
<i>depende</i> 'to depend'	<i>sofrer</i> 'to suffer'
<i>desesperar</i> 'to despair'	<i>taxar</i> 'to blame'
<i>doer-se</i> 'to pity' 'complain'	<i>tratar</i> 'to treat' 'handle'
<i>enamorar-se</i> 'to fall in love'	<i>trunfar</i> 'to triumph'
<i>escarnecer</i> 'to laugh at'	<i>valer-se</i> 'to make use of'
<i>falar da guerra</i> 'to talk of the war,'	<i>vangloriar-se</i> 'to be proud'
<i>rir-se de alguém</i> 'to laugh at somebody,'	<i>vingar-se</i> 'to take vengeance'
<i>tratá-lo de pobre</i> 'to call him a poor person,'	<i>zombar</i> 'to mock'
<i>cuida da (or na) reparação das ruas</i> 'he attends to the repair of the streets,'	

*isso depende de muitas coisas* 'that depends on many things,' *admirou-se do espectáculo* 'he was surprised at the play' (but *êle admirou o espectáculo* 'he admired the play'), *sofre duma erisipela* 'he suffers from erysipelas,' *servir de remédio* 'to serve as a remedy,' *arguir de negligência* 'to accuse of negligence,' *triunfar das tentações* 'to overcome temptations,' *taxar uma pessoa de covarde* 'to charge a person with cowardice,' *sabe V.Exª duma boa casa-de-pasto?* 'do you know of a good restaurant?' *sei de mais duma* 'I know of more than one.'

(b) Verbs of 'abstaining (from)' and 'desisting (from):'

*deixa-te de asneiras* 'stop your foolishness,' *absteve-se de alimento* 'he abstained from food.'

(c) Verbs of 'furnishing,' 'filling,' 'providing,' 'loading,' and also to express cause. Such verbs, for example, are

<i>abundar</i> 'to abound' ( <i>infra</i> )	<i>manchar</i> 'to spot'
<i>ameaçar</i> 'to threaten'	<i>morrer</i> 'to die'
<i>apacentar-se</i> 'to feed' 'to graze'	<i>munir</i> 'to supply'
<i>armar</i> 'to arm'	<i>ornar</i> 'to adorn'
<i>ataviar</i> 'to trim'	<i>prover</i> 'to provide'
<i>carregar</i> 'to load'	<i>revestir</i> 'to clothe'
<i>chorar</i> 'to weep'	<i>sustentar-se</i> 'to live' 'subsist'
<i>cobrir</i> 'to cover' (683. n)	<i>tingir</i> 'to dye'
<i>dotar</i> 'to endow'	<i>tremar</i> 'to tremble'
<i>encher</i> 'to fill'	<i>vestir</i> 'to dress'
<i>guarnecer</i> 'to furnish'	<i>viver</i> 'to live'



Some of these verbs may also be followed by *com*:

*carregar um navio de trigo* 'to load a ship with wheat,' *chorar de prazer* 'to weep with joy,' *cobrir o seu nome de glória* 'to cover his name with glory,' *morrer de* (or *à* or *com*) *fome* 'to die of hunger,' *encher o fôssô de* (or *com*) *areia* 'to fill up the ditch with sand,' *recuar de* (or *com*) *espanto* 'to recoil with fear,' *guarnecer a casa de* (or *com*) *móveis* 'to provide the house with furniture.'

*Abundar* is more often followed by *em*: *o mercado abunda em fruta* 'the market abounds in fruit.'

(d) Many verbs which are transitive in English take the preposition *de* in Portuguese. Such are

<i>abusar</i> 'to abuse'	<i>gostar</i> and <i>gozar</i> 'to like'
<i>carecer</i> 'to lack' 'need'	<i>lembrar-se</i> 'to remember'
<i>confiar</i> 'to trust' (more often takes <i>em</i> )	<i>mudar</i> 'to change'
<i>desconfiar</i> 'to distrust'	<i>necessitar</i> and <i>precisar</i> 'to want' 'need'
<i>duvidar</i> 'to doubt'	<i>usar</i> 'to use'
<i>fruir</i> 'to enjoy'	

*avizinhar-se* (or *aproximar-se*) *de um lugar* 'to approach a place,' *gosto disso* 'I like that,' *desertar a* (or *da*) *causa popular* 'to desert the popular cause,' *entender de música* 'to understand music,' *preciso de descanso* 'I need rest,' *arrancar das espadas* 'to draw swords,' *ele muda de opinião como de roupa* 'he changes his mind like his clothes,' *gosto mais de chá do que de leite* 'I like tea better than milk,' *gosto do Miguel* 'I like Michael,' *duvido disso* 'I doubt that,' *ele indagou da razão*

'he inquired the reason,' *pouco me lembro d'ele* 'I do not remember him very well,' *abusa da minha paciência* 'he wears out my patience.'

(e) *Entender* 'to be versed in' is followed by *de*: *êle não entende de física* 'he does not understand physics;' otherwise as in English: *êle não entende o que tu dizes* 'he does not understand what you say.'

(f) *Esquecer* 'to forget' (519. a):

*esquecer alguma coisa* or *esquecer-se de alguma coisa* 'to forget something,' *esquecer-se dos favores* 'to forget favors.'

(g) *Fazer* is sometimes construed with *de* and a noun or adjective. Compare *Pedro fazia de honesto* 'Peter appeared ('pretended') to be honest,' *êle fazia de soldado* 'he played the part of a soldier,' and *Pedro fez-se honesto* 'Peter became honest.'

#### 564. D. The following take *em*:

(a) Verbs of rest:

*estar em Lisboa* 'to be in Lisbon,' *estava em casa de meu pai* 'I was in my father's house.'

*Habitár* 'to inhabit' 'occupy' 'dwell in' may be transitive or take *em*:

*habitar (em) uma casa* 'to live in a house.'

(b) Verbs implying a change of position, such as

<i>incorrer</i> 'to incur'	<i>saltar</i> 'to leap'
<i>passar</i> 'to walk'	<i>tocar</i> 'to touch'
<i>prorromper</i> 'to burst'	<i>vir</i> 'to come'
<i>sair</i> 'to go out'	

*passar no jardim* 'to walk in the garden,' *andar na rua* 'to walk in the street,' *saltar em terra* 'to

land,' *entrar na cidade* 'to enter into the city,' *incorreu (em) todos os castigos* 'he incurred every punishment,' *cair em pobreza* 'to fall into poverty,' *converter um castelo em ruínas* 'to turn a castle into ruins,' *traduzir em inglês* 'to translate into English,' *vir em caminho de ferro* or *vir no combóio* 'to come by train,' *o rei sentava-se no trono* 'the king sat on the throne' but *sentámo-nos à mesa* 'we sat at the table.'

(c) Certain other verbs which express rather the result of an action than the action itself. Such are

<i>admitir</i> 'to admit'	<i>lançar</i> 'to throw'
<i>converter</i> 'to change'	<i>meter</i> and <i>pôr</i> 'to put'
<i>dar</i> 'to give'	<i>pegar</i> 'to lay hold of'
<i>deitar</i> 'to throw' 'pour'	<i>receber</i> 'to receive'
<i>desfazer</i> 'to dissolve'	<i>tomar</i> 'to take'
<i>dividir</i> 'to divide'	<i>transmudar</i> 'to transmute'

*não pegue nessa roca* 'do not take hold of that rock,' *pegou na mala* 'he took hold of the trunk,' *lançar dinheiro no* (more often *ao*) *chão* 'to throw money on the ground,' *a semana divide-se em sete dias* 'the week is divided into seven days,' *pega-lhe (= pega nêle) pela mão* 'he takes him by the hand,' *deita vinho no copo* 'he pours wine into the glass,' *dar em tísico*, *chegar a tísico*, *tornar-se tísico*, or *ficar tísico* 'to fall into consumption,' *dar em beber* or *dar em bêbado* 'to take to drink,' *esta mulher dá muito nos filhos* 'this woman beats her children very much,' *a carruagem foi bater na parede* 'the

carriage ran into the wall,' *dar em casamento* 'to give in marriage,' *esteve disfarçado em palhaço* 'he was disguised as a clown,' *dar uma bofetada em alguém* 'to give some one a blow,' *dando um encontro nêle* 'pushing him,' *trasmudar os metais em ouro* 'to transmute the metals into gold,' *água mole em pedra dura tanto dá até que fura* 'soft water beats on the hard rock until it bores it'

(d) Verbs of 'speaking,' 'thinking,' 'believing,' 'agreeing,' 'observing,' and 'persisting,' such as

*absorver-se* 'to be  
absorbed'

*concordar* 'to conform'

*confiar* 'to trust'

*consentir* 'to consent'

*convir* 'to agree'

*cuidar* 'to care for'

*enganar-se* 'to be de-  
ceived'

*fiar-se* 'to trust'

*imaginar* 'to imagine'

*meditar* 'to ponder'

*reparar* 'to take notice'

*obstinar-se, persistir, por-  
fiar, and teimar* 'to  
persist'

*ocupar-se* 'to be occu-  
pied'

*pensar* 'to think'

*reflectir* 'to reflect'

*trabalhar* 'to work'

*não se fala mais nisso* 'that is no longer talked of,' *ainda se fala na guerra?* 'do they still talk of the war?' *pensar em mim* 'to think of me,' *em que pensa V. Ex.?* 'what are you thinking of?' *penso nêle* 'I am thinking of him,' also *pensar coisas tristes* 'to think (of) unpleasant things,' *pensou consigo* 'he thought to himself,' *todo o seu intento era (em) escrever o livro* 'all his endeavor was in writing the book,' *estão absorptos nos estudos* 'they

are absorbed in their studies,' *trabalha num problema de matemática* 'he is working on a problem in mathematics,' *repare no rio* 'look at the river,' *reparou no quarto?* 'did you notice the room?'

(e) *Crer* and *acreditar* 'to believe' are used with or without *em*:

*crer em Deus* 'to believe in God,' *creio o* (or *no*) *que diz* 'I believe what he says.'

(f) To express price or value, with such verbs as *avaliar* 'to appraise,' *estimar* 'to rate' (almost only in the expressions, *estimar em muito*, *estimar em pouco*), and *taxar* 'to value:'

*avalio a casa em vinte contos* 'I value the house at twenty contos.'

(g) In the popular speech, *beber* 'to drink' and *comer* 'to eat' are frequently followed by *em*:

*foi bebendo (n)o vinho* 'he kept on drinking the wine,'  
*foi comendo (n)o pão* 'he kept on eating the bread.'

565. (a) The following verbs are usually followed by the preposition *por*, in the sense of 'for,' 'about,' 'on behalf of:'

*almejar* 'to covet'  
*anelar* 'to hanker'  
*ansiar* 'to long'  
*bradar* 'to clamor'  
*chamar* 'to call'  
*combater* 'to fight'  
*esperar* 'to hope'  
*gritar* 'to cry'

*interceder*, *pedir* 'to intercede'  
*morrer* 'to die'  
*orar* 'to pray'  
*preguntar* 'to ask'  
*pugnar* 'to fight'  
*suspirar* 'to sigh'  
*velar* 'to watch'

*orai por ele* 'pray for him,' *interceder* (*rogar* or *pedir*) *por alguém* 'to intercede for somebody,'

*preguntar por alguém* 'to enquire about somebody,'  
*chamar por alguém* 'to call for somebody,' *pugnar  
 pela justiça* 'to fight for justice,' *anelar pela morte*  
 'to sigh for death.'

(b) In some cases *por* and *para* perform the same service: *rogar por* (less commonly *para*) *alguém* 'to pray for some one.'

(c) *Por* is also used with certain verbs to mean 'as,' 'in the quality of,' 'in place of' (557. b. h).

#### THE INFINITIVE AND THE PREPOSITION

##### A. The Infinitive Without a Preceding Preposition

566. (a) The simple or impersonal infinitive, preceded or not by the definite article or a possessive and without a preceding preposition, is used as a noun in the masculine singular. It may be subject, object, or in apposition:

*tarde dar e negar estão a dar* 'slow to give is the same as to refuse,' *laborar é orar* 'to work is to pray,' *viver é lutar* 'life is a struggle,' *mais vale calar que mal falar* 'better is silence than evil speech,' *o andar cansa* 'walking wearies,' *cansa-nos estranheza ver a variedade de linguagem* 'it surprises us to see the variety of languages,' *teria sido melhor ter ficado em casa* 'it would have been better to stay at home,' *pode ser devido a ter o escritor em mente outra fórmula* 'it may be due to the fact that the writer had another formula in mind.'

A few substantivized infinitives are used in the plural, as *os poderes* 'the Powers' 'States,' *os dizeres* 'phrases'

'sayings,' *os comeres, os viveres* 'victuals' 'viands,' *os dques e os tomqres* 'disputes.'

(b) Though the infinitive has the force of a noun, it is not followed by a dependent genitive, unless it is an infinitive governed by *a* and designates time:

*o estudar costumes estrangeiros é muito interessante* 'the study of foreign habits is very interesting,' *ao romper da manhã* 'at day-break,' *ao levantar-se* (or *nascçer*) *o sol* 'at sunrise,' *o condenar um homem sem ser ouvido não se compadçe com os princípios elementqres da justiça* 'to condemn a man without being heard is not in harmony with the elementary principles of justice.'

567. (a) The infinitive may depend on an impersonal verb:

*é necessário sair* 'it is necessary to go out,' *importa chegar cedo* 'it is important to arrive early,' *é necessário fazê-lo* 'it must be done,' *não é possível conseguir tudo* 'it is not possible to obtain everything.'

(b) *Convém* 'it is fitting' may be followed by *a* before the following infinitive, but it is preferable to omit it. *Custa* 'it is difficult' is ordinarily followed by *a*:

*custa a crçer* 'it is hard to believe,' *não convém dizê-lo* 'it is not fitting to say so.'

568. (a) An impersonal infinitive is also used without a preceding preposition when it depends on a verb of 'saying,' 'thinking,' 'perceiving,' 'desiring,' 'planning,' 'succeeding,' or of similar meaning, and in most cases whether or not the main verb and the infinitive have the same subject. Such verbs are

*aconselhar* 'to advise'

*afirmar* 'to affirm'

*obter* 'to obtain'

*ousar* 'to dare'

<i>ameaçar</i> 'to threaten'	<i>pensar</i> 'to plan'
<i>conseguir</i> 'to obtain'	<i>podêr</i> 'to be able'
<i>costumar</i> 'to be accus- tomed'	<i>proibir</i> 'to prohibit'
<i>decidir</i> 'to decide'	<i>projectar</i> 'to plan'
<i>declarar</i> 'to declare'	<i>prometer</i> 'to promise'
<i>determinar</i> 'to determine'	<i>propôr</i> 'to propose'
<i>diligenciar</i> 'to be active'	<i>recear</i> 'to fear'
<i>dizer</i> 'to say'	<i>recusar</i> 'to refuse'
<i>duvidar</i> 'to doubt'	<i>resolver</i> 'to resolve'
<i>empreender</i> 'to undertake'	<i>saber</i> 'to know' 'be able'
<i>esperar</i> 'to hope'	<i>sentir</i> 'to regret'
<i>evitar</i> 'to avoid'	<i>servir-se</i> 'to be kind enough'
<i>impedir</i> 'to hinder'	<i>soer</i> 'to be accustomed'
<i>intentar</i> 'to intend'	<i>temer</i> 'to fear'
<i>julgar</i> 'to mean'	<i>tencionar</i> 'to intend'
<i>jurar</i> 'to swear'	<i>tentar</i> 'to attempt'
<i>negar</i> 'to deny'	

*podemos vir* 'we may come,' *êle declarou sêr êste livro de Pedro* 'he declared that this book is Peter's,' *êle confessou sêr ela sua mulher* 'he has confessed that she is his wife,' *êle julga saber isso* 'he thinks he knows that,' *ameaça fazer qualquer coisa* 'he threatens to do something.'

(b) In most of these cases, as in English, a dependent *que* 'that' clause may be used, and sometimes is to be preferred, instead of the infinitive (569. b); in other cases the preposition *de* is expressed before the infinitive (577):

*afirmou não haver índios brancos* or *afirmou que*



*não havia índios brancos* 'he held that there were no white Indians,' *prometo fazer* (or *que farei*) *alguma coisa* 'I promise to do something,' *espero merecer* (or *que mereça*) *a sua confiança* 'I hope to deserve his confidence,' *creio ser* (or *que é*) *verdade* 'I believe it is true.'

(c) *Parecer* is usually construed personally with a simple infinitive:

*as sombras pareciam dançar e agitar-se* 'the shadows seemed to dance and move,' *parecem ter razão* 'they seem to be right;'

but it may be used impersonally and take a personal or inflected infinitive:

*parece terem razão*;

or a clause introduced by *que*:

*parece que tem razão*.

569. (a) The following verbs take a simple infinitive, without a preceding preposition, as direct object, only when the action of the two verbs refers to the same subject. Some of them occasionally take *de* (577):

*aborrecer* 'to hate'

*preferir* 'to prefer'

*desejar* 'to desire'

*querer* 'to wish'

*merecer* 'to deserve'

and others of similar meaning:

*quero escrever* 'I wish to write,' *queira assentar-se* 'please be seated,' *desejo comprá-lo* 'I desire to buy it.'

(b) But if the verb and the infinitive have different

subjects, a dependent clause introduced by *que* is used (568. b):

*desejo que êle entre* 'I wish him to enter,' *quero que escreva* 'I want you to write.'

570. The simple infinitive is also sometimes used without a preceding preposition, after the adjectives *bom* 'good,' *claro* 'clear,' *difícil* 'difficult,' *fácil* 'easy,' *forçoso* 'necessary,' *justo* 'just,' *melhor* 'better,' *possível* 'possible,' and *preciso* 'necessary,' and after the nouns *pena* 'pity' and *vergonha* 'shame' (583).

571. When an infinitive depends on one of the following verbs, *deixar* 'to leave' 'to let,' *fazer* 'to make' 'to cause,' *mandar* 'to order,' or a verb expressing perception, as *ouvir* 'to hear,' *perceber* 'to perceive,' *sentir* 'to feel' 'to be sorry,' *ver* 'to see:—

(a) If the infinitive is intransitive, the direct object of the main verb is at the same time the subject of the infinitive; a pronoun object usually precedes the infinitive (262-272); a noun object usually stands between the two verbs or after the infinitive:

*eu vi os carros chegar* or *eu vi chegar os carros* 'I saw the cars arrive,' *deixemo-lo falar* 'let us allow him to talk,' *fá-lo hei entrar* 'I will make him enter,' *faça-o estudar* 'make him study,' *mandei consertar o chapéu* 'I had the hat mended,' *quando viram passar o rei* 'when they saw the king pass by,' *vi-o sair* 'I saw him go out,' *eu vi-o chegar* 'I saw him arrive,' *vi aparecer a lua* 'I saw the moon come out,' *não nos deixeis cair em tentação* 'lead us not into temptation,' *ouviram-no falar* 'they heard him

speak,' *ouvi-a cantar* 'I heard her sing,' *mandá-lo hei chamar* 'I will send for him,' *ouvi-a bater* 'I heard her strike,' *ouvi bater-lhe* 'I heard somebody strike her,' *mandei-o chamar* or *mandei chamá-lo* 'I had somebody call him,' *mandar buscar* (or *trazer*) *alguma coisa* 'to send for something,' *mande-me dizer* 'send me word,' *mando-os sair* 'I order them out,' *manda chamar o médico* 'send for the doctor.'

(b) But if the infinitive is transitive, the person or thing performing the action expressed by the infinitive is conceived of as the one interested therein and is therefore in the dative of interest; the subject of the infinitive, if a pronoun, usually takes the indirect form; if a noun, it is preceded by the preposition *a*. For the position of the object pronouns, see 264:

*fiz-lhe repetir a lição* 'I made him repeat the lesson,' *ouvi-lhe cantar uma cantiga engraçada* 'I heard her sing a pretty song,' *não quis deixar ver o jornal ao filho* 'he did not want to let his son see the newspaper,' *eu vejo-lhes* (or *as*) *chorar lágrimas tristes* 'I see them shed tears of sadness,' *eu mandar-lhe hei fazer um par de sapatos* 'I will have him make a pair of shoes,' *ouvi-lhe dizer que não vinha* 'I heard him say he would not come,' *farei ler este livro a meu filho* 'I will make my son read this book,' *vi-lhe afinar o piano* 'I saw him tune the piano,' *mandar alguém fazer uma coisa* 'to order somebody to do something,' *mandei-lhe* (or *-o*) *escrever a carta* 'I ordered him to write the letter,' *mandei-o chamar o médico* 'I ordered him to summon the doctor.'

(c) The Portuguese employs the active infinitive after *mandar* where the passive is employed in English:

*mandei selar os cavalos* 'I ordered the horses to be saddled.'

(d) Instead of the infinitive construction, the same meaning may be expressed by a dependent subjunctive clause introduced by *que* (598. a):

*mandar que alguém faça uma coisa* or *mandar a alguém que faça uma coisa* 'to order (or 'to have') somebody do something.'

#### B. The Infinitive Preceded by a Preposition

572. (a) The preposition *a* is required before a simple infinitive depending on a verb denoting the source, beginning, or continuance of an action. Such verbs are

<i>abalançar-se</i> 'to propose'	<i>condenar</i> 'to condemn'
'venture'	<i>continuar</i> 'to continue'
<i>acostumar-se</i> 'to accustom oneself'	<i>costumar</i> 'to accustom'
<i>animar-se</i> 'to take courage'	<i>decidir-se</i> and <i>determinar-se</i> 'to decide'
<i>anuir</i> 'to assent'	<i>entrar</i> 'to begin'
<i>aparelhar-se</i> 'to prepare'	<i>estimular-se</i> 'to stimulate'
<i>aprender</i> 'to learn'	<i>excitar-se</i> 'to encourage'
<i>apressar-se</i> 'to hasten'	<i>expor-se</i> 'to expose oneself'
<i>arrojar-se</i> 'to dare'	<i>habilitar</i> 'to enable'
<i>aspirar</i> 'to aspire'	<i>habituár</i> 'to accustom'
<i>atender</i> 'to attend'	<i>meter-se</i> 'to undertake'
<i>atrever-se</i> 'to dare'	<i>obrigar</i> 'to oblige'
<i>autorizar</i> 'to authorize'	

*aventurar-se* 'to venture'    *pôr-se* 'to begin'  
*chegar* 'to arrive'    *principiar* 'to com-  
*começar* 'to begin'    mence'  
*concorrer* 'to concur'    *resolver-se* 'to decide'  
*aprendi a tocar rebeca* 'I learned to play the violin,'  
*atrevo-me a esperar* 'I venture to hope,' *começou*  
*a escrever* 'he began to write,' *deitaram a fugir*  
*'they began to flee,' ensinou-me a falar português*  
*'he taught me to speak Portuguese,' entra a chorar*  
*'he begins to weep,' obrigá-lo a fazê-lo* 'to oblige  
him to do it,' *pôs-se a cantar* 'he began to sing,'  
*aspira a ser rico* 'he aspires to become rich,'  
*espero que continuará a fazer-nos esta gentileza*  
*'I hope he will continue to show us this kindness.'*

(b) *Começar* and *entrar* 'to begin' may also correctly be followed by *de* and an infinitive, though *a* is commoner to-day (586):

*começou a* (or *de* or *por*) *falar* 'he began to speak.'

(c) *Convidar* 'to invite' and *preparar-se* 'to prepare' take either *a* or *para* before a following infinitive.

(d) Most verbs of motion usually take *a* before a following infinitive to express purpose:

*corri a fechar a janela* 'I ran to close the window.'

573. The infinitive preceded by *a* is the equivalent of a gerund and sometimes expresses manner, circumstance, or condition (637):

*vi o criado a tremer* 'I saw the servant trembling,'  
*encontrei-o a chorar* 'I found him weeping,' *ouvi*  
*pássaros a cantar* 'I heard birds singing,' *ergui-o*  
*a tremer* 'I raised him trembling,' *disse-me a rir*

'he said to me, laughing,' *disse a José, a rir-se* 'he said to Joseph, laughing,' *a ser isto verdade* or *se isto fosse verdade* 'if that were true,' *a dizer a verdade, não esperava isso* 'to tell the truth, I did not expect that,' *vimos um homem a sorrir-nos e a caminhar para nós* 'we saw a man smiling and walking towards us,' *a julgar pelas aparências* 'judging by appearances,' *a saber* 'that is to say.'

574. (a) An infinitive depending upon *dar* 'to give,' *ajudar* 'to help,' *ter* 'to have,' *levar* and *trazer* 'to bring,' and some other verbs of similar meaning, and expressing an action which the indirect object has to perform, is preceded by *a* (579):

*ajudar alguém a fazer uma coisa* 'to help somebody to do something,' *dar alguma coisa a beber a alguém* 'to give somebody something to drink,' *deu o processo a estudar a um advogado* 'he gave the case to a lawyer to study.' Likewise *pôr* 'to put' when followed by a direct object: *pôs os filhos a estudar* 'he put his sons to study.'

(b) Without such indirect or direct object, *dar* with *a* before an infinitive means 'to begin:'

*deram a correr* 'they began to run.'

(c) *Tardar* 'to delay' is followed by an infinitive preceded by *a* or *em* or by the subjunctive preceded by *que*:

*não tarda a vir* or *não tarda que venha* 'he does not delay coming.'

575. Certain adjectives require *a* before the infinitive they govern (677. k):

*está pronto a sair?* 'are you ready to go out?' *estamos todos sujeitos a errar* 'we are all liable to err.'

576. (a) The preposition *de* is required before an infinitive depending on many verbs signifying 'to begin,' 'to repeat,' 'to cease,' 'to complete,' 'to ask,' 'to wish,' 'to forbid,' and other verbs not easily classified, such as

<i>abster-se</i> 'to abstain'	<i>envergonhar-se</i> 'to be ashamed'
<i>acabar</i> 'to finish'	
<i>acertar</i> 'to happen'	<i>esquecer-se</i> 'to forget'
<i>acusar</i> 'to charge (with)'	<i>excusar-se</i> 'to decline'
<i>admirar-se</i> 'to wonder'	<i>folgar</i> 'to rejoice'
<i>advertir</i> 'to warn'	<i>fugir</i> 'to shun'
<i>afligir-se</i> 'to grieve'	<i>gabar-se</i> 'to boast'
<i>alegrar-se</i> 'to rejoice'	<i>gostar</i> 'to like'
<i>ameaçar</i> 'to threaten'	<i>haver</i> 'to have' 'must'
<i>arrepender-se</i> 'to feel re- pentance'	<i>impedir</i> 'to hinder'
<i>cessar</i> 'to cease'	<i>lembrar-se</i> 'to remember'
<i>convencer</i> 'to convince'	<i>parar</i> 'to stop'
<i>deixar</i> 'to cease'	<i>privar-se</i> 'to abstain'
<i>desculpar-se</i> 'to excuse oneself'	<i>provir</i> 'to proceed'
<i>desdenhar</i> 'to disdain'	<i>queixar-se</i> 'to complain'
<i>encarregar-se</i> 'to take charge of'	<i>ter</i> 'to have'
	<i>tratar</i> 'to deal with' 'at- tend to'
	<i>vangloriar-se</i> 'to boast'

*êle pára de cantar* 'he stops singing,' *a nossa sociedade deixou de existir* 'our society has ceased to exist,' *receio (de) encontrá-lo* 'I am afraid to meet him,' *êla cessa de chorar* 'she ceases weeping,'

*esqueci-me de dizer* 'I forgot to say,' *acertei de topá-lo na rua* 'I happened to meet him on the street,' *preciso de partir sem demora* 'I must leave at once,' *êle gosta de estar sentado* 'he likes to be seated,' *acabei de escrever* 'I have just finished writing,' *êle proibira-lhe (or -o) de dizer isto* 'he had prohibited him to say that,' *êle prometeu (de) voltar logo* 'he promised to return directly,' *desculpe-me de não ter vindo* 'excuse me for not having come,' *alegro-me de ver que o senhor não o crê* 'I am glad to see that you do not believe it,' *eles lembram-se de que já foram novos* 'they remember that they were once young,' *não gostam de perder tempo* 'they do not like to lose time.'

(b) *Começar* 'to begin' and *continuar* 'to continue,' which are more often construed with *a* (572. b), are sometimes followed by *de*.

577. *Ameaçar* 'to threaten,' *desejar* 'to desire,' *determinar* 'to decide,' *dever* 'to owe,' *dignar-se* 'to deign,' and *pensar* 'to expect,' are sometimes used in the popular speech with *de*, but the better usage is without a preposition (568, 569):

*penso (de) viajar este verão* 'I expect to travel this summer,' *deve-se (de) combater* 'we must fight,' *desejava (de) casar com ela* 'he desired to marry her,' *digne-se (de) esperar* 'be kind enough to wait,' *dignar-se (de) fazer um favor* 'to deign to do a favor.'

578. *Principiar* 'to begin' takes either *a* or *de* before an infinitive.

579. *De* is used before the infinitives *almoçar* 'to breakfast,' *beber* 'to drink,' *comer* 'to eat,' *vestir* 'to clothe,' and



similar words, to express an attempt or result, after the verbs *buscar* 'to seek,' *comprar* 'to buy,' *dar* 'to give,' *levar* 'to carry,' *preparar* 'to prepare,'  *pôr* 'to place,' *querer* 'to wish,' and *trazer* 'to bring' (574. a):

*dei de comer ao meu cão* 'I gave my dog something to eat.'

580. (a) *Folgar* 'to rejoice' is more correctly followed by an infinitive introduced by *de* than by *em*, though the latter is not entirely incorrect:

*folgo muito de vê-lo* 'I am very glad to see him.'

(b) *Pedir* is best followed by *que* and a subjunctive clause, when the two verbs have different subjects. Its construction in this case with *de*, which is not uncommon, and still more with *para*, and an infinitive, is incorrect:

*peço que me dês* (not *de* (or *para*) *me dâes*) *a faca* 'I ask you to give me the knife,' *êle pediu-me para ir com êle* (or, better, *êle pediu-me que fôsse com êle*) 'he asked me to go with him.'

581. Certain infinitives governed by *sêr* and the preposition *de* have the force of adjectives in *-vel* (587. f):

*é de presumir* (= *presumível*) 'presumably,' *foi acção muito de louvar* (= *louvável*) 'it was a very praiseworthy action,' *é de crêr* (= *crível*) 'it is credible.'

582. (a) In popular usage *haver* followed by *de* and an infinitive expresses determined purpose or obligation (see 444), and even when the infinitive is omitted the preposition must be expressed:

*hei-de lá ir*, *hei-de* 'I have to go there, I have,' *hãode dizê-lo*, *hãode* 'they have to say it, they have.'

(b) But in the same construction with *têr*, the preposition is not expressed without the infinitive:

*têenho de ir*, *têenho* 'I have to go, I have.'

583. *De* is used before infinitives depending on a large number of adjectives in a limiting, sometimes in a passive, sense, such as

<i>arrependido</i> 'repentant'	<i>descontente</i> 'dissatisfied'
<i>áspero</i> 'hard'	<i>difícil</i> 'difficult'
<i>ávido</i> 'eager'	<i>digno</i> 'worthy'
<i>bom</i> 'good'	<i>duro</i> 'hard'
<i>cansado</i> 'weary'	<i>fácil</i> 'easy'
<i>capaz</i> 'capable'	<i>gostoso</i> 'tasteful'
<i>certo</i> 'certain' 'sure'	<i>impaciente</i> 'impatient'
<i>cipso</i> 'jealous'	<i>longo</i> 'far'
<i>consciente</i> and <i>côncio</i> 'conscious'	<i>mau</i> 'bad' 'hard'
<i>contente</i> 'satisfied'	<i>pesaroso</i> 'afflicted'
<i>curioso</i> 'curious'	<i>raro</i> 'rare'
<i>desejoso</i> 'desirous'	<i>receoso</i> 'fearful'
	<i>susceptível</i> 'susceptible'

Some of these may also be used without a preposition (570), or with *por* (586) as well as *de*, to express cause or purpose:

*Ele é capaz de chegar a qualquer hora* 'he may arrive at any time,' *difícil de satisfazer* 'difficult to satisfy,' *fácil de dizer* 'easy to say,' *homem mau de contentar* 'a man hard to please,' *um discurso fácil de entender* 'a discourse easy to understand,' *duro de penetrar* 'hard to penetrate,' *textos difíceis de explicar* 'texts hard to explain.'

584. *De* with an infinitive is used after nouns, to express purpose, destination, or result:

*casa de jantar* 'restaurant,' *cartas de jogar* 'playing-cards,' *uma maneira de falar* 'a way of speaking,'

*um criado de servir* 'servant,' *não me foi dado o tempo de fruir do espectáculo* 'I was not allowed time to enjoy the show,' *tenha a bondade de fazer isso* 'be kind enough to do this.'

585. The preposition *em* is required before an infinitive depending on *atentar* 'to attempt,' *confiar* 'to trust,' *consistir* 'to consist,' *hesitar* 'to hesitate,' *insistir* 'to insist,' *perseverar*, *persistir*, *porfiar*, and *teimar* 'to persist,' *tardar* 'to delay,' *fazer bem* 'to do well,' and *andar mal* 'to behave ill,' and similar expressions. The use of *de* instead is colloquial:

*persisto em chamar* 'I persist in calling,' *pensei em retirar-me* 'I thought of leaving,' *faz mal em não perdoar* 'he does not do right in not pardoning.'

Also after a noun or an adjective:

*há alguma vantagem em fazê-lo* 'there is some advantage in doing it,' *eu não sou muito difícil em admitir prodígios* 'I do not find it very hard to admit of miracles.'

586. Both *para* and *por* are used before an infinitive to express purpose after certain verbs and adjectives. *Para* expresses rather the cause, the motive, or the certainty of the action. *Por*, on the other hand, expresses the intention of the doer (687, 688).

For *estar* followed by *para* and an infinitive, see 440:

*falo baixo para não ser ouvido* 'I speak low so as not to be heard,' *ando para ir até lá* 'I am thinking of going there,' *fiz-o assim para contentá-lo* 'I did so to please him,' *trabalha para ganhar dinheiro* 'he works to make money,' *trabalhava pela consolar* 'he endeavored to console her,' *estava ansioso por possuir o quadro* 'he

was anxious to possess the picture,' *faz por ser agradável* 'he tries to be pleasant,' *por* (or *para*) *assim dizer* 'so to speak,' *para falar verdade* 'to tell the truth.'

After *começar* and *principiar* 'to begin' and *acabar* 'to finish' 'complete,' an infinitive preceded by *por* has the value of a participle (572. b):

*começa por falar* 'he begins by speaking,' *principia por lavar as mãos* 'he begins by washing his hands,' *acabou por firmar com o seu nome* 'he finished by signing his name.'

#### SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE

##### A. The Simple or Impersonal Infinitive

587. The simple or impersonal infinitive is also used

(a) Instead of the imperative, in brief directions to express an immediate order or command (596. f. g) and in exclamations of astonishment (593):

*não poder eu salvá-lo!* 'that I should not be able to save him!' *e haver quem deplôre a vida como longa* 'and that there should be people who complain of life being long,' *e eu a imaginar que ela era uma constante leitora* 'and I fancying that she was a constant reader,' *e a nossa agricultura a queixar-se da falta de lavradores* 'and our agriculture complaining of a lack of farmers.'

(b) In general questions, direct or indirect, after an interrogative:

*que fazer?* 'what is to be done?' *como fazê-lo?* 'how is it to be done?' *não sabia com quem me aconselhar* 'I did not know with whom to take counsel.'

(c) With the force of a clause, after *afim de* 'in order to,' *antes de* 'before,' *de maneira a* or *de modo a* 'so as to,' *depois de* 'after,' *sem* 'without,' etc., when the action of the

verb and infinitive is referable to the same subject; otherwise a clause introduced by *que* is used (598):

*êle partiu sem me ver* 'he left without seeing me,'  
*irei vê-lo antes de partir* 'I will go and see him before  
 leaving,' *depois de ter jantado fui passear* 'after having  
 dined I went for a walk.'

(d) After *derradeiro* and *último* 'last,' *único* 'only,' *primeiro* 'first,' and other ordinal numerals and superlatives, and in a few other cases, *a* or *em* before an infinitive is the equivalent of a limiting relative clause:

*foi o médico o primeiro a sucumbir à peste* 'the doctor was the first to succumb to the pestilence,' *o melhor a fazer* 'the best thing to do,' *recebi uma carta a chamarem-me* (= *em que me chamavam*) *ao Pôrto* 'I received a letter calling me to Oporto,' *seis horas da manhã a dar em S. Paulo e eu a caminhar para Évora* 'six o'clock in the morning striking at St. Paul's and I walking towards Évora.'

(e) The present infinitive may be used instead of the past when depending on *dever* or *haver de* 'must' and speaking of what no longer exists:

*esta senhora, quando nova, devia ser (deve ter sido or devia ter sido) gentilíssima* 'this lady, when young, must have been very handsome.'

(f) An active infinitive sometimes has the value of a passive. This is especially the case when the infinitive depends on *deixar* 'to leave,' *estar* 'to be,' *fazer* 'to do,' *mandar* 'to order' 'cause,' *ouvir* 'to hear,' *querer* 'to wish,' *sentir* 'to feel,' *ver* 'to see,' and *é de* (581, 583). The agent, if expressed, is governed by *por* or *de* (683. q, 689. i):

*o capitão deixou-se enganar por seu guia* 'the leader allowed himself to be deceived by his guide,' *mandei fazê-lo* 'I ordered it to be done,' *mandei preparar o*

*janlqr* 'I ordered dinner to be got ready,' *deixou-se repreender de todos* 'he allowed himself to be blamed by all,' *deixei comer o bôlo pelo rapqz* 'I left the cake to be eaten by the boy.'

(g) Likewise when combined, by means of *ser*, *estar*, or *haver* and a preposition, with certain nouns and adjectives:

*as coisas não eram para dizer* 'the things were not to be mentioned,' *não há tempo a perder* 'there is no time to be lost,' *esta casa está para vender* 'this house for sale,' *não há coisa para ouvir como o rouxinol* 'there is nothing to be heard like the nightingale,' *seria muito para desejqr que tivesse mais sisudeza* 'it is much to be desired that he had more sense,' *o melhor a fazer* 'the best thing to be done.'

(h) The infinitive also renders an English past participle:

*faz-se entender* 'he makes himself understood,' *mandarei fazer um fato* 'I will have a suit made,' *ouvi-o louvqr por todos* 'I heard him praised by all,' *vi construir esta casa* 'I saw this house built,' *fiz-me respeitqr pelos meus subordinqdos* 'I made myself respected by my subordinates.'

(i) The infinitive *ser*, both simple and in its inflected forms, is often omitted, whether as auxiliary of the passive or as an independent verb:

(1) After various prepositional phrases (540):

*a-pesqr-de belo* 'in spite of his (or 'its') being beautiful,'  
*a terra antes de lavrqda* 'the soil before it is tilled.'

(2) In a causal sense with *de* or *por* before an adjective or past participle, the adjective or participle being the equivalent of the corresponding abstract noun:

*amqvam-no por valorqso* 'they loved him as a brave

man,' *estimavam-no por inteligente* 'they appreciated him as an intelligent man.'

(3) After certain verbs construed with *de* or *para*, such as *acusar de* 'to accuse of,' *aprender para* 'to learn to,' *convencer de* 'to convince of,' *estudar para* 'to study for,' *gabar-se de* 'to boast of,' *presumir de* 'to presume on,' *prezar-se de* 'to do oneself the honor,' *suspeitar de* 'to suspect of:'

*acusar alguém de algo* 'to accuse somebody of being a miser,' *estudar para engenheiro* 'to study to be an engineer.'

(j) Such expressions as *roupa a consertar* and *livros a consultar*, in which an infinitive preceded by *a* is attached as a limiting phrase, are Gallicisms for Portuguese *roupa para consertar* 'clothes to be mended' and *livros que se hão de consultar* 'books to be consulted.'

### B. The Personal Infinitive

588. The personal or inflected infinitive is peculiar to Portuguese. It has both present and past tenses and is able, by means of verbal endings, to refer the action to a determined subject. These endings are

Sing., 1st pers. —	Pl. 1st pers. - <i>mos</i>
2nd pers. - <i>es</i>	2nd pers. - <i>des</i>
3rd pers. —	3rd pers. - <i>em</i>

Thus in the first and third persons singular there are no forms to distinguish the personal from the impersonal infinitive. In regular verbs only, has the personal infinitive the same forms as the future subjunctive (385). The personal infinitive can often be translated into English by the corresponding substantive with a possessive pronoun:

*amar eu* 'my love,' *amares tu* 'your love.'

589. (a) In case the pronoun subject of the personal infinitive is expressed, it is placed preferably before the infinitive in simple tenses and after the auxiliary in compound tenses (272).

(b) A personal pronoun subject of an infinitive phrase depending on *para* is correctly in the nominative, but in Brazil the object pronoun is colloquially used instead:

*esta laranja é para eu comer* 'this orange is for me to eat,' *emprestou-me dinheiro para eu comprar um casaco* 'he lent me money to buy a coat,' *um livro para eu e meu irmão lermos* 'a book for me and my brother to read.'

#### Uses of the Personal Infinitive

590. Whereas, in general, the simple or impersonal infinitive (566 ff.) is used if the action is described only in a vague or general way without referring it to any special agent—as when the subject of the principal verb and of the infinitive is the same—the personal infinitive, on the other hand, is often the equivalent of a clause beginning with *que*, and is used when the principal verb and the infinitive have different subjects and, even though the subject is the same for both verb and infinitive, when it is desirable to bring out clearly the fact that the act is referred to or affects a determined person or persons:

*dar-lhe eu tantas provas de confiança e pagar-mas êle assim* 'that I should have given him so many proofs of confidence and that he should repay



me in this manner,' *termos nós falado assim custar nos há caro* 'it will cost us dear for having spoken so,' *a necessidade de não confundirmos b e v* 'the need of our not confusing *b* and *v*,' *em segundo lugar, o prepararmos um volume* 'in the second place, the fact that we are preparing a volume,' *a probabilidade de ganharmos o processo ia diminuindo cada dia* 'the chance of our winning the case became less every day.'

591. Such is especially the case with an infinitive depending on

(a) A verb of 'saying,' 'showing,' 'thinking,' or 'teaching:'

*ensina-nos a escrever* 'he teaches us to write,' but *êle ensina-nos a amarmos nossos amigos* 'he teaches us to love our friends,' *êle diz sermos pobres* 'he says we are poor,' *confessam deverem-lhe a vida* 'they confess they owe him their lives,' *se não fosse sabermos ser êste nome dado ao cão* 'if it were not that we know that this name is given to the dog,' *as mercadorias não são o que se diz serem* 'the goods are not what they are said to be.'

(b) Such nouns as *fôrça* 'necessity,' *peña* 'pity,' and *vergonha* 'shame,' adjectives as *bom* 'good,' *claro* 'clear,' *conveniente* 'convenient,' *difícil* 'difficult,' *fácil* 'easy,' *justo* 'just,' *melhor* 'better,' *possível* 'possible,' and *triste* 'sad,' and verbs of related meanings:

*é triste combater* 'it is a pity to fight,' but *é triste combateres* 'it is a pity that you fight,' *é uma vergonha não saber ler* 'it is a shame not to know how

to read,' but *é uma vergonha não sabermos ler* 'it is a shame that we do not know how to read,' *é pena não termos mais tempo* 'it is a pity we have not more time,' *incapazes de compreenderem a arte* 'incapable (as they are) of understanding art,' *prontos para obedecerem* 'ready (as they are) to obey,' *não tens vergonha de ganhares a tua vida tão torpemente?* 'are you not ashamed to make your living so shamefully?' *hoje é fácil iludirmo-nos* 'it is easy for us to be deceived to-day,' *chegou o dia de irem à corte para serem apresentados* 'the day came for them to go to court to be presented,' *é tempo de eu partir* 'it is time for me to leave,' *o temor de serem conhecidos* 'the fear of their being known,' *gloriam-se de serem os primeiros* 'they boast that they are the first,' *não é possível valermos-lhe* 'it is not possible for us to help him,' *a suspeita de eu ser o autor daquele artigo é por demais estúpida* 'the suspicion of my being the author of that article is particularly stupid.'

(c) The personal infinitive is frequently used as the direct object of verbs meaning 'to admit,' 'to permit,' 'to tolerate,' and their contraries, and, preceded by the definite article but without a preposition, after *agradecer* 'to thank' and *perdoar* 'to pardon':

*permitiu-lhes edificarem a cidade* 'he permitted them to build the city,' *proibiu saírem os criados de noite* 'he prohibited the servants to go out at night,' *agradeceu-lhes o terem protegido a criança* 'I thanked them for having protected the child,' *perdoou-lhes o haverem-nos ofendido* 'he pardoned

them for having offended us,' *obrigou-os a o reconhecerem por rei* 'he obliged them to recognize him as king.'

(d) *Começar* 'to begin,' *costumar* 'to be accustomed,' *deixar-se* 'to leave,' *dever* 'to owe,' *fazer* 'to do,' *mandar* 'to order,' *ouvir* 'to hear,' *podêr* 'to be able,' *querer* 'to wish,' and *ver* 'to see,' which are usually followed by the simple infinitive (571, 572), may take the personal form if the infinitive is separated by several words from the governing verb.

(e) The personal infinitive is also used after impersonal verbs and expressions, in sentences in which the form of the infinitive alone can indicate the subject; cf. (b) *supra*:

*basta sermos felizes* 'it is enough that we are happy,'  
*é preciso comprarmos* 'it is necessary for us to buy,'  
*não convém dizermos nós isso aqui* 'it is not becoming for us to say that here,' *parece terem chegado mesmo agora* 'it appears they have just come.'

(f) After expressions meaning 'to result in' and 'to reward:'

*teve por consequência ficarmos portugueses livres*  
 'the consequence was that we remain free Portuguese,' *isto deu em resultado serem todos castigados* 'it resulted in all of them being punished.'

592. The infinitive (simple or personal) preceded by *de* is used after certain prepositions and adverbs, such as *a fim* 'in order that,' *além* 'besides,' *antes* 'before,' *a-pesar* 'despite,' *depois* 'after,' *em vez* 'instead of,' *longe* 'far,' as well as without intermediate *de*,

after *para* 'for' 'to' and *por* 'by,' to express circumstances of

(a) Time: *parti depois de terem falado* 'I left after they had spoken,' *falar-lhe hei antes de partirmos* 'I will speak to him before we leave,' *depois de eu publicar estas linhas* 'after I had published these lines.'

When the infinitive precedes the principal clause and there is no previous indication of its subject, even though this be the same for both clause and infinitive, the latter is then preceded by *a* and the definite article, the combination being the equivalent of a temporal clause beginning with *quando*. The subject of the infinitive, if expressed, must follow:

*ao contemplarem este espectáculo* 'on their contemplating this spectacle,' *ao deixarmos a cidade* 'on our leaving the city,' *ao atravessarem o mar* 'on their crossing the sea,' *ao aproximarem-se da porta* 'as they approached the door,' *ao adiantar-me para êle* 'as I advanced towards him,' *ao chegarem os fugitivos* 'on the arrival of the fugitives,' *ao levantaram-se, eles encontraram o inimigo nas trincheiras* 'on getting up, they found the enemy in the trenches.'

(b) Cause: *foram castigados por serem travessos* 'they were punished for being naughty,' *por eu ser magro* 'because I am thin,' *por êle ser um estrangeiro* 'because of his being a foreigner,' *o nosso mestre está contente por sabermos a lição* 'our teacher is satisfied because we know the lesson.'

(c) Condition: *a sermos assim* 'in case we are so,' *no caso dêle aparecer, combinaremos o negócio* 'in case he appears, we will arrange the matter,' *a não sermos nós* 'were it not for us,' *a não serem* 'unless they are.'

(d) Concession: *a-pesar-de viverem pouco tempo* 'in spite of their living but a short time.'

(e) Purpose: *digo-lho para o saberm* (or *para que o saibam*) 'I tell it to them in order that they may know it,' *para eu fazer a caixa* 'for me to make the box,' *para eu atravessar Cascais* 'for me to cross Cascais,' *esta laranja é para eu comer* 'this orange is for me to eat,' *para não nos constiparmos* or *para que nos não constipemos* 'so that we may not catch cold.'

593. In exclamations and questions of astonishment (587. a):

*terem morrido homens de tanto valor!* '(to think) that men of such worth should have died!' *e ousares tu, ladrão, caluniar-me!* 'and do you dare, thief, to calumniate me!'

594. The personal infinitive is often used unnecessarily and incorrectly when the impersonal form would do:

*andam a passearem* (for *a passear*) 'they are taking a walk,' *costumam jantar* (for *jantar*) *às seis horas* 'they are accustomed to dine at six o'clock,' *eles não tinham força para responderem* (for *responder*) 'they had no power to answer,' because in these cases the person and number of the infinitive are sufficiently determined by the principal verb.

## THE IMPERATIVE

595. (a) The imperative is used only affirmatively for commands and has its proper forms only for the second persons. Commands in the other persons and prohibitions in all persons are expressed by the present subjunctive.

In Brazil the imperative is frequently used in prohibitions:

*não come* (for *não comas*) 'do not eat,' *não bebe* (for *não bebas*) 'do not drink.'

*corre* or *vai a correr* 'run,' *escutai* 'listen,' *fica aqui* 'remain here,' *olha* or *olha cá* 'see,' *ouve* or *ouve cá* 'hear,' *respondei* 'answer,' *entre, entre quem é*, or *queira entrar* '(please) come in,' *estêja quieto* 'keep quiet,' *diga-me* or *diga lá* 'tell me,' *espere aí* 'wait there,' *falemos com franqueza* 'let us speak frankly,' *preste atenção* 'pay attention,' *não se demore* 'do not delay,' *responda* 'answer,' *deixe-se estar (aí)* 'stay there' 'keep your seat,' *tenha mão* 'be careful,' *não chore* 'do not weep,' *não me fale* 'do not speak to me,' *não grite tanto* 'do not shout so much,' *não pense nisso* 'do not think of that,' *não tenha medo* 'do not be afraid,' *não faça a outrem o que não queres que te façam a ti* 'do not do to another what you would not wish him to do to you,' *nunca prometas o que não puderes fazer* 'do not promise what you cannot do,' *não assines carta que não leias* 'do not sign a paper that you have not read,' *não se engane* 'do not deceive yourself,' *queira assentar-se* 'please be seated.'

(b) 'Let,' meaning 'allow' or 'permit,' is not expressed by the main verb in the imperative or the subjunctive, but by the imperative or subjunctive of *deixar* 'to leave' or *permitir* 'to permit,' followed by the main verb in the infinitive:

*deixe-me ir* 'let me go,' *deixe-me entrar* 'let me in.'  
*permita que eu fale* 'permit me to speak.'

(c) The first person plural of the subjunctive may be replaced by *vamos* and the infinitive, but only affirmatively:

*estudemos* or *vamos estudar* 'let us study.'

(d) In formal speech, instead of the simple imperative, such phrases as *tenha* (or *teria* V. Ex<sup>a</sup>) *a bondade* (or *a amabilidade*), *faça o favor* or *faça o obséquio*, followed by *de* and an infinitive, are ordinarily used.

#### Popular Equivalents of the Imperative

596. (a) *Tocar* 'to touch' followed by *a* and an infinitive:

*toca a andar* 'it is time to go' (= *vamos embora* 'let us go').

(b) *É mandar, é dizer, or é pedir* (por boca):

*se vês que te posso prestar algum serviço, é mandar, 'if you find that I can be of any service to you, let me know.'*

(c) The future indicative (617. e).

(d) *O senhor há-de ir* (for *vá*) 'go,' and similar expressions.

(e) The noun *cuidado* 'care:'

*cuidado (que) não se perca* 'look out you don't lose your way.'

(f) The simple infinitive is used in rapid commands, as in the army, on board ship, and in short notices and advertisements:

*carregar!* 'load!' *apontar!* *fogo!* 'aim! fire!' *volver!* 'turn!'  
*não se encostar à travessa* 'do not lean on the rail,'  
*dirigir-se ao porteiro* 'apply to the porter.'

In such cases, the infinitive may be repeated:

*trabalhar, trabalhar, meus filhos* 'toil, toil, my sons.'

(g) The infinitive is also used both positively and negatively as a mild imperative in giving advice:

*não falar* 'do not speak,' *falar pouco* 'do not speak too much,' *tomar só leite* 'take nothing but milk.'

(h) *Nada* followed by *de* and an infinitive is a very frequently occurring equivalent of *não se deve*, *não convém* 'one should not:'

*nada de censurar* 'no faultfinding.'

(i) *Que se acautele o senhor* and similar expressions are Gallicisms for Portuguese *acautele-se o senhor* 'be on your guard.'

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE

597. The subjunctive is used in main sentences:

(a) In the third person singular and the first and third person plural for commands, and for prohibitions in all persons (595).

(b) For wishes and petitions, but not in the second persons, with (or, in many hortatory expressions, without) *que*:

*Deus me ajude!* 'may God help me!' *Deus o salve!*  
 'God save him!' *queira Deus!* 'may it please God!'



*que se me permita agora apontar alguns factos*  
 'may I be permitted now to point out some facts,'  
*oxalá que venha!* 'would that he would come!'

(c) In the past subjunctive, to express a desire or imprecation with respect to a present or future act:

*quisessem os céus secundar meus esforços!* 'may  
 Heaven second my efforts!'

(d) As the protasis of a conditional sentence (633).

(e) Usually with a verb preceded by *talvez* 'perhaps' (610).

598. The subjunctive is generally used in subordinate clauses introduced by *que*, expressed or not.

(a) Depending on verbs and other parts of speech, expressing permission, approval, desire, hope, fear, pleasure, causation, a request, a command, or their opposites, when the main verb and the subordinate verb have different subjects. Such verbs are

<i>achar bom</i> (mál, melhor)	<i>folgar</i> 'to rejoice'
'to think well' ('ill,'	<i>impedir</i> 'to hinder'
'better')	<i>implorar</i> 'to implore'
<i>aconselhar</i> 'to advise'	<i>mandar</i> 'to order'
<i>admitir</i> 'to admit'	<i>merecer</i> 'to deserve'
<i>aprovar</i> 'to approve'	<i>obstar</i> 'to hinder'
<i>avisar</i> 'to advise'	<i>ordenar</i> 'to command'
<i>conceder</i> 'to grant'	<i>pedir</i> 'to ask'
<i>conseguir</i> 'to obtain'	<i>permitir</i> 'to permit'
<i>consentir</i> 'to consent'	<i>preferir</i> 'to prefer'
<i>convir</i> 'to agree'	<i>proibir</i> 'to forbid'
<i>decretar</i> 'to decree'	<i>propor</i> 'to propose'
<i>deixar</i> 'to let'	<i>querer</i> 'to wish'

<i>desaprovar</i> 'to disapprove'	<i>recomendar</i> 'to recom-
<i>desejar</i> 'to desire'	mend'
<i>esperar</i> 'to hope'	<i>resolver</i> 'to resolve'
<i>evitar</i> 'to avoid'	<i>rogar</i> 'to beseech'
<i>exigir</i> 'to demand'	<i>supor</i> 'to suppose'
<i>fazer</i> 'to make' 'cause'	<i>votar</i> 'to choose'

*mando que obedêças* 'I order you to obey,' *desejo que seja feliz* 'I wish you to be happy,' *proíbo-te que lhe fales* 'I forbid you to speak to him,' *peço ao senhor que mande ler a carta* 'I ask you to have the letter read,' *está contente que estejamos aqui?* 'are you satisfied that we are here?' *dá-me muito prazer que tenha vindo* 'I am very glad that he has come,' *tem vergonha de que o saibamos* 'he is ashamed that we know it,' *peço a Deus que me favoreça* 'I beseech God to favor me,' *quero que me obedêça* 'I wish you to obey me,' *dir-lhe hei que venha já* 'I will tell him to come at once.'

(b) But when the main verb and the subordinate verb have the same subject, the infinitive is used (568. a. b, 569. a):

*eu queria ser feliz* 'I should like to be happy,' *tenho pena de estar doente* 'I am sorry to be ill,' *folgo conhecê-lo* 'I am glad to know you,' *receamos não ter bastante dinheiro* 'we fear we have not enough money.'

(c) *Esperar* 'to hope,' *temer*, *recear*, and *ter medo* 'to fear,' *sentir* 'to regret' 'to be sorry,' *ser pena* 'to be a pity,' expressions of doubt and denial, such as *dúvida* 'doubt,' *duvidar* 'to doubt,' *duvidoso* 'doubtful,'

and *negar* 'to deny,' are ordinarily followed by the subjunctive when used affirmatively and the matter is doubtful or represents mere aspiration or fear (655. i):

*receio que morra* 'I fear he may die,' *receio que o meu amigo esteja doente* 'I fear that my friend is ill,' *nego que seja verdade* 'I deny that it is true,' *tenho muita pena que V. Ex<sup>a</sup> não passe bem* 'I am very sorry you are not well,' *duvido que venha* 'I doubt if he will come (or 'is coming'),' *duvido (de) que ele faça tal* 'I doubt if he would do so,' *duvido que ele saiba* 'I doubt if he knows,' *é muito duvidoso que ele saiba* 'it is very doubtful if he knows.'

(d) On the other hand, some of these verbs, as *esperar* 'to hope' and *supor* 'to suppose,' when strong probability of realization is implied, may take the dependent verb in the indicative:

*suponho que morrerá* 'I imagine he will die,' *espero que virão* 'I hope they will come.'

*Não há dúvida* 'there is no doubt' is usually followed by *em que* or *de que*, but also by *que* alone:

*não há dúvida (de) que o Buçaco é um lugar muito bonito* 'there is no doubt that Bussaco is a very pretty place.'

599. (a) The subjunctive is used after verbs of 'saying,' 'knowing,' 'believing,' 'thinking,' 'perceiving,' and their opposites, such as

*achar* 'to find'  
*crer* 'to believe'

*imaginar* 'to imagine'  
*julgar* 'to judge'

*cuidar* 'to think'*jurar* 'to swear'*dizer* 'to say'*pensar* 'to think'*entender* 'to understand'*presumir* 'to presume'*ignorar* 'to be ignorant'

when the principal clause is negative (or affirmative in the case of the verb *ignorar* = *não saber*), or interrogative with a negative meaning implied:

*não creio que seja ele* 'I do not think it is he,' *não digo que ele esteja enfermo* 'I do not say that he is ill,' *não digo que seja provável* 'I do not say it is likely,' *crê o senhor que ele seja rico?* 'do you think he is rich?' *não digo que ele não saiba* 'I do not say that he does not know.'

(b) But after these verbs the indicative is the appropriate mood, when the principal clause is affirmative (or negative in the case of the verb *ignorar* = *não saber*), or interrogative with an affirmative meaning implied:

*creio que fala* 'I think that he speaks,' *penso que vem* or *penso que virá* 'I think he will come,' *o senhor não acha que isto é falso?* 'do you not think this is false?' *dizia que já era tarde* 'he said that it was already late,' *quem diria que ele era capaz disso?* 'who would say he was capable of that?' *não sabia que estava ali* 'I did not know he was there,' *juro-lhe que virei cá amanhã* 'I promise you I will come here to-morrow.'

(c) However, the subjunctive may be used in the dependent clause, even when the principal verb is positive, when it is intended to imply that the state-

ment contained in the subordinate clause has not been realized:

*cuidava que viesse ontem (mas não veio)* 'I thought you would come yesterday' ('but you did not'),  
*êle supunha que o livro não fosse teu (mas era)* 'he thought the book was not yours' ('but it was'),  
*cuidando que fosse outra coisa* 'thinking that it might be another thing' (but it was not).

600. (a) In indirect discourse, depending for example on *não saber*, *não conhecer*, or *sem saber* 'not to know,' *declarar* 'to declare,' *perguntar* 'to ask,' and similar verbs, the verb *ser*, with interrogative *quem*, *qual*, or *que coisa* as subject, is in the indicative, but the subjunctive may also be used:

*perguntei-lhe primeiro quem (or qual) era (or fosse)*  
 'I asked him first who he was,' *não sei qual é (or seja)* 'I do not know what it is.'

(b) *Se* 'if' 'whether,' expressing doubt in an indirect question, takes the indicative:

*perguntei-lhe se era grande a distância* 'I asked him if the distance was great,' *perguntei se o tempo estava bom* 'I asked if the weather was fine,' *sabe o senhor se um certo facto se deu ou não?* 'do you know whether a certain matter took place or not?' *não sei se posso ir hoje ao jardim botânico* 'I do not know if I can go to the botanical gardens to-day,' *não sabia se vinha (or viria)* 'I did not know if he came' (or 'would come'), *não sei se vem (or se virá)* 'I do not know if he is coming,' *ignoro se está em casa* 'I do not know if he is at home,' *perguntei-lhe*

*se vinha* (or *viria*) 'I asked him if he would come.'

For *se* in conditional sentences, see 631 ff.

601. (a) The subjunctive is used in a dependent attributive clause introduced by *quem*, *que*, *o que*, or *cujo*, etc., after a negative or interrogative in the main clause, or when the antecedent, expressed or implied, is indefinite or limited, or if doubt or denial is implied of the existence of the person or thing referred to. On the other hand the indicative is used if the statement is made unreservedly as a fact:

*acharei especialista que me dê conta deste trabalho* 'I will find a specialist who will give me an account of this work,' *mostra-me o caminho que vai dar ao rio* 'show me the road that leads to the river,' *mostre-me um homem que saiba português* 'show me a man who knows Portuguese,' *conheço um homem que fala português* 'I know a man who speaks Portuguese,' *procura um amigo que tem bom carácter* 'look for a friend who (undoubtedly) has a good character,' *tenho um amigo que tenha bom carácter* 'I have a friend who may have a good character,' *quero a casa que me agrada* 'I wish the house that pleases me,' *quero casa que me agrada* 'I wish a house to please me,' *desejava um quarto que não fosse muito caro* 'I want a room that is not very expensive,' *pessoas há que o dizem* 'there are people who say so,' *há pessoas que não falam* 'there are persons who do not speak,' *poucos foram os que falaram* 'there were few who spoke,' *paga o que deves e saberás o que tens* 'pay what you owe, and you will know what you have,' *não dá quem tem, senão*

*quem quer bem* 'not he that has gives, but he that is willing.'

(b) Similarly when *quem* following impersonal *haver* is subject of the dependent verb:

*há quem diga que* 'there are (as I think) those who say,' *quem há que não o diga?* 'who is there does not say so?' *não havia quem o dissesse* 'there was nobody that said it,' *há* (or *não falta, encontra-se, aparece*, etc.) *quem pense que o mundo é plano* 'there are those who think the world is flat.'

602. The subjunctive is used in clauses that express purpose, after such words as *para que*, *tanto que*, *a fim de que*, *de modo que*, *de maneira que*, 'so that,' 'so as,' 'in order that,' but the indicative is used if the clause states a fact:

*perdoa aos outros para que eles te perdoem a ti* 'forgive others in order that they may forgive you,' *de maneira que ele vem agora todos os dias* 'so that he comes now every day.'

603. (a) The subjunctive is used depending on the temporal conjunctions *antes que* 'before,' *assim que* 'as soon as,' *até que* 'until,' *enquanto (que)* 'as long as' 'while,' and *logo que* 'as soon as' (708), when the action is negative, or merely contemplated or in prospect; but the indicative is used if certainty or an accomplished fact is indicated:

*esperemos até que venha* 'let us wait till he comes,' *logo que vá a Lisboa* 'as soon as I go to Lisbon,' but *esperámos até que veio* 'we waited till he came,' *escrever-lhe hei logo que chegue a um bom hotel* 'I will

write to you as soon as I reach a good hotel,' *antes que cases, q̃lha o que fazes* 'before you marry, see what you are doing,' *assim que êle venha, dir-lho hei* 'the moment he comes I will tell him,' *estêja em casa até que seu pai volte* 'remain home till your father returns,' *morreu antes que ela chegasse* 'he died before she arrived.'

(b) *Quando* 'when,' referring to present or future time and usually the equivalent of *se* 'if,' is followed by the present indicative (in the case of a general statement) or the future subjunctive; referring to past time it takes the indicative in the imperfect when it has the force of *emquanto* 'while,' otherwise in the preterite. For *quando* with the future subjunctive, see 611:

*quando o carteiro vier, dê-lhe esta carta* 'when ('if') the letter-carrier comes, give him this letter,' *não quero sair quando chove* 'I do not wish to go out when ('if') it rains,' *quando escrevia, todos esperavam* 'while he was writing, all waited,' *quando chegou o combóio, não se achou ali* 'when the train arrived, he was not there.'

604. After the local adverb *onde* (or *aonde*) the indicative or the future subjunctive is used according to the sense:

*fique onde* (or *aonde*) *está* (also *estiver*) 'remain where you are (or 'may be').'

605. The subjunctive is used in clauses introduced by such conjunctions and conjunctive expressions as *ainda que*, *bem que*, *embora*, and *pôsto que* 'although,'



*a não ser que* 'unless,' *como* 'as,' *conquanto* 'although,' *contanto que* 'provided,' (*dado o caso (que)* 'in case,' *desde que* 'since,' *pois que* 'since,' *por mais* (or *muito*) . . . . *que* 'however much,' *porque* 'because,' *sem que* 'unless,' and *suposto que* 'supposing' (707), when the action expressed by the subordinate verb implies a suggestion or motive of the speaker rather than a fact already existing or surely to be realized; in the latter case the indicative is employed:

*não me queixaria* (or *queixava*) *dêlc, ainda que me maltratasse* (or *maltratava*) 'I would not complain of him even though he should (or 'did') ill treat me,' *embora fique doente, trabalharei* 'even though I should be ill, I will work,' *como não quisesse acompanhar-me* 'since he did not wish to accompany me,' *por muito poderoso que seja, vencê-lo hei* 'however powerful he may be, I will overcome him,' *pode ir, contanto que não se demore* 'you may go, provided you do not delay,' *caso (que) esteja em casa* 'in case he is at home,' *não veio porque estava enfermo* 'he did not come because he was ill,' *sem que o juiz esteja presente* 'unless the judge is present.'

606. *Não porque* and *não* (or *nem*) *que* 'not because' usually take the subjunctive when they indicate that the reason advanced is not the real one; otherwise the indicative:

*não porque fosse enfermo ou porque não tivesse tempo* 'not because he was sick or had not the time,' *não porque não esteja* (or *está*) *bem* 'not because he is not well.'

For the use of the subjunctive in conditional sentences, see 633, 634.

607. The subjunctive is used after certain indefinites when they express an uncertainty (345):

*quemquer que fosse* 'whoever it might be,' *seja quem fôr que diga o contrário* 'whoever it may be that says the contrary,' *como quer que seja* 'however it may be,' *qualquer que* (or *por grande que*) *seja a sua posição* 'whatever (or 'however great') may be his position,' *não é nada do que se quer que seja* 'it is nothing whatever,' *por bom que seja* 'however good it may be,' *seja quem fôr* 'let it be who it may,' *quaisquer que sejam os que o repetam serão castigados* 'whoever repeat it will be punished,' *que eu saiba* 'as far as I know.'

608. In correlative expressions with *ou . . . ou . . .*, *quer . . . quer . . .*, *quer . . . quer não . . .*, *ora . . . ora . . .*, when they contain an element of doubt:

*seja como homem seja como animal* 'whether as man or as animal,' *quer seja feliz quer infeliz* 'whether he be happy or unhappy,' *sairei quer chova quer não chova* 'I will go out whether it rains or not,' *quer êle venha quer não* 'whether he comes or not,' *queira ou não queira* or *quer queira quer não* (*queira*) 'whether he wants to or not;' but *ou vencemos ou morremos* 'we either conquer or die.'

609. (a) The subjunctive is used when depending on an impersonal verb or expression implying some degree of uncertainty (526, 527):

*é incerto que venha* 'it is uncertain if he will come,'

*pode muito bem ser que tenha vindo* 'it may well be that he has come,' *é necessário que saia da cidade* 'it is necessary that I leave the city,' *é para lastimar que seja assim* 'it is to be regretted that it is so,' *convém que esteja prevenido* 'it is fitting that he should be warned,' *não é possível que assim seja* 'it is not possible that it should be so,' *importa que fique* 'it is important that he remain,' *não é preciso que eu o faça* 'it is not necessary for me to do it,' *basta que chegue à hora* 'it is enough that he come on time,' *é incrível que seja assim* 'it is incredible that it should be so.'

(b) After most of these expressions, instead of the construction with *que* and the subjunctive, the infinitive may be used, in case there is no doubt of the subject of the verb, or if this is expressed by a pronoun which is at the same time the object of the principal clause:

*não me é preciso fazer esta viagem* 'it is not necessary for me to make this voyage,' *pesa-me ter-lhe causado este desgosto* 'I am sorry to have caused him this trouble.'

(c) But the indicative is used if positive certainty is implied and when depending on such affirmative verbs and expressions as *acontecer* 'to happen,' *parecer* 'to appear' 'seem,' *resultar* 'to result,' *seguir-se* 'to follow,' *é certo* 'it is certain,' *é claro* 'it is clear,' *é evidente* 'it is evident,' *é verdade* 'it is true,' *é porque* 'it is because.'

*acontece que está enfêrmo* 'it happens that he is sick,' *é certo que esteve doente* 'it is certain that he was ill,' *é verdade que lhes negámos socorro* 'it is

true that we refused them aid,' *é claro que não deseja ser visto* 'it is clear that he does not wish to be seen,' *vê-se que não é assim* 'it is seen that it is not so.'

610. After *talvez* 'perhaps' a verb is in the subjunctive; before it, it is in the indicative:

*talvez ele venha hoje* or *ele vem* (or *virá*) *talvez hoje* 'perhaps he will come to-day,' *talvez queira ir à biblioteca* or *quere talvez ir à biblioteca* 'perhaps you would like to go to the library,' *talvez fosse ele* 'perhaps it was he.'

611. The future subjunctive is used to refer to something uncertain in the future:

(a) Never after *que*, but most frequently after *quando* 'when' and also after *enquanto* 'while' 'as long as,' *assim como*, *assim que*, *conforme*, and *segundo* 'according to' 'corresponding to:'

*quando vier* 'when he comes,' *quando Deus quiser* 'when God wishes,' *conforme fizerem* 'as they may do,' *segundo a operação for mais ou menos necessária* 'according as the operation may be more or less necessary,' *quando vier encontrar-me há* 'when he comes he will find me.'

(b) In relative clauses:

*suceda o que suceder* 'let what may happen,' *aquelles que vierem* 'those who may come,' *tudo quanto o senhor disser será em vão* 'all you may say will be in vain,' *quem te ouvir há-de dizer que perdeste o juízo* 'anyone to hear you would say you were crazy,' *desagrade a quem desagradar*

'whoever it may displease,' *dêa a quem doer* 'whoever it may pain,' *esteja onde estiver* 'let it be where it may.'

(c) After *como* 'as:'

*donde fores, faz como vires* 'wherever you go, do as you see,' *seja como fôr* 'be that as it may,' *fará como puder* 'he will do as he can,' *como quiser* 'as you please.'

For the use of the future subjunctive in conditional sentences, see 634.

#### USES OF THE TENSES

612. In general the tenses are used in the subjunctive as in the indicative, but the subjunctive has only the present, the past, and the future.

613. The present indicative is used

(a) To describe an action as taking place in the present (habitual present):

*pinto aguarelas* 'I paint water-colors,' *já vou* 'I am coming;' or as dating from a remote past and promising to continue indefinitely:

*a terra gira em torno do sol* 'the earth revolves around the sun,' *êle janta habitualmente às cinco horas* 'he dines regularly at five o'clock.'

(b) In consecutive narration, instead of the preterite, to express vividly a past event, as if the narrator were at that moment performing or witnessing the action (historical present):

*então Lázaro ouvindo a voz do Senhor, levanta-se da cova* 'then Lazarus hearing the voice of the Lord,

risers from the grave,' *venho, vejo-o e aperto-o nos meus braços* 'I come, I see him and clasp him in my arms.'

(c) Especially in familiar language, to express vividly proximate future time:

*volto já* or *já volto* 'I shall return at once,' *parto amanhã* 'I leave to-morrow,' *amanhã é domingo* 'to-morrow is Sunday,' *nós vamos na semana que vem* 'we are going next week,' *que faz de tarde?* 'what are you doing (or 'going to do') this evening?' *o senhor hoje janta* (for *jantará*) *comigo* 'you dine with me to-day,' *amanhã vou a sua casa* 'I will go to your house to-morrow.'

(d) As the equivalent of the English present perfect, with expressions of time, to describe what began at a certain time in the past and continues into the present:

*há dois anos que estudo português* 'I have been studying Portuguese two years,' *estou há quatro anos nesta casa* 'I have been four years in this house,' *há anos que o não vejo* 'it is years since I have seen him,' *há três meses que vivemos em Lisboa* 'we have been living three months in Lisbon;' but *estivemos três meses em Lisboa* 'we lived three months in Lisbon' (but are not there now).

(e) Instead of the imperative, in giving directions or advising what one should do:

*o senhor segue por esta rua fora, toma a quinta rua à esquerda e dobra a primeira esquina do lado*

*direito* 'you keep on this street, take the fifth street to the left and turn the first corner on the right.'

(f) To express explicitly what is taking place while one is speaking about it, one uses the periphrastic conjugation, composed of the present of *estar* or *ir* followed by a gerund or by an infinitive preceded by *a* (439, 452):

*estou escrevendo* 'I am writing,' *o seu biógrafo, que vamos seguindo* 'his biographer whom we are following.'

(g) The present subjunctive designates an action which coincides with the present:

*é mister que saia agora* 'I must go out now.' It often indicates a future existence or action: *é mister que partas amanhã* 'you must leave tomorrow,' *duvido que ele venha no fim do ano* 'I doubt if he comes at the end of the year.'

614. The imperfect indicative is used

(a) To describe what was in the habit of happening or what continued to take place during an indefinite period in the past:

*a chuva continuava* 'the rain continued,' *eu contava com este dinheiro* 'I counted on this money,' *ele saía todos os dias à uma hora* 'he used to go out every day at one o'clock,' *era uma vez um rei que vivia num palácio perto do rio* 'there was once upon a time a king who lived in a palace near the river.'

(b) Frequently instead of the preterite, with the verb *ser*, in descriptions of personal qualities or of accidental or accessory circumstances:

*o rei era de estatura mais que ordinária* 'the king was of more than ordinary stature.'

- (c) Frequently instead of the conditional (627):

*disse que voltava* (for *voltaria*) *no dia seguinte* 'he said he would return the following day,' *pensava que o moço ia* (for *iria*) *para Lisboa hoje* 'I thought that the servant would go to Lisbon to-day,' *não era melhor morrer?* 'would it not be better to die?' *desejava comprar dois bróches* 'I should like to buy two brooches.'

This is especially common in the conclusion of conditional sentences (633).

- (d) To describe a state or act as customary or habitual, or as going on at a point of time spoken of in the past:

*quando vivia no campo caçava muito* 'when I lived in the country I used to hunt a great deal,' *escrevia quando cheguei* 'he was writing when I arrived,' *quando o vi chorava êle* 'when I saw him he was weeping,' *outrora lia muito* 'formerly I read a great deal,' *pensava em V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> quando entrou* 'I was thinking of you when you entered.'

- (e) As the equivalent of the English pluperfect, in expressions of time, to describe an act or state which lasted from one period in the past to another:

*havia muito tempo que a estava esperando* 'I had been waiting a long time for her,' *estava naquela casa* 'he had been in that house four months.'



(f) The imperfect of *dever*, when followed by an infinitive, is used instead of the preterite:

*êle devia* (not *deveu*) *fazer uma coisa* 'he ought to do something,' *devia* (not *deveu*) *avisar-me* (or *ter-me avisado*) *do caso* 'you should have advised me of the matter.'

(g) To express explicitly what was taking place when another thing happened, one uses the periphrastic conjugation, composed of the imperfect of *estar* followed by a gerund or by an infinitive preceded by *a* (439):

*não lhe falei porque estava jantando* (or *estava a jantar*) 'I did not speak to him because he was dining.'

615. The imperfect subjunctive is used to designate

(a) An action that is past in relation to the principal verb, but is considered present in relation to another action also in the past:

*não creio que estivesse ontem doente* 'I do not believe he was sick yesterday,' *eu duvidava que êle fizesse essa viagem* 'I doubted if he would make that journey.'

(b) An action that is past in relation to the principal verb, but is considered as future in relation to another past action:

*receava que eu escrevesse a seu pai* 'he feared I would write to his father.'

(c) A present or future action depending on a past future tense:

*para êle saber tudo, seria mister que eu lhe escrevesse amanhã* 'in order that he might know all, it would be necessary for me to write to him to-morrow.'

616. The preterite is used much more in Portuguese than in French or Italian, for example, and often represents the present perfect in English, especially when the result of the action rather than the action itself is emphasized. It is employed

(a) To describe a state or an action accomplished and completed in the past. This is especially the case when the action is determined by some indication of time:

*jantei ontem com meu pai* 'I dined with my father yesterday,' *recebi um telegrama esta manhã* 'I received a telegram this morning,' *comprei hoje dois belos quadros* 'I bought two beautiful pictures to-day,' *quando o avistou fugiu* 'when he saw him he fled,' *êle esteve ontem doente* 'he was ill yesterday,' *vivemos três anos no Brasil* 'we lived three years in Brazil,' *escrevi-lhe* 'I have written to him,' *chegou* 'he has arrived,' *estêve muito mau tempo* 'it was very bad weather,' *como passou?* 'how have you been?' *passou bem?* 'have you been well?' *acabei com isto* 'I have done with that.'

The addition of the adverb *já* 'now' to the preterite gives it the force of a present perfect:

*já foi alguma vez a Lisboa?* or *já estêve em Lisboa?* 'have you ever (or 'already') been in Lisbon?'

(b) Occasionally in temporal clauses instead of the pluperfect:

*logo que o inimigo se retirou* 'as soon as the enemy had retired.'

(c) Iterative action in the past is expressed by the gerund with the auxiliary in the preterite:

*foi andando, andando* 'he went on and on.'

617. Besides future time, the future indicative expresses

(a) A deferential affirmation:

*isto lhe prometerei, que nunca tal farei* 'this I promise you, that I shall never do so.'

(b) An act as simply possible or probable, or as stated conjecturally or with reserve, without any idea of future time. This is especially common with the verbs *sêr* and *estar*:

*será a uma* 'it may be one o'clock,' *lerá, mas não entende* 'he may read, but he does not understand,' *será curipso* 'it would be strange,' *será possível?* 'is it possible?' *estará doente* 'perhaps he is ill,' *que horas serão?* 'what time may it be?' *terá saído* 'he has probably gone out,' *onde estará o meu chapêu?* 'where can my hat be?' *quem será?* 'who can it be?' *estará ausente* 'he may be away,' *a esta hora quanta alegria haverá!* 'at this hour, how much rejoicing there must be!'

Likewise with the periphrastic form:

*há-de sêr o seu irmão* 'it may be your brother.'

(c) An interrogation which does not require an immediate answer:

*que será isto?* 'what may that be?' Cf. *que é isto?* 'what is that?'

(d) As an alternative of the present subjunctive (imperative):

*o senhor perdoqr-me há* or *o senhor perdqe-me* 'pardon me.'

(e) In the second persons, as in English biblical style, to express a general command or prohibition more energetically than with the imperative:

*amarás a Deus sobre todas as coisas* 'thou shalt love God above all things,' *honrarás a teu pai e a tua mãe* 'thou shalt honor thy father and thy mother,' *não furtarás* 'thou shalt not steal.'

(f) The simple future is rarely used in conversation, being usually replaced by the combination *haver de* or *ter que* and an infinitive, or by the simple present or the periphrastic form, the latter composed of *ir* or *vir* followed by an infinitive (382. c, 444, 452):

*vou passeqr, hei-de passeqr, or tenho que passeqr* 'I shall walk.'

(g) To express an action begun in the future, one generally uses the periphrastic construction, composed of the future of *estar* with a gerund or with an infinitive preceded by *a*:

*amanhã a estas horas estarei viajando* (or *a viajar*) 'tomorrow at this hour I shall be travelling.'

If dependent upon a past tense, the same construction, but using the conditional of *estar*, is employed:

*disse que no dia seguinte àquela hora estaria viajando* (or *a viajar*) 'he said that at that hour the next day he would be travelling.'

618. Futurity in the subjunctive is expressed by the

(a) Present subjunctive (613. g):

*mando que saia mesmo que chova* 'I order you to go out even though it rains.'

- (b) Present perfect subjunctive:

*mando que saia mesmo que tenha chovido* 'I order you to go out even though it may have rained.'

- (c) Imperfect subjunctive:

*mandei que saísse mesmo que (or se não) chovesse* 'I ordered you to go out even though it should (or 'if it should not') rain.'

- (d) Past perfect subjunctive:

*mandei que saísse mesmo que (or se não) tivesse chovido* 'I ordered you to go out even though it should (or 'if it should not') have rained,' *ele não fecharia esta carta sem que ma tivesse mostrado* 'he would not close this letter without having shown it to me.'

- (e) Future subjunctive (611):

*aconteça o que acontecer* 'let what may happen,' *seja como fôr* 'be that as it may.'

- (f) Future perfect subjunctive:

*se até amanhã não tiver recebido notícias de minha irmã telegrafarei para Nova York* 'if by to-morrow I do not receive word from my sister I will telegraph to New York.'

619. The use of the present perfect is very limited in Portuguese, especially in conversation, except under the influence of the French idiom. The preterite is generally used instead (616).

The present perfect is used to describe an action which happened and was completed at a time not entirely elapsed and the consequences of which extend

into the present; or to describe a present state as the result of an action now completed:

*tem estado um tempo muito mau* 'it has been very bad weather,' *êle tem estado doente* 'he has been ill,' *temos viajado muito* 'we have travelled much,' *tenho procurado em todas as caixas* 'I have searched all the boxes,' *esta semana tenho visto minha mãe todos os dias* 'I have seen my mother every day this week,' *tenho dito* 'I have said.'

620. The present perfect subjunctive corresponds to the present perfect indicative and designates past time without any other accessory idea, except that of dependence:

*não julga que eu tenha escrito a seu pai* 'he does not think I have written to his father,' *não creio que êle tenha estado doente* 'I do not believe he has been sick.'

It sometimes indicates an anterior future:

*não fecharei esta carta sem que êle a tenha lido* 'I shall not close this letter without his having read it.'

621. The conditional is used

(a) In the principal clause to express what is uncertain or indefinite:

*dir-se-ia que estava louco* 'one would say he was crazy.'

(b) In indirect discourse after a past tense of a verb of 'saying,' 'thinking,' etc., where in direct discourse the future would be used:

(direct) *declaro que virei amanhã* 'I declare I shall come to-morrow,' (indirect) *declarei que viria amanhã* 'I declared I would come to-morrow.'

When the action is future not only in relation to the past but also to the present, the future is sometimes used:

*disse que voltará* (or *voltaria*) *amanhã* 'he said he will return to-morrow.'

(c) To express possibility or probability in reference to past events (617. b):

*seriam as duas da manhã* 'it was probably two o'clock in the morning,' *que horas seriam quando êle chegou?* 'what time might it have been when he arrived?' *haveria naquela noite duas mil pessoas na rua* 'there must have been two thousand people in the street that night.'

(d) To express indignation or surprise:

*que seria isto?* 'what can that be?' *quem tãl diria?* 'who would say so?' *seria verdade?* 'can it be true?'

(e) To make a deferential request or assertion (626).

(f) In conditional sentences (633).

622. The future perfect is used

(a) As in English, to express the certain result of future action or an act which will take place when another, also in the future, will be completed:

*quando eu chegar êle terá vindo* 'he will have come when I shall arrive,' *quando êle vier terei partido para o campo* 'when he comes I shall have left for the country,' *se fizermos isto teremos* (or more emphatically *têmos*) *alcançado uma grande vitória* 'if we do that we shall have won a great victory,' *quando êle chegar, já eu terei jantado* 'when he comes I shall have dined.'

(b) To express probability (617. b):

*a estas horas êle terá recebido a minha última carta* 'by this time he probably has received my last letter,' *terá merecido êste castigo* 'he must have deserved this punishment.'

(c) The present perfect or the preterite is sometimes used for emphasis instead of the future perfect:

*quando êle chegar, já eu tenho jantado* 'when he comes I shall have already dined.'

623. (a) The conditional perfect is used in subordinate sentences to express that an action would have taken place in the past if the condition on which it depended had been realized:

*teria sido morto se o polícia não me tivesse salvado* 'I would have been killed if the policeman had not saved me,' *tinham dito que no dia seguinte quando êle chegasse já eles teriam jantado* 'they had said that on the following day when he would arrive they would already have dined.'

624. In Portuguese more than in the other Romance languages the simple pluperfect is used in its original Latin meaning.

Though its use is considered elegant, it is less used now, even in the literary language, than formerly. In conversation and ordinary style, especially in the third person plural, which has the same form as the preterite, it is ordinarily replaced by the compound pluperfect or past perfect, composed of the imperfect of *ter* and a past participle:

*tinha amado* 'I had loved,' instead of *amara*; *tinha falado*, instead of *falara* 'I had spoken.'



625. The pluperfect, simple or compound, is used

(a) To signify that a certain action had already taken place when another action was realized:

*eu ceqra* (or *tinha ceqdo*) *quando êle entrou* 'I had supped when he entered,' *o vapor partira no dia 20 de março* 'the steamer had left on the 20th of March,' *acabqra* (or *tinha* (or *havia*) *acabqdo*) *tôda a leitura quando entrei na sala* 'he had finished all the reading when I entered the room.'

But with *logo que* 'as soon as' and its synonyms, the preterite is used instead of the pluperfect.

(b) Instead of the imperfect subjunctive, to express a wish or an exclamation. This is especially the case with such simple forms as *desejqra* from *desejar* 'to desire,' *pudqra* from *poder* 'to be able,' *prouqra* from *prazer* 'to please,' *quisqra* from *querer* 'to wish,' and *tomqra* from *tomar* 'to take:'

*tomqra que chovesse* 'I wish it would rain,' *prouqra a Deus que êle voltasse breve* 'would to God he would return soon,' *quem me dera!* 'that would be fine!'

For the simple pluperfect instead of the conditional in conditional sentences, see 633. c.

626. In making a deferential assertion or a modest request it is more common to use the conditional or pluperfect instead of the more direct, though equally correct, forms of literary prose:

*eu quisqra* (or *quereria* or *queria*, instead of *quero*) *comprar um livro* 'I should like to buy a book,'  
*V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> deveria* (instead of *deve*) *pagar o débito* 'you

ought to pay the debt,' *gostaria muito de vê-lo* 'I should like very much to see it,' *êle preferiria andar só* 'he would prefer to go alone,' *desejaria saber* 'I should like to know,' *ousaria afirmar* 'I dare say,' *teria* (or *tinha*) *a bondade de me mostrar o caminho?* 'please show me the way.'

627. In colloquial language the imperfect indicative is far more common than the conditional:

*desejava* (for *desejaria*) *comer alguma coisa* 'I should like to eat something,' *podia* (for *poderia*) *fazer as reparações* 'I could make the repairs,' *gostava* (for *gostaria*) *de vê-lo* 'I should like to see it.'

#### SEQUENCE OF TENSES

##### I. The Indicative in the Dependent Sentence

628. (a) If the principal verb is in the present, the future, or the imperative of a verb of saying, such as *afirmar* 'to affirm,' *asseverar* 'to assert,' *dizer* 'to say,' *julgar* 'to judge,' *sustentar* 'to maintain,' etc., any tense of the indicative may be used in the dependent clause:

*digo* (*direi, diz, etc.*) *que faz* (*fazia, fêz, tem feito, tinha feito, fará, etc.*) *mal* 'I say ('will say,' 'said,' etc.) that he does ('did,' 'has done,' 'had done,' 'will do,' etc.) badly,' *diz(e)-me se faz bom tempo* 'tell me if the weather is fine.'

(b) If the principal verb is in a past tense of one of these verbs,

(1) The dependent verb is in the present if it indicates present time or habitual action:

*dizia (disse, dissera, havia dito, etc.) que a vida é curta* 'I said ('had said,' etc.) that life is short.'

- (2) The dependent verb is in a past tense if it indicates past action:

*dizia (disse, dissera, havia dito, etc.) que estudava (estudou, estudara, havia (or tinha) estudado)* 'I said ('had said,' etc.) that he studied ('had studied,' etc.).'

- (c) In indirect discourse, after a verb of 'knowing' or 'asking,' if the principal verb is in the present, the future, or the imperative, the dependent verb is either in the present or the future; if the principal verb is in a past tense, the dependent verb is likewise past:

*não sei se ele vem (or virá)* 'I do not know if he is coming (or 'will come'),' *não sabia (soube, tinha sabido) se ele viria (or vinha)* 'I did not know ('had not known,' etc.) if he would come (or 'came'),' *preguntei se fazia bom tempo* 'I asked if the weather was fine.'

## II. The Subjunctive in the Dependent Sentence

629. (a) If the principal verb is in the present, the future, or the imperative, the dependent verb is in the present or present perfect subjunctive:

*quero que ele faça isto* 'I wish him to do this,' *diga-lhe que venha* 'tell him to come,' *não acreditarei que tenha chegado* 'I shall not believe that he has arrived,' *temo que não venha* 'I fear he is not coming,' *sinto que tenha estado doente* 'I am sorry you have been ill.'

(b) But under the same conditions, the dependent verb may be in the imperfect subjunctive, if the action expressed by it is considered past in relation to the verb of the principal clause:

*estimo que V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> fizesse boa jornada* 'I am glad you had a good journey,' *creio (duvido, nego) que seja (fosse) verdade* 'I believe ('doubt,' 'deny') that it is ('was') true,' *sinto que estivesse doente* 'I am sorry you were ill.'

(c) If the principal verb is in a past tense, the dependent verb is in the imperfect or future subjunctive:

*queria (quis, quiereria, quisera, tinha querido, teria querido) que viesse* 'I wished ('had wished,' 'would have wished') him to come,' *queria que o senhor fosse feliz* 'I wished you were happy,' *pedia-lhe que lhe mandasse os livros* 'I asked him to send you the books,' *tinha-lhe dito que trabalhasse* 'I had told him that he should work,' *negou que fosse assim* 'he denied that it was so,' *acreditou que eu lhe fosse tão cruel?* 'did he think that I was so cruel to him?' *mandei (or mandava) lhe dizer que viesse* 'I sent word for him to come.'

(d) If the action expressed by the dependent verb is anterior to that expressed by the principal verb, the past perfect subjunctive is used for the former:

*queria (quis, quiereria, quisera, tinha querido, teria querido) que ele tivesse vindo* 'I wished ('would wish,' 'had wished') that he had come,' *não julgava que tão cedo ficasse eu privado deste socorro* 'I did not think I should so soon be deprived of this support.'

(e) If the dependent verb expresses a general thought, independent of all idea of time, even if the principal verb is past, the dependent verb may be in the present subjunctive:

*não lhe disse nada que não seja a verdade* 'I did not tell him anything that is not true.'

630. In such sentences as *não dormia havia uma semana* 'I did not sleep for a whole week' and *há muito tempo que o não vejo* 'it is a long time since I have seen him,' it is better to have the principal and dependent verbs agree in tense. Compare also:

*não dormia há uma semana* 'I did not sleep a week ago,' *havia dois anos que estava doente* 'I was ill two years,' *há dois anos que estou doente* 'I have been ill two years,' *há dois anos que estive doente* 'I was ill two years ago.'

#### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

631. Conditional sentences are normally introduced by a word meaning 'if' (*se* 'if' is frequently omitted in familiar speech), 'unless,' 'provided that,' 'on condition that,' or 'supposing,' and fall into three main classes:

632. I. Those in which the conditional clause denotes an actual fact, and nothing is implied as to its fulfilment. The indicative is used in both clauses, and the present tense refers to future as well as to present time:

*se estudo pouco, a culpa é minha* 'if I study little, the fault is mine,' *se não é verdade, é bem achado* 'if it is not true, it is well invented,' *se diz isso, tem razão* 'if he says that, he is right,' *se fez isso, merece ser castigado* 'if he did that, he deserves to '

be punished,' *se avanças, morres* 'if you advance, you die.'

633. II. Those in which the condition is understood to be past fulfilment and contrary to fact.

Condition      Conclusion

Referring to present time: Impf. Subj.      Cond.

(or Impf.)

Referring to past time: Past Perf. Subj.      Cond. Perf.

(or Impf.)

(a) *se eu tivesse dinheiro, comprá-lo-ia* 'if I had money I would buy it,' *se Maria fosse, eu iria* 'if Mary went I would go,' *se o tivesse dar-lho-ia* 'if I had it I would give it to him,' *eu seria feliz, se tivesse mais saúde* 'I should be happy if I had better health,' *se não fosse a grande distância, iria vê-lo* 'if he were not so far away, I would go to see him,' *se a guerra se declarasse, estaríamos perdidos* 'if war should be declared we would be lost,' *no ano seguinte matricular-me-ia na universidade, se não fosse tão novo* 'the following year I should have matriculated in the university if I were not so young,' *se pudesse, lá iria* 'if I were able I would go there,' *se fosse verdade, crê-lo-ia* 'if it were true, I would believe it,' *se o soubesse, di-lo-ia* 'if he knew it, he would tell it,' *sairia hoje, se não esperasse um amigo* 'I would go out to-day but I expect a friend,' *se ele fosse meu amigo, não faria isso* 'if he were my friend he would not do that.'

(b) Frequently, in the literary as well as in the popular language, the imperfect indicative is preferred in the conclusion instead of the conditional or past

future perfect, as expressing more clearly the certainty of the realization of the action:

*êle ia* (for *iria*), *se o mandássem* 'he would go if they ordered it,' *eu fazia* (for *faria*) *isso, se fosse preciso* 'I would do that if it was necessary,' *eu saía* (for *sairia*), *se não estivesse tempo de chuva* 'I would go out if it was not raining,' *se aquilo durasse mais oito dias, dava* (for *teria dado*) *cabo de todos* 'if that had lasted another week, it would have been the end of all,' *se o encontrasse, matava-o* 'if I met him, I would kill him,' *eu não as via, se mas não tivesse mostrando* 'I should not have seen them if you had not pointed them out to me,' *eu dava-lho, se me pedisse* 'I would give it to him if he asked me for it,' *se pudesse, andava mais de-prêssa* 'if I could I would go faster,' *disse-lhe que entregava os brincos, com tanto que ela os fosse buscar dentro ao surrão* 'he told her he would restore the ear-rings provided she went to look for them in the bag,' *se fosse sozinho no mundo, cuida que me afogava* 'if I were alone in the world, I think I would drown myself.'

(c) The simple pluperfect sometimes takes the place of the conditional in the conclusion:

*bem o quisera eu, se a ocasião se proporcionasse* 'I should indeed have wished it if the occasion had presented itself,' *antes o tivera* (or *teria*) *eu querido, se adivinhasse o que havia de suceder* 'I would have preferred it, had I known what was going to happen.'

(d) Frequently, for emphasis, there is a departure

from the normal sequence of tenses, as illustrated in the following sentences:

*se tomo* (for *tivesse tomado*) *naquela ocasião o seu conselho, não teria de que me arrepender* 'if I had taken his advice on that occasion, I should have no reason to regret,' *eu morreria* (for *teria morrido*) *quando criança, se não me tivessem cercado de inúmeros cuidados* 'I would have died when a child if I had not been surrounded by innumerable precautions,' *teria ido, se tivera* (for *tivesse*) *sabido* 'I would have gone, had I known.'

634. III. Those in which the condition relates to a future act, without any implication that it may or may not be realized.

Condition	Conclusion
Fut. Subj. (with <i>se, quando, como, emquanto, segundo, conforme, assim como, assim que</i> ).	Fut. (or Pres.) Indic. or Imperat.

*emquanto houver homens, sempre haverá injustiças* 'as long as there are men, there will always be injustice,' *se fôr preciso e se puder, eu mesmo lá irei* 'if it should be necessary and I am able, I myself will go there,' *se vier amanhã, não me achará* 'if he should come to-morrow he will not find me,' *agora vou, se Deus quiser* 'now I will go, please God,' *sairei, se fizer bom tempo* 'I will go out if the weather is fine,' *se fizer isso, castigá-lo hei* 'if he does that, I will punish him,' *quando escrever, não mencione o dinheiro* 'when you write, do not mention the money,' *quando eu sair, feche todas as portas* 'when



I go out, lock all the doors,' *quando tiver ocasião, mande estes livros a meu pai* 'when you have a chance, send these books to my father,' *quando eu acabar este trabalho, ficarei contente* 'when I finish this work, I shall be satisfied.'

(a) The present subjunctive and the imperative are occasionally used instead of the future subjunctive in the conditional clause:

*fale êle* (= *se êle falar*), *tudo se calará* 'let him speak (= 'if he speaks'), all will be silent,' *vá, e verá* (= *se fôr, verá*) 'go and you will see.'

635. The subjunctive of wish may be used in the conclusion with the present indicative in the conditional clause:

*eu não viva mais que uma hora, se isto não é verdade* 'may I not live another hour, if that is not true,' *assim eu seja feliz, como isto é verdade* 'may I be happy, as that is true.'

636. In certain cases the conditional clause may be expressed by the omission of *se* and the inversion of the verb and its subject:

*tivesse eu tido* (= *se eu tivesse tido*) 'had I had,' or by a coördinate sentence: *ouvi-lo-ia e não o acreditaria* 'I might hear it and I should not believe it,' *fosse, e veria* (= *se tivesse ido, veria*) 'had you gone, you would have seen.'

For *se não, a menos que, quando não* 'unless' and similar expressions, see 705. 2.

637. The gerund or an infinitive phrase introduced

by *a* (592. c) is sometimes the equivalent of a conditional clause:

*ao cortar-se a mão, sai o sangue* 'if you cut your hand, the blood comes out;' *a ser assim, partirei* 'in that case, I will leave,' *andando lá, o veria* 'if you went there you would see him,' *a não ser isso verdade, morrerá* 'should that not be true, he will die,' *a dizer a verdade* 'to tell the truth,' *não tendo que fazer, estamos ociosos* 'since we have nothing to do, we are lazy.'

## XVIII. THE ADVERB

638. An adverb referring to more than one word must be repeated before each:

*o ar é muito espêssô e muito sufocante* 'the air is very close and very sultry.'

639. Adverbs may be single words, such as *aqui* 'here,' *assim* 'thus,' *bem* 'well,' *muito* 'very,' *não* 'no' 'not,' *nunca* 'never,' *sim* 'yes,' or adverbial locutions, which are formed either of

(a) Prepositions with nouns or adjectives:

*a miúdo* 'often,' *ao certo* 'certainly,' *de feito* 'indeed,' *de ordinário* 'ordinarily,' *de-prêssa* 'hastily,' *de súbito* 'suddenly,' *em baixo* 'lowly,' *por acaso* 'by accident,' *por escrito* 'in writing,' *porventura* 'accidentally,' *sem dúvida* 'doubtlessly,' etc.

(b) Prepositions with adverbs:

*a* (or *de*) *mênos* 'less,' *pelo mênos* 'at least,' *daí em diante* 'henceforth,' *de cá* 'here,' *de lá* 'there,' etc.

(c) Two adverbs:

*nunca mais* 'nevermore,' *pouco mênos* 'little less,' etc.

(d) Pronouns or nouns with adverbs:

*outro-sim* 'besides,' etc.

(e) Conjunctions with verbs:

*sequer* 'at least,' etc.

(f) Phrases:

*a mais não poder* 'to the utmost,' *de quando em quando* 'from time to time,' *nem mais nem mênos* 'neither more nor less.'

640. Some adverbs are followed by a preposition, usually *a* or *de*, before the object:

*relativamente a* 'with reference to,' *independentemente de* 'independently of.'

641. (a) Adverbs are most commonly formed by adding the suffix *-mente* (French *-ment*, the ablative of Latin *mens*) to the feminine singular of the corresponding adjective or participle:

*belamente* 'finely,' *escuramente* 'obscurely,' *felizmente* 'happily,' *gravíssimamente* 'most gravely,' *melhormente* 'better,' *simplesmente* 'simply;' but to the common masculine-feminine form in *francêsmente* 'resembling the French,' *portuguêsmamente* 'in the Portuguese manner.'

(b) The grave accent is substituted for the acute of the adjective in the adverbial derivative and the circumflex is preserved:

*amável* > *amávelmente* 'lovably,' *cortês* > *cortêsmamente* 'courteously,' *fácil* > *fácilmente* 'easily.'

(c) When two or more adverbs ending in *-mente* follow in immediate succession and modify the same word, the suffix *-mente* is expressed only with the last of the series, while the others take the feminine form of the adjective:

*falou sincera e humildemente* 'he spoke sincerely and humbly,' *nobre, franca e sabiamente* 'nobly, frankly, and wisely,' *geográfica e topograficamente falando* 'geographically and topographically speaking.'

Especially for the sake of emphasis, the conjunction *e* may be omitted and the suffix expressed in every case:

*discorreu sábiamente, largamente, profundamente,*  
'he discoursed wisely, broadly, and profoundly.'

(d) The masculine form of many adjectives and participles is often used with adverbial value but sometimes with a different meaning. Some of them may also take the suffix *-mente*. The commonest are:

<i>alto</i> 'high'	<i>ligeiro</i> 'light'
<i>baixo</i> 'low'	<i>manso</i> 'gentle'
<i>barato</i> 'cheap'	<i>pronto</i> 'prompt'
<i>breve</i> 'short'	<i>próximo</i> 'near'
<i>caro</i> 'dear'	<i>rápido</i> 'rapid'
<i>certo</i> 'certain'	<i>raro</i> 'rare'
<i>claro</i> 'clear'	<i>rijo</i> 'strong'
<i>demasiado</i> 'too (much)'	<i>seguro</i> 'secure'
<i>direito</i> 'direct'	<i>sério</i> 'serious'
<i>grosso</i> 'large'	<i>súbito</i> 'sudden'
<i>imenso</i> 'immense'	<i>torcido</i> 'crooked'

In some instances the adverbial character of the adjective is doubtful:

*vendeu caro* 'he sold dear,' *comprou barato* 'he bought cheap,' *falar baixo* 'to speak low,' *falar alto* 'to talk loud,' *falar altamente* 'to speak arrogantly,' *raro se vêem milagres* 'miracles are seldom seen,' *ele foi direito* (= *directamente*) *para casa* 'he went directly home,' *gostou imenso* 'to enjoy immensely.'

*Bem, Mal*, etc.

642. (a) The adverb of *bom* 'good' is *bem*, of *mau* and *ruim* 'bad' is *mal*, and of *cheio* 'full' is *plenamente*.

*Primeiro* is the only ordinal that can take the termination *-mente*:

*primeiro*, *primeiramente*, or *em primeiro lugar* 'in the first place.'

Of the other ordinals, *segundo* or *em segundo lugar* 'secondly,' *terceiro* or *em terceiro lugar* 'thirdly,' *em quarto lugar* 'fourthly,' etc., are the only adverbial forms.

(b) With *continuar*, *estar*, *ficar*, *permanecer*, *sair* and a few more verbs, either the adjective (*bom*, *mau*) or the adverb (*bem*, *mal*) may be used:

*Este negócio parece-me bom* (or *bem*) 'this business seems good to me.'

(c) In exclamations, *está bom!* and *está bem!* 'all right!' 'very well!' are used without distinction.

(d) *Estar mal* (or *de mal*), followed by the preposition *com*, means 'to be on bad terms with'

643. 'Well' and 'not well,' referring to a state of health are expressed by

(a) The verbs *andar*, *estar*, and *ficar* with the adjectives *bom*, *boa*, *melhor*, *mau*, *má*, *pior*, etc.

*minha mãe anda* (or *está* or *ficou*) *boa* (*melhor*) 'my mother is well ('better'),' *estou bom* (or *boa*) 'I am well.'

(b) The verbs *ir* and *passar* with the adverbs *bem*, *melhor*, *mal*, *pior*:

*vai bem?* 'are you well?' *vou* (or *passo*) *bem* 'I am well,' *passaram pior* 'they were worse,' *o doente vai indo melhor* 'the patient is getting better.'

(c) *Estar bem* also means 'to be well off' 'to do well' 'to be happy,' and *andar bem* means 'to behave well' 'do

well,' in the place, position, or circumstances the subject is in:

*estou muito bem aqui* 'I am very well off here,' *andou bem* 'he did well.'

644. (a) A few adverbs may be used as adjectives:

*homens assim* (for *homens tais* or *tais homens*) *não se podem aturar* 'such men cannot be put up with.'

(b) Or as nouns:

*o como* 'the how,' *os porquês* 'the whys,' *um não* 'a 'no'.'

645. Some adverbs, or adjectives used as such, are susceptible of taking a diminutive ending:

*levantei-me cedinho* 'I got up very early,' *falou baixinho* 'he spoke in a very low voice,' *pertinho* 'rather near at hand,' *longinho* 'somewhat long,' *quando a porta rangeu devagarinho* 'as the door creaked slowly.'

646. Some Latin adverbs and adverbial phrases are used in the literary language:

*ad libitum*, *bis*, *ex officio*, *gratis*, *inclusive*, *infra*, *a fortiori*, *pari passu*, *retro*, *supra*, etc.

647. The adverb is invariable; consequently *com quanta mais razão* is incorrect for *com quanto mais razão* 'with all the more reason,' *muito* (not *muitos*) *bons dias!* 'good day!' In the popular speech, *s* is sometimes added to adverbs, as *sòmente(s)*.

648. English 'so,' referring to an adjective or some other qualifying term in the predicate, is rendered by the pronouns *o* or *isso* (241):

*eu sou míope, mas ela é-o ainda mais* 'I am near-sighted, but she is still more so,' *é meu amigo? eu sou-o de*

*tôdo o coração* 'are you my friend?' 'I am with all my heart.'

#### COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

649. (a) The comparative is formed by placing *mais* 'more' 'further' or *menos* 'less' 'not so' before the positive of the adverb or adverbial expression:

*mais lindamente* 'more beautifully,' *mais à direita* 'more to the right.'

(b) The relative superlative is formed by placing the definite article before the comparative:

*o mais grandemente* 'the most greatly.'

But the article is frequently omitted:

*a província mais bem cultivada* 'the most cultivated province.'

(c) The absolute superlative is formed either by placing *muilo* before the positive:

*falou muito eloqüentemente* 'he spoke most eloquently;'

or, less often, by adding *-mente* to the feminine superlative of the adjective:

*facilimamente* 'most easily,' *perfeitissimamente* 'most perfectly.'

(d) *Grandemente* 'greatly' has two comparatives of superiority: *mais grandemente* and *môrmente*,

and three forms for the superlative: *muito* (or *mui*) *grandemente*, *grandissimamente*, and *màximamente*;

of these the first mentioned is the usual form.

(e) The following adverbs are compared irregularly:

*Bem* 'well,' comparative *melhor*, *mais bem*, or (less



common) *melhormente*; superlative *o melhor* or *ð(p)timamente*.

*Mql* 'bad;' comparative *piqr* (*peqr*) or *mais mql*; superlative *o piqr* or *pèssimamente*.

*Melhor* is the comparative of both *bom* (adj.) and *bem* (adv.) and corresponds to *mais bom* and *mais bem* respectively.

*Mais* is the comparative of *muito* (both adj. and adv.).

*Piqr* (*peqr*) is the comparative of both *mqu* (adj.) and *mql* (adv.) and corresponds to *mais mqu* and *mais mql*.

*Muito* 'very;' comparative *mais*; superlative *o mais* or *multíssimo*.

*Pouco* 'little;' comparative *menos*; superlative *o menos* or *pouquíssimo*.

*Menos* is the comparative of *pouco* (adj. and adv.): *tenho menos livros do que êle* 'I have fewer books than he has,' *Pedro fala menos do que Paulo* 'Peter talks less than Paul.'

The regular adverb *boamente* (usually preceded by *de*) has preserved its original meaning *de boa mente* 'of good will' 'willingly' 'frankly.'

*Melhor* and *piqr* as adverbs modify verbs only:

*de ora avante, procederemos melhor* 'from now on we shall make better progress;'

but if it is a past participle that is modified, the regular comparatives *mais bem* and *mais mql* are used:

*acho esta casa mais bem* (or *mais mql*, not *melhor* or *piqr*) *construída* (or *feita*) *do que aquela* 'I find this house better (or 'worse') built than that one,' *a obra mais mql* (not *piqr*) *acabada* 'the worst fin-

ished work,' *portou-se pior* 'he acted worse,' *pode haver projecto mais mal concebido que roubar o pobre órfão?* 'could there be a worse conceived idea than to rob the poor orphan?' *esta notícia foi mais bem recebida que a outra* 'this news was better received than the other,' *um dos nossos jornais mais bem informados* 'one of our best informed newspapers.'

#### POSITION OF ADVERBS

650. (a) Adverbs usually precede the word they modify but follow the verb:

*muito tarde* 'very late,' *êle repreendeu-o logo* 'he rebuked him immediately,' *vendeu demasiado caro* 'he sold too dear,' *êle é muito meu amigo* 'he is a great friend of mine,' *sou muito amigo dêle* 'I am a great friend of his.'

(b) The negative adverb *não* 'not' immediately precedes the verb and its object pronoun, if there be one, unless the pronoun is attracted forward by some other word (250), such as *ainda*, *como*, *já*, *para*, *porque*, *quando*, *que*, *se*, or *de* or *a* before a relative pronoun, in which case *não* precedes only the verb:

*não o creio* 'I do not believe it,' *não me fale* 'do not speak to me,' *peço perdão de não ter cá vindo já* (or *de cá não ter vindo já*) 'I ask pardon for not having come here at once,' *não devia deixar de lá ir* 'you should not fail to go there,' *porque é que se não pronuncia assim?* 'why is it not pronounced so?' *porque o não desejo* 'since I do not desire it,' *quando eu o não descubra* 'in case I should not

discover it,' *quando o não vejo* 'when I do not see him,' *que eles me não dizem* 'which they do not tell me,' *tu já me não amas, Laura, tu* 'you don't love me any more, Laura,' *é problema que vale a pena não perder de vista* 'it is a problem that it is worth while not to lose sight of,' *a empresa não pode ser acabada este ano* 'the work cannot be completed this year;' cf. *a empresa pode não ser acabada este ano* 'the non-completion of the work is permitted this year.'

(c) With compound tenses, if the auxiliary is *ter*, the adverb always follows the participle:

*tem negociado mal* 'he has done business badly.'

But if the auxiliary is *ser*, the adverb almost always stands between it and the participle:

*seremos bem amados* 'we shall be well loved.'

(d) *Bastante* 'enough' either immediately precedes or follows the adjective:

*Ele é bastante rico* or *Ele é rico bastante* 'he is rich enough,' *ainda é bastante cedo* or *ainda é cedo bastante* 'it is still early enough.'

(e) *Demais* 'too' 'excessively' always follows the adjective or adverb it modifies (330):

*já é tarde demais* 'now it is too late,' *o senhor é bom demais* 'you are too kind.'

(f) For the sake of emphasis, adverbs may stand at the head of the sentence or otherwise out of their normal position:

*meus senhores, sempre serão lembrados* 'gentlemen, you will always be remembered,' *eles aqui estão* 'here they are,' *ao outro dia cedo* 'early the next day,' *para lá se entrar* 'in order to enter there,' *aquele senhor já cá*

*está* 'the gentleman is here now,' *muíto trabalho eu* 'I work much.'

(g) Interrogative adverbs head the phrase:

*quando irá V. Ex<sup>a</sup> à cidade?* 'when will you go to the city?'

651. The following list contains the only simple adverbs and adverbial phrases calling for remark; many of them are also prepositions (cf. 676). Interrogative and relative adverbs are in general identical when relating to time and place.

652. A. Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions of Place (cf. 697-699).

(a) *Acolá* 'there;' adverb of the third person, indicating a point remote from both speaker and hearer; it is less specific than *ali*:

*digo a um, vai acolá, e êle vai* 'I say to one, go (there), and he goeth.'

(b) *Aí* 'there' 'thither;' adverb of the second person, corresponding to *êsse*, indicating a point near the person addressed or referring to an event just mentioned. Combined with *de* it is written *daí*: *ponha aí* 'put it there,' *veja lá se veem aí as minhas cartas* 'see if any letters have come for me,' *por aí* 'there,' *vai daí* (expletive) 'come now' 'what should I do?' etc. Also as a temporal adverb: *daí por diante* 'from that time on,' *daí a pouco* 'presently,' *daí a momentos* 'a few minutes later,' e *por aí além* 'and so forth.'

(c) *Além* 'farther' (also a preposition 'beyond' 'on the other side of'); combined with *de* it is written *dalém*; *um pouco mais além* 'a little farther off.'

(d) *Aí* 'there;' adverb of the third person, corresponding to *aquêle*; it is more specific than *lá* or *acolá* and indi-

cates something farther off; *dali* 'from there,' *por ali* 'that way' 'there.'

(e) *Aqui* 'here' 'hither;' adverb of the first person, corresponding to *êste*; it indicates a point near the speaker and is more specific and limited than *cá*; *por aqui* 'this way' 'here.'

(f) *Baixo* 'below;' *para baixo* 'downwards' 'down (there),' *de alto a baixo* 'from top to bottom,' *por baixo*, *abaixo*, *em baixo*, and *debaixo* 'beneath' 'down' 'below' 'underneath,' *lá abaixo* 'down there,' *os abaixo assinados* 'the undersigned.'

(g) *Cá* 'here' 'hither;' adverb of the first person; it is less specific and indicates a place nearer the speaker than *aqui*:

*digo a outro, vem cá, e êle vem* 'I say to another, come (here), and he cometh,' *que há de novo por cá* 'what's new hereabouts?' *para cá* 'here' 'hither.'

*Cá* is also used in familiar speech as an intensive particle with reference to the speaker:

*eu cá me entendo* 'I know what I am about,' *nós cá queremos isso* 'we wish that,' *cá por mim* 'as for me,' *mas diga-me cá* 'but just tell me.'

(h) *Cima* 'top;' *em cima*, *acima*, and *por cima* 'above' 'beyond,' *para cima* 'up(wards),' *ao-de-cima* 'over' 'besides,' *ponha-lhe por cima o meu casaco* 'put my coat over him.' These become prepositional phrases when followed by *de*.

(i) *Dentro* 'within' 'inside;' *por dentro* 'inside' 'within,' *de dentro* 'from within,' *dentro em* 'within,' *para dentro* 'inward,' *de minha porta para dentro* 'within my door,' *cá dentro* 'here within.'

(j) *Diante* 'before;' *ao diante*, *em diante*, *daqui por* (or

*em) diante* 'from now on,' *para diante, adiante*, 'forward' 'further,' *por diante* 'before.'

(k) *Eis* (lit. 'you have') 'behold' (for the form of the object pronoun with *eis*, see 229. c).

*Eis acolá* corresponds to French *voilà*; *ei-las acolá* 'there they are,' *ei-lo ali* 'there he is,' *eis-nos aqui* 'here we are.' *Eis, eis aqui, eis aí*, and *eis ali* are all used in directing attention:

*o estudo do português, eis o objecto dêste livro* 'the study of Portuguese is the object of this book.'

(l) *Fõra* 'outside,' *por fõra* 'on the outside' 'without' 'outwardly,' *vẽnho de fõra* 'I come from outside' ('from the country' 'from abroad'), *está fõra* (or *anda por fõra*) 'he has gone away,' *está para fõra* 'he has gone out,' *lá fõra* 'abroad' 'in other lands,' *de fõra* 'from without,' *saíu põrta fõra* 'he went out the door,' *saíu pela Baía fõra a armada* 'the fleet sailed out of Bahia.'

(m) *Lá* 'there,' adverb of the third person, indicating a distant but definite place from the standpoint of the speaker or of a third person: *põnha* (or *bõte*) *lá* 'put it there.' It is also used as an expletive in connection with all the persons, to give more force to the phrase:

*êle lá sabe* 'he knows,' *ouve lá* 'listen,' *diga lá* 'say' 'tell me,' *êles lá são ricos* 'those (there) are rich,' *cõmo estão lá em casa?* 'how are they at home?' *lá isso, cõmo o senhor quiser* 'as you wish,' *não é lá pela pãga que eu o digo* 'it is not for the pay that I say it,' *isso já lá vai* 'that is all over.'

Further, *lá* may express doubt, uncertainty, indifference, or denial:

(*eu*) *sei lá (isso)?* 'how do I know?' *nós queremos lá isso* 'we do not wish that.'

(n) *Longe* 'far;' *de longe* 'from afar,' *de longe a* (or *em*) *longe* 'here and there' 'at wide intervals,' *ac longe* 'in the distance;' it is also used as an adjective:

*vinha de longes terras* 'he came from far off lands,'  
*uma terra longe daqui* 'a land far from here.'

(o) *Onde* 'where' 'where?' indicates rest or place in which; *aonde* 'where' 'whither' indicates motion towards a place, but these two adverbs are often used without distinction: *aonde* (commonly *onde*) *vai V. Ex?* 'where are you going?' *Donde* 'where' 'whence' indicates motion from a place:

*onde esteve no domingo?* 'where were you Sunday?'  
*aonde vamos?* 'where are we going?' *donde vem êle?*  
 'whence does he come?' *de onde em onde* 'here and there,' *para onde?* (but not *para aonde?*) 'whither?'  
*tu para onde vais?* 'where are you going?' *por onde*  
*passaremos?* 'which way shall we go?' *êle apontou*  
*com o dedo para onde as vítimas jaziam* 'he pointed  
 with his finger to where the victims lay.'

For *onde* and *donde* as relatives, see 318.

(p) *Redor* 'round' as an adverb is preceded by the preposition *de* or *em*:

*andou de redor* 'he went around,' *olhou em redor* 'he looked around;' as a preposition it is followed by *de*:  
*perseguiu-o ao redor da casa* 'he chased him round the house,' *não estava a corda ao* (or *em*) *redor de mim*  
 'the rope was not around me.'

(q) *Trás*, *atrás*, *detrás*, *por detrás* 'behind,' *para trás* 'backwards' 'behind.'

653. B. Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions of Time

(a) *Agora* (dim. *agorinha* in Brazil) 'now;' *agora . . .*  
*agora . . .* 'now . . . then . . .,' *agora mesmo* 'just

now,' *por agora* 'for the present,' *o momento de agora* 'at that moment.'

(b) *Ainda* (*inda*) 'yet' 'still' 'again' 'even' 'ever:' *ainda há pouco* 'a while ago,' *ainda agora* 'just now,' *ainda não* 'not yet,' *ainda mais* 'still more,' *ainda menos* 'still less,' *ainda mal* 'unfortunately,' *ainda bem* 'fortunately,' *ainda há lugar lá dentro?* 'is there any more room in there?' *dê-me ainda* (here a gallicism for *mais*) *dêssas uvas* 'give me some more of those grapes.'

(c) *Amanhã* 'to-morrow,' *amanhã pela manhã* or *amanhã de manhã* 'to-morrow morning,' *de manhã* 'to-morrow,' *para amanhã* 'for to-morrow,' *depois de amanhã* 'the day after to-morrow,' *o dia de amanhã* 'to-morrow.'

(d) *Antes* 'before' 'sooner' 'formerly' 'rather' 'on the contrary,' *quanto antes* 'as soon as possible,' *muito antes* 'long before,' *dantes* 'formerly.' *Antes de* is a preposition and *antes que* is a conjunction.

(e) *Até aqui* 'thus far,' *até logo* or *até já* 'by-and-by,' 'till soon,' *daqui até lá* 'from now till then' (639. b).

(f) *Dali a dias* 'a few days later,' *daqui a séculos* 'centuries later,' *daqui a três dias* 'three days hence,' *daqui a pouco* 'in a little while,' *daqui em* (or *por*) *diante* 'henceforth,' *daqui* (or *de hoje*) *a um ano* 'a year from to-day,' *ao* (or *em*) *diante* 'from now on.'

(g) *De há dias* 'some days ago,' *de há pouco* 'a little while ago.'

(h) *Dentro em pouco* 'within a short time' (684).

(i) *Depois* (archaic and popular *despois*) 'after' 'afterwards' 'then,' *depois logo* 'immediately,' *o dia depois* or *o dia seguinte* 'the next day,' *ao depois* 'later on' 'afterwards.'

(j) *Desde já* 'from now on,' *desde há tempos* 'for some time past,' *desde muito* 'since long ago,' *desde sábado até*



*hoje* 'from Saturday to to-day.' It is used also as an adverb of place.

(k) *Então* 'then;' *desde então* 'from then,' *até então* 'till then,' *os homens de então* 'the men of that time.' Also as an adjective:

*os homens da então colônia e actual nação brasileira* 'the men of what was at that time a colony but is now the Brazilian nation,' *se nos transportarmos à época de então* 'if we transport ourselves to that epoch;' as an expletive, (*com que*) *então* 'well,' *então, como está?* 'well, how are you?'

(l) *Diante, adiante* 'before;' *por diante, ao diante, em diante* 'forward' 'later' 'in the future,' *de hoje em diante* 'from to-day on.'

(m) *Hoje* 'to-day;' *hoje em dia* or, less commonly, *no dia de hoje* 'nowadays' 'to-day' 'these days,' *hoje à noite* 'this evening,' *hoje pela* (or *à*) *tarde* 'this evening,' *hoje pela* (or *de*) *manhã* 'this morning,' *de hoje a oito dias* 'a week from to-day,' *mais hoje mais amanhã* or *mais dia menos dia* 'sooner or later,' *de hoje em diante* 'from to-day on.'

(n) *Já* has a great variety of meanings, 'now' 'then' 'already' 'presently' 'immediately' 'soon' 'straightway' 'at once,' and is often used merely as an expletive:

*já o creio* 'I should say so,' *desde já* 'from now on,' *já . . . já. . .* 'now. . . now. . . ' 'both. . . and . . . ,', *vá já!* 'go at once!' *já vou* 'I am coming,' *já para já* 'immediately,' *já já* 'at once,' (*já*) *há dias* 'some days ago,' *ah! isto já é outro falo!* 'ah, that is another story!' *já viu coisa mais horrível?* 'did you ever see anything more horrible?' *já cá está o automóvel* 'the automobile is already here,' *já (de) há muito (tempo)* 'now for a long time past,' *e eu já digo porque* 'and I'll just tell why.'

For *já não* and *não*. . . *mais*, see 655. f.

For *já* with the preterite, see 616. a.

*Já*, followed by *que*, is equivalent to *porque* or *uma vez que* 'since' 'now that.'

(o) *Lá* 'formerly' 'then' usually refers to time remote in the past or the future (652.m); sometimes it has the force of *quanto a*, *relativamente a*:

*lá isso é verdade* 'as for that, it is true,' *êste inverno que lá vai* 'last winter.'

(p) *Lôgo* 'presently' 'soon' 'directly' 'at once' 'right now' and even 'never;' *até lôgo* 'till soon' 'so long,' *lôgo mais* 'a little later,' *lôgo lhe digo* 'I will tell you presently,' *eu venho lôgo* 'I am coming presently,' *mais lôgo* 'later,' *desde lôgo* 'since then,' *lôgo no mesmo instante* 'at the very moment,' *lôgo no mesmo dia* 'on that very day.' Frequently repeated *lôgo*, *lôgo* 'in all haste' 'directly' 'at once.'

(q) *Ontem* 'yesterday;' *ontem pela* (or *de*) *manhã* 'yesterday morning,' *ontem pela* (or *de* or *à*) *tarde* 'yesterday evening,' *anteontem* 'the day before yesterday,' *anteontem de manhã* 'the morning of the day before yesterday,' *anteontem de tarde* 'the evening of the day before yesterday,' *ontem à noite* 'last evening.'

(r) *Ora* 'now;' *pra*. . . *pra*. . . 'alternately,' *de pra em diante* or *de pra-à-vante* 'henceforth,' *outrora* 'formerly' 'heretofore' 'ago,' *por pra* 'for the present.'

(s) *Quando* 'when' 'when?' *de quando em quando* and *de vez em quando* 'from time to time' 'every now and then,' *quando menos* 'at least.' *Quando* is used after *para* in such expressions as *guardo-o para quando* (= *para o tempo em que*) *alguma coisa acontecer* 'I am keeping it till something happens.'

(t) *Sempre* 'always' 'ever' 'in any case' 'meanwhile' 'at length' 'really' 'truly' 'surely' 'certainly' 'as a fact;'

*para (todo o) sempre* 'for ever.' Except in its literal meaning, *sempre* precedes the verb: *Pedro sempre vem* 'Peter is coming, after all.'

(u) *Vez* 'time;' *duma vez* 'at once' 'suddenly,' *de (uma) vez (para sempre)* 'once for all,' *uma vez* 'once,' *duas vezes* 'twice,' *muitas* (or *repetidas*) *vezes* 'often,' *tantas vezes* 'so often,' *às vezes* (or *por vezes*) 'sometimes' 'oftentimes,' *às vezes só* 'only occasionally,' *algumas vezes* 'sometimes,' *esta vez* 'this time,' *outra vez* 'again,' *cada vez mais* 'more and more,' *de cada vez* 'at a time,' *raras vezes* 'rarely,' *mais vezes* 'oftener,' *as mais das vezes* 'most often,' *mas dessas vezes* 'but at those times,' *mais uma vez* 'once more,' *de vez em quando* 'from time to time.'

For additional temporal adverbs and adverbial expressions, see 224, 693-696.

654. C. Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions of Manner and Quantity.

(a) The preposition *a*, with or without the definite article and followed by an adverb or by an adjective or noun in the masculine singular or feminine plural, is used to form many adverbial locutions:

*às-avessas* (less often *às vezes*) 'the wrong way' 'on the contrary,' *às-cegas* 'blindly,' *às-claras* and *às-sabidas* 'clearly' 'openly' 'evidently,' *às-direitas* 'correctly' 'as it should be,' *às-escondidas*, *às escuras*, *às furtadelas*, and *às ocultas* 'hiddenly' 'secretly' 'in the dark,' *ao acaso* 'by chance,' *ao certo* 'certainly,' *ao de leve* 'lightly,' *à pressa* 'in haste,' *a propósito* 'opportunately,' *a toda a pressa* 'in all haste.'

(b) *Assim* 'thus;' *assim é*, *é assim mesmo*, *é mesmo assim* 'thus it is,' *e assim por diante* 'and so on,' *assim assim* 'so-so' 'pretty well.'

(c) *Bem* 'well;' before adjectives, 'very' 'quite:'

*bem longe da pátria* 'quite far from the fatherland,'  
*êle é bem rico* 'he is very rich.'

(d) *Bom* (adj.) 'good,' *dormir a bom dormir* 'to sleep soundly,' *chover a bom chover* 'to rain downpours.'

(e) The prepositions *de* and *em*, with nouns, adjectives, or adverbs, enter into the formation of many adverbial expressions (683. o): *em seguro* 'in safety,' *em* (or *na*) *verdade* 'truly.'

(f) *Embora* is now used, in its original meaning *em boa hora*, only in good wishes: *façam-no muito embora* 'let them do it, in God's name.' Otherwise it means simply 'away,' and is used also as a concessive conjunction.

(g) *Mais* 'more' 'rather' (329-330); *e mais* 'besides,' *de mais* 'too much' (after numerals), *demais a mais* 'besides,' *tanto mais* 'all the more,' *a mais* 'too much,' *mais e mais* 'more and more,' *mais ainda* 'still further,' *antes de mais nada* 'before any thing else,' *mais alguma coisa?* 'anything more?' *mais um cigarro?* 'another cigarette?' *eu e mais alguns amigos* 'I and a few friends,' *tem mais um filho?* 'have you another son?' *não há mais* 'there is ('are') no more,' *depois de dez minutos mais* 'after ten minutes more,' *cada vez mais* 'more and more,' *quem mais fala?* 'who speaks next?' *o mais tardar* 'the very latest,' *a mais não poder* 'as much as could be,' *até mais ver* 'till later' 'till we meet again,' *demais* 'too' 'too much' 'besides,' *comeu demais* 'he ate too much,' *por demais* 'negligently' 'indifferently' 'in vain.'

(h) *Menos* 'less,' *ao menos* (or *pelo menos*) 'at least,' *de menos* (or *a menos*) 'less': *fale ao menos* 'at least speak,' *cinco vezes pelo menos* 'five times at least,' *menos mal* 'not so bad' 'pretty good.'

(i) *Mais* and *menos* in correlative expressions:

'more and more' and '. . . er, . . . er' are *mais e*

*mais*; 'less and less' and '. . . er, . . . er' are *menos e menos*; 'the more . . . (or 'the . . . er') the less . . . : 'quanto mais velho se torna, menos e menos sabe' 'the older he grows, the less and less he knows;' *menos . . . menos . . .* 'the less . . . the less. . . .'

For *tanto* and *quanto* with *mais*, see 342. b.

(j) *Muito* (and occasionally in the literary language its reduced form *mui*, 17. g) 'very' 'much' 'a great deal' 'too' 'very far' 'too far.'

*Muito* expresses quantity and quality; *mui* is used only before adjectives and adverbs beginning with a consonant and expresses only degree: *muito bem* 'very well,' *muílas e muí distintas pessoas* 'many and very distinguished persons,' *sofreu muito* 'he suffered a great deal,' *mui numerosos são os exemplos* 'very numerous are the examples,' *de há muito* and *há muito* 'long ago,' *mais que muito* 'extraordinarily' 'in the highest degree.'

With an adjective or noun and the subjunctive in a concessive clause, *muito* is popularly preceded by *por*: *por muito grandes riquezas que possuía* 'whatever great riches he may possess,' (*por muito*) *pobres que sejam, não devem ser desprezados* 'however poor they may be, they ought not to be despised,' *uma menina de quinze anos, quando muito* 'a girl of fifteen years of age, at most.'

*Muito embora seja isso* and *seja assim muito embora* are popular expressions meaning 'well' 'never mind' 'let it be.'

English 'too' may be translated by *muito* or left unexpressed: *venho tarde?* 'am I (too) late?' *é cedo* 'it is (too) early,' *este colarinho está (muito) apertado* 'this collar is too tight.'

(k) *Pouco* 'little;' *pouco demais* 'too little,' *pouco a* (or *e*) *pouco* 'little by little' 'gradually,' *pouco mais ou menos* 'a little more or less' 'about' 'nearly,' *por pouco* 'within an ace,' *tão pouco* 'as little.'

(l) *Por acaso* 'perchance,' *por certo* 'surely' 'certainly,' *por fim* 'finally,' *por miúdo* 'minutely,' *por outra* 'in other words,' *por ventura* 'perchance.'

(m) *Quanto* 'how' 'how much' 'so much' 'so very;' *quanto antes* 'as soon as possible.' For *quão* and *tão*, see 155. b.

(n) *Todo* 'all' 'completely;' *ao todo* 'in all' 'at most,' *de todo* 'quite' 'wholly,' *de todo em todo* 'out and out' 'completely.'

(o) The indefinites *algum tanto* 'tolerably' 'indifferently,' *alguma coisa* 'something,' *nada* 'nothing,' *pouco* 'little,' *tudo* 'all,' *que* (referring to a preceding word), and *que* or *o que* (interrogatively) are used with many verbs and adjectives as adverbial expressions: *dói-me alguma coisa a cabeça* 'my head aches some.'

#### D. Adverbs of Negation

655. (a) The ordinary negative particle is *não*, which precedes and must be repeated before each verb to which it belongs and from which it can be separated only by an atonic pronoun (250. c, 252. b). In compound tenses, it stands before the auxiliary. When *não* negatives some special element of the sentence it precedes it, but in elliptical sentences it follows:

*não sem razão* 'not without reason,' *eu não* 'not I,' *aqui não* 'not here,' *não o quero e não o farei* 'I do not wish it and I will not do it,' *não tenho paciência* 'I have no patience,' *que quasi não falava o português* 'who scarcely spoke Portuguese,' *em outra época que não a actual* 'at another time than the present.'

(b) *Não* is frequently used as an emphatic expletive in exclamatory and interrogative phrases after

*quql, quanto, and que.* In such cases it is usually placed before the verb:

*quantas vezes não lhe tenho dito isso!* 'how many times have I not told you that!' *que doce não era a vida no róscó alvór da existência* 'how sweet life was in the rosy dawn of existence.'

(c) *Não que* is also used in the popular language as an expletive, to introduce an answer in objection to something already said.

*Não . . . mál* 'pretty well:' *estas raparigas não cantam mál* 'these girls sing pretty well;' *ainda não* 'not yet,' *pois não* 'of course' 'willingly,' *pois não?* 'is it not?' 'don't you think so?'

(d) *Não* is sometimes repeated, and is used with other adverbs of negation and with some indefinite pronouns, for the purpose of strengthening the negation (323. d, 335. b, 336. b):

*não conheço ninguém* 'I know no one,' *êle não lê nada* 'he does not read at all,' *não vi jornais nem nada* 'I have seen no newspapers at all,' *não, senhor, isso não* 'no, sir, not at all,' *nem nunca pescámos* 'we have never fished,' *não é nada, não* 'it is nothing at all,' *não posso, não* 'no, I cannot.'

(e) Popularly, but incorrectly, a second *não* is inserted in such expressions as *não pôde deixar de (nãõ) ser* 'it cannot help but be.'

(f) 'No longer' is *já não* or *não . . . mais*; usually *já não* refers to the present or the past and *não . . . mais* to the future:

*ontem meu irmão tinha êste livro; hoje já não o tem* 'yesterday my brother had this book; to-day he has it no longer,' *já não chove* 'it has ceased raining,'

*não chove mais* 'it won't rain any more,' *hoje já não é usado tal advérbio* 'to-day such an adverb is no longer used,' *não mais o farei* 'I shall never do it again.'

(g) *Não já* and *nem já* (pronounced and often written *nanjá* or *nanja*, popularly *nenjá* or *nenja*, *neijá* or *neija*) 'no more' 'never' are used as strong negatives in short sentences without a verb.

(h) 'No,' when accompanying the object of a verb, is rendered not by *nenhum* (335) but by *não*:

*não tenho tempo* 'I have no time,' *ela não tem parentes mais próximos do que eu* 'she has no relatives nearer than I am,' *não teremos uvas este ano* 'we shall have no grapes this year,' *não houve conferência ontem* 'there was no lecture yesterday.'

(i) *Não* is sometimes used before the subjunctive in a dependent *que*-clause where it is not logically required and is generally not to be translated into English. Such is occasionally the case after

(1) Verbs of 'hindering,' 'preventing,' and 'avoiding' (598. a):

*é impossível impedir ao vento que (não) sopra* 'it is impossible to prevent the wind from blowing.'

(2) Verbs of 'fearing,' when the principal clause is affirmative (598. c):

*temeu não lhe roubassem o dinheiro* 'he feared they would steal his money,' *receio que não venha* 'I fear he is not coming,' *receio que não tenha vindo* 'I fear he has not come.' A real negative after such a verb is expressed by *não* with the indicative: *presumo que não virá* 'I think he will not come.'

(3) Verbs of 'doubting' or 'denying,' when the prin-



principal clause is negative, conditional, or interrogative (598, d):

*não duvido que isso (não) seja assim* 'I do not doubt that this is so,' *não nego que (não) pudesse fazê-lo* 'I do not deny that I could do it.'

- (4) After *a menos que* and *a menos de* 'unless' 'except:'  
*eu não irei, a menos que ele não vá* 'I will not go unless he does,' *a menos que o crítico não seja honesto* 'unless the critic is honest.'

(j) *Não* is also used after *desde que* and *há* (or *faz*) . . . *que* 'since:'

*há muito tempo que não o vejo* 'it is a long time since I have seen him,' *faz quinze dias que (não) o encontrei* 'I met him a fortnight ago.'

656. Two negatives do not count as an affirmative in Portuguese. The question to be borne in mind is whether or not the context or the thought of the sentence itself implies a negative. *Não* is not expressed if *nada* (334. b), *nenhum* (335. b), or *ninguém* (336) precedes the verb. When the negation is expressed by two negative words, the verb is placed between them:

*nada vejo, não vejo nada, não vejo coisa alguma*, or *não vejo coisa nenhuma* 'I see nothing' 'I do not see anything,' *sem nenhum perigo, sem perigo nenhum*, or *sem perigo algum* 'without any danger,' *não há dúvida nenhuma* 'there is no doubt.'

657. *Jamais* and *nunca* (which is more emphatic) 'never' have full negative value only when they precede the verb or are used absolutely without a verb, but they require another negative to complete their meaning when they follow the verb:

*não viria jamais* 'he would never come,' *não estudámos nunca* 'we never studied,' *não os vi nunca* 'I never saw them,' *nunca vi ninguém* 'I never saw anybody,' *jamais se viu coisa assim* 'such a thing was never seen,' *eu jamais poderei ser rico* 'I shall never be able to be rich.'

658. *Jamais* is sometimes used in addition to *nunca*:  
*nunca jamais o saberá* 'never shall he know it.'

659. *Jamais*, *nunca*, and *nada* are used affirmatively

(a) In conditional sentences:

*se jamais me vem V. Ex<sup>a</sup> a ver* 'if ever you come to see me.'

(b) In contracted comparative clauses:

*quero-lhe mais que nunca* 'I love her more than ever.'

660. *Nunca* is frequently used as an emphatic negative instead of *não*:

*nunca mais* 'never more.'

661. The noun *nada* 'nothing' (334) is occasionally used as an emphatic adverb of negation:

*vai à cidade?* 'are you going to the city?' *nada* 'no, indeed!' *isso não importa nada* 'that amounts to nothing,' *não é nada raro encontrar . . .* 'it is not at all rare to meet . . .,' *não cheirava nada bem* 'it did not smell at all good,' *a distância não é nada longe* 'the distance is by no means far.'

662. *Nem* 'not' 'not even' is used instead of *não*

(a) Immediately before *sempre*, *tudo*, *tudo*, *ainda*, *mesmo*, *por isso*, or some other emphatic word:

*nem tudo o que luz é ouro* 'all that glitters is not gold,'  
*nem tudo é alegria* 'everything is not joy,' *nem todas as substâncias se podem combinar* 'not all substances can

be combined,' *o pão nem de graça me serve* 'not even for nothing will I have this bread,' *mas eu nem dava fé* 'but I scarcely perceived it,' *nem eu sei* 'I do not know exactly,' *não tinha nem um único amigo* 'he did not have a single friend.'

(b) Emphatically before a verb:

*muitas das crianças nem tinham pão* 'many of the children had not even bread.'

663. *Nem* is sometimes strengthened by the addition of *sequer*:

*nem sequer o vi* 'I have not even seen him.'

664. *Nem um*, *nem uma* 'not one' 'not a single' is a stronger negation than *nenhum*, *nenhuma* (335):

*nem um amigo* 'not one friend,' *nem ao menos* 'not even.'

665. If a finite verb precedes *nem . . . . nem . . . .* 'neither . . . . nor . . . .,' it must be preceded by *não*; if it follows, *não* is not expressed; in the former case the first *nem* is sometimes omitted:

*não tem (nem) ouro nem prata* or *nem ouro nem prata tem* 'he has neither gold nor silver,' *não veio nem escreveu* 'he neither came nor wrote,' *não tem mesa nem cama* 'he has neither bed nor board.'

666. *Nem* may take the place of *ou* or *e* when the first member of the sentence begins with *sem*:

*estive todo o dia sem ler nem escrever* 'I have been all the day without reading or writing.'

667. *Nem que* 'as if' 'even though':

*gasta nem que fôra rico* 'he spends as if he was rich,' *nem que ele me dê uma fortuna* 'even though he gave me a fortune.'

668. *Que nem* is a common elliptical construction for *tanto como* or *mais do que* 'than' 'more than' 'worse than' 'like:'

*bêbe que nem uma esponja* 'he drinks like a sponge,'  
*tímidos que nem pombas* 'as timid as doves,' *êle ali*  
*está calado que nem um rato* 'that one is as still as a

mouse,' *fez-se corado como que nem um pimentão* 'he got as red as a beet (lit. 'pepper').'

669. *Tão pouco* is usually connected with a negative, though not always expressed, and means 'neither:'

*não saio, e êle tão pouco* 'I am not going out, neither is he,' *êle não o quer, nem eu tão pouco* or *êle não o quer, e eu também não* 'he does not wish it, nor do I either.'

670. (a) 'Nothing but,' 'except,' and 'only' are expressed as follows:

<i>não fiz senão dormir</i>	}	
<i>não fiz mais que dormir</i>		
<i>não fiz outra coisa senão</i>		
<i>dormir</i>		
<i>não fiz nenhuma outra coisa</i>		'I did nothing but sleep'
<i>que dormir</i>		
<i>não fiz nenhuma outra coisa</i>		
<i>senão dormir</i>		

*Senão* is synonymous with *mas* or *mas que* 'but' and is not to be confused with *se não* (705. 2):

*não pensa senão em si* 'he thinks only of himself,'  
*não me ficou senão um escudo* 'I only had one escudo left,' *não tenho comido nenhuma outra coisa senão pão e água* 'I have eaten nothing but bread and water,'  
*caso chova, não tem senão que ficar em casa* 'in case it rains, all you have to do is to remain at home,' *ainda que não fosse senão o calor* 'if only for the heat,' *não só* (or *não somente*) *o tempo, senão* (or *mas também, mas*

*até, mas ainda, or senão também) o dinheiro* 'not only the time, but also the money.'

Common but incorrect expressions are:

*não é senão* (for *não é outra coisa senão*) . . . 'it is nothing but . . . , ' *que coisa é senão* (for *que outra coisa é senão*) . . . ? 'what else is it but . . . ?'

(b) When the second clause of a sentence has a different predicate from the predicate in the first clause, it begins with *senão que*, which expresses a strong affirmation, 'rather' 'there is no doubt:'

*não tomou para si essas novas glórias, senão que todas as quis para ela* 'he did not take to himself these new honors, but he sought them all for her.'

(c) 'Only' 'solely' is also expressed by *só* standing next to the emphatic word at the head of the phrase, and by *sòmente* or *apenas*:

*ela só pensa na sua música* or *ela pensa sòmente na sua música* 'all she thinks of is her music,' *só desejo saúde* 'all I wish is health,' *cheguei apenas às três* 'I only arrived at three o'clock.'

#### E. Expressions of Doubt

671. *Acaso, por acaso, às-vezes* (653. u), *pode ser, quiçá* (cf. Italian *chi sa?* lit. 'who knows?') 'perhaps' 'possibly:'

(*com que*) *então ele não vem cá hoje?* 'so then he is not coming here to-day?' *às-vezes pode vir* (or *pode ser que venha*) 'perhaps he is.'

#### F. Adverbs of Affirmation, Denial, Question, and Answer

672. (a) Questions may be asked in the same form as declarative sentences (727):

*V. Ex<sup>a</sup> conhece este homem?* 'do you know this

man?' *já almoçou?* 'have you had breakfast?'  
*chove?* 'is it raining?'

For the order of words in interrogative sentences, see 727-730.

(b) Questions are also asked by *como?* 'how?' *de que sorte?* 'of what kind?' *desde quando?* 'since when?' *de que modo?* 'how?' *onde?* 'where?' *para que? porque?* (706) 'why?' *por onde?* 'whence?' *quando?* 'when?' *quanto?* 'how much?' *não é assim? não é isso? não qcha?* or *pois não é?* 'is it not (so)?'

(c) When a question in the negative expects an answer in the affirmative, the verb of the question is in the future:

*não será belo ir ao campo?* 'would it not be fine to go to the country?'

But the present may be used if the question is in this form:

*é ou não é belo ir ao campo?*

673. (a) 'Yes' is *sim*; 'no' and 'not' is *não*. These words are rarely used alone in replies, but in polite conversation they are accompanied by *senhor*, *senhores*, *minha senhora*, or *minhas senhoras*.

(b) After verbs of 'saying,' 'thinking,' 'hoping,' 'fearing,' and 'answering,' *sim* and *não* are preceded by *que*:

*digo (creio, acho, espero, respondo, receio, etc.) que sim* 'I say ('believe,' 'think,' 'hope,' 'answer,' 'fear,' etc.) so,' *fêz que sim com a cabeça* 'he nodded yes,' *estou que tem razão* 'I think you are right.'

(c) *Sim* is also used as an intensive or corrective particle:

*sim, não o creio* 'indeed, I do not believe it,' *isso sim que é bom* 'that indeed is good,' *a senhora não conheço mas sim o cavalheiro* 'the lady I do not know, but I do know the gentleman,' *sei que não vindes para julgar, mas sim para perdoar* 'I know Thou art come not to judge but to pardon,' *isto não resulta directamente do fogo e sim do fumo* 'that does not result directly from the fire but rather from the smoke,' *isto não é produzido pela chuva, e sim pelo vento* 'that is not produced by the rain but by the wind.'

(d) Instead of using *sim* or *não* in the answer, the verb (or only the auxiliary if the verb is in a compound tense) is frequently repeated, as in Irish- and Scotch-English, in the tense, person, and number required by the sense, and the verb's complement is omitted:

*está pronto?* 'are you ready?' *estou* 'yes,' *fala português?* 'do you speak Portuguese?' *falo* 'I do,' *achou a bolsa?* 'have you found your purse?' *achei* 'I have,' *dormiu bem?* 'did you sleep well?' *não dormi* 'no,' *há vinho?* 'is there wine?' *não há* 'no.'

Sometimes both the adverb and the verb are used:

*falo, sim* (or *sim, falo*), *senhor*.

(e) If the question contains *já* 'already' or *ainda* 'still' 'yet,' the adverb is usually repeated in the answer:

*já jantou?* 'have you eaten already?' *já, sim, senhor* 'yes,' *ainda não jantou?* 'have you not eaten yet?' *ainda não, senhor* 'no,' *ainda há maçãs?* 'are there any more apples?' *ainda há* or *ainda sim* 'yes.'

(f) It is still more emphatic to omit the verb:

*o senhor vai lá?* 'are you going there?' *eu não* 'not I,' which is stronger than *eu não vou* or *não vou*.

(g) To express indifference, *melhor* or *deixá-lo* is used in answer to a question:

*êle ralhou com o senhór?* 'did he scold you?' *melhor* or *deixá-lo* (*ralhar*) 'who cares?' or 'let him scold.'

(h) Very common adverbs and phrases of affirmation are the following, the meaning being determined largely by the intonation (716. d):

*cêrtamente, cêrto, ao cêrto, de-cêrto, por cêrto, com efeito, de-facto, de feito, de-veras, pois sim, pois não, realmente* 'certainly' 'to be sure' 'really' 'indeed' 'truly' 'just so' 'of course'; *assim é, é isso mesmo, cláro que sim, exactamente, exqcto, sem dúvida, sem falta, com certeza* 'precisely' 'exactly'; *é possível que sim* 'possibly'; *está feito* 'rather' 'indeed' (to express mild surprise or to limit the application of a statement); *mas sim* 'rather'; *está bom, está bem* 'very well'; *isso* 'yes,' *pra essa!* 'the idea!' *então* 'of course' (correcting a statement or question); *em verdqde, na verdqde* 'that is true.' *É verdqde* and *a propósito* 'it just occurs to me' are often used to open a conversation.

(i) To a question like *o senhór foi lá?* 'were you there?' the answer in the popular speech is sometimes *pudêra não ir* 'to be sure' 'of course;' negatively, *o senhór não foi lá?* 'you were not there?' *pudêra ir* 'no, indeed' (*pudêra*, first person singular of the pluperfect of *poder* 'to be able.')

(j) To deny a statement emphatically, *de nenhum modo, de modo algum* 'not at all,' *pelo contrário* 'on the contrary,' *diga-lhe que sim e mais que também* 'tell him ('you may say') so and more, too,' and *isso agora também é demais* 'that's going too far,' are often heard.

(k) Instead of answering with a simple adverb of negation, it is common, in the popular language, to employ certain more or less emphatic exclamatory formulas. For



example, in answer to the question *isto será verdade?* 'can that be true?' the following locutions are used:

*eu sei lá* (elliptical for *eu sei-te lá dizer*), *nanja, agora* (é), *qual verdade*, *qual verdade nem meia verdade*, *qual verdade nem qual carapuça* (lit. 'fur-cap'),

all of them having the force of English 'decidedly not' 'not at all' 'nonsense' 'why, indeed' 'the idea!'

## XIX. THE PREPOSITION

674. (a) The commonest of the simple prepositions are

<i>a</i> 'to'	<i>em</i> 'in'
<i>ante</i> 'before'	<i>entre</i> 'between'
<i>após</i> 'after'	<i>para</i> 'to'
<i>cêrca</i> 'about'	<i>por</i> 'by'
<i>com</i> 'with'	<i>sob</i> 'under'
<i>contra</i> 'against'	<i>sôbre</i> 'over'
<i>de</i> 'of'	<i>trás</i> 'behind'
<i>desde</i> 'from'	

of which *a* 'to' and *de* 'of' occur most often.

(b) Some adjectives and adverbs are also used as prepositions:

*conforme* and *consoante* 'according to,' *durante* 'during,' *excepto* 'except,' *mediante* 'by means of,' *não obstante* 'notwithstanding,' *salvo* 'save,' *segundo* 'according to.'

When used as prepositions, these words naturally should not agree with the noun:

*excepto* (not *exceptos*) *os homens* 'except the men,'  
*segundo* (not *segunda*) *esta teoria* 'according to this theory' (691).

(c) There are numerous compound prepositions and prepositional phrases composed of a combination of words, most frequently of an adverb and a preposition (usually *de*), of a preposition and an adjective, or of two prepositions together, such as:

*abaixo de*, *debaixo de* 'below' 'under,' (*a*) *cêrca de* 'con-

cerning,' (a) *fôra de* 'out of,' *além de* 'beyond,' *antes de* 'before' (of time), *ao longo de* 'along,' *a par de* 'on a par with,' *aquém de* 'on this side of,' *à rôda de* 'around,' *atrás de*, *trás de*, *de trás de* 'behind,' *através de* 'through,' *dentro de* 'within' (of time and place), *depois de* 'after,' *de sobre* 'from on,' *em cima de*, *acima de* 'on' 'above,' *de cima de* 'from off,' *em vez de* 'in place of,' *junto a*, *junto de* 'near,' etc.

675. (a) As a rule, the preposition is repeated before the several nouns it governs only when clearness or emphasis requires it. But it is ordinarily repeated before monosyllabic personal and reflexive pronouns. After *e* and other coördinating conjunctions it may be omitted:

*da Itália e (da) França* 'of Italy and (of) France,'  
*para a corôa e (para) o scetô* 'for the crown and  
 (for) the sceptre,' *esta universidade tem cursos de*  
*sciências e (de) mecânica* 'this university has courses  
 in science and mechanics,' *falo a êle e não ao irmão*  
*dêle* 'I speak to him and not to his brother.'

(b) In the case of compound prepositions or prepositional phrases, only the last element is repeated:

*a respeito de mim e dêle* 'with respect to me and to him.'

A preposition (and especially *em*) may be omitted before relative *que* after expressions of time or place:

*ao tempo (em) que êle expirou* 'at the time he expired.'

676. The following list contains the only prepositions and prepositional phrases calling for remark. Many of them are also adverbs (651, 652). For prepositions combined with the definite article, see 63.

677. The preposition *a* has the widest range of application. Its fundamental meanings are 'to' of motion and 'at' of rest. It is used

(a) Before the indirect object:

*dar uma coisa a alguém* 'to give something to somebody,'

and before the indirect object of reference:

*merecer alguma coisa a alguém* 'to deserve something at somebody's hands,' *ouvir alguma coisa a alguém* 'to hear something from somebody,' *tomar o pulso ao doente* 'to take the patient's pulse.'

(b) Before the direct object, whether a noun or personal pronoun, when it is the name of a person or personified thing (554):

*matou a este homem* 'he killed this man,' *nem êle entende a nós nem nós a êle* (*Os Lusíadas*, V. 28) 'he does not understand us nor do we him.'

(c) To indicate place where or near which:

*estar à porta* 'to be at the door,' *situado à beira-mar* 'situated at the seaside,' *sentar-se à mesa* 'to sit at the table,' *ao norte* 'in the north,' *estar a bordo* 'to be aboard,' *quando eu vim ao mundo* 'when I came into the world,' *encostar-se à parede* 'to lean against the wall,' *chegou a Sintra* 'he arrived at Sintra,' *mora à rua Áurea* 'he lives near Aurea Street,' in a few expressions like *está escrito ao (or no) capítulo 17 dos Números* 'it is written in the seventeenth chapter of (the Book of) Numbers.' *Habitar ao Rossio* and *morar ao Chiado* 'to

live near the Rossio' or 'in Chiado' (sections of Lisbon) are less specific than *no Rossio*, *no Chiado*.

(d) To indicate a measure of distance or time, or the price at which a thing is bought or sold (703):

*a doze milhas daqui* 'twelve miles from here,' *vender a pêso* 'to sell by weight,' *a retalho* 'at retail,' *a quási 1000 metros de altitude* 'at an altitude of about 1000 meters,' *juro a cinco por cento* 'interest at 5%,', *ao juro de cinco por cento* 'at five per cent interest,' *o vinho estava a dois escudos o litro* 'the wine was two escudos a liter,' *daqui a um ano* 'a year hence,' *daqui a tantos anos* 'in so many years,' *aos centos* 'by hundreds,' *a mais não poder* 'to the utmost.'

(e) To denote end or purpose (687. e):

*trabalhar a bem do país* 'to work for the good of the country,' *ir à pesca* 'to go fishing,' *partir a negócios importantes* 'to leave on important business,' *amor ao* (rarely *do*) *trabalho* 'love for work.'

(f) To denote material, means, instrument, or cause:

*bordar a ouro* 'to embroider with gold,' *perfumada a violeta* 'scented with violet,' *morrer à fome* 'to die of hunger,' *matar a punhal* 'to kill with a dagger,' *pintados a vermelho* 'painted red,' *ir à vela* 'to carry all sail' 'to be lost,' *pescar à linha* 'to fish with a line,' *passou o riocho a nado* 'he crossed the stream by swimming,' *a ferro e fogo* 'with fire and sword.'

(g) To denote time when a thing takes place:

*morreu a dezasseis de abril* 'he died on the sixteenth

of April,' *a que horas?* 'at what time?' *às cinco* 'at five o'clock,' *aos domingos* 'on Sundays.'

(h) To form certain adverbial phrases expressing manner (654. a):

*obra feita aos pedaços* 'piece-work,' *a pé* 'on foot,' *a cavalo* 'on horseback;' but *ir no* (or *de*) *combóio* 'to go by train,' *ir de barco* 'to go by boat,' *ir de* (or *em*) *carruagem* 'to go by carriage,' *ir de burro* 'to ride an ass,' *vestir-se à portuguesa* 'to dress in the Portuguese fashion,' *à antiga* 'in the old manner,' *ir a galope* 'to go at a gallop,' *braco a braco* 'hand in hand,' *ao certo* 'certainly,' *à esquerda* 'to the left,' *aos braços* 'in armfuls.'

(i) To express distribution or succession (cf. 689. k):

*dois a dois* or *a dois e dois* 'two by two,' *dia a dia* 'day by day,' *pouco a pouco* or *a pouco e pouco* 'little by little,' *volume a volume* 'volume by volume.'

(j) With an infinitive phrase to express an hypothesis (637).

(k) After a large number of adjectives, many of which correspond to Latin adjectives which take the dative or the preposition *ad*. Some of them may also take *para*. The commonest are:

<i>acessível</i> 'accessible'	<i>favorável</i> 'favorable'
<i>acomodado</i> 'suited'	<i>fiel</i> 'faithful'
<i>acostumado</i> 'used'	<i>habituado</i> 'accustomed'
<i>adaptado</i> 'adapted'	<i>hostil</i> 'hostile'
<i>afeito</i> 'accustomed'	<i>inclinado</i> 'inclined'
<i>agradável</i> 'pleasing'	<i>insensível</i> 'insensible'
<i>alheio</i> 'foreign'	<i>necessário</i> 'necessary'

<i>apropriado</i> 'suited'	<i>nocivo</i> 'harmful'
<i>atento</i> 'attentive'	<i>obediente</i> 'obedient'
<i>caro</i> 'dear'	<i>oposto</i> 'opposed'
<i>conforme</i> 'conformably'	<i>prejudicial</i> 'harmful'
<i>contrário</i> 'contrary'	<i>propenso</i> 'prone'
<i>correspondente</i> 'corresponding'	<i>prestes</i> 'ready'
<i>desatento</i> 'inattentive'	<i>pronto</i> 'ready'
<i>desfavorável</i> 'unfavorable'	<i>proporcionando</i> 'fitted'
<i>disposto</i> 'disposed'	<i>rebelde</i> 'adverse'
<i>dócil</i> 'obedient'	<i>semelhante</i> 'similar'
<i>equivalente</i> 'equivalent'	<i>sensível</i> 'sensible'
<i>estranho</i> 'strange'	<i>sujeito</i> 'subject'
	<i>surdo</i> 'deaf'
	<i>útil</i> 'useful'
<i>bom para</i> (not <i>a</i> ) <i>comer</i> 'good to eat,' but <i>inclinado ao</i> (not <i>para</i> ) <i>jôgo</i> 'inclined to gambling.'	

(l) After some verbs of motion, to denote place to or towards which, with the accessory idea of returning (687. a):

*ir à praça* 'to go to the square (or 'market'),' *vou à Itália* 'I am going to Italy' (but will come back), *atirei a carta ao chão* 'I threw the letter on the ground' (but may pick it up); cf. *atirei a carta para o chão* 'I threw the letter on the ground' (and am going to let it stay there).

(m) Depending on certain verbs (556, 561), before certain infinitives (572), and in the combination *ao* with the personal infinitive (637).

678. *Ante* 'before' 'in the presence of,' as the equivalent of *diante de*, is found in only a few expressions: *apresentou-*

*se ante mim* 'he presented himself before me,' *pé ante pé* 'on tiptoe,' *ante o juiz* 'before the judge;' and in compound words: *antemanhã* 'before morning,' *anteontem* 'before yesterday.'

679. *Após* 'after' (of time or place) is the equivalent of *depois de*; variants are *depós*, *empós*, and *pós*:

*corri após o assassino* 'I ran after the assassin,' *após quatro anos de luta fez-se a paz* 'after four years of conflict, peace was made,' *um após outro* 'one after another.'

680. *Até* 'as far as' (of time or place) in modern times is generally, though less correctly (except before an infinitive), followed by *a*:

*fui até (a) o Porto* 'I went as far as Oporto,' *até (a) o fim do mês* 'till the end of the month,' *saber contar até dez* 'to be able to count up to ten,' *correr até a* (or *até à*, or simply *à*) *estação* 'to run to the station,' *até amanhã* 'till to-morrow,' *acompanhei-o até a* (or *até à*, or simply *à*) *carruagem* 'I accompanied him to the carriage,' *até à vista* 'till we meet again.'

681. *Através* 'across' is always followed by *de*:

*através dos campos* 'across the fields,' *através da estrada* 'across the street,' *através dos séculos* 'through the centuries.'

682. The preposition *com* is used

(a) In general to denote accompaniment:

*está com o filho* 'he is with his son,' *café com leite* 'coffee with milk,' *pão com manteiga* 'bread and butter,' *êle levanta-se com os galos* 'he rises at cock-crow,' *um saco com batatas* 'a sack with potatoes;' cf. *um saco de batatas* 'a sack(ful) of potatoes.'



- (b) To denote means, price, instrument, or material (cf. 683. n):

*êle gq̃nha dinheiro com seus romances* 'he makes money with his novels,' *bater com um p̃qu* 'to hit with a stick,' *esta c̃asa é feita com (or de) madeira e p̃edra* 'this house is made of wood and stone,' *pagou o livro com moẽda de pr̃ata* 'he paid for the book in silver coin.'

- (c) To denote an attendant circumstance, such as manner, motive, cause, or time:

*gritar com d̃ores* 'to cry with pain,' *ir com pr̃essa* 'to go in haste,' *trabalhar com cuidado* 'to work with care,' *tiritar com (or de) frio* 'to shiver with cold,' *não saio com êste tempo* 'I am not going out in this weather,' *proceder com lealdade* 'to act loyally,' *a gente ficou encantada com a maneira de êle falar* 'the people were fascinated by his manner of speech,' *olhar com bons olhos* 'to look with favor.'

- (d) Occasionally in the sense of *contra*:

*lutar com as ondas* 'to struggle against the waves.'

- (e) With *para* (687. g).

- (f) After some adjectives, such as *benévolo*, *bom*, *contente*, *conforme*, *indulgente*, *parecido*, sometimes as the equivalent of *para*:

*contente com pouco* 'satisfied with little,' *conformes uns com os outros* 'one corresponding to another,' *muito parecido com (less often a) seu pai* 'closely resembling his father,' *benévolo com os pobres* 'benevolent to the poor,' *indulgente com as crianças* 'indulgent to the children.'

(g) As the equivalent of *a-pesar-de, não obstante*, to express a concession:

*com ser rico* 'although rich.'

(h) Depending on certain verbs (562).

683. The most important uses of the preposition *de* are:

(a) To denote origin, place whence, or the beginning of a movement:

*veio do Rio de Janeiro* 'he came from Rio Janeiro,'  
*venho de casa* 'I come from home,' *este vinho é de Braga* 'this wine is from Braga.'

(b) To denote place where, in a few expressions:

*pôr-se da parte* (or *do lado* or *da banda*) *dos revolucionários* 'to put oneself on the side of the revolutionaries.'

(c) To denote separation or participation:

*tirar os filhos da* (or *à*) *mãe* 'to take the children away from their mother,' *Pedro é da armada* 'Peter is in the navy.'

(d) To denote ownership or possession:

*a casa do senhor* 'your house,' *a casa é de meu tio* 'the house belongs to my uncle.'

(e) To denote quality or the material of which a thing is made:

*um copo de vidro* 'a glass cup,' *um relógio de ouro* 'a gold watch,' *esta caixa é (feita) de madeira* 'this box is ('made of') wood.'

In the language of the trade, through French influence, it is a common error to use *em* instead:

*um vestido em sêda preta* 'a black silk dress,' *um chapéu em palha encarnada* 'a red straw hat.'

(f) In partitive expressions after words which designate quantity, weight, measure, or size:

(1) When the idea is indefinite, both the word denoting the part and the preposition *de* are ordinarily omitted:

*não há água* 'there is no water,' *comi bom pão* 'I ate some good bread,' *dê-me pão* 'give me (some) bread.'

(2) But, when the idea is definite, *de* is expressed:

*dê-me disso* 'give me some of that,' *venda-me dêsse queijo* 'sell me some of that cheese,' *dessa água não beberei* 'I will not drink any of this water,' *quero dessas* 'I want some of these.'

Except, elliptically, in prescriptions, bills, accounts, etc.:

*água destilada, cem gramas* 'distilled water, 100 gr.'

(3) *De* is expressed also after some indefinite pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs used substantively, such as *algo* and *alguma coisa*, the adjective agreeing in gender and number with the following noun (339. b):

*um pouco de vinho* 'a little wine,' *uma pouca de água* 'a little water,' *uns poucos de homens* 'a few men,' *um tanto de orgulho* 'so much pride,' *muitas das casas* 'many of the houses,' *está bom de leite o seu café?* 'is there enough milk in your coffee?'

(4) With the comparative (154. e).

(5) To express 'of it,' French *en*, Italian *ne*, the following constructions are employed:

*tem vinho?* 'have you wine?' *tenho, tenho um pouco* (*dêle*), or *tenho vinho* 'I have (some),' *tem chapêus de Panamá?* 'have you Panama hats?' *dêsses não tenho* 'no, I have not;' cf. *não sei essas coisas* 'I do not know those things' and *não sei dessas coisas* 'I do not know any of those things,' *comerás isto* 'you shall eat this' and *comerás disto* 'you shall eat some of this.'

(g) To denote both the objective and the subjective genitive:

*o amor de Deus* 'the love of God (for man),' *perdõe pelo amor de Deus* 'pardon for the love of God,' *amor da pátria* 'love of country,' *amor de mãe* 'a mother's love,' *o temor de Deus* 'the fear of God.'

To avoid confusion, with nouns expressing a feeling or sentiment, other prepositions may be used:

*amor aos filhos* 'love for his children,' *amor ao* (or *pelo*) *trabalho* 'love for work.'

(h) Before an attribute, to characterize or define more clearly the noun to which it is joined:

*a cidade de Coimbra* 'the city of Coimbra,' *o mês de setembro* 'the month of September,' *o ano de 1926* 'the year 1926,' *um navio de três masts* 'a three-masted ship,' *a ilha de Cuba*, 'the island of Cuba,' *pessoa de probidade* 'a person of integrity,' *tiro de espingarda* 'gunshot,' *a menina dos olhos negros* 'the girl with the black eyes,' *um jovem de dezasseis anos* 'a youth nineteen years of age,' *um homem*

*de dois metros de altura* 'a man two meters tall,'  
*o homem das lunetas* 'the man with the glasses,'  
*um rei de nome (de) Jaime* 'a king by the name of  
 James,' *casa de jantar* 'restaurant,' *no caminho do  
 Pôrto* 'on the road to Oporto.'

But, by a sort of apposition, *de* is sometimes suppressed:

*o nome (de) amigo* 'the name (of) friend,' *o rio Tejo*  
 'the River Tagus;' and frequently, though less  
 correctly, before names of streets, squares, institu-  
 tions, etc., that contain a proper name: *Rua das  
 Flores*, *Avenida da Liberdade*, *Rua Infante D.  
 Henrique*, *Avenida D. Amélia*, *Prça (de) D.  
 Pedro*, *Hotel (de) Paris*, *Drogaria Moreira*.

- (i) After certain nouns, to denote use or purpose:

*potte de (or da) água* 'water-pot,' *quarto de dormir*  
 'bedroom,' *papel de escrever* 'writing paper.'

It is sometimes ambiguous whether, for example, *um copo de vinho* means 'a glass of wine' or 'a wine-glass,' *chávena de chá* 'a cup of tea' or 'a tea-cup;' the former meaning is correctly expressed by *um copo (or cálice) de vinho*; the latter meaning may be clearly expressed by *um copo para vinho* (687. e).

(j) After certain adjectives and participles, speaking of moral or physical qualities or conditions, and after adjectives signifying fullness or richness, origin, dependance, distance, knowledge, power, desire, patience, and their opposites, such as

*acusado* 'accused'

*difícil* 'difficult'

*avaro* 'greedy'

*doente* 'ill'

<i>ávido</i> 'eager'	<i>doido</i> 'crazy'
<i>brando</i> 'soft'	<i>exqusto</i> 'exhausted'
<i>capaz</i> 'capable'	<i>fácil</i> 'easy'
<i>contente</i> 'satisfied'	<i>fraco</i> 'weak'
<i>cubiçoso</i> 'greedy'	<i>impaciente</i> 'impatient'
<i>dependente</i> 'dependent'	<i>orgulhoso</i> 'proud'
<i>diferente</i> 'different'	<i>surdo</i> 'deaf'

Some of these adjectives may be followed by *em* (685. e):

*limpo de mãos* 'with clean hands' 'honest,' *é muito curioso de música* 'he is much interested in music,' *pobre de dinheiro* 'poor as regards money,' *cego de um olho* 'blind in one eye,' *duro de ouvido* 'hard of hearing,' *curto de vista* 'short-sighted,' *digno de estima* 'worthy of esteem,' *português de nascimento* 'Portuguese by birth,' *rico de terrenos* 'rich in lands,' *o rio está cheio de peixe* 'the river is full of fish,' *ruivo de cabelos* 'with red hair,' *alto de corpo* 'tall in body,' *leve de cabeça* 'light-headed,' *apaixonado de (or por) alguém* 'passionately fond of somebody.'

(k) In familiar speech the preposition *de*, often combined with the proper form of the definite article, is frequently used to form a kind of partitive genitive, to denote some quality of the person referred to. It stands before one noun or pronoun and after another noun or adjective which itself is generally preceded by the definite article (303. f):

*o pobre do homem* 'the poor man,' *a pobre da mãe* 'the poor mother,' *a boa da velha* 'the good old woman,' *o ladrão do criado* 'the thieving servant,' *o traquinas do*

*rapaz* 'the troublesome boy,' *coitadinha da Joaquina* 'poor little Johanna.'

Also after *isto*, *isso*, *aquilo*, and interjections:

*isto de consciência!* 'there's a conscience!' *ai de mim!* 'alas for me!' *felizes dêles!* 'happy they!'

(l) To denote time when, in certain adverbial phrases and distributively:

*de inverno* 'in winter,' *de dia e de noite* 'by day and by night,' *de hora a hora* 'every hour,' *o carro vai de dez em dez minutos* 'the coach leaves every ten minutes,' *de quatro em quatro anos* 'every four years,' *cheguei de tarde* 'I arrived in the evening,' *de dia para dia* 'day by day,' *de vez em quando* (less correctly *de quando em vez*) 'from time to time,' as a synonym of *dês*, *desde: já de há muito* 'long ago,' and frequently, though incorrectly, in such expressions, with *ser* or a similar verb, as *quando (foi) da invasão francesa* 'at the time of the French invasion,' *estive em Lisboa quando do congresso científico* 'I was in Lisbon at the time of the scientific congress.'

(m) With verbs and adjectives to denote cause:

*cego de raiva* 'blind with rage,' *louco de dor* 'mad with pain,' *caiu o soldado de cansado* 'the soldier fell with fatigue,' *movido de piedade* 'moved with pity,' *morrer de fome* 'to die of hunger,' *chorar de alegria* 'to weep with joy,' *de surdo que era* 'because he was deaf,' *já aborrece de conhecido* 'it bores because it is so well known.'

(n) To denote manner, means, or instrument, with

certain transitive verbs, such as *adornar* 'to adorn,' *cercar* 'to inclose,' *cobrir* 'to cover,' *encher* 'to fill,' *guarnecer* 'to furnish,' and *rodear* 'to shut in.' In such cases *de* is ordinarily used when many objects are required to perform the action, *com* when one, or two or more regarded as one, is sufficient:

*cobrir o leito de flores* 'to cover the bed with flowers,'  
*cobrir o rosto com as mãos* 'to cover his face with his hands,' *cobrir a mesa com um pano* 'to cover the table with a cloth,' *coberta de neve* 'covered with snow,' *coroar a rainha de flores e com um diadema de ouro* 'to crown the queen with flowers and with a diadem of gold,' *rodear o campo de um baluarte* 'to enclose the field with a wall,' *crivado de setas* 'rid-dled with arrows,' *forrado de pele* 'lined with fur,' *ornado de flores* 'decorated with flowers,' *pintado de verde* 'painted green,' *fabricar a casa de tijolos* 'to build the house of brick,' *picar de esporas* 'to prick with spurs,' *lavores gastos do tempo* 'embroideries worn by time.'

(o) In many adverbial phrases of manner, and frequently with the verbs *estar*, *ir*, *pôr*, *vestir*, *vir*, and *voltar*, such as:

*de dentro* 'from within,' *de-prêssa* 'quickly,' *de repente* 'suddenly,' *de novo* 'anew,' *de todo* 'entirely,' *de bom grado* and *de boa mente* 'willingly,' *desta maneira* 'in this manner,' *de mau grado* 'unwillingly,' *de certo* 'certainly,' *de improviso* 'unexpectedly,' *de ordinário* 'ordinarily,' *de cima* 'from above,' *de continuo* 'continually,' *de cor* 'by heart,' *debalde* 'in



vain,' *devagar* 'slowly,' *de propósito* 'purposely,' *de-veras* 'earnestly,' *estar de* (or *em*) *pé* 'to stand up,' *andar* (or *estar*) *de chinélas* 'to go in one's slippers,' *põe-se de joelhos* 'he falls on his knees,' *estar de cama* 'to be ill' (lit. 'abed'), *estar* (or *andar*) *de luto* 'to be in mourning,' *estar de boa saúde* 'to be in good health,' *de bengala numa das mãos* 'with a cane in one hand,' *ir de corrida* 'to go in a hurry,' *andar de carro* 'to ride in a carriage,' *ir de* (or *em*) *carruagem* 'to go by carriage,' *viajar de comboio e de barco* 'to travel by train and by boat,' *de mãos dadas* 'holding hands,' *de chapéu* 'with hat on,' *de sobrecasaca de domingo* 'in Sunday frock-coat,' *de braços cruzados* 'with folded arms,' *de braço dado* 'arm in arm.'

(p) *Vestir* 'to dress' is construed with *de*, but sometimes (more rarely) with *em*:

*vestida de setim* 'dressed in satin,' *vestido de azul* 'dressed in blue,' *vestidos de anjos* 'dressed like angels,' *revestido em* (or *de*) *pontifical* 'robed in pontificals.'

(q) Occasionally to denote the agent with the past participle of verbs, especially such as express feelings or manifestations of feelings, for example, *aceito* 'accepted' 'esteemed,' *amado* 'loved,' *bemquisto* 'well-beloved,' *malquisto* 'hated,' *querido* 'beloved.' In this construction *por* is more usual (689. i):

*aborrecido de todos* 'hated by all,' *povoado de índios* 'inhabited by Indians,' *foi de todos recebido alegremente* 'he was joyfully received by all,' *ser estimado e amado de todos* 'to be esteemed and loved by all,' *bemdito de Deus* 'blessed by God.'

(r) Occasionally, like *como* (155. a), to denote likeness:  
*branco de neve* 'white as snow,' *frio de pedra* 'cold as stone.'

(s) Depending on certain verbs (563, 576) and adjectives (583).

(t) Prepositional phrases containing *de* generally require *de* also after them. Compare *ante Deus* and *diante de Deus* 'before God,' *após a chuva* and *depois da chuva* 'after the rain,' *trás o bando* and *detrás do bando* 'behind the party.'

684. *Dentro* 'within,' of time or place, is followed by *de* or by *em*:

*dentro de* (or *em*) *dez meses* 'within ten months,' *dentro em pouco* 'within a short time,' *dentro da* (or *na*) *sala* 'within the room.'

685. (a) The preposition *em* 'in' 'on' 'at' 'to' 'by,' of time or place (654. e):

*em casa* 'at home,' *na casa* 'in the house,' *montado num belo cavalo* 'mounted on a fine horse,' also *montado a cavalo* 'on horseback,' *no século décimo nono* 'in the nineteenth century,' *nasceu em 1816* 'he was born in 1816,' *estive no domingo em casa de Sr. Ferreira* 'I was in Mr. Ferreira's house on Sunday,' *no terceiro dia* 'on the third day,' *em duas horas* 'within two hours,' *que horas são no seu relógio?* 'what time is it by your watch?' *vai nas sete* 'it is nearly seven,' *vai em três anos* 'it is going on three years,' *braços em cruz* 'with folded arms,' *gente em círculo* 'people in a circle,' *viver em paz* 'to live in peace,' *preguntou em lágrimas* 'he asked in tears,' *tendo sido diligente em rapaz* 'having been industrious when a boy.'

(b) But *em* is frequently omitted in expressions of time (693. 6).

(c) *Em* is used to indicate a state or condition of natural products or manufacture:

*ouro em pó* 'gold-dust,' *ferro em chapas* 'sheet-iron,'  
*uma árvore em flor* 'a tree in flower.'

(d) Similarly to denote division:

*cortado em quartos* 'cut in quarters,' *um livro dividido em capítulos* 'a book divided into chapters,' *uma obra em dois tomos* 'a work in two volumes,' *o vaso fêz-se em pedaços* 'the vase was broken in pieces.'

(e) After adjectives, such as *abundante* 'abundant,' *contente* 'satisfied,' *fértil* 'fertile,' *largo* 'generous,' *poderoso* 'powerful,' *tenaz* 'tenacious,' to designate in what respect one thing is compared to another. Some of these adjectives may also be followed by *de*, as in older Portuguese (683. j):

*sóbrio no comer* 'temperate in eating,' *fértil em cereais* 'fertile in cereals,' *entendido em pintura* 'skillful in painting.'

(f) *Em* with the gerund (538. e).

(g) In Brazil *em* is sometimes used instead of *a*:

*cheguei na* (= *à*) *cidade* 'I reached the town,' *fui em* (= *a*) *Santos* 'I went to Santos.'

(h) Depending on certain verbs (564).

(i) *Em* instead of *de* (683. e).

(j) Prepositional phrases beginning with *em* require the preposition *de* after them:

*em* (or *por*) *cima de* 'on top of,' *em* (or *à*) *frente de* 'facing,' *em vez de* 'instead of,' but *emquanto* (better *quanto*) *a* 'as for.'

686. The preposition *entre* 'between' frequently takes the subject case of the personal pronoun (234. d).

687. The preposition *para* is used

(a) After verbs of motion to denote movement to or towards which. Whereas *a* (677.1) expresses hardly more than mere movement or a temporary visit, *para* implies more definite destination or direction and also contains the accessory idea of delay or continuance.

(b) With certain verbs, such as *caminhar* 'to walk,' *continuar* 'to continue,' *fugir* 'to flee,' *navegar* 'to sail' (except with points of the compass), *partir* 'to leave,' *prosseguir* 'to continue,' *seguir* 'to follow,' and verbs expressing direction, only *para* may be generally used, but with most other verbs, such as *ir* 'to go' and *vir* 'to come,' either *a* or *para*.

(c) *A* or *para* must be repeated in the answer according as either of them is contained in the question:

*aonde* (or *para onde*) *vai*? 'where are you going?'  
*vou a* (or *para*) *Coimbra* 'I am going to Coimbra,'  
*vou ficar para jantar* 'I am going to remain for dinner,'  
*vou hoje a Londres onde tenho negócios, e depois amanhã partirei para Pernambuco onde resido* 'to-day I am going to London where I have business, and the day after to-morrow I shall leave for Pernambuco where I live,'  
*ir para a cama* 'to go to bed,' *ir à cama* 'to take to the bed,'  
*vou para casa* 'I am going home,' *êle mandou-me para* (or *a*) *um médico* 'he sent me to a doctor,' *dei um passo para trás* 'I took a step backwards,' *o castelo ficava virado para o mar* 'the castle faced the sea,' *a janela deita para o rio* 'the window overlooks the river,'  
*olhe para cá* 'look here,' *que êle já vai indo para velho* 'for he is now growing old,' *quem vai ao cemitério volta depois; quem vai para o cemitério não volta.*

(d) In certain phrases with the verb *estar*, *para* means simply 'place where,' though motion is implied:

*está para fora* 'he is (or 'has gone') away,' *está para casa do pai* 'he is in (or 'has gone to') his father's house,' *que está o senhor para aí?* 'why are you there?'

(e) To denote the purpose, use, person, thing, or time for which a person or thing is suited (cf. 683. i):

*água para beber* 'drinking-water,' *êste peixe é bom para comer* 'this fish is good to eat,' *Carlos é homem para fazer isso* 'Charles is the man to do that,' *êle vem chamar a minha atenção para um artigo* 'he calls my attention to an article,' *não tem gosto para o estudo* 'he has no taste for study' (but *o seu gosto pelo estudo de química* 'his liking for the study of chemistry'), *a tendência para a* (or *à*) *embriaguez* 'the tendency to drunkenness,' *estudava para advogado* 'he studied to be a lawyer,' *tal empresa não é para o geral* 'such an undertaking is not for everybody,' *reserve-me isso para amanhã* 'keep that for me until to-morrow,' *guarde-me o jantar para quando eu vier* 'keep dinner for me till I come,' *vou lá para a semana* 'I am going there for the week,' *para outra vez não faça isso* 'another time do not do that,' *de ano para ano* 'from year to year,' *livros para estudo* 'study-books,' *vestidos para senhoras* 'dresses for ladies,' *a conferência fica transferida para amanhã* 'the lecture is postponed till to-morrow,' *hábil para as artes* 'skilful in the arts,' *está aqui uma carta para V. Ex.* 'there is a

letter here for you,' *isso é muito interessante para mim* 'that is very interesting to me.'

(f) Also in a restrictive sense, with the force of *quanto a*:

*era um sábio para o seu tempo* 'he was a learned man for his time,' *trabalho para quatro horas* 'a four hours' task,' *jornada para uma semana* 'a week's journey,' *para um estrangeiro fala razoavelmente português* 'for a foreigner he speaks Portuguese rather well.'

(g) After some nouns and adjectives which express a disposition of mind, the prepositional compound *para com* may be used instead of *para* alone:

*V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> sempre tem sido muito bom para comigo* 'you have always been very good to me,' *meu pai é justo e indulgente para com todos e tolerante para com todas as opiniões* 'my father is just and indulgent towards all and tolerant of all opinions,' *os meus deveres para com o próximo* 'my duties to my neighbor,' *V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> mostra animosidade para com ele* 'you show animosity towards him,' *caridoso para com os pobres* 'charitable towards the poor,' *por deferência para com a irmã do seu vizinho* 'out of consideration for his neighbor's sister,' *o carinho para com os pais* 'affection for one's parents,' *sem a compaixão para com os animais, não há coração verdadeiramente bom* 'without kindness to animals, no heart is really good,' *como Nosso Senhor tem sido bom para conosco!* 'how good Our Lord has been to us!'

(h) To denote 'in the capacity of,' as the equivalent of *por* or *como* (557. h):

*João escolheu o sobrinho para* (or *por*) *seu herdeiro* 'John made his nephew his heir,' *elegi V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> para* (or *por*) *amigo* 'I have chosen you to be my friend.'

(i) To denote approximation in number and a proportion:

*para mais vinte pessoas* 'more than twenty persons,' *gastei duas para três horas* 'I wasted up to three hours,' *de duas para cinco léguas* 'from two to five leagues,' *três está para seis como dois para quatro* 'three is to six as two is to four.'

(j) Rarely to denote a comparison:

*o que são meia dúzia de regimentos para um tal exército?* 'what are half a dozen regiments compared with such an army?'

(k) Occasionally, but not according to the best usage, *para* is used as the equivalent of *contra* or *de*:

*um abrigo para a tormenta* 'a shelter from the storm.'

(l) Prepositional phrases beginning with *para* require the preposition *de* after them:

*para cima de* 'on top of,' *para baixo de* 'below,' *para além de* 'beyond.'

(m) Some adverbial phrases beginning with *para*:

*para fora* 'out,' *para onde?* 'whither?' *para sempre* 'for ever,' *para trás* 'backward,' etc.

(n) *Para* with the infinitive (586).

688. The prepositions *per* and *por* have been confused from the time of the oldest Portuguese. *Por* has

now taken over the syntactic functions of the old preposition *per* which has almost disappeared from the language, except in combination with the definite article, as a prefix in some compound verbs, e.g. *perdurar* 'to last,' *perfilar* 'to draw in profile,' *perfurar* 'to perforate,' *perpassar* 'to pass by,' and in expressions like *perante* 'in the presence of' 'in front of' 'compared with,' and *de per si* (a crossing of *de si* and *per si*), meaning (*só*) *por si* or (*já*) *de si* 'by oneself.'

689. The preposition *por* 'by' 'through' is used

(a) With verbs of motion, to express the way or direction taken to go from one place to another:

*viajar por mar e por terra* 'to travel by sea and by land,' *relanceou os olhos pela planície* 'he cast his eyes over the plain,' *passou por grandes desgostos* 'he experienced great sorrows,' *passar pelas ruas* 'to walk through the streets,' *entrar pela esquerda* 'to enter on the left,' *vamos por este lado* 'let us go this way,' *ir pela rua adiante* 'to go through (along) the street,' *passo pela porta de meu tio* 'I pass by my uncle's door,' *por mares nunca dantes navegados* (*Os Lusíadas*) 'through untried seas.'

(b) To designate, without motion, the place where a thing happens, with the accessory idea of extension or dispersion:

*cá por Lisboa* 'here in Lisbon,' *por cá* 'in these parts,' *que faz por cá?* 'what are you doing here?' *confina pelo norte com o Canadá* 'it is bordered on the north by Canada,' *o lago estende-se por cinco léguas* 'the lake extends over five leagues,' *ele anda por lá* 'he is going about (or 'is living') there.'



- (c) In asseverations:

*pedir por favor* or *rogar por mercê* 'to ask as a favor,'  
*(afirmo or juro) por minha honra* ('I declare' or  
 'swear') on my honor,' *por* (or *pe.o*) *amor de Deus*  
 'for the love of God.'

- (d) To denote an indetermined or approximate moment of time:

*há de chegar por estes dias* 'he will arrive one of  
 these days,' *pelas cinco horas da tarde* 'towards 5  
 p. m.,' *ontem pela manhã* 'yesterday morning,' *por*  
*uma manhã de neve* 'on a snowy morning,' *chegou*  
*pela tarde* 'he arrived towards evening,' *por esse*  
*tempo* 'at that time.'

- (e) Occasionally to denote duration of time, which  
 may also be expressed by *durante* or without a preposition:

*por três anos* 'for three years,' *durou a guerra quatro*  
*anos* 'the war lasted four years' (694).

*Pela manhã*, considered as one word, may be preceded by  
*até* or *desde*:

*dormir até pela manhã* 'to sleep till morning.'

- (f) To denote future time:

*obra feita e por fazer* 'work done and to be done,' *o*  
*futuro indica o tempo por vir* 'the future indicates time  
 to come,' *tinha a casa por acabar* 'I had to finish the  
 house,' *faço estes trabalhos pelo inverno adiante* 'I am  
 doing these things during the winter.'

- (g) To denote means, cause, or motive, often cor-  
 responding to the English expressions 'on account of,'  
 'in exchange for,' 'for the sake of,' 'in defence of,'  
 'instead of,' 'for the purpose of.'

*contender por armas* 'to contend with arms,' *soube por meu irmão que esteve doente* 'I learned from my brother that you were ill,' *ocultar-se por vergonha* 'to hide oneself for shame,' *fazer uma coisa por despeito* 'to do a thing out of spite,' *deixaram-no por morto* 'they left him for dead,' *deu a vida pelo amigo* 'he gave his life for his friend,' *obrar por medo* 'to work through fear,' *participar pelo telégrafo* 'to advise by telegraph,' *morrer por falta de socorros médicos* 'to die for want of medical attention,' *não posso assinar por ele* 'I cannot sign for him,' *por outras palavras* 'in other words,' *castigou-o por ter batido no cão* 'he punished him for having beaten the dog,' *deitei fora, por inútil, o pau* 'I threw the stick away as useless,' *se não escrever, será por não ter notícias* 'if he does not write, it will be because he has no news,' *cá por mim* 'as for me,' *se não fôra por mim* 'if it were not for me,' *beber por uma taça de ouro* 'to drink out of a golden cup,' *acertei o meu relógio pelo seu* 'I set my watch by yours,' *contar pelos dedos* 'to count on the fingers,' *julgar pelas aparências* 'to judge by appearances,' *multiplicar por três* 'to multiply by three,' *por ser raro* 'because of its rarity.'

- (h) To denote the part by which an object is seized:

*pegar pelo cabo* 'to seize by the head,' *segurar pela perna* 'to fasten by the leg,' *arrastar pelos cabelos* 'to drag by the hair,' *puxou-o pelas orelhas* 'he pulled him by the ears.'

- (i) To denote the agent with passive verbs, especial-

ly those of concrete physical meaning, as *bater* 'to beat,' *castigar* 'to punish,' *matar* 'to kill' (683. q):

*a ciência é cultivada pelo sábio* 'science is cultivated by the scholar,' *foram assassinados pelos selvagens* 'they were assassinated by the savages,' *a roupa foi comida pelas traças* 'the clothes were eaten by moths,' *a cidade é habitada por cinco mil almas* 'the city is inhabited by five thousand souls,' *a conquista da Inglaterra pelos Normandos* 'the conquest of England by the Normans.'

(j) To designate the price at which a thing is bought or sold:

*comprei o tapete por quinhentos escudos* 'I bought the carpet for five hundred escudos,' *por quanto comprou o chapéu?* 'for how much did you buy the hat?'

(k) To denote distribution (677. i, 693. 4):

*um por um* 'one by one,' *grão por* (or *a*) *grão* 'grain by grain,' *duas vezes por* (or *na*) *semana* 'twice a week,' *por ano* 'annually,' *ganha cinco francos por dia* (*ao dia* or *cada dia*) 'he makes five francs a day,' *pagarei tanto por cabeça* 'I will pay so much per head,' *distribuiu prêmios pelos alunos* 'he distributed prizes among the pupils,' *um escudo por pessoa* 'one escudo per person.'

(l) After *doido* 'insane' 'mad' 'fond':

*é doido por ela* 'he is crazy about her,' *ela é doida pelo filho* 'she dotes on her son,' *sou doido por flores* 'I am extravagantly fond of flowers.'

*Por* with verbs, 565; with the infinitive, 586.

690. *Respeito* 'regarding:'

*com respeito ao terramoto, pelo que diz respeito ao terramoto, a respeito do terramoto, no que respeita ao terramoto, no respeitante ao terramoto*, and *relativamente ao terramoto* are all correct expressions meaning 'regarding the earthquake,' but neither *respeito do terramoto* nor *respeito ao terramoto* is correct.

691. *Salvo* and *excepto* 'except,' as prepositions, are of course invariable; consequently such expressions as *salvas as mulheres* 'except the women' and *excepta prova em contrário* 'except proof to the contrary' are incorrect (674.b).

692. Besides the meanings in which it corresponds to English 'over' 'above,' *sobre* is used to denote

(a) Approximate time: *sobre tarde* 'towards evening.'

(b) A subject of discussion: *falaremos sobre Portugal* 'we will talk about Portugal.'

(c) Direction: *a varanda deita sobre* (or *para*) *um jardim* 'the verandah overlooks a garden.'

(d) Means or guaranty: *julgqr sobre* (or *por* or *pelas*) *aparências* 'to judge by appearances,' *empréstimos sobre penhores* 'loans on security.'

#### SOME IDIOMATIC USES OF THE PREPOSITIONS

##### I. Expressions of Time

693. A. Time 'when' is expressed by

(1) *a*, with *hora*, to denote the hour; with *dia*, when accompanied by a numeral; with the days of the week, when we speak of what is wont to happen; with the numbers of the days of the month; and in adverbial expressions of time (cf. 6, *infra*):

*a vinte-e-três de julho* 'the twenty-third of July,'

*a esta hora* 'at this hour,' *a oito dias precisos* 'in

just eight days,' *à uma hora* 'at one o'clock,' *a tempo* 'at the right time,' *ao outro dia* 'the other day,' *aos domingos* 'on Sundays,' *partir ao meio dia* 'to leave at midday,' *ao romper (d) o dia, à alvorçada, ao romper da aurora, de madrugada* 'at day-break' 'at dawn,' *ao crepúsculo* 'at twilight,' *à noitinha* 'at early nightfall,' *ao anoitecer* 'at nightfall,' *até ao anoitecer* 'till nightfall,' *às avemarias, às trindades* 'at the Angelus' 'at sundown,' *à boca da noite, ao lusco-fusco* 'at dusk,' *sábado à noite* 'Saturday night,' *ao amanhecer* 'at dawn.'

(2) *de*, in an indefinite sense and distributively (683. 1).

(3) *em*, to denote more precisely the season, the days of the week, the month, or year (685. a):

*no inverno* 'in the winter,' *no outro dia* 'on the other day.'

(4) *por*, distributively, to denote divisions of time (689. k):

*tanto por mês* 'so much a month,' *qno por qno* 'year by year,' *por dia* 'daily,' *por qno* 'yearly.'

(5) *sobre* (692. a):

*veio sobre a noite* 'he came when night was coming on.'

(6) Usually without the preposition *em*, with the words *qno*, *dia*, *manhã*, *mês*, *noite*, *semana*, *tarde*, etc., the days of the week, and in expressions like *todos os dias* 'every day,' *tôdas as semanas* 'every week' (cf. 1, *supra*):

*êle chega (n)êste qno* 'he arrives this year,' *partirci (n)êsta tarde ou (na) quarta-feira* 'I will leave this evening or Wednesday,' *chegou (no) domingo* 'he arrived Sunday,' *virei (na) quinta-feira* 'I will come Thursday.'

But if the preposition is omitted, the expression of time is preferably placed before the verb:

*sábado vou a Lisboa* 'Saturday I am going to Lisbon,' *a (or na) semana passada fêz isto* 'last week he did that.'

694. B. Time 'how long' is expressed

(1) ordinarily without a preposition:

*dura o curso três meses* 'the course lasts three months,' *êle viveu setenta qnos* 'he lived seventy years;' by

(2) *durante*:

*viagou durante três meses* 'he traveled three months;' or by

(3) *por* (689. e. f):

*por uma semana* 'for one week.'

Note: *para sempre* 'for ever' 'always.'

695. C. Time 'within which' is expressed by

(1) *dentro de* (684):

*dentro de poucos dias* 'within a few days,' *dentro em breve* (or *dentro de breve tempo*) 'within a short time.'

(2) *daqui a*:

*daqui a quatro dias* 'four days hence,' *daqui a uma semana* 'a week from to-day.'

(3) *em*:

*em duas horas* 'in two hours,' *vai em quatro anos* 'it is going on four years.'

696. D. Time 'since when' is expressed by

(1) *faz . . . que*:

*faz onze dias que chegou* 'it is eleven days since he came.'

(2) *há* or *há . . . que*:

*não o vejo há uma semana* or *há uma semana que não o vejo* 'I have not seen him in a week.'

(3) *desde*:

*desde o ano passado* 'since last year.'

## II. Expressions of Place

697. A. Place 'where' is expressed by

(1) *a* (677. c):

*estar à porta* 'to be at the door,' *mora à Rua de Santa Justa* 'he lives in Santa Justa Street.'

(2) *em*, with or without movement (685. a):

*no alto mar* 'on the high seas,' *em casa* 'at home,' *êle estava assentado numa cadeira* 'he was seated in a chair.'

(3) *onde* (652. o):

*é na casa onde o ruído é maior* 'it is in the house that there is most noise.'

(4) *em volta*, *ao* (or *em* or *de*) *redor* 'around' (652. p):

*todos estavam em volta do orador* 'all stood around the orator.'

(5) 'On,' in its ordinary sense, is expressed by *em*

(685. a), but by *sobre* (692) with verbs of motion and extension:

*o jantar está na mesa* 'the dinner is on the table;' but *a coberta está estendida sobre a cama* 'the coverlet is spread over the bed,' *o leão lançou-se sobre o homem* 'the lion sprang on the man,' *a pedra caiu sobre a menina* 'the stone fell on the girl,' *correram sobre o inimigo* 'they rushed on the enemy.'

(6) Frequently, instead of a preposition meaning 'at,' 'on,' 'in,' 'to,' or 'over,' an indirect personal pronoun is appended to the verb and is followed by the corresponding adverb:

*uma das rodas passou-lhe por cima* 'one of the wheels passed over him,' *uma das rodas passou-lhe por cima da perna* 'one of the wheels passed over his leg.'

698. B. Place 'whither' is expressed by

(1) *a* (677. 1):

*veio a Espanha* 'he came to Spain.'

(2) *para* (687. a):

*vou para (o) Rio de Janeiro* 'I am going to Rio Janeiro.'

(3) *por* (689. a):

*vemha por cá* 'come here.'

(4) *em* (685. a):

*de cidade em cidade* 'from city to city.'

699. C. Place 'whence' is expressed by

(1) *de* (683. a):

*de Roma para cá* 'from Rome to here.'



- (2) *por* (of place 'through which' 689. a):

*saltar pela janela* 'to jump through the window,'  
*passeio pelo jardim* 'I walk through the garden.'

- (3) *desde*:

*desde Lisboa até Cascais* 'from Lisbon to Cascais.'

- (4) *de*:

*sou de Santarém* 'I am from Santarém.'

### III. Expressions of Space and Measurement

#### 700. A. Distance is expressed

- (1) by *a*, after verbs of rest (677. d):

*mora a três quilómetros daqui* 'he lives three kilometers from here.'

- (2) without a preposition, after verbs of motion:

*correu duas milhas* 'he ran two miles.'

#### 701. B. Height, length, depth, and width are expressed by *de*, *em*, or *por*:

*esta caixa tem cinco pés de largura* 'this box is five feet wide,' *esta sala tem quinze pés de comprimento por dez de largura* (or *largura*) 'this room is fifteen feet long by ten wide;' but *aumentar em* (not *de*) *um centímetro o comprimento do fio* 'to increase by one centimeter the length of the wire.'

### IV. Expressions of Age, Value, Weight and Price

#### 702. A. Age is expressed by *de* and otherwise (225):

*vinte e cinco anos de idade* 'twenty-five years old.'

#### 703. B. Value and price are expressed by

- (1) *a* (677. d):

*a fazenda vende-se a cinco escudos o metro* 'the cloth sells at five escudos a meter,' *pagar um automóvel a vinte escudos a* (or *à*) *hora* 'to pay twenty escudos an hour for an automobile,' *trabalhar à hora ou aos* (or *a*) *dias* 'to work by the hour or by the day,' *ensina piano a vinte escudos a* (or *por*) *lição* 'she teaches the piano at twenty escudos a lesson,' *vende as couves a cinquenta centavos a dúzia* 'he sells the cabbages at fifty centavos a dozen.'

- (2) *em* (564. f):

*avalio-a em cinco escudos* 'I value it at five escudos.'

- (3) *por* (689. j):

*comprar por um preço muito elevado* 'to buy at a very high price.'

- (4) *com* (682. b):

*comprar com dinheiro de contado* 'to buy for cash.'

- (5) No preposition is used with the name of the weight or measure by which an object is sold; nor with the verbs *custar* 'to cost,' *pesar* 'to weigh,' and *valer* 'to be worth' (83, 677. d):

*a dois tostões o grama* 'at two tostões a gram,' *custa dez escudos a libra* 'it costs ten escudos a pound.'

## XX. THE CONJUNCTION

704. Conjunctions precede the clause to which they belong, but *porém* 'but,' among others (as *contudo* and *todavia*), may follow. The same conjunction belonging to several clauses joined by *e* is repeated only when emphasis is desired or when the clauses are complete and independent.

The principal conjunctions and conjunctive locutions are the following. Many of them are adverbs used in conjunctive function and belong to more than one group.

705. (A) Conditional:

(1) *Se*, frequently *quando*, 'if.' *Se* takes either the indicative or the subjunctive (600. b, 633). It is used after the adverb *apenas*: *é apenas se me recorde* 'I hardly remember;'

*contanto que, uma vez que* 'provided that' 'on condition that' 'since' 'considering'

*como se* (colloquially *nem que*) 'as if'

*com tal que, suposto que* 'provided (that)' 'if' 'if only'

*exceto se, salvo se* 'except,' *sem que* 'if . . . not'

*dado que, (no) caso (que)* 'in case,' negatively 'unless'

*admitido que* 'provided that'

*sob condição que* 'on condition that.'

(2) 'Except,' 'provided,' 'unless,' and 'if not' are expressed by *se não* or *quando não* (with the indicative or the future subjunctive) or, if the exception comes first, by *caso não, a não ser que*, or *a menos que*, with the subjunctive. *Se não* is not to be confused with *senão* 'but' 'except,' originally the same, but differentiated later and now written as one word (670. a). The former helps to form a negative sentence; the latter is used only to intro-

duce an affirmative clause which opposes a preceding negative statement:

*lá vou já            se, não chove muito,*  
*lá irei logo        se não chover muito,*  
*lá irei logo        quando não chover muito,*  
*a não ser que chova muito      lá irei logo,*  
*a menos que chova muito      lá irei logo,*  
*caso não chova muito          lá irei logo,*  
 'I will go there directly unless it rains hard.'

(3) When *mas* 'but' introduces a positive clause, it is reinforced by the adverb *sim* (673. c, 707): *não é o posto que desejo, mas sim o dinheiro* 'it is not the position I want, but (on the contrary) the money.'

#### 706. (B) Causal:

*Porque* 'because' 'as' 'considering,' the ordinary causal conjunction, is written as one word and without an accent, while *porquê?*, interrogative 'why?', when standing alone bears an accent, and in *por que* (306. a) 'for what,' the preposition and the relative are separated.

The adverbial phrase *por via de* is the causal expression most used by the people:

*não saímos hoje por via da chuva* 'we did not go out to-day because of the rain.'

Other causal conjunctions are *como*, *como (quer) que*, *porquanto*, *já que*, *logo que*, *pois*, *visto que*, *visto como*, and *por isso que* 'as' 'whereas' 'on account of' 'seeing that' 'since' 'now that.'

*Como* is further used to introduce the second term of a comparison (155), in exclamations, as the equivalent of *logo que* 'as soon as,' before a predicate noun after certain verbs (557. b), and in correlative sentences, such as (*assim* or *bem*) *como . . . assim (também) . . .*:

*como fizeres, assim acharás* 'as you do, so you shall find.'

707. (C) Adversative and Concessive:

*Ainda que* (more colloquial *inda que* and more emphatic *ainda quando*), *ainda assim*, *assim mesmo*, (*se*) *bem que*, *conquanto*, *caso que*, *dado que*, *dado o caso que*, *embora*, *mas que*, *mesmo que*, *pôsto (que)*, *quando* 'although' 'if' 'even if' 'even though' 'provided (that)' 'as well as' 'yet.'

*Mas, porém* (less emphatic *todavia*) 'but' 'however' 'yet;' *mas antes* (or *mas sim*) 'rather;' *outro-sim* 'likewise' 'more-over.'

*Ora* 'now' 'because' 'however' 'yet' 'nevertheless.'

*Como quer que*, *contudo*, *não obstante*, *sem embargo* 'notwithstanding' 'yet' 'nevertheless'

*nem* 'nor;' *nem sequer* 'not even;' *ou* 'or'

*por muito* (or *pouco* or *mais*) + adjective, noun, or adverb + *que* 'however much (or 'little' or 'more'):'

*por muito forte que seja* 'however strong he may be,' (*por*) *rico que seja* or *por mais rico que seja* 'however rich he may be,' *por ser pobre* 'though poor.'

*como quer que* 'however;' *qualquer que* 'whatever.'

For the use of the subjunctive after concessive conjunctions, see 605.

708. (D) Temporal:

*Quando*, *cada vez que*, *tôdas as vezes que*, *sempre que* 'when' 'whenever'

*para quando* 'until'

*senão quando* 'at once' 'when suddenly;' *assim que* 'as soon as;' *quando quer que* 'whenever'

*ao passo que*, *tanto que*, *entretanto que* 'while' 'as long as' *quanto antes* 'as soon as possible'

*por enquanto*, *no entanto* 'meanwhile' 'as yet' 'for the present'

*enquanto* 'as' 'as long as' 'while;' but *em quanto* 'to what an extent:'

*assim que Pedro chegar, eu sairei* 'as soon as Peter comes, I will go out,' *espere, enquanto eu dou uma vista de olhos* 'wait till I have a look,' *enquanto ele ria, chorava ela* 'while he laughed, she cried,' *enquanto assim não fôr* 'as long as it is not so,' *enquanto viver* 'as long as I live'

*logo que, assim que* 'when' 'as soon as'

*quantas vezes* 'as often as'

*antes que, primeiro que* 'before' 'sooner than'

*apenas, mal* 'hardly' 'scarcely' (*apenas que* and *mal que*, though not uncommon, are incorrect):

*mal chegou, disse-me isso* 'he had no sooner come than he told me that'

*depois que, depois de, desde que, des que* 'since' 'after:'

*depois que viêres, eu sairei* 'after you come, I will go out'

*até que, enquanto não* 'until' 'as long as:'

*não louves até que proves* 'do not praise until you try.'

For the use of the subjunctive after temporal conjunctions, see 603.

709. (E) Consecutive and Final:

*De (or por) maneira que, de (tal) modo que, de (tal) sorte que, de geito que, de forma que, para que, afim de* 'in order that' 'so that'

*logo, por conseguinte, por consequência, portanto, por isso, em vista disso* 'consequently' 'therefore'

*por onde, pelo que* 'wherefore' 'whence'

*para que não* 'lest' 'in order not.'

710. As illustrated by the examples given above, *que* is used in many conjunctive expressions. It may sometimes be rendered simply 'and' or 'so' and often it is a

mere expletive without translatable force. In addition it is used

(a) As an emphatic particle, with ellipsis of a verb, such as *crer* 'to believe' and *dizer* 'to say' (673. b), after adverbs and adverbial expressions such as *cêrtamente*, *cêrto*, *por ventura*, *quási*, *talvez*, and *verdadeiramente*:

*cêrtamente que não* 'certainly not.'

(b) With about the same force as *quanto* or *como* in exclamations, in which it is sometimes repeated for emphasis (306. e. f):

*que bela que é a noite!* 'how beautiful the night is!'  
*que de gente que já está!* 'how many people are here already!' *que calor que está!* 'how hot it is!' *oh, que é muito!* 'oh, how much it is!' *que longe estamos da cidade!* or *quanto estamos longe da cidade!* 'how far we are from the city!'

(c) As the equivalent of *porque* 'why?' 'because,' *para que* 'in order that,' *quando* 'when,' *se* 'if,' and other conjunctions, and after such temporal expressions as *há tanto tempo* 'so long ago' and *faz* (or *há*) *tantos anos* 'it is so many years:'

*vou passear, que agora não chove* 'I am going for a walk, for it is not raining now,' *venha amanhã, que tenho uma coisa a dizer-lhe* 'come to-morrow, for I have something to tell you,' *e que o dissesse?* 'and what if he said it?' *faço isso, que tenho o direito de o fazer* 'I do so because I have the right to,' *é* (or *era*) *que . . .* 'it is (or 'was') so because . . . .'

If the conjunction contains *que*, *que* alone is repeated in the following clause:

*contanto que eu não seja prejudicado e que não sofra algum dissabor* 'provided I am not hurt and meet with no trouble.'

(d) After verbs of 'saying,' 'thinking,' 'answering,' etc. (673. b).

(e) After the comparative particle *que* or *do que* (154), either the *que* introducing the clause is not expressed:

*é melhor que ele morra do que* (sc. *que*) *estêja a padecer tal tormento* 'it is better that he should die than suffer such torture,'

or the *que* clause is substituted by an infinitive:

*é melhor que ele morra que estar a padecer tal tormento.*

711. A preposition required before an infinitive depending on certain nouns, adjectives, or verbs (572 ff.) is expressed before *que* when the latter introduces a clause that takes the place of the infinitive:

*não se atendeu a que era necessário* 'they did not consider that it was necessary,' *êle dá parte de que se retira* 'he gives notice that he is going,' *muito me admiro de que êle ignore* 'I am much surprised that he does not know,' *muito folgo de que lhe desse tanto prazer o livro* 'I am very glad that the book gave you so much pleasure,' *estar certo (convencer-se, persuadir-se, duvidar) de que isto sucederá* 'to be certain ('convinced,' 'persuaded,' 'to doubt') that this will happen,' *tem a consciência de que êle foi assassinado* 'he has a feeling that he was murdered,' *tinha a impressão de que me enganavam* 'I had the impression that they were deceiving me.'

But *com* is frequently used before *que* after *fazer*, in the meaning 'to cause' 'to bring it about that:'

*êle faz com que* (or *êle trabalha para que*) *o governo caia* 'he works to bring about the fall of the government.'

712. -(a) *De maneira* or *de modo* 'so that' is correctly followed by a *que* clause:



*de maneira* (or *de modo*) *que uma coisa aconteça* 'so that a thing may happen.'

But under the influence of the corresponding French idiom the preposition *a* is incorrectly inserted before *que* or before the infinitive:

*de maneira a que uma coisa aconteça, de maneira a acontecer uma coisa.*

(b) *Que* before *não* may sometimes be translated in English by 'and' (literally 'for'), when it stands at the head of a phrase after a positive statement:

*esta nomeação às suas diligências a devo, que não à generosidade dele* 'this appointment I owe to your endeavors and not to his generosity.'

713. Instead of a *que* clause after *demais* and *demasiado* 'too' and *muito* 'much,' as in *ela é demasiada bela que se pinte*, 'she is too pretty to use paint,' the construction *para que* and the subjunctive is far more common:

*é demasiado bela para que se pinte.*

714. As a rule, the conjunction 'that' must be expressed by *que*, which is ordinarily repeated before each clause, but in the following cases it is sometimes permissible to omit it:

(a) With the subjunctive in commands (595, 597).

(b) After verbs of 'hoping,' 'fearing,' 'saying,' 'wishing,' 'requesting,' 'thinking,' 'feeling,' etc., expressed or understood, and after *apenas*:

*cuido (que) me seguirá* 'I believe (that) he will follow me,' *espero (que) tenha recebido a minha carta* 'I hope you have received my letter,' *oxalá (que) eu pudesse achá-la* 'would that I could find it,' *apenas amanheceu, levantei-me* 'as soon as it was day-break, I arose,' *peço (que) me envie uma carta* 'I request you to send me a

letter,' *rogo me tragas um livro* 'I ask you to bring me a book.'

But it is not omitted after *parecer* 'to appear' and *estimar* 'to think:'

*parece-me que temos um acidente* 'it seems to me we have an accident,' *estimo que sejas bom rapaz* 'I think you are a good boy.'

(c) Before the second of two verbs both depending on one of the verbs in (a) and connected by *e*:

*creio que ele é rico e (que) quere comprar esta casa* 'I believe (that) he is rich and (that he) wishes to buy this house.'

But not if one of the phrases is positive and the other negative:

*creio que ele é rico e que não quere comprar esta casa.*

715. *E* 'and;' with an adversative meaning, 'but,' when one action is subordinated to another:

*eu fui lá, e ele não estava* 'I went there, but he was not there.'

Ordinarily *e* stands only before the last of two or more clauses. But when emphatic it may be repeated before each clause or, on the other hand, in animated style, it may be omitted entirely.

When separated, *e... e...* usually mean 'both... and...'

Whereas in English there is coördination, by means of 'and,' of two actions one of which is auxiliary to the other, in Portuguese, as in the other Romance languages, there is subordination and the conjunction 'and' is consequently left untranslated.

*vá falar-lhes* 'go and speak to them,' *irei buscá-lo* 'I will go and look for it,' *se mo quiser ir mostrar* 'if you wish to go and show it to me.'

*E mais* 'besides' 'moreover' (654. g) is rarely used in the sense of 'and' 'furthermore,' outside of some dialects, except in such expressions as:

*eu e mais a mãe* 'mother and I,' *tu e mais dois vão fazer isto* 'you and two others go and do this,' *dez e mais seis* 'ten in addition to six.'

*Demais*, as a conjunction, is the equivalent of *além disso* 'besides that:'

*demais, ele não precisa tanto como parece* 'besides, he does not need as much as it appears.'

## XXI. THE INTERJECTION

716. Of the great wealth of Portuguese interjections and expressions used as such, the following are the most common:

(a) To impose silence and warning:

*caluda! chite! chiton! chitão!* 'hush!' *alto lá! olhe lá!* 'look out!'

(b) To express anger, impatience, derision, disapproval, indifference, or indignation:

*aprel! arrel! arre-da! basta! tenha paciência! deixa! diabo! fora! irra! qual!* (to express doubt or surprise), *passa fora! pois!* 'not at all! 'what next!' 'the idea!' 'why not!' *ora essa! essa é boa!* 'I like that!' 'that's funny!' 'it's a joke!' *Deus me livre!* 'God forbid!' 'oh, no!' *foge daí!* 'get away!' 'be off!' *está feito!* 'the deuce!'

(c) To express grief, pity, or pain:

*hui! ai de mim!* 'alas for me!' *ai deles!* 'alas for them!' *coitado de mim!* 'poor me!' *coitadinho!* 'poor thing!' *coitada!* 'poor girl!' *que pena!* 'what a pity!' *desgraçados de nós!* 'alas for us!' *infeliz! que infeliz que sou!* 'unfortunate that I am!' *infeliz de ti!* 'alas for thee!' *meu Deus! Jesus! bom Jesus! ai Jesus! Jesus Maria! Santo Deus! Deus do céu! por Deus!* 'by Jove!'

(d) To express pleasure, wonder, approval, or encouragement:

*agora! anda! ande! ânimo! avante! bem! bravo! cáspitel certamente! como or quê* (in exclamatory phrases), *de-veras? será possível?* 'is it possible?' *muito bem! ora to-ma! viva! ainda bem! embora! pois bem! cre-do!* 'the idea!' 'all right!' 'come now!' 'don't mention it!' *achei,*

*acheil* 'I know it!' 'I've got it!' *bem feito!* 'do you see?' 'didn't I tell you?' *está feito!* 'that caps the climax!' 'I should say so!' *está dito!* 'that will do!' *pra bem! claro! vamos lá!* 'all right!' 'ready!' 'let us begin!' *eia! então!* 'well!' 'come, now!' *pois (então)!* 'you see!' 'well then!' *pra adeus!* 'very well!' 'don't mind it!' 'well, well!' 'dear goodness!' *tanto faz!* 'it's all the same!' *pra! sus! pudera!* 'to be sure!' 'I say!' *pois sim!* 'of course!' (agreeing with a statement), *pois não!* 'why not?' 'certainly!' (giving permission).

- (e) To call attention:

*olá! ó* (addressing a person, with or without a name, *ó José!*), *ó da guarda! aqui del rei!* 'help!' 'police!' *ó senhor!* 'oh, sir!' *olha (cá)!* 'see here!' *escuta!* 'listen!' *arrêda! cuidaço! eis! sentido!*

- (f) To express a wish or desire:

*oxalá!* 'would to God!' *oh quem dera!* or *quem me dera!* 'would that!' 'that would suit me!' *praza a Deus!* or *prouvera a Deus!* 'please God!' *tomara que!* 'I wish!' *tomara eu!* 'nothing I'd rather!'

- (g) Very common salutations among intimate friends on meeting are

*viva!* and *adeus!* (literally 'farewell' 'good-by') 'hello!' 'good day' 'good morning,' *adeus pequenos!* 'hello, boys!' *Adeus*, however, is ordinarily a parting salutation, most often accompanied with a gesture of the hand. The ordinary reply is *viva!* which is said by the person left behind as well as by the person addressed on meeting.

## XXII. ORDER OF WORDS

717. I. (a) The normal or unemphatic order is as in English:

Subject (with all its modifiers)	Verb	Direct Object	Indirect Object
<i>o rei</i> 'the king	<i>governa</i> governs	<i>o povo</i> the people'	
<i>o homem</i> 'the man	<i>(não) deu</i> gave ('did not give')	<i>o seu dinheiro</i> his money	<i>ao rapaz</i> to the boy'

(b) If either the direct or indirect object is modified by a descriptive phrase or a relative clause, that object follows the other:

*aquele cavalheiro deu ao rapaz o dinheiro que achou*  
'that gentleman gave the boy the money he found,'  
*aquele cavalheiro deu ao rapaz um presente de grande valor*  
'that gentleman gave the boy a present of great value.'

718. II. The inverted order:

Verb	Subject	Direct Object	Indirect Object
<i>deu</i>	<i>o homem</i>	<i>o seu dinheiro</i>	<i>ao rapaz</i>
<i>ao povo governa o rei, governa ao povo o rei, governa o rei ao povo, o rei ao povo governa, ao povo o rei governa.</i>			

719. The principal purpose of the inverted order is to emphasize some part of the sentence by taking it out of its normal position:

*ao dono é-lhe indiferente* 'it makes no difference to the master,' *ímpio é ele* 'he is wicked,' *não o sei eu* 'I do not know it,' *no quarto andar é que está o fogo* 'it is on the

fourth floor the fire is,' *raríssimas são as vezes que o vejo* 'it is very rarely that I see him,' *não sei quais terão sido as condições* or (rarely) *não sei quais as condições terão sido* 'I do not know what the conditions have been,' *esperamos até que chegue o comboio* 'we are waiting until the train arrives,' *mandava-lhe êle estudar* 'he ordered you to study.'

720. When a transitive verb has a substantive clause as its object, the subject of the latter is sometimes transported to the principal clause where it appears to be the direct object of the main verb:

*depois foi ela ver as crianças se tinham os sapatos* 'then she went to see if the children had their shoes.'

721. When an infinitive phrase depends on an infinitive which itself depends on *deixar*, *fazer*, *mandar*, *ouvir*, *poder*, *sentir*, or *ver* (571), the subject of the infinitive phrase (unless it be a personal, relative, or interrogative pronoun) may follow its dependent infinitive:

*eu não posso ver chorar as crianças* 'I cannot see children cry.'

722. In phrases containing a gerund or an absolute past participle, the subject generally follows either of these, and, in compound tenses, the auxiliary (537, 541):

*acabada a lição* 'the lesson being finished,' *em entrando o inverno começa o meu catarro* 'with the coming of winter, my colds begin,' *faltando-lhe a coragem* 'courage failing him,' *sendo difícil a língua portuguesa* or *sendo a língua portuguesa difícil* 'the Portuguese language being difficult,' *tendo seu pai jantado* 'his father having dined.'

723. (a) The inverted order is also used when the sentence begins with an adverb or an adverbial or prepositional phrase; also in expressions of wishing and exclama-

tions, and when a demonstrative or *tal*, *tão* or *tanto* are complements of the predicate and stand emphatically at the head of the sentence:

*hoje parte êle para Lisboa* 'to-day he leaves for Lisbon,'  
*aqui esteve êle dois anos* 'here he was two years,' *para ti sonhava eu sonhos de glória* 'for thee I dreamt dreams of glory,' *oxalá tenha êle vida* 'would that he were alive,' *é por isso que se torna legítima a comparação das canções* 'it is for this reason that a comparison of the songs is in order,' *viva a república!* 'long live the republic!' *tal foi a fúria da borrasca* 'such was the fury of the storm,' *isto fazem os reis quando viajam*. . .  
 'this is what kings do when they travel. . .'

(b) After *qualquer que*:

*qualquer que seja a sua riqueza* 'whatever may be his wealth.'

724. (a) If the subject of an imperative, or of a subjunctive used as a negative imperative, is expressed, it follows:

*dize tu* 'say,' *não digas tu* 'do not say.'

(b) Optionally in sentences expressing a wish, with *que* omitted:

*guarde-o Deus, que Deus o guarde* 'may God keep him,'  
*queira Deus, Deus queira* 'may God grant.'

725. The inverted order is used, as in English, after *dizer* 'to say,' *interromper* 'to interrupt,' *replicar* and *responder* 'to reply,' when quoting the exact words of the speaker:

*sim, repliquei eu* 'yes,' said I,' *não sou feliz, disse êle*  
 'I am not happy,' he said.'

726. *It* is used when the subject is longer than the predicate:



*é triste a necessidade de corrigir com a lei abusos que deveriam já não existir* 'it is a pity that it is necessary to correct by law abuses which should never exist,' *termina aqui a já bem longa exposição do nosso plano de trabalho* 'here ends the already long exposition of our plan of work,' *a democracia constituem-na dois grupos notavelmente desiguais em número e em condição* 'democracy is made up of two groups markedly unequal in number and in condition' (Herculano).

727. Interrogative sentences, unless they begin with an interrogative pronoun or adverb, need not be distinguished from declarative sentences except by the intonation of the voice in speaking or by the punctuation in writing (672. a). In Brazil it is the usual practice to observe the same order for both forms of sentence:

*está doente sua irmã(?)* 'your sister is ill' or 'is your sister ill?' *Ele veio(?)* 'he came' or 'did he come?' *eu posso vê-lo(?)* 'I can see him' or 'can I see him?'

But if the subject is expressed, as is usually the case with *V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>, o senhor*, etc., it usually follows, but may precede, the verb.

728. (a) When the sentence begins with an interrogative pronoun object or adverb, the subject usually follows the verb:

*quantos anos tem o senhor?* 'how old are you?' *onde está ele?* 'where is he?' *onde quere ir V. Ex.<sup>a</sup>?* 'where do you wish to go?' *está em casa o senhor?* 'is the gentleman at home?' *onde reside ele?* 'where does he reside?' *que horas são estas?* 'what time is it?' *que é isto?* 'what is that?' *como está seu pai?* 'how is your father,' *a quem comprou V. Ex.<sup>a</sup> esta mesa?* 'from whom did you buy this table?' *que lhe deu ele?* 'what did he give him?'

(b) In Brazil the practice is to place the subject before the verb, even when the sentence begins with an interrogative:

*onde êle está? quantos qnos o senhor tem? como seu pai está?*

(c) Occasionally, for emphasis, the subject may precede the interrogative at the head of the phrase:

*V. Ex<sup>a</sup> que quere?* 'what do you wish?' *V. Ex<sup>a</sup> porque não entrou?* 'why did you not come in?'

729. In interrogative compound sentences, the noun or pronoun subject usually stands between the auxiliary and the past participle: *que tenho eu feito?* 'what have I done?'; but a pronoun subject may follow the past participle or stand at the head of the sentence:

*como tem passado V. Ex<sup>a</sup>?* or *V. Ex<sup>a</sup> como tem passado?* 'how have you been?'

When there is a dependent infinitive, the personal pronoun subject usually stands between it and the governing verb (589):

*que deço eu fazer?* 'what should I do?' *que mais hei-de eu fazer?* 'what more must I do?' *como hei-de eu crer?* or *como hei-de crer eu?* 'how am I to believe?' *Como hei eu de crer* is obsolete or dialectic.

730. In an interrogative sentence beginning with *em que*, the best usage is to have the verb precede the subject or to insert *e que* before it. Of the following sentences, the first and second in each group are to be preferred to the third, though this last is the usual order in Brazil:

1. *em que encontram os homens mais prazer?*
2. *em que é que os homens encontram mais prazer?*
3. *em que os homens encontram mais prazer?*  
'in what do men find most pleasure?'

1. *em que pðde o dinheiro substituir o talento?*
2. *em que é que o dinheiro pðde substituir o talento?*
3. *em que o dinheiro pðde substituir o talento?*  
'in what can money take the place of talent?'

731. Very frequently all or more than one of the parts of the sentence are inverted for emphasis:

*à satisfação da pena não está obrigado o criminoso antes da sentença* 'the criminal is not obliged to pay the penalty before the sentence,' *para tornar mais enérgica uma afirmação é freqüente usar o pðvo uma invocação* 'in order to make a statement more emphatic, the people frequently employ an adjuration,' *isso já toda a gente sabia* 'everybody knew that already,' *de esperar é que chova amanhã* 'it is to be hoped that it will rain to-morrow.'

732. A Portuguese sentence should never begin with the adversative conjunctions *contudo*, *porém*, *todavia* (707), nor with an object personal pronoun (249).

733. Inversion, by which the subject is withheld until the end of the sentence, even though separated by long descriptive clauses from the verb, seems to be especially common in Portuguese journalistic style, as may be illustrated by the following extracts:

*Regressou de Paris e Bruxelas, onde deu concêrtos aplaudidíssimos, a que a imprensa destas duas capitais se referiu com entusiasmo, Madame L. B. . . . Na sala de química da Faculdade de Ciências, realizou ontem a sua anunciada conferência sobre Camões o professor de matemática e astronomia Sr. S. A. . . . Às duas da madrugada, na rua da Alegria, ao ser conduzido em escolta do Govêrno Civil para a esquadra de Santa Marta, tentou fugir aos polícias o "legionário" D. P. . . . Da casa mortuária do hospital de S. José, foi ontem à tarde removido para a morgue o cadáver do temível "legionário" D. P.*

### XXIII. THREE HUNDRED PORTUGUESE PROVERBS

*À bêsta que muito anda, nunca falta quem tanja.  
A boda nem a baptizádo, não vás sem ser convidádo.  
A cabra de minha vizinha mais leite dá que a minha.  
A cão mordido, todos o mordem.  
A carga bem se leva, a sobrecarga causa a queda.  
À casa do amigo rico irás sendo requerido, e à casa do  
necessitado sem ser chamado.  
A cavalo dado não olhes o dente.  
A espada e o anel, segundo a mão em que estiver.  
À galinha aparta-lhe o ninho e pôr-te há o ovo.  
A galinha da minha vizinha é mais gorda que a minha.  
A'gua mole em pedra dura tanto dá até que fura.  
A'gua salobre na terra sêca é doce.  
Alcança quem não cansa.  
Alfaiate mal vestido, sapateiro mal calçado.  
Alguma hora minha pereira terá pêras.  
A língua longa é sinal de mão curta.  
Amor e saber não pode ser.  
A má vizinha dá a agulha sem linha.  
Amigo de bom tempo, muda-se com o vento.  
A muita cera queima a igreja.  
A mulher e a galinha por andar se perde asinha.  
A mulher quanto mais olha a cara, tanto mais destrui a  
casa.  
Andava na égua e perguntava por ela.  
Ande eu quente, ria-se a gente.  
Antes a lã se perca que a ovelha.*

*Antes com bons a furtar, que com maus a orar.*

*Antes morto por ladrões que de coice de asno.*

*Antes que cases olha o que fazes, que não é nó que desates.*

*Ao agredido, mais do pedido.*

*Ao avôro tanto lhe falta o que tem como o que não tem.*

*Ao homem ousado a fortuna lhe dá a mão.*

*Ao que faz mal, nunca lhe faltam achques.*

*Ao Rei pertence usar de franqueza, pois tem por certo não cair em pobreza.*

*A pão duro, dente agudo.*

*A pedra e a palavra não se recolhe depois de deitada.*

*A perda que teu vizinho não sabe, não é perda na verdade.*

*A perseverança toda a coisa alcança.*

*Aprende chorando e rirás ganhando.*

*Aquêles são ricos que teem amigos.*

*A raposa dormida, não lhe cai nada na bôca.*

*Asno contente vive eternamente.*

*A torto e a direito, nossa casa até o teto.*

*Bácoro fiado, bom inverno e mau verão.*

*Barba remolhada, meio rapada.*

*Bem parece o ladrão na fôrca.*

*Bem sabe o asno em cuja casa rêsna.*

*Bôa mesa, mau testamento.*

*Bôle com o rabo o cão, não por ti senão pelo pão.*

*Bom coração quebranta má ventura.*

*Bom saber é calar, até ser tempo de falar.*

*Buscar água em fonte seca.*

*Cacarejar e não pôr ovo.*

*Cada cuba cheira ao vinho que tem.*

*Cada dia três e quatro, chegarás ao fundo do saco.*

*Cada ovelha com sua parçha.*

*Cada porco tem seu S. Martinho.*

*Cada qual sente o seu mal.*

*Cada um colhe segundo semeia.*

*Cada um diz da feira como lhe vai nela.*

*Cada um estenda a perna até onde tem cobertura.*

*Cada roça com o seu fuso, cada terra com o seu uso.*

*Cada um sente o frio como anda vestido.*

*Caminha pela estrada, acharás pousada.*

*Cântaro que vai muitas vezes à fonte, ou deixa a asa ou a fronte.*

*Cão que muito ladra nunca é bom para a caça.*

*Carne magra de porco gordo.*

*Casa roubada, trancas a porta.*

*Cavalo alheio não cansa.*

*Chover no molhado.*

*Cobra boa fama e deita-te a dormir.*

*Com açúcar e com mel, até pedras sabem bem.*

*Com água passada não mói o moinho.*

*Começado e acabado, como camisa de enforcado.*

*Com tais que me acho, tal me faço.*

*Contenta-te, gato, que farta o farto.*

*Corpo bem feito não há mister capa.*

*Curtas tem as pernas a mentira.*

*Da árvore caída todos fazem lenha.*

*Dá Deus o frio conforme a roupa.*

*Da mão à boca, se perde a sopa.*

*De qto cai quem qto sabe.*

*De dia em dia, casarás Maria.*

*De grande rio, grande peixe.*

*De grande subida, grande caída.*

*De hora a hora Deus melhora.*

*Deita-te a enfermar, saberás quem te quere bem e quem  
te quere mal.*

*Deus diante, o mar é chão.*

*Devagar se vai ao longe.*

*Dinheiro emprestaste, inimigo ganhaste.*

*Dize-me com quem andas, dir-te hei que manhas has.*

*Dobrado tem o perigo quem foge ao inimigo.*

*Doce é a guerra, para quem não anda nela.*

*Donde muitos cospem, lama fazem.*

*Dure o que durar, como colher de pão.*

*Duro com duro não faz bom muro.*

*Em boca fechada não entra môsca.*

*Em casa de Gonçalo governa mais a galinha do que o  
gallo.*

*Em casa do enforcado, não nomeies o barçoço.*

*Em casa do Mouro não fales algaravia.*

*Em conselho as paredes ouvem.*

*Em mesa redonda não há cabeceira.*

*Em tua casa não tens sardinha, e na alheia pedes  
galinha.*

*Em uma hora não se ganhou Zamora.*

*Em um pouco de ora Deus labora.*

*Escreve antes que dê, e recebe antes que escrevas.*

*Ensaboar a cabeça do qsnô, perda do sabão.*

*Estar na aldeia e não ver casas.*

*Fala pouco e bem, ter-te hão por alguém.*

*Faze da noite noite, e do dia dia, viverás com alegria.*

*Faz-me as barbas, far-te hei o cabelo.*

*Ferro que não se usa, enche-se de ferrugem*

*Filho de peixe sabe nadar.*

*Filho és, pai serás; assim como fizeres, assim acharás.*

*Folguemos enquanto podemos, outra hora choraremos.*

*Fugir do fumo e cair no fogo.*

*Fui para me benzer, e quebrei o nariz.*

*Galgo que muitas lebres levanta, nenhuma mata.*

*Gato esaldado de água fria tem medo.*

*Gota e gota o mar se csgota.*

*Guardou-se da môsca, e comeu a aranha.*

*Guar-te de homem que não scla, e de cão que não ladra.*

*Há males que vem por bem.*

*Homem nêscio dá às vezes bom consêlho.*

*Já que a água não vai ao moinho, vá o moinho à água.*

*Junto da ortiga nasce a rpsa.*

*Lá vão os pés aonde quere o coração.*

*Lembra-te, sogra, que foste npra.*

*Levantar a lebre para que outrem medre.*

*Levar água ao mar.*

*Longe da vista, longe do coração.*

*Mãe aguçosa, filha preguiçosa.*

*Mais apaga bpa palavra que caldeira de água.*

*Mais barato é o comprado que o pedido.*

*Mais custa mal fazer que bem fazer.*

*Mais faz quem quere que quem pode.*

*Mais quero qsnô que me leve, que cavalo que me derrube.*

*Mais vale calar que mal falar.*

*Mais vale merecer honra e não a ter que, tendo-a, não a merecer.*

*Mais vale penhor na arca que fiador na praça.*

*Mais vale perder que mais perder.*

*Mais vale que sobeje, que falte.*



- Mais vale tarde que nunca.*  
*Mais vale um pássaro na mão que dois que vão voando.*  
*Mais vale um tomo que dois te darei.*  
*Mais vêem dois olhos que um.*  
*Melhor é curar goteira que casa inteira.*  
*Melhor é dobrar que quebrar.*  
*Melhor é fazer de balde que estar de balde.*  
*Melhor é ser torto que cego de todo.*  
*Melhor é vergonha no rosto que mágoa no coração.*  
*Mete a mão no seio, não dirás do fado alheio.*  
*Mole mole se vai longe.*  
*Mudado o tempo, mudado o conselho.*  
*Mudar costume, parêlha da morte.*  
*Muito gasta o que vai e vem, mas mais o que se detem.*  
*Muito pode o galo no seu poleiro.*  
*Muito sabe a raposa, mas mais quem a toma.*  
*Muito sabe o rato, mas mais sabe o galo.*  
*Muitos morrem na guerra, mas mais vão a ela.*  
*Muito vale e pouco custa, a mau falar boa resposta.*  
*Na barba do néscio aprendem todos a rapar.*  
*Nada duvida, quem não sabe.*  
*Nada tem, quem se não contenta com o que tem.*  
*Não bebas coisa que não vejas, nem assines carta que não leias.*  
*Não busques o figo na ameixeira.*  
*Não dá quem tem, senão quem quer bem.*  
*Não digas mal do qno até que seja passado.*  
*Não é o mel para a boca do qno.*  
*Não é pobre senão o que se tem por pobre.*  
*Não é vilão o da vila, senão o que faz vilania.*  
*Não faças aos outros o que não quiseses que te façam.*

*Não há dia sem tarde.*

*Não há maior mal que o descontento de cada qual.*

*Não há mal tão lastimoso como não ter dinheiro.*

*Não há melhor espelho que amigo velho.*

*Não há pior surdo que o que não quer ouvir.*

*Não me chames bem fadado, até me veres enterrado.*

*Não o louves até que o proves.*

*Não queiras do teu amigo mais do que elle quiser contigo.*

*Não se queixe do engano, quem pela mostra compra o pano.*

*Não se tomam trutas, a bragas enxutas.*

*Não se vence perigo sem perigo.*

*Não te abaixes por pobreza, nem te alevantes por riqueza.*

*Não te faças pobre a quem te não há de fazer rico.*

*Não tem sal, nem em que o deitar.*

*Na terra dos cegos o torto é rei.*

*Néscio é quem cuida que outro não cuida.*

*Negro é o carvoeiro, branco é o seu dinheiro.*

*Nem bnda sem canto nem morte sem pranto.*

*Nem todos os que vão à guerra são soldados.*

*Ninguém é bom juiz em causa própria.*

*Ninguém se mete no que não sabe.*

*No apêrto e no perigo se conhece o amigo.*

*Nunca falta um cão que vos ladre.*

*O bem spa e o mal vpa.*

*Obra de comum, obra de nenhum.*

*Ofício de conselho, honra sem proveito.*

*O hábito não faz o monge.*

*O ignorante a todos repreende e fala mais do que menos entende.*

*O lobo perde os dentes, mas não o costume.*

- Onde fogo não há, fumo não levanta.  
O que não pode q̃l ser, deves sofrer.  
O amor e a fé nas obras se vê.  
O bem não se conhece, senão depois que se perde.  
O bom sofre, que o mau não pode.  
O bom vinho a venda traz consigo.  
Obras são amores e não palavras doces.  
O cão velho, quando ladra dá conselho.  
O caro é barato e o barato é caro.  
O demasiado rompe o sacco.  
O desejo faz formoso o feio.  
O dia de amanhã ninguém o viu.  
O fim louva a vida, e a tarde o dia.  
O hóspede e o peixe, aos três dias fede.  
Oiro é o que oiro vale.  
O mal alheio dá conselho.  
O mal entra às braçadas e sai às polegadas.  
O mal que não tem cura é loucura.  
O melão e a mulher maus são de conhecer.  
O muito se gasta e o pouco abasta.  
Onde te querem muito, não vás a miúdo.  
O olho do amo engorda o cavalo.  
O prudente tudo há de provar antes de armas tomar.  
O que é duro de passar, é doce de lembrar.  
O que em tua vida não fizeres, de teus herdeiros o não esperes.  
O que se usa, não se escusa.  
O rio passado, o Santo não lembrado.  
Os erros do médico, a terra os cobre.  
O velho na sua terra, e o moço na alheia, sempre mentem duma maneira.*

*Pqno que outrem usa pouco dura.*  
*Pão alheio caro custa.*  
*Pecado confessado é meio perdoado.*  
*Pelas qbras e não pelo vestido é o homem conhecido.*  
*Pelo mal do ferreiro matam o carpinteiro.*  
*Perdendo tempo, não se ganha dinheiro.*  
*Pois tudo sabeis e eu não sei nada, dissei-me o que esta  
manhã sonhava.*  
*Por onde vás, assim como vires assim farás.*  
*Pouco dano espanta e muito amansa.*  
*Pouco fel dana muito mel.*  
*Prata é o bem-falar, ouro é o bem-calar.*  
*Prudência é não querer o que se não pode haver.*  
*Qual o pai, tal o filho; qual o filho, tal o pai.*  
*Quando o corsário promete missas e cera, por mal  
anda o galeão.*  
*Quando o diabo reza, enganar-te quere.*  
*Quanta cabeça, tanta sentença.*  
*Quanto maior é a ventura, tanto menos é segura.*  
*Quem abrolhos semeia, espinhos colhe.*  
*Quem acorda cão dormindo, vende a paz e compra ruído.*  
*Quem as coisas muito apura, não vive vida segura.*  
*Quem bem está e mal escolhe, por mal que lhe venha  
não se anje.*  
*Quem bem quiser ceqr, a sua casa o vá buscar.*  
*Quem cqla consente.*  
*Quem canta, seus males espanta.*  
*Quem com cães se lança, com pulgas se levanta.*  
*Quem do escorpião está picado, a sombra o espanta.*  
*Quem em casa da mãe não atura, na da madrastra não  
espere ventura.*

*Quem em pedra duas vezes tropeça, não é muito quebrar a cabeça.*

*Quem erra e se emenda, a Deus se encomenda.*

*Quem mais perto está do fogo, mais se aquece.*

*Quem muito abarca pouco aperta.*

*Quem não entrar no mar, não se afogará.*

*Quem não sabe de mal, não sabe de bem.*

*Quem não vai à guerra, não morre nela.*

*Quem o seu cão quere matar, raiva lhe põe nome.*

*Quem para si não sabe, não põe a escota.*

*Quem pés não tem, coices promete.*

*Quem quando pode não quere, quando quere não pode.*

*Quem quere pescar, há-se de molhar.*

*Quem quiser vencer, aprenda a sofrer.*

*Quem se caga e pedras apanha, tempo vem que as derrama.*

*Quem se não aventurou, nem perdeu nem ganhou.*

*Quem só come seu gallo, só sela seu cavalo.*

*Quem tem telhado de vidro, não atire pedras ao do vizinho.*

*Quem tudo quere, tudo perde.*

*Quem tem quatro e gasta cinco, não há mister bolsa nem bolsinho.*

*Quereis fazer do amigo inimigo? Empréstai-lhe o vosso e pedi-lho.*

*Quer queira quer não queira, o asno há-de ir à feira.*

*Rato que não sabe mais que um buraco, asinha é tomado.*

*Salamanca, a uns sara e a outros manca.*

*Sol vertido, nunca bem colhido.*

*Senta-te em teu lugar, não te farão levantar.*

*Se queres enfermār, lava a cabeça e vai-te deitar.*

*Se queres saber quanto vale um cruzado, busca-o emprestado.*

*Se queres ser bem servida, serve-te a ti mesmo.*

*Se tens físico teu amigo, manda-o a casa de teu inimigo.*

*Sofra-se quem penas tem, que atrás de tempo tempo vem.*

*Tarde dar e negar estão a par.*

*Telha de igreja sempre gotêja.*

*Tenhamos a pata, então falarêmos na salsa.*

*Tpdo o branco não é farinha.*

*Tornai-vos a vossso mister, que sapateiro só heis-de ser.*

*Tornemos à vaca fria.*

*Tudo vem a seu tempo e os nabos no advento.*

*Uma andorinha não faz verão.*

*Uma desgraça alcança outra.*

*Uma mão lava a outra, e ambas o rosto.*

*Um grão não enche o celeiro, mas ajuda a seu companheiro.*

*Vai-se o bem para o bem, e o mal para quem o tem.*

*Vem a ventura a quem a procura.*

*Vento e ventura pouco dura.*

## XXIV. ABBREVIATIONS

Far more use is made of abbreviations, both in printed works and in handwriting, in Portuguese than in most languages.

Besides several abbreviations that are the same in both Portuguese and English, the following are the most common in Portuguese. Some writers omit the dot when the abbreviation contains a raised letter.

<i>A.</i>	<i>autqr</i>
<i>A.C.</i>	<i>qno de Cristo</i>
<i>Adm<sup>or</sup>.</i>	<i>admiradqr</i>
<i>af<sup>mo</sup>.</i>	<i>afectuosíssimo</i>
<i>af<sup>so</sup>.</i>	<i>afectuoço</i>
<i>Af<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>Afonso</i>
<i>Ag<sup>to</sup>.</i>	<i>agôsto</i>
<i>Am<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>amigo</i>
<i>Ant<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>António</i>
<i>art<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>artigo</i>
<i>a.s.</i>	<i>a saber</i>
<i>at<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>atenta</i>
<i>at<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>atento</i>
<i>c. or corr.</i>	<i>corrente</i>
<i>c. or c<sup>ta</sup>.</i>	<i>conta</i>
<i>C<sup>a</sup>. or C<sup>ia</sup>.</i>	<i>companhia</i>
<i>Cap<sup>m</sup>.</i>	<i>capitão</i>
<i>Cap. or Cap<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>capítulo</i>
<i>Cons. or Cons<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>conselheiro</i>
<i>Co<sup>l</sup>. or Cor<sup>el</sup>.</i>	<i>coronel</i>
<i>comiss<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>comissário</i>
<i>conf<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>confrqde</i>
<i>conv<sup>mta</sup>.</i>	<i>convenientemente</i>

<i>Crº.</i>	<i>criado</i>
<i>d.</i>	<i>dias</i>
<i>D.</i> (pl. <i>D.D.</i> )	<i>Dom</i>
<i>D.</i> or <i>dra.</i>	<i>direita</i> (in house addresses)
<i>Dª.</i>	<i>Dona, dita</i>
<i>d/c</i>	<i>do corrente (mês)</i>
<i>D.G.</i>	<i>Deus guarde</i>
<i>Digº.</i>	<i>digníssimo</i>
<i>Dº.</i>	<i>dito</i>
<i>domº.</i>	<i>domingo</i>
<i>Dr.</i>	<i>Doutor</i>
<i>Dª.</i>	<i>Deus</i>
<i>E.</i> or <i>Escº.</i>	<i>escudo</i>
<i>Emª.</i>	<i>Eminência</i>
<i>Emº.</i>	<i>Eminentíssimo</i>
<i>Eª., Exª.,</i> or <i>Excª.</i>	<i>Excelência</i>
<i>Exº.</i> or <i>Excº.</i>	<i>Excelentíssimo</i>
<i>Exª.</i> or <i>Excª.</i>	<i>Excelentíssima</i>
<i>E.R.M.</i>	<i>espera receber mercê</i>
<i>F.</i> or <i>Fulº.</i>	<i>Fulano</i>
<i>Ferª.</i>	<i>Ferreira</i>
<i>Fevº.</i>	<i>fevereiro</i>
<i>Figdº.</i>	<i>Figueiredo</i>
<i>F.</i> or <i>Fr.</i>	<i>Frei, Frade</i>
<i>Franº.</i> or <i>Frº.</i>	<i>Francisco</i>
<i>Fz.</i>	<i>Fernandes</i>
<i>Genª.</i> or <i>Genª.</i>	<i>General</i>
<i>Gnª.</i> or <i>Glª.</i>	<i>Gonçalves</i>
<i>govº.</i>	<i>governo</i>
<i>grª.</i> , <i>grº.</i>	<i>grato, gratíssimo</i>
<i>humª.</i>	<i>humilde</i>
<i>i.é.</i>	<i>isto é</i>
<i>Ilª.</i> or <i>ilª.</i>	<i>ilustre</i>
<i>Ilº.</i> or <i>Ilmº.</i> (pl. <i>Ilmª.</i> )	<i>Ilustríssimo</i>



<i>Il<sup>ma</sup>.</i> or <i>Ilm<sup>a</sup>.</i> (pl. <i>Ilm<sup>as</sup>.</i> )	<i>Ilustríssima</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Imperial</i>
<i>inst<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>instância</i>
<i>intend<sup>te</sup>.</i>	<i>intendente</i>
<i>Jan<sup>o</sup>.</i> or <i>Jan<sup>ro</sup>.</i>	<i>janeiro</i>
<i>Joaq<sup>m</sup>.</i> or <i>J<sup>m</sup>.</i>	<i>Joaquim</i>
<i>Je.</i> or <i>J<sup>e</sup>.</i>	<i>José</i>
<i>l.</i>	<i>linha</i>
<i>l<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>livro</i>
<i>lic.</i> or <i>lic<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>licenciado</i>
<i>Lx<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>Lisboa</i>
<i>m.</i> or <i>m<sup>to</sup>.</i>	<i>muito</i>
<i>M<sup>a</sup>.</i> or <i>Mr<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>Maria</i>
<i>m<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>minha</i>
<i>M.</i> or <i>M<sup>e</sup>.</i>	<i>Mãdre</i>
<i>M<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>maio</i>
<i>M.D.</i>	<i>muito digno</i>
<i>M<sup>t</sup>.</i>	<i>mercê</i>
<i>M<sup>e</sup>.</i>	<i>mestre</i>
<i>Man<sup>t</sup>.</i> , <i>M<sup>t</sup>.</i> or <i>M<sup>el</sup>.</i>	<i>Manuel</i>
<i>Mor.</i> , <i>Mgr.</i> or <i>Mons.</i>	<i>Monsenhôr</i>
<i>muít<sup>mo</sup>.</i>	<i>muítíssimo</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>Fulano</i>
<i>N.N.</i>	<i>anónimo</i>
<i>N.S.</i>	<i>Nosso Senhôr</i>
<i>N<sup>a</sup>.S<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>Nossa Senhora</i>
<i>n/c</i>	<i>nossa conta</i>
<i>n/resp<sup>e</sup>.</i>	<i>nossa responsabilidade</i>
<i>o/</i>	<i>ordem</i>
<i>Obd<sup>o</sup>.</i> or <i>Obg<sup>do</sup>.</i>	<i>obrigado</i>
<i>Obd<sup>a</sup>.</i> or <i>Obg<sup>da</sup>.</i>	<i>obrigada</i>
<i>O.D.C.</i>	<i>oferece, dedica e consagra</i>
<i>p<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>para</i>
<i>P.A.</i> or <i>p.a.</i>	<i>por ausência, por autorização</i>

<i>P.</i> or <i>p<sup>e</sup>.</i>	<i>Pqdre</i>
<i>p<sup>do</sup>.</i>	<i>passqdo</i>
<i>Per<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>Pereira</i>
<i>P.E.F.</i>	<i>por especial favor</i>
<i>p.ex.</i>	<i>por exemplo</i>
<i>pg.</i>	<i>pagou</i>
<i>p.m.</i> ou <i>m.</i>	<i>pouco mais ou menos</i>
<i>P.M.P.</i>	<i>por mão própria</i>
<i>p.o.</i>	<i>por ordem</i>
<i>p.p.</i>	<i>próxima passada or porte</i>
	<i>pqgo</i>
<i>pp<sup>do</sup>.</i>	<i>próximo passado</i>
<i>p<sup>r</sup>.</i>	<i>por</i>
<i>q̃.</i> or <i>q<sup>e</sup>.</i>	<i>que</i>
<i>q<sup>do</sup>.</i>	<i>quando</i>
<i>q<sup>m</sup>.</i> or <i>q.</i>	<i>quem</i>
<i>q<sup>to</sup>.</i>	<i>quanto</i>
<i>qual<sup>e</sup>.</i>	<i>qualidade</i>
<i>quant<sup>e</sup>.</i>	<i>quantidade</i>
<i>q.e.g.e.</i>	<i>que em glória esteja</i>
<i>q.e.p.d.</i>	<i>que em paz descansce</i>
<i>R.</i>	<i>Rua</i>
<i>Rev<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>Reverência, Reverendíssima</i>
<i>Rev<sup>mo</sup>.</i> , <i>Rev<sup>mo</sup>.</i> , or <i>Rv<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>Reverendíssimo</i>
<i>Rv<sup>do</sup>.</i> or <i>R<sup>o</sup>.</i>	<i>Reverendo</i>
<i>Roiž.</i>	<i>Rodrigues</i>
<i>r.</i> , <i>rs.</i> or <i>R<sup>s</sup>.</i>	<i>reis</i>
<i>s/</i>	<i>sôbre</i>
<i>s/c</i>	<i>sua cçsa, sua conta</i>
<i>S.</i> , <i>S<sup>to</sup>.</i> or <i>St<sup>o</sup>.</i> (fem. <i>St<sup>a</sup>.</i> or <i>S<sup>ta</sup>.</i> )	<i>San, São, Santo, Santa</i>
<i>S.A.</i>	<i>Sua Alteza</i>
<i>S.E.C.</i>	<i>Sua excelentíssima cçsa</i>
<i>S.I.C.</i>	<i>Sua ilustre cçsa</i>
<i>S.Ex<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>Sua Excelência</i>

<i>seg<sup>ta</sup></i> .	<i>seguinte</i>
<i>seg<sup>o</sup></i> .	<i>segundo</i>
<i>S.M.</i>	<i>Sua Majestade</i>
<i>S.N.</i>	<i>Serviço Nacional</i>
<i>S.P.</i>	<i>Serviço Público</i>
<i>S.R.</i>	<i>Serviço da República</i>
<i>S.S.</i>	<i>Sua Senhoria, Sua Santidade,</i> <i>or santíssimo</i>
<i>SS<sup>mo</sup></i> .	<i>Santíssimo</i>
<i>Sr. or Snr. (pl. Snrs. or Sras).</i>	<i>Senhor</i>
<i>S<sup>a</sup>., Sr<sup>a</sup>. or Snr<sup>a</sup>. (pl. Sras.</i> <i>or Sras.)</i>	<i>Senhora</i>
<i>s.e. ou o.</i>	<i>salvo erro ou omissão</i>
<i>ten<sup>te</sup></i> .	<i>tenente</i>
<i>tít. or tít<sup>o</sup></i> .	<i>título</i>
<i>V. or V<sup>d</sup></i> .	<i>Você</i>
<i>V<sup>a</sup></i> .	<i>Viúva, Vossa</i>
<i>V.A.</i>	<i>Vossa Alteza</i>
<i>V. Em<sup>a</sup></i> .	<i>Vossa Eminência</i>
<i>V<sup>a</sup>.E<sup>a</sup>., V.Ex<sup>a</sup>., V<sup>a</sup>.Ex<sup>cia</sup>. or</i> <i>V.Exc<sup>a</sup>. (pl. V.Ex<sup>as</sup>).</i>	<i>Vossa Excelência</i>
<i>v.g. or vg.</i>	<i>verbigrácia, por exemplo</i>
<i>V.Maj<sup>e</sup></i> .	<i>Vossa Majestade</i>
<i>Ven<sup>dor</sup>., Ven<sup>or</sup>. or V<sup>or</sup>.</i>	<i>venerador</i>
<i>V.M<sup>d</sup>., V.M., V<sup>a</sup>.M<sup>d</sup>. or</i> <i>Vmc<sup>d</sup>. (pl. Vms. or Vmc<sup>es</sup>.)</i>	<i>Vossa Mercê, Vossemecê</i>
<i>V.P.</i>	<i>Vossa Paternidade</i>
<i>V.R.</i>	<i>Vossa Reverência</i>
<i>V.Rev<sup>ma</sup></i> .	<i>Vossa Reverendíssima</i>
<i>V.S<sup>a</sup>., V.S. or V<sup>a</sup>. Sr<sup>a</sup>.</i>	<i>Vossa Senhoria</i>
<i>Xp<sup>o</sup>. or Xpto</i>	<i>Cristo</i>
<i>7<sup>br</sup></i>	<i>setembro</i>
<i>8<sup>br</sup></i>	<i>outubro</i>
<i>9<sup>br</sup></i>	<i>novembro</i>
<i>10<sup>br</sup></i>	<i>dezembro</i>

## INDEX

The figures refer to the numbers of the paragraphs.  
Irregular verbs are marked with an asterisk.

- a*, pronunciation, 7
- â*, pronunciation, 7
- ã*, pronunciation, 16. b
- a*, prep., uses, 677
  - before indirect object, 553, 677. a. b
  - before direct object, 554, 555
  - with names of persons, 554
  - in adverbial expressions, 654. a, 677. h
  - before *quem*, 305. d
  - after adjectives, 677. k
  - after comparatives, 154. d
  - with verbs of calling, etc., 556, 557
  - before an infinitive, 572-575
  - verbs construed with, 561, 677. l. m
- abbreviations, p. 631 ff.
- acabar* + gerund or + *de* + inf., 455
  - construed with *com*, 562. a
  - construed with *por* + inf., 586
- acaso*, 671
- accent, 22
- accent marks, 39
  - acute, 4, 40, 229. c, 386. c, 399
  - circumflex, 4, 41, 229. c, 386. c
  - grave, 4, 42
- accented syllable, 22-34
  - secondary, 32. a-c
  - variations in accentuation, 33, 34
- acertar*, construed with *com*, 562. g

- aclamar*, 556, 557  
*acolá*, 652. a  
*acreditar*, construed with *em*, 564. e  
adjectives, 150–182  
    plural, 110, 151  
    feminine, 152  
    position, 182  
    comparison, 153–168  
    irregular comparison, 165–168  
    second term of comparison introduced by *a*, *de*,  
        (*do*) *que*, 154  
    agreement, with a single noun, 174–178  
        with two or more nouns, 179  
        of compound adjectives, 180  
    used substantively, 150, 181  
    as adverbs, 641. d  
    as prepositions, 674. b  
adverbs, formation, 639–641, 647  
    list, 651–654  
    position, 650  
    repetition, 638  
    comparison, 649  
    of negation, 655–670  
    of doubt, 671  
    of affirmation, denial, question, and answer, 672, 673  
    as adjectives, 644  
    as prepositions, 674. b  
    adjectives as adverbs, 641. d  
    adverbial locutions, 683. o  
    diminutives, 645  
*ãe*, pronunciation, 17. e  
'age,' 225, 702  
agent, expressed by *de*, 683. q  
    expressed by *por*, 689. i

*agora*, 653. a

agreement, of adjectives, see adjective

number of verb, 547–551

with one subject, 547

with partitive and collective subjects and numerals,  
548

with more than one subject, 549

with coördinated subjects, 550

with infinitive subjects, 551

with *Vossa Excelência*, etc., 174. b, 236, 552. e

person of verb, 552

*ai*, 652. b

*ainda*, 653. b

*al*, 320

*além*, 652. c

*algo*, 321

*alguém*, 322

*algum*, 323, 335. a

*alheio*, 324

*ali*, 652. d

alphabet, names and pronunciation of letters, 1, 2

*alto*, comparison, 165. b, 166. a. b

*am*, see *ão*

*amanhã*, 653. c

*amar*, conjugation, 377

compound tenses, 464

*ambos*, 325

*ameaçar* (+*de*) + inf., 577

*andar*, uses, 450

'another,' 338. g

*ante*, 678

*antes*, 653. d

*ao(s)* = *a* (prep.) + *o(s)* (art.), 15. d, 63

*ão*, *am*, writing and pronunciation, 17. a. b. c, 380

- após*, 679  
apostrophe, 38. c  
*aprender* + *a* (or *de*) + inf., 572. a  
*aquele*, 291. d, 295  
*àquele*, *àquela*, *àquilo*, 15. c, 42. i, 291. d  
*aqueloutro*, 15. g  
*aqui*, 652. e  
*aquilo*, 299, 300  
    combined with prepositions, 301  
*argüir*, conjugation, 393  
arithmetical signs and formulas, 206  
articles, see definite, indefinite  
 $\grave{a}(s) = a$  (prep.) +  $a(s)$  (art.), 15. c, 42.1, 63, 64. a  
*assim*, 654. b  
*até*, 653. e, 680  
*ategora*, 15. g  
*através*, 681  
augmentatives, of nouns, 146, 147  
    of adjectives, 169–173  
auxiliary verbs, 422–458  
*avaliar*, construed with *em*, 564. f  
*avô*, etc., 105. c  
-*avo*, suffix, 205. e  
  
*b*, pronunciation, 19  
*baixo*, 652. f  
    comparison, 165. b, 166. c. d  
*banhar-se*, conjugation, 508  
*bastante*, 326, 650. d  
*beber*, construed with *em*, 564. g  
*beltrano*, *beltrão*, 367  
*bem*, uses, 642, 643, 654. c  
    comparison, 649. e  
    before positive and comparative of adjectives, 162

*boiar*, conjugation, 408

*bom*, inflection, 152. k

uses, 642. a. b. c, 654. d

comparison, 165. b, 166. e-g, 642. a

Brazilian Portuguese, 48, 49

vocabulary, 50

morphology, 51

phonology, 10. e, 52, 53

syntax, 54

vulgarisms, 55, 200. c, 229. b, 234. b, 235. a. b. c,

236. c, 249, 250. a, 306. b, 383. c, 409, 525. a,

589. b, 595. a, 685. g, 727, 728. b, 730

*c*, pronunciation, 19

*ç*, pronunciation, 19

*cá*, 652. g

*\*caber*, conjugation, 469

as impersonal verb, 527. b

*cada*, 327

*cada qual*, 327. a. b

adjective agreeing with, 174. d

*cada um*, 327. a. b

adjective agreeing with, 174. d

*\*cair*, conjugation, 470

capitalization, 37

cardinals, see numerals

*carregar*, construed with *com*, 562. b

*casar*, construed with *com*, 562. c

*cear*, conjugation, 405

*cedilha*, 38. b

*cem*, 190, 192

*cento*, 189

*ch*, pronunciation, 19

represented by *qu* or *c*, 36. c



- chamar*, with *a* before direct object, 556, 557  
*cheirar*, construed with *a*, 561. i  
*cima*, 652. h  
*coisa*, 328  
collectives, see numerals  
collective subjects, agreement of verb, 548  
*com*, uses, 682  
    verbs construed with, 562, 563. c  
*começar* + *a* (*de* or *por*) + inf., 572. b, 576. b, 586  
*comer*, construed with *em*, 564. g  
commands, 595  
*como*, 706  
    with comparatives, 155. a  
    *tanto . . . como . . .*, 357  
comparison, see adjectives and adverbs  
compound tenses, see verbs  
*concluir*, conjugation, 416. a  
*condenar*, followed by *em*, *por*, or *como*, 557. b  
conditional, see tenses  
conditional sentences, use of mood and tense, 631–637  
*conhecer*, 500  
conjugations, see verbs  
conjunctions, list, 705–715  
    position, 704  
    repeated, 704  
*considerar*, followed by *como*, 557. c  
*consigo*, 232. c  
consonants, 6, 19, 20  
    final, 20. a  
    doubled, 20. b. d  
    reduction of doubled, 36. b  
*construir*, conjugation, 416. b  
*contar*, construed with *com*, 562. d  
*continuar* + gerund, 454

- convidar* + *a* (or *para*) + inf., 572. c  
*copiar*, conjugation, 406  
correlative sentences, subjunctive in, 608  
*coser*, conjugation, 412  
\**crer*, conjugation, 471  
    construed with *em*, 564. e  
*criar*, conjugation, 409  
*cujo*, interrogative and relative, 316  
*cumprir*, construed with *com*, 562. e  
currency, Portuguese and Brazilian, 226  
*d*, pronunciation, 19  
*da*, *do*, etc., 63  
*dali*, 653. f  
*daquele*, etc., 291. b  
*daquilo*, 301  
\**dar*, conjugation, 472  
    construed with *com*, 562. f  
    *dar* + *a* (or *em*) + inf., 574. b  
date idioms, 215–223  
dative, ethical, 243  
days of the week, 217–219  
*de*, uses, 683  
    as partitive sign, 683. f  
    after adjectives, 583, 683. f. j. m  
    after comparatives, 154. e  
    with the agent after the passive, 683. q  
    before an inf., 576–584  
    verbs construed with, 563, 576, 683. m. n  
defective verbs, 530–535  
definite article, forms, 61, 62  
    position, 60  
    repetition, 65  
    use of, 65–67, 80, 81. a. c. d, 82. d, 86, 87. b, 88. e-g,  
    89. b. c

- definite article, contractions, 63, 64  
    as a demonstrative, 297  
    agreement, 60  
    with substantivized words, 68  
    in expressions of possession, 79. a-d, 281, 289  
    in expressions of relationship, 80  
    with personal names, 77  
    with the superlative, 156. a, 168, 649. b  
    with the title of a book, 64. f-h  
    with possessive force, 79. d, 80. b  
    for the indefinite article, 89. d  
    in apposition, 78. g-i  
    in direct address, 78. b. d  
    with titles, 78. a-f  
    with *Santo, São*, 78. c  
    with names of countries, etc., 69-74  
    with names of languages, 87  
    with *casa*, 75  
    with points of the compass, 76  
    with abstracts and in a general sense, 81  
    in expressions of time, 82  
    of measure, 83-85  
    with a series of objects, 86  
    with *ambos, todo, outro*, etc., 88  
    in set phrases, 89  
    before *outro*, 338. b  
    before *tal*, 347  
*demais*, 330, 650. e, 654. g, 715  
*demasiado*, 330, 331  
demonstratives, 291-303  
    forms, 291. a  
    position, 296  
    omission, 298  
    agreement, 296. a

- demonstratives, special uses, 303  
    with the possessive, 284  
    combined with prepositions, 291. b, 301  
    see *êste, êsse, aquele, isto, isso, aquilo*
- 'denial,' adverbs of, 673
- dentro*, 652. i, 684
- depois*, 653. i
- desde*, 653. j
- desejar* (+ *de*) + inf., 577
- \**despedir*, conjugation, 488
- \**desprover*, conjugation, 495
- dêsse*, etc., 291. b
- dêste*, etc., 291. b
- determinar* (+ *de*) + inf., 577
- dever*, conjugation, 378  
    *dever* (+ *de*) + inf., 577  
    imperf. for pret. 614. f
- diæresis, 43.2
- dialects of Portuguese, in Portugal, 46, 47  
    in Brazil, see Brazilian Portuguese  
    in the Azores, 56
- diante*, 652. j, 653. l
- dignar-se* (+ *de*) + inf., 577
- dimensions, see numerals
- diminutives, 146-149  
    of nouns, 148  
    plural, 148. g  
    feminine, 148. g  
    of Christian names, 149  
    of adjectives, 169-173  
    of adverbs, 148. i, 645
- diphthongs, 8-12, 15, 17, 18  
    reduction of, 15. m

- direct object, preceded by *a*, 554  
     with verbs of 'calling,' etc., 556, 557  
     *a* omitted, 555  
*disso, disto*, 301  
 'distance,' 700  
*distinguir*, conjugation, 392  
 distributive construction, 125  
 division of syllables, 35  
*\*dizer*, conjugation, 473  
 'do,' 'does,' 422  
*Dom, Dona*, 78. b, 235. e  
*do que*, after comparatives, 154. b. c  
*dormir*, conjugation, 417  
 'doubt,' expressions of, 671  
*dum, duma, duns, dumas*, 91
- e*, pronunciation, 7  
*ê*, pronunciation, 7  
*ê*, pronunciation, 7  
*è*, pronunciation, 7  
*ẽ*, pronunciation, 16. c  
*e*, 715  
     with numerals, 197  
     after *tal*, 351  
*eão*, pronunciation, 17. h  
*eis*, 652. k  
     with personal pronouns, 229. c  
*el*, 62. a  
*êle*, as subject of impersonal verb, 523  
*eleger*, construed with *para, como, em*, etc., 557. d  
*em*, pronunciation, 17. e  
     uses, 685  
     before a gerund, 538. e  
     verbs construed with, 564

- em*, before an inf., 585  
     after adjectives, 685. e  
*embora*, 654. f  
*encontrar*, construed with *com*, 562. g  
*encurtar*, construed with *com*, 562. h  
*ensinar* (+ *a*), 561. c  
*então*, 653. k  
*entender* + *de*, 563. e  
*entrar* + *a* (or *de*) + inf., 573. b  
*entre*, 686  
*eõe*, pronunciation, 17. i  
*escudo*, 226  
*esposo*, etc., 105. a  
*esquecer*, 519. a, 563. f  
*êsse*, 293, 294  
*essoutro*, *estoutro*, 15. g, 291. c, 338. a  
*\*estar*, conjugation, 425, 431  
     compound tenses, 465  
     forming compound tenses, 543. b  
     meanings, 434–436  
     with gerund or inf., 439–442  
     as impersonal verb, 527. c  
     *estar* + *a* + inf., 439  
     *estar* + *para* + inf., 440  
     *estar* + *por* + inf., 441  
     followed by *de*, 437  
*êste*, 292, 294  
     position, 296. b  
     with the possessive, 286  
*estimar*, construed with *em*, 564. f  
*\*esvair*, conjugation, 475  
 ‘except,’ 670, 691, 705.2  
 exclamation, points of, 38  
*\*expedir*, conjugation, 488

*extorquir*, conjugation, 394

*f*, pronunciation, 19

*\*fazer*, conjugation, 476

as an impersonal verb, 527. d

in expressions of natural phenomena, 527. d

construed with *de*, 557. e, 563. g

*feder*, 531

*feira*, 219

*ficar*, conjugation, 388

meanings, 436, 451

construed with *com*, 562. i

*folgar* + *de* (or *em*) + inf., 580. a

*fora*, 652. l

fractions, see numerals

*fremir*, 531

*frigir*, conjugation, 421

*fugir*, conjugation, 391

construed with *a* or *de*, 561. g

*fulano*, 367

future, see tenses

position of object pronoun with future, 274

*g*, pronunciation, 19

*ganhar*, 402. b

*gemer*, conjugation, 411

gender, see nouns

genitive case, 103

*gente*, 365, 547. d

gerund, 537, 538

position of object pronouns with, 254–261

with *estar*, 439–442

with *andar*, 450

with other auxiliaries, 537

gerund, preceded by *em*, 538. e

*grande*, 152. m

comparison, 165. b, 166. h-j

*gu*, pronunciation, 19

*h*, pronunciation, 19

when used, 36. e

in the future and conditional, 382. d

\**haver*, conjugation, 427, 432

compound tenses, 465

forming compound tenses, 443, 461, 463, 543. b

uses, 443

as an impersonal verb, 524

*haver* and *ter*, 443-448

construed with *com*, 562. j

*haver* + *que* (or *de* or *a*) + inf., 444-446, 582, 617. f

hiatus, 15. f

*hoje*, 653. m

*homem*, 364

homonymous words, 45

'hungry,' 'thirsty,' etc., 458

hyphen, 36. h, 37. f

*i*, pronunciation, 7

*í*, pronunciation, 7

*ì*, pronunciation, 7

*ĩ*, pronunciation, 16. d

*ião*, pronunciation, 17. h

\**impedir*, conjugation, 488

imperative mood, forms, 383

uses, 595

équivalents, 587. a, 595. d, 596

position of object pronouns with, 253



imperfect, see tenses

impersonal verbs, 522–530

to describe natural phenomena, 528

*importar*, as impersonal verb, 527. c

construed with *com*, 562. k

indefinite article, forms, 90

plural *uns*, 92. c

contractions, 91

omission, 93, 95

omitted with *outro*, 338. b

omitted in the expression *nem . . . nem . . .*, 97

omitted before a noun in apposition, 96

omitted in sentences of doubt or denial, 98

omitted in indefinite expressions, 102

omitted after *ter* and *estar*, 99

omitted after *meio*, 100

omitted after *que*, 101

with names of persons, 92. d

agreement and repetition, 60, 92, 94

before and after *tal*, 92. d, 102, 348

indefinites, 319–368

with the possessive, 284

expressed by the reflexive, 319. a

expressed by 1st or 3rd pers. pl. of verb, 319. b

expressed by *ninguém*, 319. c

expressed by *gente*, 365

indicative, or subjunctive, 598, 599. b, 600–609

indirect object, 103, 553, 677. b

infinitive, personal, forms, 385, 588

uses, 590–594

impersonal, uses, 587

substantivized infinitives, 566. a. b

infinitive, or subjunctive, 598. a. b, 609. b

position of pronoun objects, 262–272

- infinitive, used as imperat., 587. a  
     in interrogations, 587. b  
     with force of a clause, 587. c  
     after adjectives, 570, 583, 587. d  
     preceded by a preposition, 572-586  
     preceded by *a*, the equivalent of a gerund, 573,  
         592, 637  
     without a preceding preposition, 566-571  
     depending on an impersonal verb, 567  
     present inf. instead of past, 587. e  
     active inf. with value of passive, 571. c, 587. f. g  
     to render English past part., 587. h  
     verb + *a* + inf., 572-574  
     verb + *de* + inf., 576-582  
     verb + *em* + inf., 585  
     adjective + *a* + inf., 575  
     adjective + *de* + inf., 583  
     noun + *de* + inf., 584  
     *para* and *por* + inf., 586  
     *andor* + *a* + inf., 450  
     *estar* + *a* + inf., 439  
     *estar* + *para* + inf., 440  
     *ficar* + *a* + inf., 451  
     *ter* (or *haver*) + *que* (or *de* or *a*) + inf., 444-448  
 interjections, list, 716  
 interrogation, points of, 38. a  
 interrogatives, 304-306; see *quem*, *que*, *qual*, *quanto*, *cujo*  
 interrogative sentences, word order, 248, 672, 727-730  
     locutions, 617. c, 673. e. f  
 \**ir*, conjugation, 479  
     as auxiliary, 452  
     as impersonal verb, 527. f  
     + gerund, 453. a-e  
     + *a* + inf., 453. d

- \**ir*, construed with *com*, 562. l
  - ir* and *ir-se*, 514
- irregular verbs, 466–507
- isso*, *isto*, 241, 299, 300
  - combined with prepositions, 301
- 'it,' 233. a .
- j*, pronunciation, 19
- já*, 616. a, 653. n
- jamaís*, 657–659
- \**jazer*, conjugation, 481
- jogar* (+ *a*), 561. d
- k*, 1. b, 36. d
- l*, pronunciation, 19
- lá*, 652. m, 653. o
- lembrar*, 519. b
- \**ler*, conjugation, 482
- 'let,' 595. b. c
- lh*, pronunciation, 19
- lha(s)*, 231
- lhe*, to express an undetermined value, 244
- lho(s)*, 231
- liaison*, 20. c, 21
- lo*, *la*, etc., = *o*, *a*, etc., 62. b, 229. c-f, 386
- logo*, 653. p
- longe*, 652. n
- m*, pronunciation, 19
- ma(s)*, 231. a
- mais*, 154. a, 165. b, 329, 654. g. i
  - o mais*, 329. a

*mais, não mais*, 329. c

*mais de*, with plural verb, 548. d. e

*mal*, 642. a. b. d

comparison, 649. e

*mandar*, with inf. or subjunctive, 571. c. d

*mau*, uses, 642, 643

comparison, 165. b, 642. a

'measure,' 677. d, 700-703

*mecê*, 235. c

\**medir*, conjugation, 483

*meio*, position, 182. e

agreement, used adverbially, 175

without article, 100, 205. b

*menina*, 235. f. g

*menos*, 154. a, 649. a. e, 654. h. i

*-mente*, 641

\**mentir*, conjugation, 484

*mero*, position, 182. e

*mesmíssimo*, 332. i

*mesmo*, 332

*a si mesmo(s)*, 520

*metade*, 205

*mil*, 192, 193

*milhão*, 196

*milhar*, 194

*milheiro*, 195

*mil réis*, 226

'mine,' 285

*mn*, pronunciation, 19

*mo(s)*, 231. a

'months,' 216

mood, see conditional, imperative, indicative, infinitive,  
participle, subjunctive

'Mr. and Mrs.,' 235. 1

- muito* and *mui*, 17. g, 18. c, 333  
    position, 182. e  
    before the positive and comparative of adjectives, 162  
    comparison, 165. b, 649. e  
    as adverb, 654. j  
multiplicatives, 183, 208
- n*, pronunciation, 19  
*nada*, 334  
    as adverb, 659, 661  
*nalgum(a)*, etc., 323  
*não*, 655, 656  
    position, 650. b, 655. a. b  
    with *algum*, 323. d  
    with *nada*, 334. b  
    with *nenhum*, 335. b  
    with *ninguém*, 336. b  
    *não que*, 655. c  
    *já não*, *não já*, etc., 655. f. g  
*naquele*, etc., 291. b  
*naquilo*, 301  
nasalization, 16–18  
nasal diphthongs and triphthongs, 17, 18  
'natural phenomena,' 528  
*negar*, conjugation, 389  
negation, adverbs of, 655–670  
'neither . . . nor . . .', 665  
*nem*, 662–668  
*nem . . . nem . . .*, 363. b, 665  
*nenhum*, 335, 336. a  
*nêsse*, *nêste*, etc., 291. b  
*nh*, pronunciation, 19  
*ninguém*, 336  
*nisso*, *nisto*, 301, 302

'no,' 655. h, 673

*no, na*, etc., 63, 64. d, 229. g. h

*nomear*, 556, 557

'nor,' 'nor either,' 662

*nós*, for *eu*, 228, 233. d

adjective agreeing with, 174. c

reinforced by *outros*, 338. f

agreement of verb with, 547. c

'not,' 'not even,' 662

'not one,' 664

'nothing but,' 670

nouns, gender, 103, 126–128

determined by meaning, 129, 130

endings, 131–135

of compound words, 135

nouns of two genders, 143

with different meanings when masc. or fem., 143. c-e

to express sex distinction, 136–142

plural, 103, 104, 106–109

change of *o* to *o* in plural, 105

plural of compound words, 116–124

plural of proper names, 115

nouns used only in the sing., 111

nouns used only in the pl., 112

with different meanings when sing. or pl., 113

*num, numa*, etc., 91

numerals, 183–224

cardinals, 183

position, 198

use of *e* with, 197

with the possessive, 284

in dates, 220–223

for time of day, 224

for dimension, 207

- numerals, age idioms, 225, 702
  - in titles of rulers, 201
  - ordinals, 183
  - cardinals used for ordinals, 199–204, 220
  - collectives, 142, 214
  - decimals, 205. f
  - fractionals, 183, 205
  - definite article in expressing, 84
  - multiplicatives, 183, 208
  - arithmetical formulas, 206
- nunca*, 657–660
- o*, pronunciation, 7
- ó*, pronunciation, 7
- ô*, pronunciation, 7
- ò*, pronunciation, 7
- õ*, pronunciation, 16. e
- $\rho > \varphi$  in pl. of nouns and adjectives, 105, 151. b. c
- o*, *a*, etc., become *lo*, *la*, etc., 229. c, 386
- o* 'so,' 241
- odiar*, conjugation, 407
- õe*, pronunciation, 17. f
- oi*, pronunciation, 10. e
- onde*, 318, 345. b, 652. o
  - with indicative, 604
- 'one,' 319, 515
- 'one by one,' 213
- 'one of my friends,' 289
- 'only,' 670. a. c
- ontem*, 653. q
- ora*, 653. r, 707
- order of words, 717–733
  - position of pers. pronouns, 246–274
  - position of pron. subj. of pers. inf., 589. a

- order of words, position of adverbs, 650  
    in interrogative sentences, 248  
    after *em que*, 730
- ordinals, see numerals
- orthography, reformed, 36
- ou*, pronunciation, 10. e
- outrem*, 337
- outro*, 338
- outro que não*, 338. j
- outro que tal*, 338. i
- outro tanto*, 210, 338. h
- outros*, added to *nós*, *vós*, 78. i, 233. d
- \**ouvir*, conjugation, 485
- p*, pronunciation, 19
- 'page of book,' etc., 114, 200. b. c
- para*, uses, 687  
    pronunciation, 15. e  
    followed by an inf., 586  
    verbs construed with, 565. b, 687. a. b. d  
    *para com*, 687. g
- parecer*, as an impersonal verb, 527. g  
    construed with *com*, 562. m  
    construed with inf., 568. c
- \**parir*, conjugation, 486
- participle, past, 384, 461–465, 539–545  
    agreement, 539. a-e  
    position, 722  
    double participles, 543–545  
    with *estar*, 436  
    with *ficar*, 436  
    with *ser*, 433. c, 436, 463–465  
    with *ter*, 463–465  
    without auxiliary, 539. a, 540, 541, 587. i



participle, present, 536

English forms in '-ing,' 536. d, 538. a. b

*partir*, conjugation, 379

partitive expressions

use of *de* in, 683. f

definite article omitted, 81. c

passive voice, see verbs

\**pedir*, conjugation, 487

+ *que* + subjunctive, 580. b

*pelo*, etc., 7, 63

*pensar* (+ *de*) + inf., 577

*pequeno*, 165. b, 166. n. o

*per*, 688

\**perder*, conjugation, 489

perfect tenses, see tenses

periphrastic forms, in conjugation, 613. f, 614. g, 617. c. f. g.

personal inf., see infinitive

personal pronouns, forms, 227-231

third person, 229

prepositional forms, 230

objective and prepositional, for subject, forms, 234

as equivalent of *aquele*, 297

position of subject pron., 246

position of single object pron., 247-251

position of two object pronouns, 252

with the imperative, 253

with the gerund, 254-261

with the infinitive, 262-272

with the future, 274

with compound tenses, 273

indirect object pron. as equivalent of possessive, 278

omission of object pron., 242

duplication of pronouns, 237-239

in address, 235, 236

- personal pronouns, subject pron., 233
  - after comparatives, 154. f
  - with impersonal verbs, 300, 523
  - not expressed, 233. b
  - with *parecer*, etc., 245
- pesar*, 527. h
- peessoa*, 366
- ph*, pronunciation, 19
  - represented by *f*, 36. c
- phonetic symbols, 4–6
- phonetic transcription, 58, 59
- pico*, 211
- place 'where,' 677. c, 683. b, 689. b, 697, 'whither,' 698,  
'whence,' 699
- pluperfect, see 'tenses'
- plural, see nouns, adjectives
- \**poder*, conjugation, 490
  - as impersonal verb, 527. i
- por*, uses, 654. l, 688, 689
  - verbs construed with, 557. h, 565, 689. a
  - before an inf., 586
- pôr*, conjugation, 491–493
- pôr o nome de*, 557. f
- porém*, 704
- porque*, 706
- Portuguese, history and dialects of, 46
- position, see order of words
- possessives, 275–290
  - forms, 275
  - position, 288
  - omitted, 287
  - agreement, 276. a. d. f
  - repetition, 276. b. c
  - substituted by def. art., 79. d, 80. b, 277

- possessives, substituted by indirect object pron., 278  
    in direct address, 283  
    article with possessive, 79, 281, 289  
    to express approximate quantity, 279  
    used absolutely, 282  
    expressed by *de*, 103
- pouco*, 339, 654. k  
    comparison, 165. b, 649. e  
    position, 182. e  
    agreement, 339. b
- \**prazer*, conjugation, 494
- precatar*, 533
- precaver*, 532
- predicate, 553–565  
    agreement, 558
- preguntar* (+ *a*), 561. e
- preparar* + *a* (or *para*) + inf., 572. c
- prepositions, list, 674–692  
    repetition, 675  
    verbs construed with, 559–565  
    infinitives construed with, 572–586
- \**preterir*, conjugation, 480
- preterite, see tenses
- prevenir*, conjugation, 420
- 'price,' 677. d, 682. b, 689. j, 703
- primeiro*, 185
- primo*, 185
- principiar* + *a* (or *de* or *por*) + inf., 578, 586
- pronouns, see demonstrative, indefinite, interrogative,  
    personal, possessive, reflexive, relative
- pronunciation, 3  
    exercise in, 57–59
- próprio*, 340  
    with possessives, 286  
    replacing *mesmo*, 332. j, 340. b

*prosseguir* + gerund, 454

\**prover*, conjugation, 495; construction, 561. f

proverbs, p. 620 ff.

punctuation, 37

*qu*, pronunciation, 19

*qual*, 315

*qual* . . . *qual* . . ., 315. b. e

*tal* . . . *qual* . . ., 354

in comparisons, 315. d

*qualificar*, followed by *de*, 557. g

qualifying suffixes, 144, 145

*qualquer*, 341, 345

preceded by *outro*, 338. e

with the subjunctive, 345, 607

*quando*, 653. s, 705

with indicative or subjunctive, 603. b

with fut. subj., 611

quantity of vowels, 15. b

*quanto*, 317, 342, 654. m

in comparisons, 155. a. b

*tanto* . . . *quanto* . . ., etc., 342. b, 357

replaced by *quão*, 155. b, 359

replaces *todo(s) o(s) que*, 317. b, 360. c

*quão*, in comparisons, 155. a. b, 359

*que*, relative, 306. a, 307–309, 312

omitted, 313, 345. a

repeated, 313

with preposition, 314

agreement of verb, 310, 311, 548. l-q

*que*, interrogative, 306. a

without preceding article, 306. b. c

as adjective, 306. d

in exclamations, 306. e. f

- que*, order of words after *em que*, 730  
*que*, indefinite, 343  
*que*, conjunction, 710–714  
     after comparatives, 154. b. c  
     after verbs of ‘saying,’ etc., 673. b  
     in subordinate clauses, 598, 599  
     replacing other conjunctions, 710  
     clause, introduced by *que*, equivalent to infin.,  
         568. b, 569. b, 598. a  
     *que nem*, 668  
     *ter* (or *haver*) *que* + inf., 444, 447  
*quê*, 306. a  
*quem*, interrogative, 304, 305. a. b, 548. j. k  
     relative, 305. a. b, 548. l. n  
     preceded by *a*, 305. d  
     *quem . . . quem . . .*, 305. e  
*quemquer*, 344, 345  
     with subjunctive, 345. a, 607  
*quer(e)*, 496. note  
*\*querer*, conjugation, 496  
 questions, 672  
*quicá*, 671
- r*, pronunciation, 19  
 radical changing, see verbs  
 reciprocal pronouns, 232. d, 521  
 reciprocal verbs, 521  
*recordar*, 519. c  
*\*redimir*, conjugation, 498  
*redor*, 652. p  
 reflexive pronouns, 232  
     position, 252. c, 263  
     with reciprocal force, 232. d  
     to express an indefinite pron., 319. a

reflexive pronouns, in direct address, 232. c.

reflexive verbs, conjugation, 508, 510–518

and passive, 509–521

*réis*, 226

relative pronouns, 304, 305; see *quem*, *que*, *qual*, *quanto*, *cujo*

*\*requerer*, conjugation, 497

*requisitar*, construed with *a* or *de*, 561. g

*resistir*, construed with *a* or *contra*, 561. h

*respeito*, 690

*\*rir*, conjugation, 499

and *rir-se*, 514

*rogar* (+ *a*), 561. e

+ *por* or *para*, 565. a

*rr*, pronunciation, 19

*ruir*, 534

*s*, pronunciation, 19

*\*saber*, conjugation, 500

construed with *a*, 561. i

*\*sair*, conjugation, 501

*salvo*, 691

*Santo*, *São*, 152. 1

*se*, in conditional sentences, 631–637, 705

with indic. or subj., 600. b, 632, 633

*se* (reflex. pron.), position, 247–272

'seasons,' 215

*seguir*, conjugation, 418

+ gerund, 454

*sempre*, 653. t

*senão*, 670, 705.2

*senhor*, *senhora*, *senhorinha*, 235. h. m

*sentir*, conjugation, 419

sequence of tenses, 628–630

*sequer*, 663.

- \**ser*, conjugation, 424
  - compound tenses, 465
  - meanings, 433, 435, 436
  - forming compound tenses, 433. c, 463–465, 543. b
  - forming the passive, 433. c
  - as an impersonal verb, 526
  - omitted before past part., 540, 587. i
  - construed with *com*, 562. n
- seu, sua*, etc., 275. b, 278
- si*, 232. c
- sicrano*, 367
- sim*, 673
- só*, 152. j
- 'so,' 241, 648
- 'so many that,' 358
- sôbre*, 692
- soer*, 531
- sogro*, etc., 105. d
- sonhar*, construed with *com*, 562. o
- \**sorrir*, conjugation, 499
  - and *sorrir-se*, 514
- sortir*, 535
- spelling, reformed, 36
- ss*, pronunciation, 19
- subir*, conjugation, 414
- subjunctive, in main sentences, 597
  - in subordinate clauses, 598–603, 629
  - in conditional sentences, 633, 634
  - in clauses that express purpose, 602
  - in correlative clauses, 608
  - in impersonal expressions, 609
  - or indicative, 598. c. d, 599. b, 600, 609
  - or infinitive, 598. a. b, 609. b
  - or imperative, 595. a

*todo(s)*, etc., 360

position, 88. c. d

followed or not by def. art., 88. b-g

agreement, 176. b.

agreement, used adverbially, 176. a, 654. n

replaced by *tudo*, 361. b

as adverb, 654. n

*topar*, construed with *com*, 562. p

*tornar* + *a* + inf., 456

*trás*, 654. q

\**trazer*, conjugation, 504

triphthongs, 14

*tu*, 235. a

*tudo*, 361

agreement with verb, 300, 548. h

*u*, pronunciation, 7

*ú*, pronunciation, 7

*ü*, pronunciation, 7

*ũ*, pronunciation, 16. f

*ũi*, pronunciation, 17. g

*um*, numeral, 184

pronoun, 362

see indef. article

*um ao outro*, 232. d

*um e outro*, 363. a

*um ou outro*, 363. b

*um . . . outro . . .*, 363. c

*uns*, *umas*, see indef. article

*v*, pronunciation, 19

\**valer*, conjugation, 505

*ve(e)m*, 17. e

\**ver*, conjugation, 506



- verbs, stem, 369. a
  - principal parts, 375
  - accented syllable, 371
  - with object pronouns, 386
  - radical changing, 401-421
    - first conj., 402-409
    - verbs in *-ear*, 405
    - verbs in *-iar*, 406-409
    - second conj., 410-412
    - third conj., 413-421
  - orthographical changes, 387-400
    - stems in *c*, 388, 397
      - g*, 389, 391
      - j*, 390
      - gu*, 392, 393
      - qu*, 394, 395
      - ç*, 396
      - z*, 398
      - a*, 400
  - conjugations, 369, 370
    - regular verbs, 377-379
    - irregular verbs, 466-507
  - tenses, 374
    - formation, 376
    - pres. indic., 381
    - fut. and condit., 382, 432
  - moods, 373, see imperative, indicative, infinitive,
    - participle, subjunctive
  - agreement with subject, see agreement
  - government, see direct object
  - passive, formation, 459, 509
    - synopsis, 460
    - compound tenses, 461-465
    - and reflexive, 509-521

verbs, compound tenses, formation, 461–463

conjugation, 464–465

position of object pron., 273

construed with *a*, 561, 677. l. m

*com*, 562, 563. c

*de*, 563, 576, 683. m. n

*em*, 564

*para*, 565. b, 687. a. b. d

*por*, 557. h. 565, 689. a

see also defective, gerund, auxiliary, impersonal, infinitive,

moods, past participle, present participle, tenses, *andar*,

*estar*, *ficar*, *haver*, *ir*, *ser*, *ter*, *vir*, etc.

*vestir*, construed with *de* or *em*, 683. p

*vez*, 653. u

*viajar*, conjugation, 390

\**vir*, conjugation, 507

as auxiliary, 452, 453. g

+ gerund, 453. a. b

+ *a* + inf., 453. f

*Você*, *Vossemecê*, 235. c

*voltar* + *a* + inf., 456

*vós*, 228

adj. agreeing, 174. c, 547. c

reinforced by *outros*, 233. d, 338. f

*Vossa Excelência*, 235. b. e

adj., pron., and verb agreeing, 174. b, 236, 552. e

*Vossa Senhoria*, 235. d

vowels, 5, 7, 15

*w*, 1. c, 36. d

'weather,' 526. c. d., 528

'well,' 643

'wishes,' 597. b. c

*x*, pronunciation, 19

*y*, 1. *c*, 36. *d*

'yes,' 673

'you,' 235, 236

*z*, pronunciation, 19











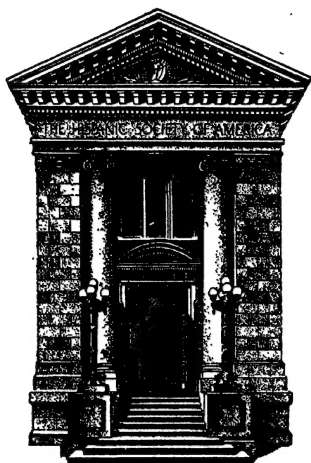




---

HISPANIC

---



---

HISPANIC SOCIETY

---

PORTUGUESE SERIES

---



---

OF AMERICA

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY



139 627

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY

